

ABC Library Reference



COPYRIGHT 1994-2003 SoftVelocity Incorporated. All rights reserved.

This publication is protected by copyright and all rights are reserved by SoftVelocity Incorporated. It may not, in whole or part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated, or reduced to any electronic medium or machine-readable form without prior consent, in writing, from SoftVelocity Incorporated.

This publication supports Clarion. It is possible that it may contain technical or typographical errors. SoftVelocity Incorporated provides this publication "as is," without warranty of any kind, either expressed or implied.

SoftVelocity Incorporated

2769 East Atlantic Blvd.
Pompano Beach, Florida 33062
(954) 785-4555
www.softvelocity.com

Trademark Acknowledgements:

SoftVelocity is a trademark of SoftVelocity Incorporated.

Clarion™ is a trademark of SoftVelocity Incorporated.

Btrieve® is a registered trademark of Pervasive Software.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Visual Basic® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.
All other products and company names are trademarks of their respective owners.

Printed in the United States of America (1103)

Contents:

Foreword	45
Welcome	45
Documentation Conventions	46
Keyboard Conventions	46
Other Conventions	46
ABC Library Overview	47
About This Book	47
Application Builder Class (ABC) Library	47
Class Libraries Generally	47
Application Builder Classes—The ABCs of Rapid Application Development	47
ABC Library and the ABC Templates	51
ABC Coding Conventions	53
Method Names	53
Where to Initialize & Kill Objects	55
Return Values	55
PRIVATE (undocumented) Items	56
PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, DERIVED, and PROC Attributes	57
Documentation Conventions	58
Reference Item and Syntax Diagram	58
Property (short description of intended use)	58
Method (short description of what the method does)	58
Conceptual Example	60
ASCIIFileClass	61
ASCIIFileClass Overview	61
AsciiFileClass Properties	64
ASCIIFile (the ASCII file)	64
ErrorMgr (ErrorClass object)	64
OpenMode (file access/sharing mode)	64
AsciiFileClass Methods	65
ASCIIFileClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	65
FormatLine (a virtual to format text)	66
GetDOSFilename (let end user select file)	67
GetFilename (return the filename)	68
GetLastLineNo (return last line number)	69
GetLine (return line of text)	70
GetPercentile (convert file position to percentage:ASCIIFileClass)	71
Init (initialize the ASCIIFileClass object)	72
Kill (shut down the ASCIIFileClass object)	73
Reset (reset the ASCIIFileClass object)	74
SetLine (a virtual to position the file)	75
SetPercentile (set file to relative position)	76

ValidateLine (a virtual to implement a filter)	77
ASCIIPrintClass	79
ASCIIPrintClass Overview	79
AsciiPrintClass Properties.....	82
FileMgr (AsciiFileClass object:AsciiPrintClass)	82
PrintPreview (print preview switch)	82
Translator (TranslatorClass object:AsciiPrintClass)	82
AsciiPrintClass Methods	83
Ask (solicit print specifications)	83
Init (initialize the ASCIIPrintClass object)	84
PrintLines (print or preview specified lines)	85
ASCIISearchClass	87
ASCIISearchClass Overview	87
AsciiSearchClass Properties.....	90
Find (search constraints)	90
FileMgr (AsciiFileClass object:AsciiSearchClass)	91
LineCounter (current line number)	91
Translator (TranslatorClass object:ASCIISearchClass)	91
AsciiSearchClass Methods	92
Ask (solicit search specifications)	92
Init (initialize the ASCIISearchClass object)	93
Next (find next line containing search text)	94
Setup (set search constraints)	95
ASCIIViewerClass	97
ASCIIViewerClass Overview	97
AsciiViewerClass Properties.....	100
Popup (PopupClass object)	100
Printer (ASCIIPrintClass object)	100
Searcher (ASCIISearchClass object)	101
TopLine (first line currently displayed).....	101
AsciiViewerClass Methods.....	102
AsciiViewerClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	102
AddItem (program the AsciiViewer object)	104
AskGotoLine (go to user specified line)	105
DisplayPage (display new page)	106
Init (initialize the ASCIIViewerClass object)	107
Kill (shut down the ASCIIViewerClass object)	109
PageDown (scroll down one page)	111
PageUp (scroll up one page)	112
Reset (reset the ASCIIViewerClass object)	113
SetLine (position to specific line)	114
SetLineRelative (move <i>n</i> lines)	115
SetTranslator (set run-time translator:ASCIIViewerClass)	116

TakeEvent (process ACCEPT loop event:ASCIIViewerClass)	117
BreakManagerClass	119
BreakManagerClass - Overview.....	119
BreakManagerClass - Concepts	119
BreakManagerClass - Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes.....	119
BreakManagerClass - ABC Template Implementation	119
BreakManagerClass - Source Files.....	120
BreakManagerClass - Conceptual Example	120
BreakManagerClass - Properties.....	123
BreakManagerClass - Methods	123
AddBreak (add a Break).....	123
AddLevel (add a Level to the BreakId Break)	124
AddResetField (add a reset field to the last Level added)	125
AddTotal (add a total field to the last Level added)	126
Construct (automatic initialization of the BreakManager object)	127
Destruct (automatic destroy of the Breakmanager object).....	127
Init (initialize the BreakManager object)	127
TakeEnd (Break closed)	128
TakeStart (Break opened)	129
UpdateTotal (Calculate Break totaling)	130
BrowseEIPManagerClass	131
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Overview	131
BrowseEIPManagerClass Concepts.....	132
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	133
BrowseEIPManagerClass--ABC Template Implementation	133
BrowseEIPManagerClass Source Files	133
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example	134
BrowseEIPManagerClass Properties	137
BrowseEIPManagerClass Properties	137
BC (browse class)	137
BrowseEIPManagerClass Methods	138
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use	138
ClearColumn (reset column property values)	139
Init (initialize the BrowseEIPManagerClass object)	140
Kill (shut down the BrowseEIPManagerClass object)	141
TakeCompleted (process completion of edit)	142
TakeNewSelection (reset edit-in-place column)	143
BrowseClass	145
BrowseClass Overview	145
BrowseClass Properties.....	150
BrowseClass Properties	150
ActiveInvisible (obscured browse list action)	150
AllowUnfilled (display filled list)	151

ArrowAction (edit-in-place action on arrow key)	152
AskProcedure (update procedure)	153
ChangeControl (browse change/update control number)	153
CurrentChoice (current LIST control entry number)	154
DeleteAction (edit-in-place action on delete key)	154
DeleteControl (browse delete control number)	154
EditList (list of edit-in-place controls)	155
EIP (edit-in-place manager)	155
EnterAction (edit-in-place action on enter key)	156
FocusLossAction (edit-in-place action on lose focus)	157
HasThumb (vertical scroll bar flag)	158
HideSelect (hide select button)	158
ILC(reference to IListControl interface)	158
InsertControl (browse insert control number)	159
ListQueue (browse data queue reference)	159
Loaded (browse queue loaded flag)	159
Popup (browse popup menu reference)	160
PrevChoice (prior LIST control entry number)	160
PrintControl (browse print control number)	160
PrintProcedure (print procedure)	161
Processors (reference to ProcessorQueue)	161
Query (reference to QueryClass)	161
QueryControl (browse query control number)	162
QueryShared (share query with multiple sorts)	162
QuickScan (buffered reads flag)	163
RetainRow (highlight bar refresh behavior)	164
SelectControl (browse select control number)	164
Selecting (select mode only flag)	165
SelectWholeRecord (select entire record flag)	165
Sort (browse sort information)	166
StartAtCurrent (initial browse position)	167
TabAction (edit-in-place action on tab key)	168
Toolbar (browse Toolbar object)	169
ToolbarItem (browse ToolbarTarget object)	170
ToolControl (browse toolbox control number)	171
ViewControl (view button)	171
Window (WindowManager object)	171
BrowseClass Methods	172
BrowseClass Methods.....	172
BrowseClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	172
AddEditControl (specify custom edit-in-place class)	174
AddField (specify a FILE/QUEUE field pair)	175
AddItem(program the BrowseClass object)	176
AddLocator (specify a locator)	176
AddResetField (set a field to monitor for changes)	177
AddSortOrder (specify a browse sort order)	178
AddToolbarTarget (set the browse toolbar)	179

ApplyRange (refresh browse based on resets and range limits)	180
Ask (update selected browse item)	181
AskRecord (edit-in-place selected browse item)	183
Fetch (get a page of browse items)	184
Init(initialize the BrowseClass object)	185
InitSort (initialize locator values)	186
Kill (shut down the BrowseClass object)	187
Next (get the next browse item)	188
NotifyUpdateError (throw error on update).....	189
PostNewSelection (post an EVENT:NewSelection to the browse list)	190
Previous (get the previous browse item)	191
Records (return the number of browse queue items)	192
ResetFields(reinitialize FieldPairsClass)	192
ResetFromAsk (reset browse after update)	193
ResetFromBuffer (fill queue starting from record buffer)	195
ResetFromFile (fill queue starting from file POSITION)	196
ResetFromView (reset browse from current result set)	197
ResetQueue (fill or refill queue)	198
ResetResets (copy the Reset fields)	199
ResetSort (apply sort order to browse)	200
ScrollEnd (scroll to first or last item)	201
ScrollOne (scroll up or down one item)	202
ScrollPage (scroll up or down one page)	203
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for list and locator controls)	204
SetLocatorField (set sort free element to passed field).....	205
SetLocatorFromSort (use sort like locator field).....	205
SetQueueRecord (copy data from file buffer to queue buffer:BrowseClass)	206
SetSort (apply a sort order to the browse)	207
TakeAcceptedLocator (apply an accepted locator value)	208
TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event:BrowseClass)	209
TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:BrowseClass)	210
TakeNewSelection (process a new selection:BrowseClass)	211
TakeScroll (process a scroll event)	212
TakeVCRScroll (process a VCR scroll event)	213
UpdateBuffer (copy selected item from queue buffer to file buffer)	214
UpdateQuery (set default query interface)	215
UpdateResets (copy reset fields to file buffer)	216
UpdateThumb (position the scrollbar thumb)	217
UpdateThumbFixed (position the scrollbar fixed thumb)	218
UpdateViewRecord (get view data for the selected item)	219
UpdateWindow (update display variables to match browse)	220
BrowseQueue Interface	221
BrowseQueue Concepts	221
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	221
BrowseQueue Source Files	221
BrowseQueue Methods	222

Delete(remove entry in LIST queue)	222
Fetch(retrieve entry from LIST queue)	222
Free(clear contents of LIST queue)	222
GetViewPosition(retrieve VIEW position)	222
Insert(add entry to LIST queue)	223
Records(return number of records)	223
SetViewPosition(set VIEW position)	223
Update(update entry in LIST queue)	224
Who(returns field name)	224

BrowseToolBarClass 225

BrowseToolBarClass Overview	225
BrowseToolBarClass Concepts	225
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	225
BrowseToolBarClass ABC Template Implementation	225
BrowseToolBarClass Source Files	225
BrowseToolBarClass Properties	226
Browse (BrowseClass object)	226
Button (toolbar buttons FEQ values)	227
Window (WindowManager object)	227
BrowseToolBarClass Methods	228
Init (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass object)	228
InitBrowse (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass update buttons)	228
InitMisc (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass miscellaneous buttons)	229
InitVCR (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass VCR buttons)	230
ResetButton (synchronize toolbar with a corresponding browse control)	231
ResetFromBrowse(synchronize toolbar controls with browse controls)	232
TakeEvent(process the current event)	232

BufferedPairsClass 233

BufferedPairsClass Overview	233
BufferedPairsClass Properties	235
BufferedPairsClass Properties	235
RealList (recognized field pairs)	235
BufferedPairsClass Methods	236
BufferedPairsClass Methods	236
BufferedPairsClass Functional Organization Expected Use	236
AddPair (add a field pair:BufferedPairsClass)	238
AssignBufferToLeft (copy from "buffer" fields to "left" fields)	240
AssignBufferToRight (copy from "buffer" fields to "right" fields)	241
AssignLeftToBuffer (copy from "left" fields to "buffer" fields)	242
AssignRightToBuffer (copy from "right" fields to "buffer" fields)	243
EqualLeftBuffer (compare "left" fields to "buffer" fields)	244
EqualRightBuffer (compare "right" fields to "buffer" fields)	245
Init (initialize the BufferedPairsClass object)	246
Kill (shut down the BufferedPairsClass object)	247

ConstantClass	249
ConstantClass Overview	249
ConstantClass Properties	253
TerminatorField (identify the terminating field)	253
TerminatorInclude (include matching terminator record)	253
TerminatorValue (end of data marker)	254
ConstantClass Methods	255
ConstantClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	255
AddItem (set constant datatype and target variable)	256
Init (initialize the ConstantClass object)	257
Kill (shut down the ConstantClass object)	259
Next (load all constant items to file or queue)	260
Next (copy next constant item to targets)	262
Reset (reset the object to the beginning of the constant data)	263
Set (set the constant data to process)	264
Crystal8 Class	265
Crystal8 Class Properties	266
Crystal8 Methods	267
AllowPrompt (prompt for runtime parameter data)	267
CanDrillDown(allow Crystal drill down support)	268
HasCancelButton (display cancel button on report preview)	269
HasCloseButton (display close button on report preview)	270
HasExportButton (display export button on report preview)	271
HasLaunchButton (display launch button on report preview)	272
HasNavigationControls (display navigation controls on report preview)	273
HasPrintButton (display print button on report preview)	274
HasPrintSetupButton (display print setup button on report preview)	275
HasProgressControls (display progress controls on report preview)	276
HasRefreshButton (display refresh button on report preview)	277
HasSearchButton (display search button on report preview)	278
HasZoomControl (display zoom control on report preview)	279
Init (initialize Crystal8 object)	280
Kill (shut down Crystal8 object)	281
Preview (preview a Crystal Report)	282
_Print (print a Crystal Report)	283
Query (retrieve or set the SQL data query)	284
SelectionFormula (retrieve or set the Crystal formula)	285
ShowDocumentTips (show tips on document in the preview window)	286
ShowReportControls (show print controls)	287
ShowToolBarTips (show tips on preview window toolbar)	288
cwRTF Class	289
cwRTF Overview	289
cwRTF Class Concepts	289
cwRTF Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	290

cwRTF ABC Template Implementation	290
cwRTF Source Files	290
cwRTF Properties	291
cwRTF Properties	291
hRTFWindow(RTF control handle)	291
cwRTF Methods	292
AlignParaCenter (center paragraph)	292
AlignParaLeft (left justify paragraph)	292
AlignParaRight (right justify paragraph)	292
ChangeFontStyle (set current font style)	293
CanRedo (check for redo data)	293
CanUndo (check for undo data)	294
Color (set text color)	294
Copy (copy selected text to clipboard)	294
Cut (cut selected text)	295
Find (set current font style)	295
FlatButtons (use flat button style)	296
Font (apply font attributes)	297
GetText (copy text to variable)	298
Init (initialize the cwRTF object)	299
IsDirty (indicates modified data)	300
Kill (shut down the csRTF object)	301
LeftIndent (indent the current or selected paragraph)	301
LimitTextSize (limit amount of text)	302
LoadField (load rich text data from field)	302
LoadFile (load rich text data from file)	303
NewFile (clear rich text data)	303
Offset (offset current or selected paragraph)	303
PageSetup (set page attributes)	304
ParaBulletsOff (turn off paragraph bullets)	304
ParaBulletsOn (turn on paragraph bullets)	304
Paste (paste text from clipboard)	305
_Print (print rich text control contents)	305
Redo (reapply action)	306
Replace (find and replace search)	306
ResizeControls (used internally)	306
RightIndent (indent the current or selected paragraph)	307
SaveField (save rich text data to field)	307
SaveFile (save rich text data to file)	308
SelectText (select characters)	308
SetDirtyFlag (set modified flag)	309
SetFocus (give rich text control focus)	309
SetText (place text into rich text control)	310
ShowControl (hide/unhide RTF control)	311
Undo (undo action)	311

DbAuditManager 313

DbAuditManager Overview	313
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	313
DbAuditManager ABC Template Implementation	313
DbAuditManager Source Files	313
DbAuditManager Properties.....	314
Action (log file action column)	314
ColumnInfo (log file column queue)	314
LogFiles (log file queue)	314
FM (DbLogFileManager object)	315
Errors (ErrorClass object)	315
DbAuditManager Methods	316
AddItem (maintain the columninfo structure)	316
AddLogFile (maintain log file structure)	317
AppendLog (initiate audit log file update)	317
BeforeChange (update audit log file before file change)	318
CreateHeader (create log file header records)	318
Init (initialize the DbAuditManager object)	319
Kill (shut down DbAuditManager object)	319
OnChange (update audit log file after a record change)	320
OnDelete (update audit log file when a record is deleted)	320
OnFieldChange (virtual method for each field change)	321
OnInsert (update audit log file when a record is added)	322
OpenLogFile (open the audit log file)	322
SetFM (determine log file status)	323

DbChangeManager 325

DbChangeManager Overview	325
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	325
DbChangeManager ABC Template Implementation	325
DbChangeManager Source Files	325
DbChangeManager Properties.....	326
NameQueue (pointer into trigger queue)	326
TriggerQueue (pointer to BFP for field changes)	326
DbChangeManager Methods.....	327
AddItem (maintain the namequeue structure)	327
AddThread (maintains the triggerqueue)	327
CheckChanges(check record for changes)	328
CheckPair(check field pairs for changes)	328
Equal(checks for equal before and after values)	329
Init (initialize the DbChangeManager object)	329
Kill (shut down DbChangeManager object)	330
SetThread (read triggerqueue)	330
Update (update the audit log file buffer)	331

DbLogFileManager	333
DbLogFileManager Overview	333
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	333
DbLogFileManager ABC Template Implementation	333
DbLogFileManager Source Files	333
DbLogFileManager Properties	334
DbLogFileManager Properties	334
Opened (file opened flag)	334
DbLogFileManager Methods.....	335
DbLogFileManager Methods	335
Init (initialize the DbLogFileManager object)	335
EditClass	337
EditClass Overview	337
EditClass Concepts	337
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	337
ABC Template Implementation	338
EditClass Source Files	338
EditClass Conceptual Example	339
EditClass Properties	343
FEQ (the edit-in-place control number)	343
ReadOnly (edit-in-place control is read-only)	343
EditClass Methods	344
Functional Organization--Expected Use	344
CreateControl (a virtual to create the edit control)	345
Init (initialize the EditClass object)	346
Kill (shut down the EditClass object)	347
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control)	347
SetReadOnly (set edit control to read-only)	348
TakeAccepted (validate EIP field)	348
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events)	349
EditSpinClass	351
EditSpinClass--Overview	351
EditSpinClass Concepts	351
EditSpinClass -- Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	351
EditSpinClass--ABC Template Implementation	351
EditSpinClass--Conceptual Example	352
EditSpinClass Properties	355
EditSpinClass Properties	355
EditSpinClass Methods.....	356
EditSpinClass Methods	356
EditSpinClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use	356
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place SPIN control)	357

EditCheckClass	359
EditCheckClass Overview	359
EditCheckClass Concepts	359
EditCheckClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	359
EditCheckClass ABC Template Implementation	359
EditCheckClass Source Files	359
EditCheckClass Conceptual Example	361
EditCheckClass Properties	364
EditCheckClass Methods	365
EditCheckClass Functional Organization—Expected Use	365
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place CHECK control)	366
EditColorClass	367
EditColorClassOverview	367
EditColorClass Concepts	367
EditColorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	367
EditColorClass ABC Template Implementation	367
EditColorClass Source Files	368
EditColorClass Conceptual Example	369
EditColorClass Properties	373
EditColorClass Properties	373
Title (color dialog title text)	373
EditColorClass Methods	374
EditColorClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	374
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control)	375
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditColorClass)	376
EditDropComboClass	377
EditDropComboClass Overview	377
EditDropComboClass Concepts	377
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	377
EditDropComboClass ABC Template Implementation	377
EditDropComboClass Source Files	378
EditDropComboClass Conceptual Example	379
EditDropComboClass Properties	382
EditDropComboClass Methods	383
EditDropComboClass Functional Organization	383
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place COMBO control)	384
EditDropListClass	385
EditDropListClass Overview	385
EditDropListClass Concepts	385
EditDropListClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	385
EditDropListClass ABC Template Implementation	385
EditDropListClass Source Files	385
EditDropListClass Conceptual Example	387

EditDropListClass Properties	390
EditDropListClass Properties	390
EditDropListClass Methods.....	391
EditDropListClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	391
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place DROPLIST control)	392
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control:EditDropListClass)	393
SetReadOnly (set edit control to read-only:EditDropClass)	394
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditDropList Class)	395
EditEntryClass	397
EditEntryClass Overview	397
EditEntryClass Concepts	397
EditEntryClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	397
EditEntryClass ABC Template Implementation	398
EditEntryClass Source Files	398
EditEntryClass Conceptual Example	398
EditEntryClass Properties	402
EditEntryClass Properties	402
EditEntryClass Methods.....	403
EditEntryClass Methods	403
EditEntryClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	403
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place ENTRY control)	404
EditFileClass	405
EditFileClass Overview	405
EditFileClass Concepts	405
EditFileClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	405
EditFileClass ABC Template Implementation	405
EditFileClass Source Files	406
EditFileClass Conceptual Example	407
EditFileClass Properties.....	411
EditFileClass Properties	411
FileMask (file dialog behavior)	411
FilePattern (file dialog filter)	411
Title (file dialog title text)	412
EditFileClass Methods	413
EditFileClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	413
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditFileClass)	414
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditFileClass)	415
EditFontClass	417
EditFontClass Overview	417
EditFontClass Concepts	417
EditFontClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	417
EditFontClass ABC Template Implementation	417
EditFontClass Source Files	418

EditFontClass Conceptual Example	419
EditFontClass Properties	423
EditFontClass Properties	423
Title (font dialog title text)	423
EditFontClass Methods	424
EditFontClass Methods	424
EditFontClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	424
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditFontClass)	425
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditFontClass)	426
EditMultiSelectClass	427
EditMultiSelectClass Overview	427
EditMultiSelectClass Concepts	427
EditMultiSelectClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	427
EditMultiSelectClass ABC Template Implementation	428
EditMultiSelectClass Source Files	428
EditMultiSelectClass Conceptual Example	429
EditMultiSelectClass Properties	434
EditMultiSelectClass Properties	434
Title (font dialog title text:EditMultiSelectClass)	434
EditMultiSelectClass Methods	435
EditMultiSelectClass Methods	435
EditMultiSelectClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	435
AddValue (prime the MultiSelect dialog)	437
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditMultiSelectClass)	438
Reset (reset the EditMultiSelectClass object)	438
TakeAction (process MultiSelect dialog action)	439
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditMultiSelectClass)	442
EditTextClass	443
EditTextClass: Overview	443
EditTextClass Properties	445
Title (text dialog title text)	445
EditTextClass Methods	446
CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditTextClass)	447
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditTextClass)	448
EIPManagerClass	449
EIPManagerClass--Overview	449
EIPManagerClass Concepts	449
EIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	449
EIPManagerClass--ABC Template Implementation	450
EIPManagerClass Source Files	450
EIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example	451
EIPManagerClass Properties	454
Again (column usage flag)	454

Arrow (edit-in-place action on arrow key)	454
Column (listbox column)	454
Enter (edit-in-place action on enter key)	455
EQ (list of edit-in-place controls)	455
Fields (managed fields)	456
FocusLoss (action on loss of focus)	456
Insert (placement of new record)	457
ListControl (listbox control number)	458
LastColumn (previous edit-in-place column)	458
Repost (event synchronization)	459
RepostField (event synchronization field)	459
Req (database request)	460
SeekForward (get next field flag)	460
Tab (action on a tab key)	460
EIPManagerClass Methods	461
EIPManagerClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use	461
AddControl (register edit-in-place controls)	463
ClearColumn (reset column property values:EIPManagerClass)	464
GetEdit (identify edit-in-place field)	465
Init (initialize the EIPManagerClass object)	466
InitControls (initialize edit-in-place controls)	466
Kill (shut down the EIPManagerClass object)	467
Next (get the next edit-in-place field)	468
ResetColumn (reset edit-in-place object to selected field)	469
Run (run the EIPManager)	470
TakeAcceptAll (validate completed row)	470
TakeAction (process edit-in-place action)	471
TakeCompleted (process completion of edit:EIPManagerClass)	472
TakeEvent (process window specific events)	473
TakeFieldEvent (process field specific events)	474
TakeFocusLoss (a virtual to process loss of focus)	475
TakeNewSelection (reset edit-in-place column:EIPManagerClass)	476

EntryLocatorClass

477

EntryLocatorClass Overview	477
EntryLocatorClass Properties	481
EntryLocatorClass Properties	481
Shadow (the search value)	481
EntryLocatorClass Methods.....	482
GetShadow(return shadow value)	482
Init (initialize the EntryLocatorClass object)	483
Set (restart the locator:EntryLocatorClass)	484
SetShadow(set shadow value)	485
TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value:EntryLocatorClass)	485
TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:EntryLocatorClass)	486
Update (update the locator control and free elements)	487
UpdateWindow (redraw the locator control)	487

ErrorClass	489
ErrorClass Overview	489
ErrorClass Source Files	489
Multiple Customizable Levels of Error Treatment	490
Predefined Windows and Database Errors	491
Dynamic Extensibility of Errors.....	491
ErrorClass ABC Template Implementation	491
ErrorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes.....	491
ErrorClass Macro Expansion.....	492
ErrorClass Multi-Language Capability.....	493
ErrorClass Conceptual Example	494
ErrorClass Properties.....	495
ErrorClass Properties	495
DefaultCategory (error category)	495
ErrorLog (errorlog interface)	495
Errors (recognized error definitions)	496
FieldName (field that produced the error)	497
FileName (file that produced the error)	497
History (error history structure)	497
HistoryResetOnView(clear error history log file)	498
HistoryThreshold (determine size of error history)	498
HistoryViewLevel (trigger error history)	498
KeyName (key that produced the error)	498
LogErrors (turn on error history logging)	499
MessageText (custom error message text)	499
Silent (silent error flag)	499
ErrorClass Methods	500
ErrorClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	500
AddErrors (add or override recognized errors)	502
AddHistory (update History structure)	503
GetCategory (retrieve error category)	503
GetError (Retrieve the current error message)	503
GetErrorcode (Retrieve the current Errorcode).....	504
GetProcedureName (return procedure name)	504
HistoryMsg (initialize the message window)	505
Init (initialize the ErrorClass object)	506
Kill (perform any necessary termination code)	507
Message (display an error message)	508
Msg (initiate error message destination)	509
MessageBox (display error message to window)	510
RemoveErrors (remove or restore recognized errors)	511
ResetHistory(clear History structure)	512
SetCategory (set error category)	512
SetErrors (save the error state)	513
SetFatality (set severity level for a particular error)	514
SetField (set the substitution value of the %Field macro)	515

SetFile (set the substitution value of the %File macro)	516
SetKey (set the substitution value of the %Key macro)	517
SetId (make a specific error current)	518
SetProcedureName (stores procedure names)	519
SubsString (resolves error message macros)	520
TakeBenign (process benign error)	521
TakeError (process specified error)	522
TakeFatal (process fatal error)	523
TakeNotify (process notify error)	524
TakeOther (process other error)	525
TakeProgram (process program error)	526
TakeUser (process user error)	527
Throw (process specified error)	528
ThrowFile (set value of %File, then process error)	529
ThrowMessage (set value of %Message, then process error)	530
ViewHistory (initiates the view of the current errors)	530
ErrorLogInterface	531
ErrorLogInterface Concepts	531
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	531
ErrorLogInterface Source Files	531
ErrorLogInterface Methods	532
ErrorLogInterface Methods	532
Close (initiate close of log file)	532
Open (method to initiate open of log file)	533
Take (update the log file)	533
FieldPairsClass	535
FieldPairsClass Overview	535
FieldPairsClass Properties.....	538
List (recognized field pairs)	538
FieldPairsClass Methods	539
FieldPairsClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	539
AddItem (add a field pair from one source field)	540
AddPair (add a field pair:FieldPairsClass)	541
AssignLeftToRight (copy from "left" fields to "right" fields)	543
AssignRightToLeft (copy from "right" fields to "left" fields)	544
ClearLeft (clear each "left" field)	545
ClearRight (clear each "right" field)	546
Equal (return 1 if all pairs are equal)	547
EqualLeftRight (return 1 if all pairs are equal)	548
Init (initialize the FieldPairsClass object)	548
Kill (shut down the FieldPairsClass object)	549
FileDropComboClass	551
Overview:FileDropComboClass	551

FileDropComboClass Properties	556
FileDropComboClass Properties	556
AskProcedure (update procedure)	556
ECon (current state of entry completion)	556
EntryCompletion (automatic fill-ahead flag)	557
RemoveDuplicatesFlag (remove duplicate data)	557
UseField (COMBO USE variable)	558
FileDropComboClass Methods	559
FileDropComboClass Methods	559
FileDropComboClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	559
AddRecord (add a record filedrop queue)	561
Ask (add a record to the lookup file)	561
GetQueueMatch (locate a list item)	562
Init (initialize the FileDropComboClass object)	563
KeyValid (check for valid keystroke)	565
Kill (shut down the FileDropComboClass object)	565
ResetFromList (reset VIEW)	565
ResetQueue (refill the filedrop queue)	566
TakeAccepted (process accepted event)	567
TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event:FileDropComboClass)	567
TakeNewSelection (process NewSelection events:FileDropComboClass)	568
UniquePosition (check queue for duplicate record by key position)	569

FileDropClass 571

FileDropClass Overview	571
FileDropClass Properties	576
FileDropClass Properties	576
AllowReset (allow a reset)	576
DefaultFill (initial display value)	576
InitSyncPair (initial list position)	576
FileDropClass Methods	577
FileDropClass Methods	577
FileDropClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	577
AddField (specify display fields)	579
AddRecord (update filedrop queue)	580
AddUpdateField (specify field assignments)	580
Init (initialize the FileDropClass object)	581
Kill (shut down the FileDropClass object)	582
ResetQueue (fill filedrop queue)	583
SetQueueRecord (copy data from file buffer to queue buffer:FileDropClass)	584
TakeAccepted (a virtual to accept data)	584
TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event--FileDropClass)	585
TakeNewSelection (process EVENT:NewSelection events:FileDropClass)	586
ValidateRecord (a virtual to validate records)	587

FileManager	589
FileManager Overview	589
FileManager Properties.....	594
AliasedFile (the primary file)	594
Buffer (the record buffer)	595
Buffers (saved record buffers)	595
Create (create file switch)	596
Errors (the ErrorManager)	596
File (the managed file)	596
FileName (variable filename)	597
FileNameValue (constant filename)	598
LazyOpen (delay file open until access)	599
LockRecover (/RECOVER wait time parameter)	599
OpenMode (file access/sharing mode)	600
SkipHeldRecords (HELD record switch)	600
FileManager Methods	601
Naming Conventions and Dual Approach to Database Operations	601
FileManager Functional Organization--Expected Use	602
AddField(track fields in a structure)	604
AddKey (set the file's keys)	605
BindFields (bind fields when file is opened)	606
CancelAutoInc (undo PrimeAutoInc)	607
ClearKey (clear specified key components)	610
Close (close the file)	612
Deleted (return record status)	613
DeleteRecord (delete a record)	614
Destruct (automatic destructor)	615
EqualBuffer (detect record buffer changes)	616
Fetch (get a specific record by key value)	617
GetComponents (return the number of key components)	618
GetEOF (return end of file status)	619
GetError (return the current error ID)	620
GetField (return a reference to a key component)	621
GetFieldName (return a key component field name)	623
GetFields(get number of fields)	625
GetFieldPicture(get field picture)	625
GetFieldType(get field type)	625
GetName (return the filename)	626
Init (initialize the FileManager object)	627
Insert (add a new record)	629
KeyToOrder (return ORDER expression for a key)	630
Kill (shutdown the FileManager object)	632
Next (get next record in sequence)	633
Open (open the file)	634
Position (return the current record position)	635
PostDelete(trigger delete action post-processing)	636

PostInsert(trigger insert action post-processing).....	637
PostUpdate(trigger update action post-processing).....	638
PreDelete(trigger delete action pre-processing)	639
PreInsert(trigger insert action pre-processing).....	640
PreUpdate(trigger update action pre-processing)	642
Previous (get previous record in sequence)	644
PrimeAutoInc (prepare an autoincremented record for adding)	645
PrimeFields (a virtual to prime fields)	647
PrimeRecord (prepare a record for adding:FileManager)	648
RestoreBuffer (restore a previously saved record buffer)	650
RestoreFile (restore a previously saved file state)	651
SaveBuffer (save a copy of the record buffer)	652
SaveFile (save the current file state)	653
SetError (save the specified error and underlying error state)	654
SetErrors (set the error class used)	655
SetKey (set current key)	656
SetName (set current filename)	657
Throw (pass an error to the error handler for processing)	659
ThrowMessage (pass an error and text to the error handler)	660
TryFetch (try to get a specific record by key value)	662
TryInsert (try to add a new record)	663
TryNext (try to get next record in sequence)	664
TryOpen (try to open the file)	665
TryPrevious (try to get previous record in sequence)	666
TryPrimeAutoInc (try to prepare an autoincremented record for adding)	667
TryReget (try to get a specific record by position)	669
TryUpdate (try to change the current record)	669
TryValidateField(validate field contents)	670
Update (change the current record)	671
UseFile (use LazyOpen file)	672
ValidateField (validate a field)	674
ValidateFields (validate a range of fields)	675
ValidateFieldServer(validate field contents)	676
ValidateRecord (validate all fields)	677
FilterLocatorClass	679
FilterLocatorClass Overview	679
FilterLocatorClass Properties.....	683
FilterLocatorClass Properties	683
FloatRight ("contains" or "begins with" flag)	683
FilterLocatorClass Methods	684
FilterLocatorClass Methods	684
TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value:FilterLocatorClass)	684
UpdateWindow (apply the search criteria)	685

FuzzyClass 687

FuzzyClass Overview	687
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	687
FuzzyClass ABC Template Implementation	687
FuzzyClass Source Files	687
FuzzyClass Properties	688
FuzzyClass Methods.....	688
Construct (initialize FuzzyClass object)	688
Init (initialize FuzzyClass object)	688
Kill (shutdown FuzzyClass object)	688
Match (find query matches)	689
SetOption (set fuzzymatch options)	690

FormVCRClass 691

FormVCRClass Overview	691
FormVCRClass Concepts.....	691
FormVCRClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	691
FormVCRClass ABC Template Implementation.....	691
FormVCRClass Source Files	692
FormVCRClass Properties.....	692
QuickScan (buffered reads flag).....	692
Toolbar (FormVCR Toolbar object)	693
ToolbarItem (FormVCR ToolbarTarget object)	693
ViewPosition (store the current record position)	694
FormVCRClass Methods:	695
AddToolbarTarget (set the FormVCR toolbar).....	695
Init (initialize the FormVCR object).....	696
InitSort (initialize locator values).....	696
Kill (shut down the FormVCR object)	697
CheckBorders (check for existence of records)	697
GetAction (return FormVCR action)	698
GetActionAllowed (validate a requested FormVCR action)	699
Next (get the next FormVCR item)	700
Previous (get the previous FormVCR item)	701
ResetSort (apply sort order to FormVCR).....	701
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for FormVCR controls)	702
SetRequestControl (assign field equates to FormVCR actions)	702
SetVCRControls (assign field equates to FormVCR scrolling)	703
SetSort (apply a sort order to the FormVCR group).....	704
TakeAcceptedLocator (apply an accepted FormVCR locator value)	705
TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event).....	705
TakeLocate (a FormVCR virtual to process each sort).....	706
TakeScroll (process a FormVCR scroll event)	706
UpdateWindow (update display variables to match FormVCR action)	707

GraphClass	709
GraphClass Overview	709
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	709
GraphClass ABC Template Implementation	709
GraphClass Source Files	709
GraphClass Properties	710
eShowSBonFirstThread (display on base status bar)	710
eSumYMax (calculated maximum node value)	710
gShowDiagramName (show diagram name on target)	711
gShowDiagramNameV (show diagram value on target)	712
gShowMouse (show mouse coordinates on target)	713
gShowMouseX (show mouse X coordinate on target)	714
gShowMouseY (show mouse Y coordinate on target)	715
gShowNodeName (show node name on target)	716
gShowNodeNameV (show node name value on target)	717
gShowNodeValue (show node axis values on target)	718
gShowNodeValueX (show node x-axis value on target)	719
gShowNodeValueY (show node y-axis value on target)	720
GraphClass Methods	721
AllText (return full graph text information)	721
BeginRefresh (prepare drawing of graph class object)	721
CalcBestPositionNodeText (calculate graph text best fit position)	722
CalcCurrentGraph (calculates values for current graph type)	722
CalcCurrentNode (calculates values of current node)	723
CalcGraph (calculates all graph object values)	723
CalcPopup (create popup menu for graph object)	724
CalcPopupAdd2 (create popup menu item text for graph object)	725
DiagramNameText (create diagram name text)	726
DiagramText (create diagram name text with prompts)	726
DiagramNameText (create diagram name text)	727
DiagramText (create diagram name text with prompts)	727
Draw (calculate and draw GraphClass object)	728
DrawGraph (draws calculated values)	728
DrawReport (draw graph object on report)	729
DrawWallpaper (draw background wallpaper for graph object)	729
DrillDown (transfer control to new graph object)	730
FindNearbyNodes (locate nodes based on mouse position)	731
GetMouse (get mouse coordinates in all formats)	732
GetValueFromField (get contents of specified field)	733
GetValueFromStatusBar (return status bar zone contents)	733
ImageToWMF (Save object and return WMF file name)	734
Init (Initialize the graph object)	734
Interactivity (process mouse location data to tool tip or control)	735
IsOverNode (is mouse over node location)	735
Kill (shut down the GraphClass object)	736
MouseEvent (creates text and mouse coordinate information)	736

MouseXText (generate X coordinate text only)	736
MouseYText (generate Y coordinate text only)	737
NodeNameText (generate current node name identifier)	737
NodeText (generate label, name, and node value)	738
NodeTipText (generate node information for tool tip)	738
NodeValueText (generate current node value text)	739
NodeXText (generate X node text value)	739
NodeYText (generate Y node text value)	740
Popup (GraphClass object popup menu manager)	740
PopupAsk (Display popup menu for graph object)	741
PostEvent (send an event to the GraphClass object)	742
PrintGraph (send graph object to printer)	744
Refresh (refresh drawing of GraphClass object)	745
Resize (conditional refresh when size changed)	745
ReturnFromDrillDown (transfer control to graph object after drilldown)	746
SaveAsGraph (save graph to WMF file selected)	747
SaveGraph (auto-save graph to WMF file)	747
SetDefault (initialize selected graph properties)	748
ShowOnField (show text contents to specified field)	748
ShowOnStatusBar (show text to status bar zone)	749
TakeEvent (process graph control events)	749
TakeEventofParent (process all graph events)	750
ToolTip (show all text to tool tips)	750
ToShowValues (show all composite text to all graph targets)	751

GridClass

753

GridClass Overview	753
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	753
GridClass ABC Template Implementation	753
GridClass Source Files	753
GridClass Properties	754
GridClass Properties	754
Children (reference to child group controls)	754
Chosen (current browse queue element)	754
ClickPress (forward control)	755
ControlBase (base control number)	755
ControlNumber (number of controls)	755
GroupColor (background color of group fields)	756
GroupControl (GROUP control number)	756
GroupTitle (title of group element)	756
SelColor (color of selected element)	757
Selectable (element selectable flag)	757
UpdateControl (file update trigger)	757
UpdateControlEvent	757
GridClass Methods	758
AddLocator (specify a locator)	758
FetchRecord (retrieve selected record)	758

GetAcross (number of horizontal grids)	759
GetClickPress (forward click control)	759
GetDown (number of vertical grids)	759
GetPosition (retrieve group control position)	760
IfGroupField (determine if current control is a GROUP)	760
Init (initialize the GridClass object)	761
IsSkelActive	761
Kill (shutdown the GridClass object)	762
SetAlerts (initialize and create child controls)	762
SyncGroup (initialize GROUP field properties)	762
TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event)	763
UpdateRecord (refresh BrowseGrid)	763
UpdateWindow (refresh window display)	763
HistHandlerClass	765
HistHandlerClass Source Files	765
HistHandlerClass Properties.....	765
Err (errorclass object)	765
History (error history structure)	765
LBColumns (number of listbox columns)	766
Win (reference to window)	766
HistHandlerClass Methods	767
Init (initialize the HistHandlerClass object)	767
TakeEvent (process window events)	767
VLBProc (retrieve LIST and error history information.)	768
IDbChangeAudit Interface	769
IDbChangeAudit Concepts	769
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	769
IDbChangeAudit Source Files	769
IDbChangeAudit Methods.....	769
BeforeChange (update audit log file before file change)	769
ChangeField (virtual method for managing field changes)	770
OnChange (update audit log file after a record change)	771
IListControl Interface	773
IListControl Concepts	773
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	773
IListControl Source Files	773
IListControl Methods.....	773
Choice(returns current selection number)	773
GetControl(returns control number)	774
GetItems(returns number of entries)	774
GetVisible(returns visibility of control)	774
SetChoice(change selected entry)	775
SetControl(change selected entry)	775

IncrementalLocatorClass	777
IncrementalLocatorClass Overview	777
IncrementalLocatorClass Properties.....	781
IncrementalLocatorClass Properties	781
IncrementalLocatorClass Methods	782
IncrementalLocatorClass Methods	782
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the LIST control:IncrementalLocatorClass)	782
TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:IncrementalLocatorClass)	783
INIClass	785
INIClass Overview	785
INIClass Properties	788
INIClass Properties	788
FileName	788
INIClass Methods.....	789
Fetch (get INI file entries)	789
FetchField (return comma delimited INI file value)	791
FetchQueue (get INI file queue entries)	792
Init (initialize the INIClass object)	793
TryFetch (get a value from the INI file)	795
TryFetchField (return comma delimited INI file value)	796
Update (write INI file entries)	797
IReportGenerator Interface	799
IReportGenerator Interface	799
IReportGenerator Concepts.....	799
IReportGenerator Methods	799
AskProperties (pop up window to set properties).....	799
CloseDocument (end document printing).....	800
ClosePage (end a page print)	800
GetProperty (get a property value).....	801
Init (initialize error class before printing)	801
OpenDocument (begin document printing)	802
OpenPage (begin a page print)	802
Opened (file opened flag)	802
ProcessArc (print an arc).....	803
ProcessBand (begin/end report band processing).....	804
ProcessCheck (print a checkbox).....	804
ProcessChord (print a section of an ellipse)	805
ProcessEllipse (print an ellipse)	806
ProcessImage (print an image)	806
ProcessLine (print a line).....	807
ProcessOption (print an option control).....	807
ProcessRadio (print a radio button).....	808
ProcessRectangle (print a box control)	808
ProcessText (print a string or text control)	809

SetProperty (set a property value)	810
WhoAml (identify the report generator type)	810
LocatorClass	811
LocatorClass Overview	811
LocatorClass Properties.....	813
Control (the locator control number)	813
FreeElement (the locator's first free key element)	813
NoCase (case sensitivity flag)	814
ViewManager (the locator's ViewManager object)	814
LocatorClass Methods	815
GetShadow(return shadow value)	815
Init (initialize the LocatorClass object)	816
Reset (reset the locator for next search)	817
Set (restart the locator:LocatorClass)	818
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the LIST control:LocatorClass)	818
SetEnabled (enable or disable the locator control)	819
SetShadow (update shadow value)	819
TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value:LocatorClass)	820
TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:LocatorClass)	820
UpdateWindow (redraw the locator control with its current value)	821
MsgBoxClass	823
MsgBoxClass Overview	823
MsgBoxClass Source Files	823
MsgBoxClass Properties.....	824
ButtonTypes (standard windows buttons)	824
Caption (window title)	824
Err (errorclass object)	824
Icon (icon for image control).....	824
HistoryHandler (windowcomponent interface)	825
MsgRVal (message box return value)	825
Style (font style)	825
Win (reference to window)	825
MsgBoxClass Methods	826
FetchFeq (retrieve button feq)	826
FetchStdButton (determine button pressed)	826
Init (initialize the MsgBoxClass object)	827
Kill (perform any necessary termination code)	827
SetupAdditionalFeqs (initialize additional control properties)	828
TakeAccepted (process accepted event)	828
PopupClass	829
PopupClass Overview	829
PopupClass Properties	833
ClearKeycode (clear KEYCODE character)	833

PopupClass Methods.....	834
PopupClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	834
AddItem (add menu item)	835
AddItemEvent (set menu item action)	837
AddItemMimic (tie menu item to a button)	838
AddMenu (add a menu)	839
AddSubMenu (add submenu)	840
Ask (display the popup menu)	841
DeleteItem (remove menu item)	842
DeleteMenu (remove a popup submenu)	843
GetItemChecked (return toggle item status)	844
GetItemEnabled (return item status)	845
GetItems (returns number of popup entries)	846
GetLastNumberSelection (get last menu item number selected)	846
GetLastSelection (return selected item)	847
Init (initialize the PopupClass object)	848
Kill (shut down the PopupClass object)	848
Restore (restore a saved menu)	849
Save (save a menu for restoration)	850
SetIcon (set icon name for popup menu item)	851
SetItemCheck (set toggle item status)	852
SetItemEnable (set item status)	853
SetLevel (set menu item level)	854
SetText (set menu item text)	855
SetToolbox (set menu item toolbox status)	856
SetTranslator (set run-time translator:PopupClass)	857
Toolbox (start the popup toolbox menu)	858
ViewMenu (popup menu debugger)	859
PrintPreviewClass	861
PrintPreviewClass Overview	861
PrintPreviewClass Properties	866
AllowUserZoom (allow any zoom factor)	866
ConfirmPages (force 'pages to print' confirmation)	866
CurrentPage (the selected report page)	867
Maximize (number of pages displayed horizontally)	867
PagesAcross (number of pages displayed horizontally)	867
PagesDown (number of vertical thumbnails)	868
PagesToPrint (the pages to print)	868
UserPercentile (custom zoom factor)	868
WindowPosSet (use a non-default initial preview window position)	869
WindowSizeSet (use a non-default initial preview window size)	869
ZoomIndex (index to applied zoom factor)	870
PrintPreviewClass Methods	871
PrintPreviewClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	871
AskPage (prompt for new report page)	872
AskPrintPages (prompt for pages to print)	873

AskThumbnails (prompt for new thumbnail configuration)	875
DeleteImageQueue (remove non-selected pages)	876
Display (preview the report)	877
Init (initialize the PrintPreviewClass object)	878
InPageList (check page number)	879
Kill (shut down the PrintPreviewClass object)	880
Open (prepare preview window for display)	881
SetIIManager (save and restore window coordinates)	882
SetPosition (set initial preview window coordinates)	883
SetZoomPercentile (set user or standard zoom factor)	884
SetDefaultPages (set the default pages to print)	885
SyncImageQueue (sync image queue with PagesToPrint)	885
TakeAccepted (process EVENT:Accepted events:PrintPreviewClass)	886
TakeEvent (process all events:PrintPreviewClass)	887
TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:PrintPreviewClass)	888
TakeWindowEvent (process non-field events:PrintPreviewClass)	889
ProcessClass	891
ProcessClass Overview	891
ProcessClass Properties.....	895
CaseSensitiveValue (case sensitive flag)	895
Percentile (portion of process completed)	895
PText (progress control number)	896
RecordsProcessed (number of elements processed)	896
RecordsToProcess (number of elements to process)	896
ProcessClass Methods	897
ProcessClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	897
Init (initialize the ProcessClass object)	899
Kill (shut down the ProcessClass object)	901
Next (get next element)	902
Reset (position to the first element)	903
SetProgressLimits (calibrate the progress monitor)	903
TakeLocate (a virtual to process each filter)	904
TakeRecord (a virtual to process each report record)	904
QueryClass	905
QueryClass Overview	905
QueryClass Concepts	905
QueryClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	905
QueryClass ABC Template Implementation	906
QueryClass Source Files	906
QueryClass Conceptual Example	907
QueryClass Properties.....	910
QKCurrentQuery (popup menu choice)	910
QKIcon (icon for popup submenu)	910
QKMenuIcon (icon for popup menu)	910

QKSupport (quickqbe flag)	911
Window (browse window:QueryClass)	911
QueryClass Methods	912
QueryClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	912
AddItem (add field to query)	913
Ask (a virtual to accept query criteria)	915
ClearQuery (remove loaded query)	916
Delete (remove saved query)	917
GetFilter (return filter expression)	918
GetLimit (get searchvalues)	920
Init (initialize the QueryClass object)	921
Kill (shut down the QueryClass object)	922
Reset (reset the QueryClass object)	923
Restore (retrieve saved query)	924
Save (save a query)	925
SetLimit (set search values)	926
SetQuickPopup (add QuickQBE to browse popup)	928
Take (process QuickQBE popup menu choice)	929
QueryFormClass	931
QueryFormClass Overview	931
QueryFormClass Concepts	931
QueryFormClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	931
QueryFormClass ABC Template Implementation	932
QueryFormClass Source Files	932
QueryFormClass Conceptual Example	933
QueryFormClass Properties	936
QueryFormClass Methods	937
QueryFormClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	937
Ask (solicit query criteria)	938
Init (initialize the QueryFormClass object)	939
Kill (shut down the QueryFormClass object)	940
QueryFormVisual	941
QueryFormVisual Overview	941
QueryFormVisual Concepts	941
QueryFormVisual Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	941
QueryFormVisual ABC Template Implementation	941
QueryFormVisual Source Files	942
QueryFormVisual Conceptual Example	943
QueryFormVisual Properties	946
QFC (reference to the QueryFormClass)	946
QueryFormVisual Methods	947
QueryFormVisual Functional Organization--Expected Use	947
GetButtonFreq(returns a field equate label)	948
Init (initialize the QueryFormVisual object)	949

ResetFromQuery (reset the QueryFormVisual object)	950
SetText (set prompt text:QueryFormVisual)	951
TakeAccepted (handle query dialog Accepted events: QueryFormVisual).....	952
TakeCompleted (complete the query dialog: QueryFormVisual)	953
TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:QueryFormVisual)	954
UpdateFields (process query values)	955
QueryListClass	957
QueryListClass--Overview	957
QueryListClass Concepts	957
QueryListClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	957
QueryListClass--ABC Template Implementation	957
QueryListClass Source Files	958
QueryListClass--Conceptual Example	959
QueryListClass Properties	962
QueryListClass Methods.....	963
QueryListClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use	963
Ask (solicit query criteria:QueryListClass)	964
Init (initialize the QueryListClass object)	965
Kill (shut down the QueryListClass object)	966
QueryListVisual	967
QueryListVisual--Overview	967
QueryListVisual Concepts	967
QueryListVisual--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	967
QueryListVisual--ABC Template Implementation	967
QueryListVisual Source Files	967
QueryListVisual--Conceptual Example	969
QueryListVisual Properties	972
QFC (reference to the QueryListClass)	972
OpsEIP (reference to the EditDropListClass)	972
FldsEIP (reference to the EditDropListClass)	972
ValueEIP(reference to QEditEntryClass)	973
QueryListVisual Methods.....	974
QueryListVisual--Functional Organization--Expected Use	974
Init (initialize the QueryListVisual object)	975
Kill (shutdown the QueryListVisual object)	976
ResetFromQuery (reset the QueryList Visual object)	977
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control:QueryListVisual)	978
TakeAccepted (handle query dialog EVENT:Accepted events)	979
TakeCompleted (complete the query dialog)	980
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:QueryListVisual)	981
TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:QueryListVisual)	982
UpdateControl(updates the edit-in-place entry control)	983
UpdateFields (process query values)	983

QueryVisualClass 985

QueryVisualClass: Overview	985
QueryVisualClass Properties	986
QC (reference to the QueryClass)	986
Resizer (reference to the WindowResizeClass:QueryVisualClass)	986
QueryVisualClass Methods.....	987
Init (initialize the QueryVisual object)	987
Kill (shut down the QueryVisual object)	988
Reset (reset the dialog for display:QueryVisualClass)	989
TakeAccepted (handle query dialog EVENT:Accepted events)	990
TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:QueryVisualClass)	991
TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events:QueryVisualClass)	992

RelationManager 993

RelationManager Overview	993
RelationManager Properties	998
RelationManager Properties	998
Me (the primary file's FileManager object)	998
UseLogout (transaction framing flag)	998
RelationManager Methods.....	999
RelationManager Functional Organization--Expected Use	999
AddRelation (set a file relationship)	1000
AddRelationLink (set linking fields for a relationship)	1002
CancelAutoInc (undo autoincrement)	1004
Close (close a file and any related files)	1005
Delete (delete record subject to referential constraints)	1006
GetNbFiles(returns number of children)	1007
GetNbRelations(returns number of relations)	1007
GetRelation(returns reference to relation manager)	1008
GetRelationType(returns relation type)	1008
Init (initialize the RelationManager object)	1009
Kill (shut down the RelationManager object)	1010
ListLinkingFields (map pairs of linked fields)	1011
Open (open a file and any related files)	1012
Save (copy the current record and any related records)	1012
SetAlias (set a file alias)	1013
SetQuickScan (enable QuickScan on a file and any related files)	1014
Update (update record subject to referential constraints)	1015

ReportManager Class 1017

ReportManager Overview	1017
ReportManager Concepts	1017
ReportManager Properties.....	1022
Attribute (ReportAttributeManager object)	1022
BreakMan (BreakManagerClass object)	1022
DeferOpenReport (defer open)	1023

DeferWindow (defer progress window)	1023
KeepVisible (keep progress window visible)	1024
OutputFileQueue (advanced report generation filenames)	1024
Preview (PrintPreviewClass object)	1025
PreviewQueue (report metafile pathnames)	1025
Process (ProcessClass object)	1026
QueryControl (query button)	1026
Report (the managed REPORT)	1027
ReportTarget (IReportGenerator interface)	1027
SkipPreview (print rather than preview)	1027
TargetSelector (ReportTargetSelectorClass object)	1028
TargetSelectorCreated (report target active)	1028
WaitCursor (activate Wait cursor during report processing)	1029
WMFParser (WMFDocumentParser object)	1029
Zoom (initial report preview magnification)	1030
ReportManager Methods	1031
ReportManager Functional Organization--Expected Use	1031
AddItem (program the ReportManager object)	1032
Ask (display window and process its events:ReportManager)	1032
AskPreview (preview or print the report)	1033
CancelPrintReport (cancel report printing)	1034
EndReport (close the report)	1035
Kill (shut down the ReportManager object)	1037
Next (get next report record)	1038
Open (a virtual to execute on EVENT:OpenWindow--ReportManager)	1039
OpenReport (prepare report for execution)	1040
PrintReport (print the report)	1041
ProcessResultFiles (process generated output files)	1042
SetReportTarget (set ReportGenerator target)	1043
SetStaticControlsAttributes (set report's static controls)	1043
SetDynamicControlsAttributes (set report's static controls)	1044
TakeAccepted (process Accepted event)	1044
TakeCloseEvent (a virtual to process EVENT:CloseWindow)	1045
TakeNoRecords (process empty report)	1046
TakeRecord(process each record)	1046
TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events:ReportManager) ..	1047

RuleManager

1049

Overview	1049
RuleManager Concepts	1049
RuleManager ABC Template Implementation	1051
Implementation Steps using hand code	1056
Rule Class Properties	1058
Rule Class Methods	1059
SetGlobalRule (post address to GlobalRule)	1061
ResetGlobalRule (clear address in GlobalRule)	1062
RuleIsBroken (test rule and return result)	1063

SetIndicator (set error indicator)	1064
RulesCollection Class Properties	1065
RulesCollection Class Methods.....	1065
Construct (initialize RulesCollection object).....	1065
Destruct (shut down RulesCollection object)	1066
RuleCount (count rules in the collection)	1066
BrokenRuleCount (count rules in the collection which are broken)	1066
AddRule (add a rule to this collection)	1067
AddControl (add managed control)	1068
AddControlToRule (add managed control)	1069
CheckRule (check a particular rule).....	1070
CheckAllRules (check all rules in this collection)	1070
Item (locate a particular rule)	1071
TakeAccepted (handle acceptance of error indicators)	1072
SetEnumerateIcons (set icons for broken rules display)	1073
EnumerateBrokenRules (display a list of rules with status of each).....	1074
SetControlsStatus (set status of managed controls)	1075
NeedChangeControlStatus (check if control status needs to change)	1076
RulesManager Properties.....	1077
RulesManager Methods	1077
Construct (initialize RulesManager object)	1077
Destruct (shut down RulesManager object).....	1077
RulesManagerCount (count rules in the collection)	1078
BrokenRulesCount (count rules in the collection which are broken)	1078
AddRulesCollection (add a rule to this collection)	1079
CheckAllRules (check all rules in all collections)	1079
TakeAccepted (handle acceptance of error indicators)	1080
SetEnumerateIcons (set icons for broken rules display)	1081
EnumerateBrokenRules (display a list of rules with status of each).....	1082
SetControlsStatus (set status of managed controls)	1083
SelectFileClass	1085
SelectFileClass Concepts	1085
SelectFileClass Properties.....	1088
DefaultDirectory (initial path)	1088
DefaultFile (initial filename/filemask)	1088
Flags (file dialog behavior)	1089
WindowTitle (file dialog title text)	1089
SelectFileClass Methods	1090
AddMask (add file dialog file masks)	1090
Ask (display Windows file dialog)	1091
Init (initialize the SelectFileClass object)	1092
SetMask (set file dialog file masks)	1093
StandardBehavior Class	1095
StandardBehavior Overview	1095

StandardBehavior Class Concepts	1095
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	1095
StandardBehavior Source Files	1095
StandardBehavior Properties.....	1096
StandardBehavior Methods	1097
StandardBehavior Methods	1097
Init(initialize the StandardBehavior object)	1097
StandardErrorLogClass	1099
StandardErrorLogClass Overview	1099
StandardErrorLogClass Source Files	1099
ABC Template Implementation	1099
StandardErrorLogClass Properties.....	1100
StandardErrorLogClass Methods	1101
Close (close standarderrorlog file)	1101
Construct (initialize StandardErrorLogClass object)	1101
Destruct (remove the StandardErrorLogClass object)	1101
Open (open standarderrorlog file)	1102
StepClass	1103
StepClass Overview	1103
StepClass Properties	1105
Controls (the StepClass sort sequence)	1105
StepClass Methods.....	1106
GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepClass)	1106
GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepClass)	1107
Init (initialize the StepClass object)	1108
Kill (shut down the StepClass object)	1109
SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepClass)	1110
SetLimitNeeded (return static/dynamic boundary flag:StepClass)	1111
StepCustomClass	1113
StepCustomClass Overview	1113
StepCustomClass Properties.....	1117
Entries (expected data distribution)	1117
StepCustomClass Methods	1118
StepCustomClass Methods	1118
AddItem (add a step marker)	1118
GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepCustomClass)	1119
GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepCustomClass)	1120
Init (initialize the StepCustomClass object)	1121
Kill (shut down the StepCustomClass object)	1122
StepLongClass	1123
StepLongClass Overview	1123
StepLongClass Properties	1126

Low (lower boundary:StepLongClass)	1126
High (upper boundary:StepLongClass)	1126
StepLongClass Methods.....	1127
GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepLongClass)	1127
GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepLongClass)	1128
SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepLongClass)	1129
StepLocatorClass	1131
StepLocatorClass Overview	1131
StepLocatorClass Properties	1134
StepLocatorClass Methods.....	1135
StepLocatorClass Methods	1135
Set (restart the locator:StepLocatorClass)	1135
TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:StepLocatorClass)	1136
StepRealClass	1137
StepRealClass Overview	1137
StepRealClass Properties.....	1140
StepRealClass Properties	1140
Low (lower boundary:StepRealClass)	1140
High (upper boundary:StepRealClass)	1140
StepRealClass Methods	1141
StepRealClass Methods	1141
GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepRealClass)	1141
GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepRealClass)	1142
SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepRealClass)	1143
StepStringClass	1145
StepStringClass Overview	1145
StepStringClass Properties.....	1150
LookupMode (expected data distribution)	1150
Root (the static portion of the step)	1151
SortChars (valid sort characters)	1151
TestLen (length of the static step portion)	1152
StepStringClass Methods	1153
GetPercentile (return a value's percentile)	1153
GetValue (return a percentile's value)	1154
Init (initialize the StepStringClass object)	1155
Kill (shut down the StepStringClass object)	1156
SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepStringClass)	1157
SetLimitNeeded (return static/dynamic boundary flag:StepStringClass)	1158
TagHTMLHelp Class	1159
TagHTMLHelpOverview	1159
TagHTMLHelp Class Concepts	1159
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	1159

TagHTMLHelp ABC Template Implementation	1159
TagHTMLHelp Source Files	1159
TagHTMLHelp Methods.....	1160
AlinkLookup (associative link lookup)	1160
CloseHelp (close HTML help file)	1161
GetHelpFile (get help file name)	1161
GetTopic (get current topic name)	1161
Init (initialize HTML Help object)	1162
KeyWordLookup (lookup keyword)	1163
Kill (shutdown the TagHTMLHelp object)	1163
SetHelpFile (set the current HTML Help file name)	1164
SetTopic (set the current HTML Help file topic)	1165
ShowIndex (open the HTML Help index tab)	1165
ShowSearch (open the HTML Help search tab)	1166
ShowTOC (open the HTML Help contents tab)	1166
ShowTopic (display a help topic)	1166
TextWindowClass	1167
TextWindowClass Overview	1167
TextWindowClass Concepts	1167
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	1167
ABC Template Implementation	1167
TextWindowClass Source Files	1167
TextWindowClass Properties.....	1168
SelE (ending edit position)	1168
SelS (starting edit position)	1168
Txt (field equate number)	1168
TextWindowClass Methods	1169
Init (initialize TextWindow object)	1169
Kill (shutdown TextWindow object)	1169
TakeAccepted (process window controls)	1170
ToolbarClass	1171
ToolbarClass Overview	1171
ToolbarClass Methods.....	1178
ToolbarClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	1178
AddTarget (register toolbar driven entity)	1179
DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarClass)	1180
Init (initialize the ToolbarClass object)	1181
Kill (shut down the ToolbarClass object)	1181
SetTarget (sets the active target)	1182
TakeEvent (process toolbar event:ToolbarClass)	1183
ToolbarListBoxClass	1185
ToolbarListBoxClass Overview	1185
ToolbarListboxClass Properties	1190

Browse (BrowseClass object)	1190
ToolbarListboxClass Methods.....	1191
DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarListboxClass) ...	1191
TakeEvent (convert toolbar events:ToolbarListboxClass)	1192
TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar)	1193
TryTakeToolbar (return toolbar control indicator:ToolbarListBoxClass)	1194
ToolbarReltreeClass	1195
ToolbarReltreeClass Overview	1195
ToolbarReltreeClass Properties.....	1200
ToolbarReltreeClass Methods	1201
DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarReltreeClass) ...	1201
TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar:ToolbarReltreeClass)	1202
ToolbarTargetClass	1203
ToolbarTarget Overview	1203
ToolbarTarget Properties.....	1205
ChangeButton (change control number)	1205
Control (window control)	1205
DeleteButton (delete control number)	1206
HelpButton (help control number)	1206
InsertButton (insert control number)	1207
LocateButton(query control number)	1207
SelectButton (select control number)	1208
ToolbarTarget Methods.....	1209
ToolbarTarget Functional Organization--Expected Use	1209
DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarTarget)	1210
TakeEvent (convert toolbar events:ToolbarTarget)	1211
TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar:ToolbarTarget)	1213
TryTakeToolbar (return toolbar control indicator:ToolbarTarget)	1213
ToolbarUpdateClass	1215
ToolbarUpdateClass Overview	1215
ToolbarUpdateClass Properties.....	1223
Request (requested database operation)	1223
History (enable toolbar history button)	1224
ToolbarUpdateClass Methods	1225
DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarUpdateClass) ...	1225
TakeEvent (convert toolbar events:ToolbarUpdateClass)	1226
TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar:ToolbarUpdateClass)	1227
TryTakeToolbar (return toolbar control indicator:ToolbarUpdateClass)	1228
TranslatorClass	1229
TranslatorClass Overview	1229
TranslatorClass Properties	1234
ExtractText (identify text to translate)	1234

TranslatorClass Methods	1235
AddTranslation (add translation pairs)	1235
Init (initialize the TranslatorClass object)	1237
Kill (shut down the TranslatorClass object)	1237
TranslateControl (translate text for a control)	1238
TranslateControls (translate text for range of controls)	1239
TranslateString (translate text)	1240
TranslateWindow (translate text for a window)	1241
ViewManager	1243
ViewManager Overview	1243
ViewManager Properties.....	1248
Order (sort, range-limit, and filter information)	1248
PagesAhead (buffered pages)	1249
PagesBehind (buffered pages)	1249
PageSize (buffer page size)	1250
Primary (the primary file RelationManager)	1250
SavedBuffers (saved record buffers).....	1251
TimeOut (buffered pages freshness)	1252
View (the managed VIEW)	1252
ViewManager Methods	1253
ViewManager Functional Organization--Expected Use	1253
AddRange (add a range limit)	1255
AddSortOrder (add a sort order)	1256
AppendOrder (refine a sort order)	1257
ApplyFilter (range limit and filter the result set)	1258
ApplyOrder (sort the result set)	1259
ApplyRange (conditionally range limit and filter the result set)	1260
Close (close the view)	1261
GetFirstSortField (return first field of current sort).....	1261
GetFreeElementName (return free key element name)	1262
GetFreeElementPosition (return free key element position)	1263
Init (initialize the ViewManager object)	1264
Kill (shut down the ViewManager object)	1265
Next (get the next element)	1265
Open (open the view)	1266
Previous (get the previous element)	1267
PrimeRecord (prepare a record for adding:ViewManager)	1268
Reset (reset the view position)	1269
RestoreBuffers (restore VIEW file buffers).....	1270
SaveBuffers (save VIEW file buffers).....	1270
SetFilter (add, change, or remove active filter)	1271
SetOrder (replace a sort order)	1273
SetSort (set the active sort order)	1274
UseView (use LazyOpen files)	1275
ValidateRecord (validate an element)	1276

WindowComponent Interface 1277

WindowComponent Overview.....	1277
WindowComponent Concepts	1277
Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	1277
WindowComponent Source Files.....	1277
WindowComponent Methods.....	1278
WindowComponent Methods	1278
Kill(shutdown the parent object)	1278
PrimaryBufferRestored(confirm restore of primary buffer)	1279
PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired(flag restore of primary buffer)	1279
PrimaryBufferSaved(confirm save of primary buffer)	1280
PrimaryBufferSaveRequired(flag save of primary buffer)	1280
Reset(reset object's data).....	1281
ResetRequired(determine if screen refresh needed)	1282
SetAlerts(alert keystrokes for window component)	1283
TakeEvent(process the current ACCEPT loop event).....	1283
Update(get VIEW data for the selected item).....	1284
UpdateWindow(update window controls)	1284

WindowResizeClass 1285

WindowResizeClass Overview	1285
WindowResizeClass Properties.....	1289
AutoTransparent (optimize redraw)	1289
DeferMoves (optimize resize)	1289
WindowResizeClass Methods	1290
WindowResizeClass Functional Organization--Expected Use	1290
GetParentControl (return parent control)	1291
GetPositionStrategy (return position strategy for a control type)	1292
GetResizeStrategy (return resize strategy for a control type)	1293
Init (initialize the WindowResizeClass object)	1294
Kill (shut down the WindowResizeClass object)	1297
Reset (resets the WindowResizeClass object)	1298
Resize (resize and reposition controls)	1299
RestoreWindow (restore window to initial size)	1300
SetParentControl (set parent control)	1301
SetParentDefaults (set default parent controls)	1302
SetStrategy (set control resize strategy)	1303

WindowManager 1305

WindowManager Overview	1305
WindowManager Properties.....	1313
AutoRefresh (reset window as needed flag)	1313
AutoToolbar (set toolbar target on new tab selection)	1313
CancelAction (response to cancel request)	1314
ChangeAction (response to change request)	1315
Dead (shut down flag)	1315

DeleteAction (response to delete request)	1316
Errors (ErrorClass object)	1317
FilesOpened(files opened by procedure)	1317
FirstField (first window control)	1317
ForcedReset (force reset flag)	1318
HistoryKey (restore field key)	1318
InsertAction (response to insert request)	1319
LastInsertedPosition (hold position of last inserted record)	1319
OKControl (window acceptance control--OK button)	1320
Opened (window opened flag)	1320
OriginalRequest (original database request)	1321
Primary (RelationManager object)	1321
Request (database request)	1322
ResetOnGainFocus (gain focus reset flag)	1323
Resize (WindowResize object)	1323
Response (response to database request)	1324
Saved (copy of primary file record buffer)	1324
Translator (TranslatorClass object:WindowManager)	1325
VCRRequest (delayed scroll request)	1325
WindowManager Methods	1326
WindowManager Functional Organization--Expected Use	1326
AddHistoryField (add restorable control and field)	1328
AddHistoryFile (add restorable history file)	1329
AddItem (program the WindowManager object)	1330
AddUpdateFile (register batch add files)	1331
Ask (display window and process its events:WindowManager)	1332
ChangeRecord(execute change record process)	1333
DeleteRecord(execute delete record process).....	1334
Init (initialize the WindowManager object)	1335
InsertRecord (execute insert record activity).....	1337
Kill (shut down the WindowManager object)	1338
Open (a virtual to execute on EVENT:OpenWindow--WindowManager)	1339
PostCompleted (initiates final Window processing)	1340
PrimeFields (a virtual to prime form fields)	1341
PrimeUpdate (update or prepare for update)	1342
RemoveItem(remove WindowComponent object)	1343
Reset (reset the window for display)	1344
RestoreField (restore field to last saved value)	1345
Run (run this procedure or a subordinate procedure)	1346
SaveHistory (save history fields for later restoration)	1348
SaveOnChangeAction(execute change record process and remain active) ...	1349
SaveOnInsertAction(execute insert record activity and remain active).....	1350
SetAlerts (alert window control keystrokes)	1351
SetResponse (OK or Cancel the window)	1352
TakeAccepted (a virtual to process EVENT:Accepted--WindowManager)	1353
TakeCloseEvent (a virtual to Cancel the window)	1354
TakeCompleted (a virtual to complete an update form)	1356

TakeEvent (a virtual to process all events:WindowManager)	1358
TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:WindowManager)	1359
TakeNewSelection (a virtual to process EVENT:NewSelection)	1360
TakeRejected (a virtual to process EVENT:Rejected)	1361
TakeSelected (a virtual to process EVENT:Selected)	1362
TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events:WindowManager) .	1363
Update (prepare records for writing to disk)	1364

Index:**1365**

Foreword

Welcome

Welcome to the Application Builder Class Library Reference! This book is designed to be your every day reference to the Classes that lie beneath the templates.

Once you've become familiar with the Clarion development environment, through *Getting Started*, *Learning Clarion* and the *Online User's Guide*, you will refer to those books less and less frequently. However, in your day-to-day work, we think you will continue to need information on the finer points of the various Application Builder Class methods.

That's why we created this Application Builder Class Library Reference—for every Clarion developer who wants a quick, ready reference to those Clarion components you use over and over again.

This book provides in-depth discussions of the ABC Library. It shows you how the ABC Templates use the powerful ABC Library objects—and how you can use, reuse, and modify the classes with the ABC Templates or within your hand-coded project.

These are the tools you'll continue to refer to regardless of your expertise with Clarion. The depths of information on these tools and the consequent versatility you can achieve with them is virtually unlimited.

Documentation Conventions

Typeface Conventions

<i>Italics</i>	Indicates what to type at the keyboard and variable information, such as <i>Enter This</i> or <i>filename.TXT</i> . Also identifies the title information of dialog windows, like <i>Procedure Properties</i> .
CAPS	Indicates keystrokes to enter at the keyboard such as ENTER or ESCAPE, and mouse operations such as RIGHT-CLICK.
Boldface	Indicates commands or options from a menu or text in a dialog window.
UPPERCASE	Clarion language keywords such as MAX or USE.
<code>Courier New</code>	Used for diagrams, source code listings, to annotate examples, and for examples of the usage of source statements.

Keyboard Conventions

F1	Indicates a single keystroke. In this case, press and release the F1 key.
ALT+X	Indicates a combination of keystrokes. In this case, hold down the ALT key and press the X key, then release both keys.

Other Conventions

Tip**Note:**

Special Tips, Notes, and Warnings—information that is not immediately evident from the topic explanation.

ABC Library Overview

About This Book

This book describes the Application Builder Class (ABC) Library.

It provides an overview of each class or related group of classes. Then it provides specific information on the public properties and methods of each class, plus examples for using them. It also shows you the source files for each class and describes some of the relationships between the classes.

Application Builder Class (ABC) Library

Class Libraries Generally

The purpose of a class library in an Object Oriented system is to help programmers work more efficiently by providing a safe, efficient way to reuse pieces of program code. In other words, a class library should relieve programmers of having to write certain routines by letting them use already written generic routines to perform common or repetitive program tasks.

In addition, a class library can reduce the amount of programming required to implement changes to an existing class based program. By deriving classes that incrementally add to or subtract from the classes in the library, programmers can accomplish substantial changes without having to rewrite the base classes or the programs that rely on the base classes.

Application Builder Classes—The ABCs of Rapid Application Development

Typical Reusability and Maintenance Benefits

The Application Builder Classes (ABC Library) provide all the benefits of class libraries in general. Clarion's ABC Templates automatically generate code that uses and reuses the robust, flexible, and solid (pre-tested) objects defined by the ABC Library. Further, the templates are designed to help you easily derive your own classes based on the ABC Library.

Of course, you need not use the templates to use the Application Builder Classes. However, the template generated code certainly provides appropriate examples for using the ABC Library in hand coded programs. Either way, the bottom line for you is more powerful programs with less coding.

Database and Windows Program Orientation

The Application Builder Classes have a fairly specific focus or scope. That is, *its objects are designed to process databases within a Windows environment*. Even more specifically, these objects are designed to support all the standard functionality provided by prior versions of Clarion, plus a lot more.

As such, there are database related objects that open, read, write, view, search, sort, and print data files. There are objects that enforce relational integrity between related data files.

In addition there are general purpose Windows related objects that display error messages, manage popup menus, perform edit-in-place, manage file-loaded drop-down lists, perform language translation on windows, resize windows and controls, process toolbars across execution threads, read and write INI files, and manage selection and processing of DOS/Windows files.

The point is, the class library supports general purpose database Windows programs; it does not support, say, real-time process control for oil refineries.

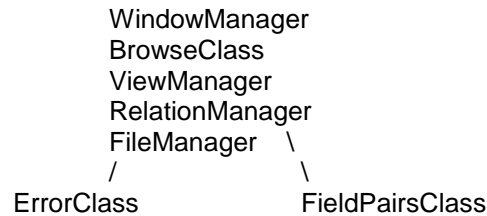
Core Classes

The Application Builder Classes may be logically divided into “core” classes and “peripheral” classes. The core classes are central to the ABC Library—everything else is built from them or hangs off them. If you intend to study the Application Builder Classes, you should begin with the core classes. Further, a thorough understanding of these classes should give you an excellent foundation for understanding the ABC Template generated programs and procedures that use these classes.

Even if you want to stay as far away from the ABC Library as possible, you should keep a couple of things in mind with regard to the core classes:

- The core classes are ErrorClass, FieldPairsClass, FileManager, RelationManager, ViewManager, WindowManager, and BrowseClass.
- Core classes are used repeatedly, so if you must modify them, try to keep them efficient.
- Core classes are almost certainly in any template based program, so additional references to them generally won't affect the size of your executable.

There is a hierarchy within the core classes. The ErrorClass and the FieldPairsClass form the foundation upon which the FileManager, RelationManager, and ViewManager rest. Finally, the BrowseClass, which is derived from the ViewManager, tops off the core classes. The WindowManager is programmed to understand these core classes and manages window procedures that use them.



To understand these core classes, we recommend you tackle the core classes first (ErrorClass and FieldPairsClass), then work your way up to the WindowManager.

ABC Library Source Files

The Application Builder Classes are installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific classes reside in the following respective files. The core classes are shown in bold.

The class declarations reside in the .INC files, and their method definitions reside in the specified .CLW files.

ABASCII.INC

AsciiFileClass	MODULE('ABASCII.CLW')
AsciiPrintClass	MODULE('ABASCII.CLW')
AsciiSearchClass	MODULE('ABASCII.CLW')
AsciiViewerClass	MODULE('ABASCII.CLW')

ABBROWSE.INC

StepClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
StepLongClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
StepRealClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
StepStringClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
StepCustomClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
LocatorClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
StepLocatorClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
EntryLocatorClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
IncrementalLocatorClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
ContractingLocatorClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
EditClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')
BrowseClass	MODULE('ABBROWSE.CLW')

ABDROPS.INC

FileDropClass	MODULE('ABDROPS.CLW')
FileDropComboClass	MODULE('ABDROPS.CLW')

ABEIP.INC	
EditClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditCheckClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditColorClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditDropListClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditEntryClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditFileClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditFontClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
EditMultiSelectClass	MODULE('ABEIP.CLW')
ABERROR.INC	
ErrorClass	MODULE('ABERROR.CLW')
ABFILE.INC	
FileManager	MODULE('ABFILE.CLW')
RelationUsage	MODULE('ABFILE.CLW')
RelationManager	MODULE('ABFILE.CLW')
ViewManager	MODULE('ABFILE.CLW')
ABPOPUP.INC	
PopupClass	MODULE('ABPOPUP.CLW')
ABQUERY.INC	
QueryClass	MODULE('ABQUERY.CLW')
QueryVisualClass	MODULE('ABQUERY.CLW')
QueryFormVisual	MODULE('ABQUERY.CLW')
ABREPORT.INC	
ProcessClass	MODULE('ABREPORT.CLW')
PrintPreviewClass	MODULE('ABREPORT.CLW')
ReportManager	MODULE('ABREPORT.CLW')
ABRESIZE.INC	
WindowResizeClass	MODULE('ABRESIZE.CLW')
ABTOOLBA.INC	
ToolbarTargetClass	MODULE('ABTOOLBA.CLW')
ToolbarListboxClass	MODULE('ABTOOLBA.CLW')
ToolbarReltreeClass	MODULE('ABTOOLBA.CLW')
ToolbarUpdateClass	MODULE('ABTOOLBA.CLW')
ToolbarClass	MODULE('ABTOOLBA.CLW')
ABUTIL.INC	
ConstantClass	MODULE('ABUTIL.CLW')
FieldPairsClass	MODULE('ABUTIL.CLW')
BufferedPairsClass	MODULE('ABUTIL.CLW')
INIClass	MODULE('ABUTIL.CLW')
DOSFileLookupClass	MODULE('ABUTIL.CLW')
TranslatorClass	MODULE('ABUTIL.CLW')
ABWINDOW.INC	
WindowManager	MODULE('ABWINDOW.CLW')

Including the right files in your data section

Many of the class declarations directly reference other classes. To resolve these references, each class header (.INC file) INCLUDEs only the headers containing the directly referenced classes. This convention maximizes encapsulation, minimizes compile times, and ensures that all necessary components are present for the make process. We recommend you follow this convention too.

The Application Builder Classes source code is structured so that you can INCLUDE either the header or the definition (.CLW file) in your program's data section. If you include the header, it references the required definitions and vice versa.

A good rule of thumb is to INCLUDE as little as possible. The compiler will let you know if you have omitted something.

ABC Library and the ABC Templates

The ABC Templates rely heavily on the ABC Library. However, the templates are highly configurable and are designed to let you substitute your own class definitions if you wish. See *Part I—Classes Tab Options (Global)* for more information on configuring the global level interaction between the ABC Templates and the ABC Library. See *Part I—Classes Tab Options (Local)* for more information on configuring the local (module level) interaction between the ABC Templates and the ABC Library.

Classes and Their Template Generated Objects

The ABC Templates instantiate objects from the ABC Library. The default template generated *object* names are usually related to the corresponding *class* names, but they are not exactly the same. Your ABC applications' generated code may contain data declarations and executable statements similar to these:

```
GlobalErrors          ErrorClass
Hide:Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
INIMgr               INIClass
ThisWindow           CLASS(ReportManager)
ThisWindow           CLASS(WindowManager)
ThisReport           CLASS(ProcessClass)
ThisProcess          CLASS(ProcessClass)
BRW1                 CLASS(BrowseClass)
EditInPlace::CUS:NAME EditClass
Resizer              WindowResizeClass
Toolbar              ToolbarClass
CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
BRW1.AddSortOrder(BRW1::Sort0:StepClass,ST:StKey)
BRW1.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)
GlobalErrors.Throw()
Resizer.AutoTransparent=True
Previewer.AllowUserZoom=True
```

These data declarations instantiate objects from the ABC Library, and the executable statements reference the instantiated objects. The various ABC classes and their template instantiations are listed below so you can identify ABC objects in your applications' generated code and find the corresponding ABC Library documentation.

<u>Template Generated Object</u>	<u>Application Builder Class</u>
Access:file	FileManager
BRWn	BrowseClass
BRWn::Sortn:Locator	LocatorClass
BRWn::Sortn:StepClass	StepClass
EditInPlace::field	EditClass
FDBn	FileDropClass
FDCBn	FileDropComboClass
FileLookupN	SelectFileClass
GlobalErrors	ErrorClass
INIMgr	INIClass
QBEn	QueryClass
QBVn	QueryVisualClass
Popup	PopupClass
Previewer	PrintPreviewClass
ProgressMgr	StepClass
Relate:file	RelationManager
RELn::Toolbar	ToolbarReltreeClass
Resizer	WindowResizeClass
ThisProcess	ProcessClass
ThisReport	ProcessClass
ThisWindow	WindowManager, ReportManager
Toolbar	ToolbarClass
ToolbarForm	ToolbarUpdateClass
Translator	TranslatorClass
ViewerN	ASCIIViewerClass

ABC Coding Conventions

The ABC Library uses several coding conventions. You may see instances of these code constructions in ABC applications' generated code and in the ABC Library code. We recommend that you follow these conventions within your embedded code.

Method Names

The following names have a specific meaning in the ABC Library. The names and their meanings are described below.

AddItem

The object adds an item to its datastore. The item may be a field, a key, a sort order, a range limit, another object, etc. The item may be anything the object needs to do its job.

Ask[Information]

The method interacts with the end user to get the Information.

Fetch

The method retrieves data from a file.

GetItem

The method returns the value of the named item.

Init

The method does whatever is required to initialize the object.

Kill

The method does whatever is required to shut down the object, including freeing any memory allocated during its lifetime.

Reset[what or how]

The method resets the object and its controls. This includes reloading data, resetting sort orders, redrawing window controls, etc.

SetItem

The method sets the value of the named item, or makes the named item active so that other object methods operate on the active item.

TakeItem

The method "takes" the item from another method or object and continues processing it. The item may be a window event (Accepted, Rejected, OpenWindow, CloseWindow, Resize, etc.), a record, an error condition, etc.

Throw[*Item*]

The method “throws” the item to another object or method for handling. The item is usually an error condition.

TryAction

The method makes one attempt to carry out the action, then returns a value indicating success or failure. A return value of zero (0 or Level:Benign) indicates success; any other value indicates failure.

Where to Initilize & Kill Objects

There are generally two factors to consider when initializing and killing objects:

- Generally, objects should live as short a life a possible
- Objects should always be Killed (to free any memory allocated during its lifetime)

Balancing these two (sometimes conflicting) factors dictates that objects Initialized with EVENT:OpenWindow are usually Killed with EVENT:CloseWindow. Objects Initialized with ThisWindow.Init are usually Killed with ThisWindow.Kill.

Return Values

Many ABC methods return a value indicating success or failure. A return value of zero (0 or Level:Benign) indicates success. Any other return value indicates a problem whose severity may vary. Other return values and their ABC severity EQUATES (Level:User, Level:Cancel, Level:Notify, Level:Fatal, Level:Program) are documented in the *Error Class* chapter and in the individual methods' documentation. This convention produces code like the following:

```
IF ABCObject.Method()  
  !handle failure / error  
ELSE  
  !continue normally  
END  
  
IF ~ABCObject.Method()  
  !continue normally  
END
```

Event Processing Method Return Values

Some ABC methods process ACCEPT loop events. The names of these methods begin with "Take" and usually indicate the type of events they handle. These event processing methods execute within an ACCEPT loop (as implemented by the WindowManager.Ask method) and return a value indicating how the ACCEPT loop should proceed.

A return value of Level:Benign indicates processing of this event should continue normally. A return value of Level:Notify indicates processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE. A return value of Level:Fatal indicates the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

If you (or the ABC Templates) derive a class with any of these methods, you should use this return value convention to control ACCEPT loop processing.

Following is the WindowManager.Ask method code that implements this convention. See *WindowManager Concepts* for more information.

```
ACCEPT
CASE SELF.TakeEvent()
OF Level:Fatal
  BREAK
OF Level:Notify
  CYCLE
END
END
```

Ending a Procedure

In your embedded code you may encounter a condition that requires the procedure to end immediately (that is, it cannot wait for an EVENT:CloseWindow, or an EVENT:CloseWindow is not appropriate).

In some cases, a simple RETURN will not end your procedure (because a RETURN embedded within a derived method ends the method, not the calling procedure), and even if it would, it might not be appropriate (because the procedure may have allocated memory or started other tasks that should be ended in a controlled manner).

There are several ways you can initiate the normal shut down of your procedure, depending on where in the procedure your code is embedded. Following are the conventional ways to shut down your procedure normally.

```
RETURN(Level:Fatal)      !normal shutdown from ABC derived method
ReturnValue = Level:Fatal !normal shutdown at end of ABC derived method
ThisWindow.Kill          !normal shutdown from Procedure Routine
ThisWindow.Kill;RETURN   !normal shutdown from Procedure Routine
                        ! called from within ACCEPT loop
```

PRIVATE (undocumented) Items

Some of the properties and methods in the ABC Library have the PRIVATE attribute. These PRIVATE items are not documented. These items are PRIVATE because they are likely to change or disappear completely in future ABC Library releases. Making some items PRIVATE, gives TopSpeed the flexibility to change and improve these areas without affecting applications developed with the ABC Library. We strongly recommend that you do not remove the PRIVATE attributes on ABC Library items.

PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, DERIVED, and PROC Attributes

Some of the ABC Library properties and methods have special attributes that enhance their functionality, usability, and maintainability. Each property and method topic shows any applicable attributes in the syntax diagram (gray box). The purpose and effect of these attributes are documented here and in the Language Reference, but not in individual property and method topics.

PROTECTED Attribute

The **PROTECTED** attribute specifies that the property or method on which it is placed is visible only to the methods of the same CLASS or of derived CLASSES. This simply suggests that the property or method is important to the correct functioning of the CLASS, and that any changes to these items should be done with care. See *PROTECTED* in the *Language Reference*.

VIRTUAL Attribute

The **VIRTUAL** attribute allows methods in a parent CLASS to call methods in a derived CLASS. This has two primary benefits. First, it allows parent CLASSES to delegate the implementation of certain actions to derived classes; and second, it makes it easy for derived classes to override these same parent class actions. See *VIRTUAL* in the *Language Reference*.

Virtual methods let you insert custom code into an existing class, without copying or duplicating the existing code. Furthermore, the existing class calls the virtual methods (containing the custom code) as part of its normal operation, so you don't have to explicitly call them. When TopSpeed updates the existing class, the updates are automatically integrated into your application simply by recompiling. The existing class continues to call the virtual methods containing the custom code as part of its normal operation. This approach gives you many opportunities to customize your ABC applications while minimizing maintenance issues.

DERIVED Attribute

The **DERIVED** attribute is similar to the **VIRTUAL** attribute, except that it must have a matching prototype in the parent class.

PROC Attribute

The **PROC** attribute may be placed on a method prototyped with a return value, so you can call the method and ignore the return value without compiler warnings. See *PROC* in the *Language Reference*.

Documentation Conventions

Reference Item and Syntax Diagram

The documentation formats for Properties and Methods are illustrated in the following syntax diagrams.

Property (short description of intended use)

Property **Datatype [, PROTECTED]**

A complete description of the Property and its uses.

Datatype shows the datatype of the property such as LONG or &BrowseClass.

Implementation: A discussion of specific implementation issues. The implementation may change with each release / version of Internet Connect.

```
ComplexDataType STRUCTURE              !actual structure declaration
                                     END
```

See Also: Related Methods and Properties

Method (short description of what the method does)

```
Method( | parameter1 | [ , parameter2 ] ) [ , PROTECTED ] [ , VIRTUAL ] [ , PROC ]
      | alternate |
      | parameters |
```

Method A brief statement of what the method does.

parameter1 A complete description of parameter1, along with how it relates to parameter2 and the Method.

parameter2 A complete description of parameter2, along with how it relates to parameter1 and the Method. Brackets [] indicate optional parameters.

A concise description of what the Method does.

Implementation: A description of how the method currently accomplishes its objective. The implementation may change with each release / version of Clarion.

Return Data Type: The data type returned if applicable.

Example:

```
FieldOne = FieldTwo + FieldThree      !This is a source code example  
FieldThree = Method(FieldOne,FieldTwo) !Comments follow the "!" character
```

See Also: [Related Methods and Properties](#)

Conceptual Example

A description of the type of example to be illustrated. Examples show the concept of how a specific class is implemented in source code. The demands of brevity and concision often force the removal of structures which are not essential in illustrating the class.

PROGRAM

MAP

END

! Data structures

CODE

! Code Statements

ASCIIFileClass

ASCIIFileClass Overview

The ASCIIFileClass identifies, opens (read-only), indexes, and page-loads a file's contents into a QUEUE. The indexing function speeds any additional access of records and supports page-loading, which in turn allows browsing of very large files.

ASCIIFileClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

There are several related classes whose collective purpose is to provide reusable, read-only, viewing, scrolling, searching, and printing capability for files, including variable length files. Although these classes are primarily designed for ASCII text and they anticipate using the Clarion ASCII Driver to access the files, they also work with binary files and with other database drivers. These classes can be used to build other components and functionality as well.

The classes that provide this read-only functionality and their respective roles are:

ASCIIViewerClass	ASCIIFileClass plus user interface
ASCIIFileClass	Open, read, filter, and index the file
ASCIIPrintClass	Print one or more lines
ASCIISearchClass	Locate and scroll to text

The ASCIIViewerClass is derived from the ASCIIFileClass. See *ASCIIViewerClass* for more information.

ASCIIFileClass ABC Template Implementation

The ASCIIFileClass serves as the foundation to the Viewer procedure template; however, the ABC Templates do not instantiate the ASCIIFileClass independently of the ASCIIViewerClass.

The ASCIIViewerClass is derived from the ASCIIFileClass, and the Viewer Procedure Template instantiates the derived ASCIIViewerClass.

ASCIIFileClass Source Files

The ASCIIFileClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The ASCIIFileClass source code are contained in:

ABASCII.INC	ASCIIFileClass declarations
ABASCII.CLW	ASCIIFileClass method definitions

ASCIIFileClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an ASCIIFileClass object and related objects.

This example lets the end user select a file, then display it's pathname, total line count, and the text at a given percentage point within the file.

```

PROGRAM
MAP
END
INCLUDE('ABASCII.INC')           !declare ASCIIFileClass

Percentile  BYTE(50)             !a value between 1 & 100
GlobalErrors ErrorClass          !declare GlobalErrors object
AFile       AsciiFileClass,THREAD !declare AFile object
FileActive  BYTE(False),THREAD   !AFile initialized flag
Filename    STRING(255),THREAD   !FileName variable

AsciiFile FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1),THREAD
RECORD     RECORD,PRE()
Line       STRING(255)
          END
          END

window WINDOW('View a text file'),AT(3,7,203,63),SYSTEM,GRAY,DOUBLE
  PROMPT('Show Line at Percentile'),AT(5,4),USE(?Prompt:Pct)
  SPIN(@s3),AT(84,3,25,),USE(Percentile),RANGE(1,100)
  BUTTON('New File'),AT(113,2),USE(?NewFileButton)
  BUTTON('File Size'),AT(157,2),USE(?FileSizeButton)
  PROMPT('Line:'),AT(4,26),USE(?Prompt:Line)
  PROMPT(' '),AT(26,26,172,32),USE(?Line)
END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                !initialize GlobalErrors object
OPEN(window)                     !Initialize AFile with:
FileActive=AFile.Init( AsciiFile, | ! file label,
                          A1:line,  | !file field to display
                          Filename,  | !variable file NAME attribute
                          GlobalErrors) !GlobalErrors object

IF FileActive
  window{PROP:Text}=AFile.GetFileName()
ELSE
  window{PROP:Text}='no file selected'
END

ACCEPT

```

```
CASE FIELD()  
OF ?NewFileButton           !on New File button  
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted  
    CLEAR(FileName)  
    FileActive=AFile.Reset(FileName) !reset AFile to a new file  
    IF FileActive  
      window{PROP:Text}=AFile.GetFileName() !show filename in titlebar  
    ELSE  
      window{PROP:Text}='no file selected'  
    END  
  END  
OF ?Percentile              !on Percentile SPIN  
  CASE EVENT()  
  OF EVENT:Accepted OROF EVENT:NewSelection  
    IF FileActive           !calculate lineno and get the line  
      ?Line{PROP:Text}=AFile.GetLine(Percentile/100*AFile.GetLastLineNo())  
    ELSE  
      ?Line{PROP:Text}='no file selected'  
    END  
  END  
OF ?FileSizeButton          !on File Size button  
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted  
    IF FileActive           !display total line count  
      ?FileSizeButton{PROP:Text}=AFile.GetLastLineNo()&' Lines'  
    ELSE  
      ?FileSizeButton{PROP:Text}='0 Lines'  
    END  
  END  
END  
END  
IF FileActive THEN AFile.Kill. !shut down AFile object  
GlobalErrors.Kill
```

AsciiFileClass Properties

ASCIIFile (the ASCII file)

ASCIIFile **&FILE**

The **File** property is a reference to the managed file. The File property simply identifies the managed file for the various ASCIIFileClass methods.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the File property.

See Also: Init

ErrorMgr (ErrorClass object)

ErrorMgr **&ErrorClass, PROTECTED**

The **ErrorMgr** property is a reference to the ErrorClass object for this ASCIIFileClass object. The ASCIIFileClass uses the ErrorMgr to handle various errors and conditions it encounters when processing the file.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the ErrorMgr property.

See Also: Init

OpenMode (file access/sharing mode)

OpenMode **BYTE**

The **OpenMode** property contains a value that determines the level of access granted to both the user opening the file and other users in a multi-user system.

Implementation: The Init method sets the OpenMode property to a hexadecimal value of 42h (ReadWrite/DenyNone). The ABC Templates override this default with the appropriate value from the application generator.

The Open method uses the OpenMode property when it OPENS the file for processing. See the *Language Reference* for more information on OPEN.

See Also: Init

AsciiFileClass Methods

ASCIIFileClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ASCIIFileClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ASCIIFileClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ASCIIFileClass object
Kill	shut down the ASCIIFileClass object

Mainstream Use:

GetLastLineNo	return last line number
GetLine	return line of text
GetPercentile	convert file position to percentage
SetPercentile	convert percentage to file position

Occasional Use:

GetFilename	return the filename
Reset	reset the ASCIIFileClass object

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

GetDOSFilename	prompt end user to select a file
FormatLine	a virtual to format text
SetLine	position to specific line
ValidateLine	a virtual to implement a filter

FormatLine (a virtual to format text)**FormatLine(*line* [, *line number*]), PROTECTED, VIRTUAL****FormatLine** A virtual placeholder method to format text.*line* The label of the STRING variable containing the text to reformat.*line number* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that contains the offset or position of the line of text being formatted. If omitted, FormatLine operates on the current line.

The **FormatLine** method is a virtual placeholder method to reformat text prior to display at runtime.

Implementation: The FormatLine method is a placeholder for derived classes. It provides an easy way for you to reformat the text prior to display. The GetLine method calls the FormatLine method.

Example:

```

    INCLUDE( 'ABASCII.INC' )                                !declare ASCIIViewerClass
MyViewer    CLASS(AsciiViewerClass),TYPE                   !derive MyViewer class
FormatLine  PROCEDURE(*STRING),VIRTUAL                     !prototype virtual FormatLine
            END
Viewer      MyViewer,THREAD                                 !declare Viewer object
AsciiFile   FILE,DRIVER( 'ASCII' ),NAME( 'MyText' ),PRE(A1),THREAD
RECORD      RECORD,PRE( )
Line        STRING(255)
            END
            END
CODE
!program code

MyViewer.FormatLine PROCEDURE(*STRING line) !called by ASCIIViewerClass
CODE
    line = line[1:5]' '&line[5:55]                !reformat the text

```

See Also: GetLine

GetDOSFilename (let end user select file)

GetDOSFilename(*filename*), VIRTUAL

GetDOSFilename Prompts the end user to select the file to process.

filename The label of the ASCIIFile property's NAME attribute variable which receives the selected filename.

The **GetDOSFilename** method prompts the end user to select the file to process and returns a value indicating whether the end user selected a file or did not select a file. A return value of one (1) indicates a file was selected and *filename* contains its pathname; a return value of zero (0) indicates no file was selected and *filename* is empty.

Implementation: The GetDOSFilename method uses a SelectFileClass object to get the filename from the end user.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyAsciiFileClass.Reset FUNCTION(*STRING FName)
RVal      BYTE(True)
SavePath  CSTRING(FILE:MaxFilePath+1),AUTO
CODE
CLOSE(SELF.AsciiFile)
SavePath=PATH()
LOOP
  IF ~FName AND ~SELF.GetDOSFilename(FName)
    RVal=False
    BREAK
  END
  OPEN(SELF.AsciiFile,ReadOnly+DenyNone)
  IF ERRORCODE()
    MESSAGE('Can't open ' & FName)
    RVal=False
  ELSE
    BREAK
  END
END
IF RVal
  SELF.FileSize=BYTES(SELF.AsciiFile)
END
SETPATH(SavePath)
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: ASCIIFile, SelectFileClass

GetFilename (return the filename)**GetFilename**

The **GetFilename** method returns the name of the ASCII file.

Implementation: The GetFileName method uses the NAME function. See the *Language Reference* for more information.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABASCII.INC')
Viewer    AsciiViewerClass,THREAD
Filename  STRING(255),THREAD
AsciiFile FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1),THREAD
RECORD    RECORD,PRE()
Line      STRING(255)
          END
          END
CODE
!program code
MESSAGE('Filename: '&Viewer.GetFilename())    !get the ASCII filename

```

GetLastLineNo (return last line number)**GetLastLineNo, PROC**

The **GetLastLineNo** method returns the number of the last line in the file, and indexes the entire file.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
MyViewer.TakeScroll PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED EventNo)
```

```
LineNo LONG
```

```
CODE
```

```
IF FIELD()=SELF.ListBox
```

```
IF EVENT() = EVENT:ScrollBottom           !on scroll bottom
```

```
LineNo = SELF.GetLastLineNo()             !index to end of file
```

```
SELF.DisplayPage(LineNo-SELF.ListBoxItems+1) !display last page
```

```
SELECT(SELF.ListBox,SELF.ListBoxItems)     !highlight last row
```

```
END
```

```
END
```

GetLine (return line of text)**GetLine**(*line number*), PROC**GetLine** Returns a line of text.*line number* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that contains the offset or position of the line of text to return.The **GetLine** method returns the line of text specified by *line number*.

Implementation: The GetLine method gets a line at position *line number* from the ASCII file, extending the index queue if needed. If the index queue already contains the requested *line number* then the file is read using the existing offset, otherwise the index is extended. If the requested *line number* does not exist in the file, the text line is cleared and ERRORCODE() set.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```

MyViewer.DisplayPage PROCEDURE(LONG LineNo)
LineOffset USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF LineNo > 0                                !line specified?
  SELF.ListBoxItems=SELF.ListBox{PROP:Items}  !note size of list box
  FREE(SELF.DisplayQueue)                    !free the display queue
  SELF.GetLine(LineNo+SELF.ListBoxItems-1)    !index to end of page
  LOOP LineOffset=0 TO SELF.ListBoxItems-1    !for each listbox line
    SELF.DisplayQueue.Line=SELF.GetLine(LineNo+LineOffset) !read ASCII file record
    IF ERRORCODE()                               !on end of file
      BREAK                                     ! stop reading
    END
    ADD(SELF.DisplayQueue)                      !add to display queue
  END
  SELF.TopLine=LineNo                          !note 1st line displayed
  DISPLAY(SELF.ListBox)                        !redraw the list box
END

```

See Also: GetLine

GetPercentile (convert file position to percentage:ASCIIFileClass)

GetPercentile(*line number*)

GetPercentile Returns the specified position in the file as a percentage.

line number An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that contains the offset or position to convert to a percentage.

The **GetPercentile** method returns the specified position in the file as an approximate percentage which can be used to position a vertical scroll bar thumb.

Return Data Type: USHORT

Example:

```
SetThumb ROUTINE
!current line is what % thru the file?
PctPos=MyASCIIFile.GetPercentile(MyASCIIFile.TopLine+CHOICE(?ASCIIBox)-1)
?ASCIIBox{PROP:VScrollPos}=PctPos           !set thumb to corresponding % position
```

Init (initialize the ASCIIFileClass object)

Init(*file*, *field* [, *filename*], *error handler*)

Init	Initializes the ASCIIFileClass object.
<i>file</i>	The label of the file to display.
<i>field</i>	The fully qualified label of the <i>file</i> field to display.
<i>filename</i>	The label of the <i>file</i> 's NAME attribute variable. If omitted, the <i>file</i> has a constant NAME attribute. If null (""), the ASCIIFileClass prompts the end user to select a file.
<i>error handler</i>	The label of the ErrorClass object to handle errors encountered by this ASCIIFileClass object.

The **Init** method initializes the ASCIIFileClass object and returns a value indicating whether it successfully accessed the *file* and is ready to proceed.

Implementation: The Init method returns one (1) if it accessed the *file* and is ready to proceed; it returns zero (0) and calls the Kill method if unable to access the *file* and cannot proceed. If the Init method returns zero (0), the ASCIIFileClass object is not initialized and you should not call its methods.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

Filename      STRING(255),THREAD      !declare filename variable
FileActive    BYTE                     !declare success/fail switch
AsciiFile     FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1)
RECORD        RECORD,PRE()
Line          STRING(255)
              END
              END

CODE
FileActive=ASCIIFile.Init(AsciiFile,    |
                          A1:Line,      |
                          Filename,     |
                          GlobalErrors)  !init ASCIIFileClass object with:
IF ~FileActive THEN RETURN.             ! file label
ACCEPT                                  ! file field to display
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:CloseWindow        ! NAME attribute variable
    IF FileActive THEN ASCIIFile.Kill.   ! ErrorClass object
  END !program code                     !If init failed, don't proceed
END                                     !If init succeeded, proceed

                                      !If init succeeded, shut down

```

See Also: Kill

Kill (shut down the ASCIIFileClass object)**Kill**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

```

Filename  STRING(255),THREAD           !declare filename variable
FileActive BYTE                         !declare success/fail switch
AsciiFile  FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1)
RECORD     RECORD,PRE()
Line       STRING(255)
           END
           END

CODE
FileActive=ASCIIFile.Init(AsciiFile,| !init ASCIIFileClass object with:
           A1:Line,                  | ! file label
           Filename,                 | ! file field to display
           GlobalErrors)             | ! NAME attribute variable
           ! ErrorClass object
IF ~FileActive THEN RETURN.           !If init failed, don't proceed
ACCEPT                                !If init succeeded, proceed
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:CloseWindow
    IF FileActive THEN ASCIIFile.Kill. !If init succeeded, shut down
  END
  !program code
END

```

Reset (reset the ASCIIFileClass object)**Reset**(*filename*)**Reset** Resets the ASCIIFileClass object.*filename* The label of the ASCIIFile property's NAME attribute variable.

The **Reset** method resets the ASCIIFileClass object and returns a value indicating whether the end user selected a file or did not select a file. A return value of one (1) indicates a file was selected and *filename* contains its pathname; a return value of zero (0) indicates no file was selected and *filename* is empty.

Implementation: The Reset method calls the GetDOSFileName method to get the filename from the end user. Reset opens the file and resets any statistics and flags associated with the selected file.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

AsciiViewerClass.Reset FUNCTION(*STRING Filename)
CODE
FREE( SELF.DisplayQueue )
DISPLAY( SELF.ListBox )
IF ~PARENT.Reset(Filename) THEN RETURN False.
SELF.TopLine=1
SELF.DisplayPage
SELECT( SELF.ListBox,1 )
RETURN True

```

See Also: ASCIIFile, GetDOSFilename

SetLine (a virtual to position the file)**SetLine**(*line number*), PROTECTED, VIRTUAL**SetLine** A virtual placeholder method to position the file.*line number* The offset or position of the line in the file.The **SetLine** method is a virtual placeholder method to position the file.

Implementation: The SetLine method is a placeholder for derived classes. The SetPercentile, the ASCIIViewerClass.AskGotoLine, and the ASCIISeachClass.Ask methods call the SetLine method.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.SetLine PROCEDURE(LONG LineNo)  !synchronize LIST with line
number
CODE
SELF.DisplayPage(LineNo)                      !scroll list to LineNo
!highlight the LineNo line
SELECT( SELF.ListBox,CHOOSE( SELF.TopLine=LineNo,1,LineNo-SELF.TopLine+1) )
```

See Also: SetPercentile, ASCIIViewerClass.AskGoToLine, ASCIISeachClass.Ask

SetPercentile (set file to relative position)**SetPercentile**(*percentile*)

SetPercentile Positions the file to the record nearest to
file size * *percentile* / 100.*percentile* A value between 0 and 100 that indicates a relative position within the file. This
value may be set by a vertical scrollbar thumb position.

The **SetPercentile** method positions the file to the record nearest to
file size * *percentile* / 100. You may use SetPercentile to position the file based on the end user's
vertical scrollbar thumb setting.

Implementation: The SetPercentile method positions the file based on a given percentage (usually
determined by the vertical thumb position). SetPercentile extends the index as
required and calls the virtual SetLine method to position the file.

SetPercentile calculates the position by dividing *percentile* by 100 then
multiplying the resulting percentage times the file size.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.TakeDrag PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED EventNo)
CODE
IF FIELD()=SELF.ListBox
  IF EventNo = EVENT:ScrollDrag
    SELF.SetPercentile(SELF.ListBox{PROP:VScrollPos}) !reposition based on thumb
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLine

ValidateLine (a virtual to implement a filter)

ValidateLine(*line*), PROTECTED, VIRTUAL

ValidateLine A virtual placeholder method to implement a filter.

line The offset or position of the line of text to evaluate.

The **ValidateLine** method is a virtual placeholder method to implement a filter. ValidateLine returns one (1) to include the *line* and zero (0) to exclude the *line*.

Implementation: The ValidateLine method is a placeholder method for derived classes. The ASCIIFileClass calls the ValidateLine method when it initially reads a record.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

MyFileClass.ValidateLine FUNCTION(STRING LineToTest)

```
CODE
IF LineToTest[1] = '!'           !check for ! in column 1
  RETURN False                  !exclude lines with !
ELSE
  RETURN True                   !include all other lines
END
```


ASCIIPrintClass

ASCIIPrintClass Overview

The ASCIIPrintClass provides the user interface--a simple Print Options dialog--to print one or more lines from a text file. The ASCIIPrintClass interface lets the end user specify a range of lines to print, then optionally previews the lines before printing them. The ASCIIPrintClass interface also provides access to the standard Windows Print Setup dialog.

ASCIIPrintClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ASCIIPrintClass relies on the ASCIIFileClass to read and index the file that it prints. It also relies on the PrintPreviewClass to provide the on-line preview. It also uses the TranslatorClass to translate its Print Options dialog text if needed.

The ASCIIViewerClass uses the ASCIIPrintClass to provide the end user with a Print Options dialog to print one or more lines from the viewed file.

There are several related classes whose collective purpose is to provide reusable, read-only, viewing, scrolling, searching, and printing capability for files, including variable length files. Although these classes are primarily designed for ASCII text and they anticipate using the Clarion ASCII Driver to access the files, they also work with binary files and with other database drivers. These classes can be used to build other components and functionality as well.

The classes that provide this read-only functionality are:

ASCIIViewerClass	ASCIIFileClass plus user interface
ASCIIFileClass	Open, read, filter, and index the file
ASCIIPrintClass	Print one or more lines
ASCIISearchClass	Locate and scroll to text

ASCIIPrintClass ABC Template Implementation

Both the Viewer procedure template and the ASCIIPrintButton control template generate code to instantiate an ASCIIPrintClass object. The Viewer template accomplishes this by adding a parameter to the ASCIIViewerClass.Init method. The ASCIIPrintButton template accomplishes this by declaring an ASCIIPrintClass object and calling the ASCIIViewerClass.AddItem method to register the ASCIIPrintClass object with the ASCIIViewerClass object.

ASCIIPrintClass Source Files

The ASCIIPrintClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific ASCIIPrintClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABASCII.INC	ASCIIPrintClass declarations
ABASCII.CLW	ASCIIPrintClass method definitions

ASCIIPrintClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an ASCIIPrintClass object and related objects.

This example lets the end user select a file, then search and print from it.

```

MEMBER('viewer.clw')

INCLUDE('ABASCII.INC')
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')

MAP
  MODULE('VIEWE002.CLW')
BrowseFiles  PROCEDURE
  END
END

BrowseFiles  PROCEDURE

FilesOpened  BYTE
ViewerActive BYTE(False)
Filename     STRING(FILE:MaxFilePath),AUTO,STATIC,THREAD
AsciiFile    FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1),THREAD
RECORD       RECORD,PRE()
Line         STRING(255)
            END
            END

ViewWindow  WINDOW('View an ASCII File'),AT(3,7,296,136),SYSTEM,GRAY
            LIST,AT(5,5,285,110),USE(?AsciiBox),IMM,FROM('')
            BUTTON('&Print...'),AT(7,119),USE(?Print)
            BUTTON('&Search...'),AT(44,119),USE(?Search)
            END

ThisWindow  CLASS(WindowManager)
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeAccepted PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
            END

Viewer      AsciiViewerClass          !declare Viewer object

```



```

Searcher  AsciiSearchClass      !declare Searcher object
Printer   AsciiPrintClass       !declare Printer object

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?AsciiBox
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
OPEN(ViewWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
CLEAR(Filename)
ViewerActive=Viewer.Init(AsciiFile,A1:Line,Filename,?AsciiBox,GlobalErrors)
IF ~ViewerActive THEN RETURN Level:Fatal.
Viewer.AddItem(Searcher)          !register Searcher with Viewer
Viewer.AddItem(Printer)           !register Printer with Viewer
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeAccepted()
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF ?Print
  ThisWindow.Update
  IF ViewerActive THEN Viewer.Printer.Ask.    !display Print Options dialog
OF ?Search
  ThisWindow.Update
  IF ViewerActive
    IF CHOICE(?AsciiBox)>0                  !search from current line
      Viewer.Searcher.Ask(Viewer.TopLine+CHOICE(?AsciiBox)-1)
    ELSE
      Viewer.Searcher.Ask(1)                !search from line 1
    END
  END
END
RETURN ReturnValue

```

AsciiPrintClass Properties

FileMgr (AsciiFileClass object:AsciiPrintClass)

FileMgr &AsciiFileClass, PROTECTED

The **FileMgr** property is a reference to the AsciiFileClass object that manages the file to print. The AsciiPrintClass object uses the FileMgr to read the file, manage print range line numbers and to handle error conditions and messages.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the FileMgr property.

See Also: Init

PrintPreview (print preview switch)

PrintPreview BYTE

The **PrintPreview** property contains the print preview setting for the AsciiPrintClass object. A value of one (1 or True) initially "checks" the print preview box (default is preview); a value of zero (0 or False) "clears" the print preview box (default is no preview).

Implementation: The Init method sets the PrintPreview property to false. The PrintLines method implements the action specified by the PrintPreview property.

See Also: Init, PrintLines

Translator (TranslatorClass object:AsciiPrintClass)

Translator &TranslatorClass, PROTECTED

The **Translator** property is a reference to the TranslatorClass object for the AsciiPrintClass object. The AsciiPrintClass object uses this property to translate text in the object's Print Options dialog to the appropriate language.

Implementation: The AsciiPrintClass does not initialize the Translator property. The AsciiPrintClass only invokes the Translator if the Translator property is not null. You can use the AsciiViewerClass.SetTranslator method or a reference assignment statement to set the Translator property.

See Also: AsciiViewerClass.SetTranslator

AsciiPrintClass Methods

Ask (solicit print specifications)

Ask, VIRTUAL

The **Ask** method displays a Print Options dialog that prompts the end user for print specifications, then prints the selected lines subject to those specifications (printer destination, paper orientation, etc.).

Implementation: The Ask method prompts the end user for print specifications (including the Windows standard Print Setup dialog), print preview, plus a range of lines to print. If the user CLICKS the Print button, the Ask method prints the requested lines to the printer specified by the end user.

Example:

```
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD( )
OF ?PrintButton           !on "Print" button
  IF EVENT( ) = EVENT:Accepted  !call the Printer.Ask method
    IF ViewerActive THEN Viewer.Printer.Ask. !to gather specs and print lines
  END
END
END
END
```

Init (initialize the ASCIIPrintClass object)

Init(*ASCIIFileMgr*), **VIRTUAL**

Init Initializes the ASCIIPrintClass object.

ASCIIFileMgr The label of the ASCIIFileClass object that manages the file to print. The ASCIIPrintClass object uses the *ASCIIFileMgr* to read from the file and handle line numbers and error conditions.

The **Init** method initializes the ASCIIPrintClass object.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.Init FUNCTION(FILE AsciiFile,*STRING FileLine,*STRING Filename,|
                        UNSIGNED ListBox,ErrorClass ErrHandler,BYTE Enables)
CODE
!program code
IF BAND(Enables,EnableSearch)           !if Search flag is on
    SELF.Searcher &= NEW AsciiSearchClass !instantiate Searcher object
    SELF.Searcher.Init(SELF)              !initialize Searcher object
END
IF BAND(Enables,EnablePrint)             !if Print flag is on
    SELF.Printer &= NEW AsciiPrintClass   !instantiate Printer object
    SELF.Printer.Init(SELF)               !initialize Printer object
END
```

PrintLines (print or preview specified lines)**PrintLines**(*first*, *last*), VIRTUAL

PrintLines	Prints or previews the specified lines.
<i>first</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the number of the first line of the range of lines to print.
<i>last</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the number of the last line of the range of lines to print.

If the PrintPreview property is True, the **PrintLines** method previews the specified lines, then prints the lines or not, depending on the end user's response to the preview.

If the PrintPreview property is False, the **PrintLines** method prints the specified lines to the selected printer.

Example:

```
IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
  IF ACCEPTED() = ?PrintButton
    FirstLine=1
    LastLine=HighestLine
    SELF.PrintLines(FirstLine,LastLine)
    POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
  END
END
```

See Also: PrintPreview

ASCIISearchClass

ASCIISearchClass Overview

The ASCIISearchClass provides the user interface--a persistent non-MDI Find dialog--to locate specific text within the browsed file. The ASCIISearchClass interface lets the end user specify the direction and case sensitivity of the search, and it allows repeating searches ("find next").

ASCIISearchClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ASCIISearchClass relies on the ASCIIFileClass to read and index the file that it searches. It also uses the TranslatorClass to translate its Find dialog text if needed.

The ASCIIViewerClass uses the ASCIISearchClass to provide the end user with a Find dialog to locate text in the viewed file.

There are several related classes whose collective purpose is to provide reusable, read-only, viewing, scrolling, searching, and printing capability for files, including variable length files. Although these classes are primarily designed for ASCII text and they anticipate using the Clarion ASCII Driver to access the files, they also work with binary files and with other database drivers. These classes can be used to build other components and functionality as well.

The classes that provide this read-only functionality and their respective roles are:

ASCIIViewerClass	ASCIIFileClass plus user interface
ASCIIFileClass	Open, read, filter, and index the file
ASCIISearchClass	Print one or more lines
ASCIISearchClass	Locate and scroll to text

ASCIISearchClass ABC Template Implementation

Both the Viewer procedure template and the ASCIISearchButton control template generate code to instantiate an ASCIISearchClass object. The Viewer template accomplishes this by adding a parameter to the ASCIIViewerClass.Init method. The ASCIISearchButton template accomplishes this by declaring an ASCIISearchClass object and calling the ASCIIViewerClass.AddItem method to register the ASCIISearchClass object with the ASCIIViewerClass object.

ASCIISearchClass Source Files

The ASCIISearchClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific ASCIISearchClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABASCII.INC	ASCIISearchClass declarations
ABASCII.CLW	ASCIISearchClass method definitions

ASCIISearchClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an ASCIISearchClass object and related objects.

This example lets the end user select a file, then search and print from it.

```

MEMBER('viewer.clw')

INCLUDE('ABASCII.INC')
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')

MAP
  MODULE('VIEWE002.CLW')
BrowseFiles  PROCEDURE
  END
END

BrowseFiles  PROCEDURE

FilesOpened  BYTE
ViewerActive BYTE(False)
Filename     STRING(FILE:MaxFilePath),AUTO,STATIC,THREAD
AsciiFile    FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1),THREAD
RECORD       RECORD,PRE()
Line         STRING(255)
            END
            END

ViewWindow  WINDOW('View an ASCII File'),AT(3,7,296,136),SYSTEM,GRAY
            LIST,AT(5,5,285,110),USE(?AsciiBox),IMM,FROM('')
            BUTTON('&Print...'),AT(7,119),USE(?Print)
            BUTTON('&Search...'),AT(44,119),USE(?Search)
            END
ThisWindow  CLASS(WindowManager)
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeAccepted PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
            END

Viewer      AsciiViewerClass      !declare Viewer object
Searcher    AsciiSearchClass      !declare Searcher object
Printer     AsciiPrintClass       !declare Printer object

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO

```



```
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?AsciiBox
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
OPEN(ViewWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
CLEAR(Filename)
ViewerActive=Viewer.Init(AsciiFile,A1:Line,Filename,?AsciiBox,GlobalErrors)
IF ~ViewerActive THEN RETURN Level:Fatal.
Viewer.AddItem(Searcher)           !register Searcher with Viewer
Viewer.AddItem(Printer)            !register Printer with Viewer
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeAccepted()
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF ?Print
  ThisWindow.Update
  IF ViewerActive THEN Viewer.Printer.Ask.    !display Print Options dialog
OF ?Search
  ThisWindow.Update
  IF ViewerActive
    IF CHOICE(?AsciiBox)>0                    !search from current line
      Viewer.Searcher.Ask(Viewer.TopLine+CHOICE(?AsciiBox)-1)
    ELSE
      Viewer.Searcher.Ask(1)                  !search from line 1
  END
END
END
RETURN ReturnValue
```

AsciiSearchClass Properties

Find (search constraints)

Find FindGroup, PROTECTED

The **Find** property contains the current search criteria or specification.

Implementation: The search specification includes the text to search for, the direction in which to search, and whether or not the search is case sensitive.

The Ask method sets the values of the Find property based on end user input to the Find dialog. The Setup method sets the values of the Find property for use without the Ask method. The Next method implements the search specified by the Find property.

The FindGroup data type is declared in ABASCII.INC as follows:

```
FindGroup  GROUP,TYPE
What       PSTRING(64)  !text to look for
MatchCase  BYTE         !case sensitive?
Direction  STRING(4)    !either 'Up ' or 'Down'
END
```

See Also: Ask, Next, Setup

FileMgr (AsciiFileClass object:AsciiSearchClass)

FileMgr &AsciiFileClass, PROTECTED

The **FileMgr** property is a reference to the AsciiFileClass object tyhat manages the file to search. The AsciiSearchClass object uses the FileMgr to read the file, and to handle error conditions and messages.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the FileMgr property.

See Also: Init

LineCounter (current line number)

LineCounter LONG, PROTECTED

The **LineCounter** property contains the current line number of the searched file.

Implementation: The ASCIIsearchClass object uses the LineCounter property to implement "find next" searches--searches that continue from the current line.

Translator (TranslatorClass object:ASCIIsearchClass)

Translator &TranslatorClass, PROTECTED

The **Translator** property is a reference to the TranslatorClass object for the ASCIIsearchClass object. The ASCIIsearchClass object uses this property to translate window text to the appropriate language.

Implementation: The ASCIIsearchClass does not initialize the Translator property. The ASCIIsearchClass only invokes the Translator if the Translator property is not null. You can use the AsciiViewerClass.SetTranslator method to set the Translator property.

See Also: AsciiViewerClass.SetTranslator

AsciiSearchClass Methods

Ask (solicit search specifications)

Ask([*startline*]), VIRTUAL

Ask	Prompts the end user for search specifications then positions to the specified search value.
<i>startline</i>	The offset or position of the line at which to begin the search, typically the current line position. If omitted, <i>startline</i> defaults to one (1).

The **Ask** method prompts the end user for search specifications then positions the file to the next line subject to the search specifications, or issues an appropriate message if the search value is not found.

Implementation: The Ask method prompts the end user for search specifications including a value to search for, the direction of the search, and whether the search is case sensitive. If the user invokes the search (doesn't cancel), the Ask method positions the file to the next line containing the search value, or issues an appropriate message if the search value is not found.

Example:

```

ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?PrintButton
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
    IF ViewerActive THEN Viewer.Printer.Ask.
  END
OF ?Search                                !on "search" button
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
    IF ViewerActive                        !call Searcher.Ask method
      StartSearch=CHOOSE(CHOICE(?AsciiBox)>0, | ! passing the currently
      Viewer.TopLine+CHOICE(?AsciiBox)-1,1)    ! selected line as the
      Viewer.Searcher.Ask(StartSearch)         ! search's starting point
    END
  END
END
END

```

Init (initialize the ASCIISearchClass object)

Init(*ASCIIFileMgr*), VIRTUAL

Init Initializes the ASCIISearchClass object.

ASCIIFileMgr The label of the ASCIIFileClass object that manages the file to search. The ASCIISearchClass object uses the *ASCIIFileMgr* to read from the file.

The **Init** method initializes the ASCIISearchClass object.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.Init FUNCTION(FILE AsciiFile,*STRING FileLine,*STRING Filename,|
                        UNSIGNED ListBox,ErrorClass ErrHandler,BYTE Enables)

CODE
!program code
IF BAND(Enables,EnableSearch)           !if Search flag is on
    SELF.Searcher &= NEW AsciiSearchClass !instantiate Searcher object
    SELF.Searcher.Init(SELF)             !initialize Searcher object
END
IF BAND(Enables,EnablePrint)             !if Print flag is on
    SELF.Printer &= NEW AsciiPrintClass   !instantiate Printer object
    SELF.Printer.Init(SELF)               !initialize Printer object
END
```

Next (find next line containing search text)

Next, VIRTUAL

The **Next** method returns the line number of the next line containing the search value specified by the Ask method.

Implementation: The Ask method calls the Next method. The Next method searches for the search value and in the direction set by the Ask method. Alternatively, you can use the Setup method to set the search constraints.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
MyAsciiSearchClass.Ask PROCEDURE
CODE
!procedure code
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
CASE FIELD()
OF ?NextButton
SELF.LineCounter=SELF.Next()
IF SELF.LineCounter
SELF.FileMgr.SetLine(SELF.LineCounter)
END
!procedure code
```

See Also: Ask, Setup

Setup (set search constraints)

Setup(*constraints* [, *startline*])

Setup	Sets the search constraints.
<i>constraints</i>	The label of a structure containing the search constraints. The structure must have the same structure as the FindGroup GROUP declared in ABASCII.INC.
<i>startline</i>	The offset or position of the line at which to begin the search, typically the current line position. If omitted, <i>startline</i> defaults to one (1).

The **Setup** method sets the search constraints. The AsciiSearchClass object applies the constraints when searching the text file.

Implementation: The ABC Library does not call the Setup method. The Setup method is provided so you can do custom searches outside the normal AsciiViewerClass process (without using the Ask method).

The Next method applies the search constraints set by the Setup method. The constraints include the text to search for, the direction in which to search, and whether or not the search is case sensitive.

The FindGroup GROUP is declared in ABASCII.INC as follows:

```
FindGroup  GROUP,TYPE
What       PSTRING(64) !text to look for
MatchCase  BYTE        !case sensitive?
Direction  STRING(4)   !either 'Up ' or 'Down'
END
```

Example:

```
MyAsciiSearchClass.Ask PROCEDURE
Constraints LIKE(FindGroup)
CODE
Constraints.MatchCase = False      !never case sensitive
Constraints.Direction = 'Down'    !always search downward
!prompt end user for search value
SELF.Setup(Constraints,StartLine) !set search constraints
SELF.LineCounter=SELF.Next()      !execute search
IF SELF.LineCounter
  SELF.FileMgr.SetLine(SELF.LineCounter) !set to next line containing search value
ELSE
  MESSAGE('' '&CLIP(SELF.Constraints.What)&' ' not found.')
END
```

See Also: Ask, Next

ASCIIViewerClass

ASCIIViewerClass Overview

There are several related classes whose collective purpose is to provide reusable, read-only, viewing, scrolling, searching, and printing capability for files, including variable length files. Although these classes are primarily designed for ASCII text and they anticipate using the Clarion ASCII Driver to access the files, they also work with binary files and with other database drivers. These classes can be used to build other components and functionality as well.

The classes that provide this read-only functionality are the ASCII Viewer classes. The ASCII Viewer classes and their respective roles are:

ASCIIViewerClass	Supervisor class
ASCIIFileClass	Open, read, filter, and index the file
ASCIIPrintClass	Print one or more lines
ASCIISearchClass	Locate and scroll to text

These classes are fully documented in the remainder of this chapter.

ASCIIViewerClass

The ASCIIViewerClass uses the ASCIIFileClass, the ASCIIPrintClass, and the ASCIISearchClass to create a single full featured ASCII file viewer object. This object uses a LIST control to display, scroll, search, and print the contents of the file. Typically, you instantiate only the ASCIIViewerClass in your program which, in turn, instantiates the other classes as needed.

ASCIIFileClass

The ASCIIFileClass identifies, opens (read-only), indexes, and page-loads a file's contents into a QUEUE. The indexing function speeds any reaccess of records and supports page-loading, which in turn allows browsing of very large files.

ASCIIPrintClass

The ASCIIPrintClass lets the end user specify a range of lines to print, then prints them. It also provides access to the standard Windows Print Setup dialog.

ASCIISearchClass

The ASCIISearchClass lets the end user specify a search value, case sensitivity, and a search direction, then scrolls to the next instance of the search value within the file.

ASCIIViewerClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ASCIIViewerClass is derived from the ASCIIFileClass, plus it relies on the ASCIIPrintClass, ASCIISearchClass, ErrorClass, and PopupClass to accomplish some user interface tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the ASCIIViewerClass, it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the ASCIIViewerClass header (ABASCII.INC) in your program's data section. See the *Conceptual Example*.

ASCIIViewerClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local ASCIIViewer class *and* object for each instance of the ASCIIViewControl template. The ABC Templates automatically include all the classes necessary to support the functionality specified in the ASCIIViewControl template.

The templates *derive* a class from the ASCIIViewerClass for *each* ASCIIViewerClass in the application. The derived class is called *procedure:Viewer#* where *procedure* is the procedure name and *#* is the instance number of the ASCIIViewControl template. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the ASCIIViewControl template **Classes** tab to easily modify the viewer's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

The object is named Viewer# where # is the instance number of the control template. The derived ASCIIViewerClass is local to the procedure, is specific to a single ASCIIViewerClass and relies on the global ErrorClass object.

ASCIIViewerClass Source Files

The ASCIIViewerClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific ASCIIViewerClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABASCII.INC	ASCIIViewerClass declarations
ABASCII.CLW	ASCIIViewerClass method definitions

ASCIIViewerClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an `ASCIIViewerClass` object and related objects.

This example lets the end user select a file, then browse, scroll, search, and print from it.

[illegible]

AsciiViewerClass Properties

Popup (PopupClass object)

Popup &PopupClass

The **Popup** property is a reference to the PopupClass object for this AsciiViewerClass object. The AsciiViewerClass object uses the Popup property to define and manage its popup menus.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the Popup property.

See Also: Init

Printer (ASCIIPrintClass object)

Printer &ASCIIPrintClass

The **Printer** property is a reference to the ASCIIPrintClass object for this AsciiViewerClass object. The AsciiViewerClass object uses the Printer property to solicit print ranges and specifications from the end user, then print from the file subject to the specifications.

Implementation: The AddItem and Init methods initialize the Printer property.

The **Printer** property is added to the AsciiViewer by calling the AddItem method. The AsciiViewer does not take ownership of these objects, it just uses them if supplied. It is up to the owner of the objects to destroy them when they are no longer required.

Since these objects are generated by the templates in local procedure scope, they will be destroyed when the enclosing generated procedure dies. If these objects are created by hand coding, then they should be destroyed by whoever creates them.

The exception to this is when the **EnablePrint** parameter is set on the **Init** call. In this case the AsciiViewer may create it's own "internal" printer and viewer. In this case, they are destroyed in the **Kill** method of the AsciiViewer.

See Also: AddItem, Init

Searcher (ASCIISearchClass object)

Searcher **&ASCIISearchClass**

The **Searcher** property is a reference to the ASCIISearchClass object for this ASCIIViewerClass object. The ASCIIViewerClass object uses the Searcher property to solicit search values from the end user, then locate the values within the browsed file.

Implementation: The AddItem and Init methods initialize the Searcher property.

The **Searcher** property is added to the AsciiViewer by calling the AddItem method. The AsciiViewer does not take ownership of these objects, it just uses them if supplied. It is up to the owner of the objects to destroy them when they are no longer required.

Since these objects are generated by the templates in local procedure scope, they will be destroyed when the enclosing generated procedure dies. If these objects are created by hand coding, then they should be destroyed by whoever creates them.

The exception to this is when the **EnableSearch** parameter is set on the **Init** call. In this case the AsciiViewer may create it's own "internal" viewer. In this case, they are destroyed in the **Kill** method of the AsciiViewer.

See Also: AddItem, Init

TopLine (first line currently displayed)

TopLine **UNSIGNED**

The **TopLine** property contains the offset or position of the first line currently displayed by the ASCIIViewerClass object. The ASCIIViewerClass object uses the TopLine property to manage scrolling and scrollbar thumb positioning.

AsciiViewerClass Methods

AsciiViewerClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ASCIIViewerClass, it is useful to organize the its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ASCIIViewerClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ASCIIViewerClass object
Kill	shut down the ASCIIViewerClass object

Mainstream Use:

AskGotoLine	go to user specified line
DisplayPage	display new page
PageDown	scroll down one page
PageUp	scroll up one page
TakeEvent	process ACCEPT loop event

Occasional Use:

AddItem	add printer or searcher object
GetFilename _i	return the filename
GetLastLineNo _i	return last line number
GetLine _i	return line of text
GetPercentile _i	convert file position to percentage
Reset	reset the ASCIIViewerClass object
SetPercentile _i	convert percentage to file position
SetLine _v	position to specific line
SetLineRelative	move N lines

_i These methods are inherited from the ASCIIFileClass.

_v These methods are also virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

FormatLine	format text
SetLine	position to specific line
ValidateLine	implement a filter

| These methods are inherited from the ASCIIFileClass.

AddItem (program the AsciiViewer object)

```
AddItem( | printer | )
        | searcher |
```

AddItem Adds specific functionality to the AsciiViewer object.

printer The label of an AsciiPrintClass object.

searcher The label of an AsciiSearchClass object.

The **AddItem** method adds specific functionality to the AsciiViewer object. This method provides an alternative to the Init method for adding or changing the print and search capability of the AsciiViewer object.

Implementation: The AddItem method sets the value of the Printer or Searcher property, initializes the *printer* or *searcher*, then enables the corresponding popup menu item.

Example:

```
MyPrinter CLASS(AsciiPrintClass)      !declare custom printer object
NewMethod PROCEDURE
      END
MySearcher CLASS(AsciiSearchClass)    !declare custom searcher object
NewMethod PROCEDURE
      END
```

CODE

```
Viewer.Init(AsciiFile,A1:line,Filename,?AsciiBox,GlobalErrors)
Viewer.AddItem(MyPrinter)           !add print functionality
Viewer.AddItem(MySearcher)         !add search functionality
```

See Also: Init, Printer, Searcher

AskGotoLine (go to user specified line)

AskGotoLine

The **AskGotoLine** method prompts the end user for a specific line number to display, then positions the file to the line nearest the one specified.

Implementation: The ASCIIViewerClass invokes the AskGotoLine method from a RIGHT-CLICK popup menu. The AskGotoLine method calls the SetLine method to position to the requested record.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED EventNo)
CODE
CASE EventNo
OF EVENT:AlertKey
  IF KEYCODE()=MouseRight
    CASE SELF.Popup.Ask()
    OF 'Print'
      SELF.Printer.Ask
    OF 'Goto'
      SELF.AskGotoLine
    END
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLine

DisplayPage (display new page)

DisplayPage([*line number*])

DisplayPage Displays a new page from the file.

line number An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that contains the offset or position of the line of text to include in the display. If omitted, *line number* defaults to the value of the TopLine property.

The **DisplayPage** method displays a new page from the file. The display includes the line at *line number*, or the line specified by the TopLine property, if *line number* is omitted.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.Reset PROCEDURE(*STRING Filename)
CODE
FREE(SELF.DisplayQueue)
DISPLAY(SELF.ListBox)
PARENT.Reset(Filename)
SELF.TopLine=1
SELF.DisplayPage
SELECT(SELF.ListBox,1)
```

See Also: TopLine

Init (initialize the ASCIIViewerClass object)

Init(*file*, *field*, [*filename*], *list control*, *error handler* [, *features*])

Init	Initializes the ASCIIViewerClass object.
<i>file</i>	The label of the file to display.
<i>field</i>	The fully qualified label of the <i>file</i> field to display.
<i>filename</i>	The label of the <i>file</i> 's NAME attribute variable. If omitted, the file has a constant NAME attribute. If null (""), the Init method prompts the end user to select a file.
<i>list control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the LIST that displays the <i>file</i> contents.
<i>error handler</i>	The label of the ErrorClass object to handle errors encountered by this ASCIIViewerClass object.
<i>features</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that tells the ASCIIViewerClass object which features to implement; for example, printing (<i>EnablePrint</i>), searching (<i>EnableSearch</i>), or both. If omitted, no additional features are implemented.

The **Init** method initializes the ASCIIViewerClass object and returns a value indicating whether it successfully accessed the *file* and is ready to proceed.

Implementation: The Init method returns one (1) if it accessed the *file* and is ready to proceed; it returns zero (0) and calls the Kill method if unable to access the *file* and cannot proceed. If the Init method returns zero (0), the ASCIIViewerClass object is not initialized and you should not call its methods.

You can set the *features* value with the following EQUATES declared in ASCII.INC. Pass either EQUATE to implement its feature (search or print), or add the EQUATES together to implement both features.

EnableSearch **BYTE(001b)**
EnablePrint **BYTE(010b)**

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

PROGRAM
MAP
END

INCLUDE('ABASCII.INC')                !declare ASCIIViewer Class

ViewWindow WINDOW('View an ASCII File'),AT(3,7,296,136),SYSTEM,GRAY
    LIST,AT(5,5,285,110),USE(?AsciiBox),IMM
    BUTTON('&Print'),AT(5,120),USE(?Print)
    BUTTON('&Search'),AT(45,120),USE(?Search)
    BUTTON('&Close'),AT(255,120),USE(?Close)
END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass                !declare GlobalErrors object
Viewer    AsciiViewerClass,THREAD      !declare Viewer object

ViewerActive BYTE(False),THREAD        !Viewer initialized flag
Filename     STRING(255),THREAD        !FileName variable

AsciiFile FILE,DRIVER('ASCII'),NAME(Filename),PRE(A1),THREAD
RECORD      RECORD,PRE()
Line        STRING(255)
            END
            END

CODE

GlobalErrors.Init                      !initialize GlobalErrors object
OPEN(ViewWindow)                      !open the window
!Initialize Viewer with:
ViewerActive=Viewer.Init( AsciiFile,  | ! file label,
    A1:line,                          | ! file field to display
    Filename,                         | ! variable file NAME attribute
    ?AsciiBox,                       | ! LIST control number
    GlobalErrors,                    | ! ErrorClass object
    EnableSearch+EnablePrint)         | ! features to implement flag
IF ~ViewerActive THEN RETURN.         !if init unsuccessful, don't
                                     ! call other Viewer methods
ACCEPT                               !If init succeeded, proceed
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:CloseWindow
        IF ViewerActive THEN Viewer.Kill.    !If init succeeded, shut down
    END
    !program code
END

```

See Also: Kill

Kill (shut down the ASCIIViewerClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

[illegible]

```
IF EVENT() = EVENT:CloseWindow
  IF ViewerActive THEN Viewer.Kill.      !If init succeeded, shut down
END
!program code
END
```

PageDown (scroll down one page)

PageDown, PROTECTED

The **PageDown** method scrolls the display down one "page." A page is the number of lines displayed in the ASCIIViewerClass object's LIST control.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED EventNo)
CODE
IF FIELD()=SELF.ListBox
CASE EventNo
OF EVENT:Scrollup
SELF.SetLineRelative(-1)
OF EVENT:ScrollDown
SELF.SetLineRelative(1)
OF EVENT:PageUp
SELF.PageUp
OF EVENT:PageDown
SELF.PageDown
END
END
```

PageUp (scroll up one page)

PageUp, PROTECTED

The **PageUp** method scrolls the display up one "page." A page is the number of lines displayed in the ASCIIViewerClass object's LIST control.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED EventNo)
CODE
IF FIELD()=SELF.ListBox
CASE EventNo
OF EVENT:Scrollup
SELF.SetLineRelative(-1)
OF EVENT:ScrollDown
SELF.SetLineRelative(1)
OF EVENT:PageUp
SELF.PageUp
OF EVENT:PageDown
SELF.PageDown
END
END
```


Reset (reset the ASCIIViewerClass object)**Reset**(*filename*)**Reset** Resets the ASCIIViewerClass object.*filename* The label of the ASCIIFile property's NAME attribute variable.

The **Reset** method resets the ASCIIViewerClass object and returns a value indicating whether the end user selected a file or did not select a file. A return value of one (1) indicates a file was selected and *filename* contains its pathname; a return value of zero (0) indicates no file was selected and *filename* is empty.

Implementation: The Reset method frees the display QUEUE and calls the ASCIIFileClass.Reset method to get a new filename from the end user. Reset refills the display QUEUE and redisplay the list box if a new file was selected.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

AsciiFileClass.Init FUNCTION |
  (FILE AsciiFile,*STRING FileLine,*STRING FName,ErrorClass ErrorHandler)

CODE
  SELF.AsciiFile&=AsciiFile
  SELF.Line&=FileLine
  SELF.ErrorMgr&=ErrorHandler
  SELF.IndexQueue&=NEW( IndexQueue)
  IF ~SELF.Reset(FName)
    SELF.Kill
    RETURN False
  END
  RETURN True

```

See Also: ASCIIFile, ASCIIFileClass.Reset

SetLine (position to specific line)**SetLine**(*line number*), PROTECTED, VIRTUAL

SetLine	Positions the ASCIIViewerClass object to a specific line.
<i>line number</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that contains the offset or position of the line of text to position to.

The **SetLine** method positions the ASCIIViewerClass object to a specific line within the browsed file.

Implementation: The AskGotoLine method, the ASCIIFileClass.SetPercentile method, and the ASCIISearchClass.Ask method all use the SetLine method to position to the required text line.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.AskGotoLine PROCEDURE
LineNo  LONG,STATIC
OKGo    BOOL(False)
GotoDialog WINDOW('Goto'),AT(,,96,38),GRAY,DOUBLE
        SPIN(@n_5),AT(36,4,56,13),USE(LineNo),RANGE(1,99999)
        PROMPT('&Line No: '),AT(4,9,32,10),USE(?Prompt1)
        BUTTON('&Go'),AT(8,22,40,14),USE(?GoButton)
        BUTTON('&Cancel'),AT(52,22,40,14),USE(?CancelButton)
    END
CODE
OPEN(GotoDialog)
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF ?GoButton
    OKGo=True
    POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
OF ?CancelButton
    POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
END
END
CLOSE(GotoDialog)
IF OKGo THEN SELF.SetLine(LineNo).
```

See Also: AskGoToLine, ASCIIFileClass.SetPercentile, ASCIISearchClass.Ask

SetLineRelative (move *n* lines)**SetLineRelative(*lines*), PROTECTED**

SetLineRelative Positions the ASCIIViewerClass object to a relative line.

lines An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression containing the number of lines to move from the current position. A positive value moves downward; a negative value moves upward.

The **SetLineRelative** method repositions the ASCIIViewerClass object *lines* lines from the current position.

Example:

```
MyViewerClass.TakeScrollOne PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED EventNo)
CODE
IF FIELD()=SELF.ListBox
CASE EventNo
OF EVENT:Scrollup
SELF.SetLineRelative(-1)
OF EVENT:ScrollDown
SELF.SetLineRelative(1)
END
END
```

SetTranslator (set run-time translator:AsciiViewerClass)**SetTranslator**(*translator*)**SetTranslator** Sets the TranslatorClass object for the AsciiViewerClass object.*translator* The label of the TranslatorClass object for this AsciiViewerClass object.

The **SetTranslator** method sets the TranslatorClass object for the AsciiViewerClass object. By specifying a TranslatorClass object for the AsciiViewerClass object, you automatically translate any window or popup menu text displayed by the viewer.

Implementation: The SetTranslator method sets the TranslatorClass object for the PopupClass, AsciiPrintClass, and AsciiSearchClass objects.

Example:

```

Viewer      AsciiViewerClass      !declare Viewer object
Translator  TranslatorClass        !declare Translator object
CODE
  Translator.Init                  !initialize Translator object
ViewerActive=Viewer.Init( AsciiFile,
                          |        ! file label,
                          |        ! file field to display
                          |        ! variable file NAME attribute
                          |        ! LIST control number
                          |        ! ErrorClass object
                          |        ! features to implement flag
                          EnableSearch+EnablePrint)
IF ~ViewerActive THEN RETURN.      !if init unsuccessful, don't
                                   ! call other Viewer methods
Viewer.SetTranslator(Translator)    !enable text translation
!program code

```

TakeEvent (process ACCEPT loop event:ASCIIViewerClass)**TakeEvent(*event*), PROC**

TakeEvent Processes an ACCEPT loop event.*event* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression containing the event number.

The **TakeEvent** method processes an ACCEPT loop event on behalf of the ASCIIViewerClass object and returns a value indicating whether a CYCLE to the top of the ACCEPT loop is required to properly refresh the display.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method handles resizing, RIGHT-CLICKS, LEFT-CLICKS, and scrolling events.

A return value of zero (0) indicates no CYCLE is needed; any other return value requires a CYCLE.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?AsciiBox
  IF ViewerActive
    IF Viewer.TakeEvent(EVENT())
      CYCLE
    END
  END
END
END
END
```


BreakManagerClass

BreakManagerClass - Overview

The BreakManagerClass handles embedded break events for a target report. Each break can perform totaling based on a data element's contents changing. Breaks can be nested, allowing the contents of one break result to determine another break result. Conditional headers and footers can be printed by any break. Each break is totally customizable through available embed points defined in virtual methods.

BreakManagerClass - Concepts

Each embedded break generated by BreakManager is controlled by a template interface in the Report Properties dialog and through a set of embed points generated. Embedded breaks are designed to give the developer more control "behind the scenes". The BreakManager is not related to the traditional Break logic supported by the structure of the report.

Each break inherits a set of methods and properties defined by an internal LevelManager. An internal break queue stores a unique break and level id which triggers the appropriate break logic.

BreakManagerClass - Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

ReportManagerClass

The BreakManager class is derived from the ReportManager class.

LevelManagerClass

Each ReportManagerClass utilizing embedded breaks declares a LevelManagerClass to manage the nesting and execution of the embedded break logic.

BreakManagerClass - ABC Template Implementation

The Report template declares a BreakManager when a break is added through the Break tab located in the Report Properties dialog.

BreakManagerClass - Source Files

The BreakManagerClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific BreakManagerClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBreak.INC	EditClass declarations
ABBreak.CLW	EditClass method definitions

BreakManagerClass - Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, and instantiate a BreakManager object.

```

MEMBER('people.clw')                                ! This is a MEMBER module

INCLUDE('ABBREAK.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABREPORT.INC'),ONCE

MAP
    INCLUDE('PEOPL005.INC'),ONCE                    !procedure decl
END

PrintPEO:KeyLastName PROCEDURE    ! Generated from procedure template - Report

Progress:Thermometer BYTE          !
FilesOpened          BYTE          !
TestCount            LONG          !
Process:View         VIEW(people)
    PROJECT(PEO:FirstName)
    PROJECT(PEO:Gender)
    PROJECT(PEO:Id)
    PROJECT(PEO:LastName)
END
LocMyFocusControlExt SHORT(0)      !Used by the ENTER Instead of Tab template
LocEnableEnterByTab  BYTE(1)      !Used by the ENTER Instead of Tab template
ProgressWindow       WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
    PROGRESS,USE(Progress:Thermometer),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
    STRING(''),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?Progress:UserString),CENTER
    STRING(''),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?Progress:PctText),CENTER
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42,50,15),USE(?Progress:Cancel)
END

```



```

report    REPORT,AT(1000,1540,6000,7458),PRE(RPT),FONT('Arial',10,,),THOUS
          HEADER,AT(1000,1000,6000,542)
          STRING('People by Last Name'),AT(0,20,6000,220),CENTER,FONT(,,,FONT:bold)
          BOX,AT(0,260,6000,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black),FILL(COLOR:Silver)
          LINE,AT(1500,260,0,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          LINE,AT(3000,260,0,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          LINE,AT(4500,260,0,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          STRING('Id'),AT(50,310,1400,170),TRN
          STRING('First Name'),AT(1550,310,1400,170),TRN
          STRING('Last Name'),AT(3050,310,1400,170),TRN
          STRING('Gender'),AT(4550,310,1400,170),TRN
          END
detail    DETAIL,AT(, ,6000,281),USE(?unnamed)
          LINE,AT(1500,0,0,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          LINE,AT(3000,0,0,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          LINE,AT(4500,0,0,280),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          STRING(@S10),AT(50,50,1400,170),USE(PEO:Id),RIGHT(1)
          STRING(@S30),AT(1550,50,1400,170),USE(PEO:FirstName)
          STRING(@S30),AT(3050,50,1400,170),USE(PEO:LastName)
          STRING(@S1),AT(4552,52,240,167),USE(PEO:Gender)
          STRING(@n_4),AT(5208,42),USE(TestCount),RIGHT(1)
          LINE,AT(50,280,5900,0),COLOR(COLOR:Black)
          END
          FOOTER,AT(1000,9000,6000,219)
          STRING(@pPage <<<#p),AT(5250,30,700,135),PAGE NO,USE(?PageCount)
          END
          END

ThisWindow    CLASS(ReportManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED! Method added to host embed code
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED! Method added to host embed code
OpenReport    PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED! Method added to host embed code
SetAlerts     PROCEDURE(),DERIVED          ! Method added to host embed code
TakeWindowEvent PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED! Method added to host embed code
          END

ThisReport    CLASS(ProcessClass)          ! Process Manager
TakeRecord    PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED! Method added to host embed code
          END

ProgressMgr    StepStringClass              ! Progress Manager
Previewer      PrintPreviewClass            ! Print Previewer
BreakMgr       BreakManagerClass            ! Break Manager

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()           !Opens the window and starts an Accept Loop

!-----
DefineListboxStyle ROUTINE
!|
!| This routine create all the styles to be shared in this window
!| It's called after the window open
!|

```

```

!-----
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE

ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO

CODE
GlobalErrors.SetProcedureName('PrintPEO:KeyLastName')
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest          ! Store the incoming request
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?Progress:Thermometer
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
SELF.AddItem(Translator)
Relate:people.Open
! File people used by this procedure, so make sure it's RelationManager is open
SELF.FilesOpened = True
BreakMgr.Init()                      !Initialize the BreakManager object
BreakMgr.AddBreak()                  !A break exists
BreakMgr.AddLevel()                  !People Count is the name of the brteak
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)!resets when gender changes
BreakMgr.AddTotal(TestCount,1)      !Performs a count when break occurs
SELF.AddItem(BreakMgr)

OPEN(ProgressWindow)                ! Open window

```

BreakManagerClass - Properties

The BreakManagerClass contains no public properties.

BreakManagerClass - Methods

The BreakManagerClass contains the following methods:

AddBreak (add a Break)

AddBreak()

AddBreak Identifies to the corresponding report that an embedded break object is active.

The **AddBreak** method identifies that an embedded break object is active for a corresponding report. An internal BreakID number is assigned for each break object created. This BreakID is incremented when a subsequent **AddBreak** method is executed.

Implementation: The AddBreak method is called for each break object that is active for a report. Each object is instantiated from the LevelManagerClass. An AddLevel method follows each AddBreak method.

Example:

```
BreakMgr.AddBreak()           !First Break
BreakMgr.AddLevel()           !Auto assign level 1
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)
BreakMgr.AddTotal(TestCount,1)
BreakMgr.AddBreak()           !Second Break
BreakMgr.AddLevel() !Break2
```

See Also: Add Level

AddLevel (add a Level to the BreakId Break)

AddLevel(| *breakid* |)

AddLevel Assign a level number to the active break.

breakid An integer that identifies which internal break to assign this level to.

The **AddLevel** method identifies the order of break execution that is assigned to a corresponding report. This is used when nested breaks are assigned, and controls which break is executed first.

Implementation: The **AddLevel** method is called after each break is added, directly following the AddBreak method.

Example:

```
BreakMgr.AddBreak()           !First Break
BreakMgr.AddLevel()           !Auto assign level 1
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)
BreakMgr.AddTotal(TestCount,1)
BreakMgr.AddBreak()           !Second Break
BreakMgr.AddLevel() !Break2
```

See Also: Add Break

AddResetField (add a reset field to the last Level added)**AddResetField**(*fieldlabel*)**AddResetField** Identify a field to reset on the active break.*fieldlabel* The label of a field that the break will reset

The **AddResetField** method identifies the field whose contents will be reset when a break is executed.

Implementation: The **AddResetField** method is called after each break and level is added, directly following the AddLevel method. In the template interface, it is only active when the **Reset on Break** option is set to TRUE.

Example:

```
BreakMgr.AddBreak()                                !First Break
BreakMgr.AddLevel()                                !Auto assign level 1
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)               !Reset on break is active
BreakMgr.AddTotal(TestCount,1)
BreakMgr.AddBreak()                                !Second Break
BreakMgr.AddLevel() !Break2
```

See Also: Add Break

AddTotal (add a total field to the last Level added)

AddTotal (*target, source, type, reset*)
 (*target, source, type, reset, condition*)
 (*target, reset*)
 (*target, reset, condition*)

AddTotal	Identify the break total type and optional source/target fields and condition.
<i>target</i>	The label of a field that the total result will be stored into.
<i>source</i>	The label of a field that the total result will be calculated from.
<i>type</i>	A byte that identifies the total type defined for the break. A count type = 1, average type = 2, sum type = 3.
<i>reset</i>	A byte that specifies whether or not the target variable is reset on each break detected. A value of 1 specifies a reset, zero will not reset the target value.
<i>condition</i>	A valid expression that will force a reset when evaluated to TRUE.

The **AddTotal** method is an overloaded method that calculates three types of conditional or unconditional totaling.

Implementation: The **AddTotal** method is called after each break and level is added, directly following the AddResetField method. In the template interface, it is only active when totaling is added to the break.

Example:

```
BreakMgr.Init()
BreakMgr.AddBreak()
BreakMgr.AddLevel() !Count Break
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)
BreakMgr.AddTotal(CountValue,1)
BreakMgr.AddBreak()
BreakMgr.AddLevel() !SumBreak
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)
BreakMgr.AddTotal(SumValue,SourceToTotal,eBreakTotalSum,1)
BreakMgr.AddBreak()
BreakMgr.AddLevel() !ConditionalAverage
BreakMgr.AddResetField(PEO:Gender)
BreakMgr.AddTotal(AverageValue,SourceToAverage,eBreakTotalAve,0,'PEO:Gender = 'M')
```

Construct (automatic initialization of the BreakManager object)

Construct

The **Construct** method performs the necessary code to initialize the BreakManager object.

Implementation: The Construct method is automatically called when the object is instantiated. The internal break queue is created, and the Break Id is reset to zero.

Destruct (automatic destroy of the Breakmanager object)

Destruct

The **Destruct** method performs the necessary code to destroy the BreakManager object.

Implementation: The Destruct method is automatically called when the object is instantiated. Each break object instantiated in the Init method is cleared from memory.

Init (initialize the BreakManager object)

Init()

Init Initialize the BreakManager object.

The **Init** method initializes the BreakManager by clearing any prior entries in the internal Break Queue, which holds any breaks defined. Normally, the Destruct method also performs a similar function, but the **Init** method ensures that the Break Queue is clean before calling the report.

Implementation: The **Init** method is called prior to the first AddBreak method.

Example:

```
CODE
GlobalErrors.SetProcedureName('PrintPEO:KeyLastName')
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest      ! Store the incoming request
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?Progress:Thermometer
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)              ! Clear GlobalRequest after storing locally
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
SELF.AddItem(Translator)
Relate:people.Open
SELF.FilesOpened = True
BreakMgr.Init()
BreakMgr.AddBreak()
```

TakeEnd (Break closed)

TakeEnd ()

TakeEnd A virtual method called prior to closing an active break.

The **TakeEnd** method is a virtual method that performs any necessary code action prior to the close of the active break.

Implementation: The **TakeEnd** method is used by the ABC templates to print a custom footer detail for the active break. There are embed points available if you need to prime any variables prior to its printing.

Example:

```
BreakMgr.TakeEnd PROCEDURE(SHORT BreakId,SHORT LevelId)
```

```
CODE
  CASE BreakId
    END
  OF 2
    CASE LevelId
      OF 1 !SumBreak
        PRINT(RPT:sumdetail)
      END
    OF 3
      CASE LevelId
        OF 1 !ConditionalAverage
          PRINT(RPT:AverageDetail)
        END
      END
    END
  PARENT.TakeEnd(BreakId,LevelId)
```


TakeStart (Break opened)

TakeStart ()

TakeStart A virtual method called prior to the start of an active break.

The **TakeStart** method is a virtual method that performs any necessary code action prior to the start of the active break.

Implementation: The **TakeStart** method is used by the ABC templates to print a custom header detail for the active break. There are embed points available if you need to prime any variables prior to its printing.

Example:

```
BreakMgr.TakeStart PROCEDURE(SHORT BreakId,SHORT LevelId)
```

```
CODE
  CASE BreakId
  OF 1
    CASE LevelId
    OF 1 !Count Break
      PRINT(RPT:CountDetail)
    END
  OF 3
    CASE LevelId
    OF 1 !ConditionalAverage
      PRINT(RPT:AverageDetail)
    END
  END
PARENT.TakeStart(BreakId,LevelId)
```

UpdateTotal (Calculate Break totaling)

UpdateTotal()

UpdateTotal A virtual method called prior to the start and ending of any break totaling.

The **UpdateTotal** method is a virtual method that performs any necessary code action prior to the start and finish of any totaling defined in an active break.

Implementation:

The **UpdateTotal** method is used by the ABC templates to allow any modifications or extra cleanup of any totaling performed for an active break. The virtual method embeds provide a “Before Totaling” and “After Totaling” embed point for every total defined in each break.

BrowseEIPManagerClass

BrowseEIPManagerClass--Overview

The BrowseEIPManagerClass is an EIPManager that displays an Edit-in-place dialog, and handles events for that dialog. Each BrowseClass utilizing Edit-in-place declares a BrowseEIPManagerClass to manage the events and processes that are used by each Edit-in-place field in the browse.

See Also:

[BrowseEIPManagerClass Concepts](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass--ABC Template Implementation](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass Source Files](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example](#)

BrowseEIPManagerClass Concepts

Each Edit-in-place control is a window created on top of the browse from which it is called. The EIPManager dynamically creates an Edit-in-place object and control upon request (Insert, Change, or Delete) by the end user. When the end user accepts the edited record the EIPManager destroys the edit-in-place object and control.

See Also:

[BrowseEIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass--ABC Template Implementation](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass Source Files](#)

[BrowseEIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example](#)

BrowseEIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EIPManagerClass

The BrowseEIPManager class is derived from the EIPManager class.

BrowseClass

Each BrowseClass utilizing edit-in-place declares a BrowseEIPManagerClass to manage the events and processes that are used by each edit-in-place field in the browse.

The BrowseClass.AskRecord method is the calling method for edit-in-place functionality when edit-in-place is enabled.

EditClass

The BrowseEIPManager provides the basic or "under the hood" interface between the Edit classes and the Browse class. All fields in the browse utilizing customized edit-in-place controls are kept track of by the BrowseEIPManager via the BrowseEditQueue.

BrowseEIPManagerClass--ABC Template Implementation

The Browse template declares a BrowseEIPManager when the BrowseUpdateButtons control template enables default edit-in-place support for the BrowseBox.

See *Control Templates--BrowseBox*, and *BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

BrowseEIPManagerClass Source Files

The BrowseEIPManagerClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific BrowseEIPManagerClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBrowse.INC	EditClass declarations
ABBrowse.CLW	EditClass method definitions
ABBrowse.TRN	EditClass translation strings

BrowseEIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, and instantiate a BrowseEIPManager object. The example page-loads a LIST of actions and associated priorities, then edits the list items via edit-in-place. Note that the BrowseClass object declares a BrowseEIPManager which is a reference to the EIPManager as declared in ABBrowse.INC.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCEllMode_   EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_  EQUATE(1)

INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC'),ONCE
MAP
END

Actions          FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ACT),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
KeyAction         KEY(ACT:Action),NOCASE,OPT
Record            RECORD,PRE()
Action            STRING(20)
Priority           DECIMAL(2)
Completed         DECIMAL(1)
                  END
                  END

Access:Actions    &FileManager
Relate:Actions    &RelationManager
GlobalErrors      ErrorClass
GlobalRequest     BYTE(0),THREAD
ActionsView       VIEW(Actions)
                  END

Queue:Browse      QUEUE
ACT:Action        LIKE(ACT:Action)
ACT:Priority       LIKE(ACT:Priority)
ViewPosition      STRING(1024)
                  END

BrowseWindow      WINDOW('Browse Records'),AT(0,0,247,140),SYSTEM,GRAY
                  LIST,AT(5,5,235,100),USE(?List),IMM,HVSCROLL,MSG('Browsing Records'),|
                  FORMAT('80L~Action~@S20@8R~Priority~L@N2@'),FROM(Queue:Browse)
                  BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(5,110,40,12),USE(?Insert),KEY(InsertKey)
                  BUTTON('&Change'),AT(50,110,40,12),USE(?Change),KEY(CtrlEnter),DEFAULT
                  BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(95,110,40,12),USE(?Delete),KEY(DeleteKey)
                  END

```

```

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
            END

BRW1 CLASS(BrowseClass)
Q      &Queue:Browse
Init PROCEDURE|
(SIGNED ListBox,*STRING Posit,VIEW V,QUEUE Q,RelationManager RM,WindowManager WM)
            END

BRW1::EIPManager      BrowseEIPManager

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Actions.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Actions.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE

ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue =PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?List
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
Relate:Actions.Open
FilesOpened = True
BRW1.Init|
(?List,Queue:Browse.ViewPosition,BRW1::View:Browse,Queue:Browse,Relate:Actions,SELF)
OPEN(BrowseWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= Queue:Browse
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,ACT:KeyAction)
BRW1.AddLocator(BRW1::Sort0:Locator)
BRW1::Sort0:Locator.Init(,ACT:Action,1,BRW1)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Action,BRW1.Q.ACT:Action)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Priority,BRW1.Q.ACT:Priority)
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change

```

```
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
BRW1.AddToolBarTarget(ToolBar)
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue
```

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE

```
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue =PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
IF FilesOpened
    Relate:Actions.Close
END
RETURN ReturnValue
```

BRW1.Init PROCEDURE(SIGNED ListBox,*STRING Posit,VIEW V,QUEUE Q,RelationManager |
RM,WindowManager WM)

```
CODE
PARENT.Init(ListBox,Posit,V,Q,RM,WM)
SELF.EIP &= BRW1::EIPManager
```


BrowseEIPManagerClass Properties

BrowseEIPManagerClass Properties

The BrowseEIPManagerClass contains the following property and inherits all the properties of the EIPManagerClass.

BC (browse class)

BC &BrowseClass, PROTECTED

The **BC** property is a reference to the calling BrowseClass object.

BrowseEIPManagerClass Methods

BrowseEIPManagerClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EIPManagerClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EIPManagerClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	D	initialize the BrowseEditClass object
Kill	D	shut down the BrowseEditClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeNewSelectionD	handle Event:NewSelections
-------------------	----------------------------

Occasional Use:

ClearColumnD	reset column property values
TakeCompletedD	process completion of edit

D These methods are also Derived

Derived Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are derived, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init	D	initialize the BrowseEditClass object
Kill	D	shut down the BrowseEditClass object
TakeNewSelectionD		handle Event:NewSelections
ClearColumnD		reset column property values
TakeCompletedD		process completion of edit

ClearColumn (reset column property values)

ClearColumn, DERIVED

The **ClearColumn** method checks for a value in the LastColumn property and conditionally sets the column values to 0.

The TakeCompleted method calls the ClearColumn method.

Example:

```
BrowseEIPManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE(BYTE Force)
SaveAns UNSIGNED,AUTO
Id      USHORT,AUTO
CODE
  SELF.Again = 0
  SELF.ClearColumn
  SaveAns = CHOOSE(Force = 0,Button:Yes,Force)
  IF SELF.Fields.Equal()
    SaveAns = Button:No
  ELSE
    IF ~Force
      SaveAns = SELF.Errors.Message(Msg:SaveRecord,|
                                   Button:Yes+Button:No+Button:Cancel,Button:Yes)
    END
  END
END
! code to handle user input from SaveRecord message
```

See Also: Column

Init (initialize the BrowseEIPManagerClass object)**Init, DERIVED, PROC**

The **Init** method initializes the BrowseEIPManagerClass object.

Implementation: The Init method primes variables and calls the InitControls method which then initializes the appropriate edit-in-place controls. It is indirectly called by the BrowseClass.AskRecord method via a call to an inherited Run method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

WindowManager.Run PROCEDURE

CODE

IF ~SELF.Init()

SELF.Ask

END

SELF.Kill

RETURN CHOOSE(SELF.Response=0,RequestCancelled,SELF.Response)

See Also: BrowseClass.ResetFromAsk

Kill (shut down the BrowseEIPManagerClass object)**Kill, DERIVED, PROC**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. The Kill method must leave the object in a state in which it can be initialized.

Implementation: The Kill method calls the BrowseClass.ResetFromAsk method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

WindowManager.Run PROCEDURE

CODE

IF ~SELF.Init()

SELF.Ask

END

SELF.Kill

RETURN CHOOSE(SELF.Response=0,RequestCancelled,SELF.Response)

See Also: BrowseClass.ResetFromAsk

TakeCompleted (process completion of edit)**TakeCompleted(*force*), DERIVED**

TakeCompleted Determines the edit-in-place dialog's action after either a loss of focus or an end user action.

force An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the record being edited should be saved without prompting the end user.

The **TakeCompleted** method either saves the record being edited and end the edit-in-place process, or prompts the end user to save the record and end the edit-in-place process, cancel the changes and end the edit-in-place process, or remain editing.

Implementation: The EIPManager.TakeFocusLoss and EIPManager.TakeAction methods call the TakeCompleted method.

Note: **TakeCompleted** does not override the WindowManager.TakeCompleted method.

Example:

```
EIPManager.TakeFocusLoss PROCEDURE
CODE
CASE CHOOSE(SELF.FocusLoss&=NULL,EIPAction:Default,BAND(SELF.FocusLoss,EIPAction:Save))
  OF EIPAction:Always OROF EIPAction:Default
    SELF.TakeCompleted(Button:Yes)
  OF EIPAction:Never
    SELF.TakeCompleted(Button:No)
  ELSE
    SELF.TakeCompleted(0)
END
```

See Also: EIPManager.TakeFocusLoss, EIPManager.TakeAction

TakeNewSelection (reset edit-in-place column)

TakeNewSelection, DERIVED, PROC

The **TakeNewSelection** method resets the edit-in-place column selected by the end user.

Implementation: **TakeNewSelection** calls **ResetColumn**, and returns a **Level:Benign**.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted
        RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected
        RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected
        RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection
        RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:AlertKey
        IF SELF.HistoryKey AND KEYCODE() = SELF.HistoryKey
            SELF.RestoreField(FOCUS())
        END
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
```

See Also: **ResetColumn**

BrowseClass

BrowseClass Overview

The BrowseClass is a ViewManager with a user interface for navigating through the result set of the underlying VIEW.

BrowseClass Concepts

The BrowseClass uses several related classes to provide standard browse functionality--that is, file-loaded or page-loaded lists with automatic scrolling, searching, ranging, filtering, resets, conditional colors, conditional icons, etc. These classes can be used to build other components and functionality as well.

Added to this standard functionality, is Edit-In-Place--that is, you can update the VIEW's primary file by typing directly into the browse list. No separate update procedure is required, and the updates are appropriately autoincremented, referentially constrained, and field validated.

Following are the classes that provide this browse functionality. The classes and their respective roles are:

BrowseClass	Browse list "supervisor" class
StepClass	Scrollbar/Progress Bar base class
LongStepClass	Numeric Runtime distribution
RealStepClass	Numeric Runtime distribution
StringStepClass	Alpha/Lastname distribution
CustomStepClass	Custom distribution
LocatorClass	Locator base class
StepLocatorClass	Step Locator
EntryLocatorClass	Entry Locator
IncrementalLocatorClass	Incremental Locator
FilterLocatorClass	Filter Locator
EditClass	Edit-In-Place

The BrowseClass is fully documented in the remainder of this chapter. Each related class is documented in its own chapter.

BrowseClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass is closely integrated with several other ABC Library objects--in particular the WindowManager and ToolbarClass objects. These objects register their presence with each other, set each other's properties, and call each other's methods as needed to accomplish their respective tasks.

The BrowseClass is derived from the ViewManager, plus it relies on many of the other Application Builder Classes (RelationManager, FieldPairsClass, ToolbarClass, PopupClass, etc.) to accomplish its tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the BrowseClass, it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the BrowseClass header (ABBROWSE.INC) in your program's data section. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in your application's Browse Procedure and BrowseBox Control templates.

The templates *derive* a class from the BrowseClass for *each* BrowseBox in the application. By default, the derived class is called BRW# where # is the BrowseBox control template instance number. This derived class object supports all the functionality specified in the BrowseBox template.

The derived BrowseClass is local to the procedure, is specific to a single BrowseBox and relies on the global file-specific RelationManager and FileManager objects for the browsed files. The templates provide the derived class so you can customize the BrowseBox behavior on a per-instance basis. See *Control Templates--BrowseBox* for more information.

BrowseClass Source Files

The BrowseClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific BrowseClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	BrowseClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	BrowseClass method definitions
ABBROWSE.TRN	BrowseClass translation strings

BrowseClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a BrowseClass object and related objects. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including searching, scrolling, and updating. When they are initialized properly, the BrowseClass and WindowManager objects do most of the work (default event handling) internally.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )           !declare WindowManager class
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )           !declare BrowseClass
  MAP
  END

State      FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ST ), THREAD
StateCodeKey  KEY( ST:STATECODE ), NOCASE, OPT
Record      RECORD, PRE( )
STATECODE   STRING( 2 )
STATENAME   STRING( 20 )
            END
            END

StView      VIEW( State )              !declare VIEW for BrowseSt
            END

StateQ       QUEUE                    !declare Q for LIST
ST:STATECODE LIKE( ST:STATECODE )
ST:STATENAME LIKE( ST:STATENAME )
ViewPosition STRING( 512 )
            END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass               !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:State CLASS( FileManager )     !declare Access:State object
Init         PROCEDURE
            END
Relate:State CLASS( RelationManager ) !declare Relate:State object
Init         PROCEDURE
            END
VCRRequest   LONG( 0 ), THREAD

ThisWindow   CLASS( WindowManager )   !declare ThisWindow object
Init         PROCEDURE( ), BYTE, PROC, VIRTUAL
Kill         PROCEDURE( ), BYTE, PROC, VIRTUAL
            END
BrowseSt     CLASS( BrowseClass )     !declare BrowseSt object
Q            &StateQ
            END

```

```

StLocator  StepLocatorClass          !declare StLocator object
StStep     StepStringClass           !declare StStep object

StWindow WINDOW('Browse States'),AT(, ,123,152),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    LIST,AT(8,5,108,124),USE(?StList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(StateQ),|
    FORMAT(' 27L(2)|M~CODE~@s2@80L(2)|M~STATENAME~@s20@')
    BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(8,133),USE(?Insert)
    BUTTON('&Change'),AT(43,133),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(83,133),USE(?Delete)
    END

CODE
ThisWindow.Run()                    !run the window procedure

ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()        !initialize things
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()          !call base class init
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
GlobalErrors.Init                    !initialize GlobalErrors object
Relate:State.Init                    !initialize Relate:State object
SELF.FirstField = ?StList            !set FirstField for ThisWindow
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest        !VCRRequest not used
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors           !set error handler for ThisWindow
Relate:State.Open                    !open State and related files
!Init BrowseSt object by naming its LIST,VIEW,Q,RelationManager & WindowManager
BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
OPEN(StWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BrowseSt.Q &= StateQ                 !reference the browse QUEUE
!initialize the StStep object
StStep.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime)
!set the browse sort order
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(StStep,ST:StateCodeKey)
BrowseSt.AddLocator(StLocator)        !plug in the browse locator
StLocator.Init(,ST:STATECODE,1,BrowseSt) !initialize the locator
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATECODE,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATECODE) !set a column to browse
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATENAME,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATENAME) !set a column to browse
BrowseSt.InsertControl=?Insert        !set the control to add records
BrowseSt.ChangeControl=?Change        !set the control to change records
BrowseSt.DeleteControl=?Delete        !set the control to delete records
SELF.SetAlerts()                     !alert any keys for ThisWindow
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()        !shut down things
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()           !call base class shut down

```

```
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Close           !close State and related files
Relate:State.Kill            !shut down Relate:State object
GlobalErrors.Kill            !shut down GlobalErrors object
RETURN ReturnValue

Access:State.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(State,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'State'
SELF.Buffer &= ST:Record
SELF.AddKey(ST:StateCodeKey,'ST:StateCodeKey',0)

Relate:State.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:State.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:State,1)
```

BrowseClass Properties

BrowseClass Properties

The BrowseClass inherits all the properties of the ViewManager from which it is derived. See *ViewManager Properties* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the BrowseClass contains the following properties:

ActiveInvisible (obscured browse list action)

ActiveInvisible BYTE

The **ActiveInvisible** property indicates whether to fill or refill the browse queue when the browse LIST is "invisible" because it is on a non-selected TAB or is otherwise hidden. A value of one (1) refills the queue when the LIST is invisible; a value of zero (0) suppresses the refill.

Setting ActiveInvisible to zero (0) improves performance for procedures with "invisible" browse lists; however, buffer contents for the invisible browse list are not current and should not be relied upon.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method implements the behavior specified by the ActiveInvisible property.

See Also: ResetQueue

AllowUnfilled (display filled list)**AllowUnfilled BYTE**

The **AllowUnfilled** property indicates whether to always display a "full" list, or to allow a partially filled list when the result set "ends" in mid-list. A value of one (1) displays a partially filled list and improves performance by suppressing any additional reads needed to fill the list; a value of zero (0) always displays a filled list.

Setting AllowUnfilled to one (1) improves performance for browse lists, especially for those using SQL data.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method implements the behavior specified by the AllowUnfilled property.

See Also: ResetQueue

ArrowAction (edit-in-place action on arrow key)

ArrowAction **BYTE**

The **ArrowAction** property indicates the action to take when the end user presses the up or down arrow key during an edit-in-place process. There are three types of actions that ArrowAction controls:

- what to do with any changes (default, save, abandon, or prompt),
- what mode to use next (continue editing or revert to non-edit mode),
- what column to edit next (current column or first editable column).

The specified actions are implemented by the Ask method. Set the actions by assigning, adding, or subtracting the following EQUATEd values to ArrowAction. The following EQUATEs are in ABBROWSE.INC:

```

ITEMIZE,PRE(EIPAction)
Default      EQUATE(0)      !save according to the Ask method
Always       EQUATE(1)      !always save the changes
Never        EQUATE(2)      !never save the changes
Prompted     EQUATE(4)      !ask whether to save the changes
Remain       EQUATE(8)      !continue editing
RetainColumn EQUATE(16)     !maintain column position in new row
END

```

Example:

```

BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Prompted      !ask to save changes
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Prompted+EIPAction:Remain !ask to save, keep editing
                                           !1st editable column
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn!default save, keep editing
                                           !same column

```

See Also: Ask

AskProcedure (update procedure)

AskProcedure USHORT

The **AskProcedure** property identifies the procedure to update a browse item. A value of zero (0) uses the BrowseClass object's own AskRecord method to do updates. Any other value uses a separate procedure registered with the WindowManager object.

Implementation: Typically, the WindowManager object (Init method) sets the value of the AskProcedure property when a separate update procedure is needed. The Ask method passes the AskProcedure value to the WindowManager.Run method to indicate which procedure to execute.

See Also: Ask, AskRecord, WindowManager.Run

ChangeControl (browse change/update control number)

ChangeControl SIGNED

The **ChangeControl** property contains the number of the browse's change/update control. This is typically the value of the Change BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map change behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the ChangeControl property. You should initialize the ChangeControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolBarButtons

CurrentChoice (current LIST control entry number)**CurrentChoice** LONG, PROTECTED

The **CurrentChoice** property represents the entry number of the highlighted record in a LIST control.

Implementation: The CurrentChoice property is updated as the scroll bar for the LIST control is moved within the Listbox.

DeleteAction (edit-in-place action on delete key)**DeleteAction** BYTE

The **DeleteAction** property indicates the action to take when the end user presses the DELETE key during an edit-in-place process. **DeleteAction** controls what mode to use next (continue editing or revert to non-edit mode).

The specified actions are implemented by the Ask method. Set the actions by assigning, adding, or subtracting the following EQUATED values to ArrowAction. The following EQUATES are in ABBROWSE.INC:

```

ITEMIZE,PRE(EIPAction)
Default    EQUATE(0)      !save according to the Ask method
Always     EQUATE(1)      !always save the changes
Never      EQUATE(2)      !never save the changes
Prompted   EQUATE(4)      !ask whether to save the changes
Remain     EQUATE(8)      !continue editing
END

```

DeleteControl (browse delete control number)**DeleteControl** SIGNED

The **DeleteControl** property contains the number of the browse's delete control. This is typically the value of the Delete BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map delete behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the DeleteControl property. You should initialize the DeleteControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolbarButtons

EditList (list of edit-in-place controls)

EditList &BrowseEditQueue, PROTECTED

The **EditList** property is a reference to a structure containing a list of edit-in-place classes for use with specific browse list columns.

The AddEditControl method adds new edit-in-place classes and their associated browse list columns to the EditList property.

Implementation: You do not need to initialize this property to implement the default edit-in-place controls. The EditList property supports custom edit-in-place controls.

The EditList property is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
BrowseEditQueue QUEUE,TYPE
Field           UNSIGNED
FreeUp          BYTE
Control         &EditClass
                END
```

See Also: AddEditControl

EIP (edit-in-place manager)

EIP &BrowseEIPManager

The **EIP** property is a reference to the BrowseEIPManager class used by this BrowseClass object.

See Also: Init

EnterAction (edit-in-place action on enter key)

EnterAction **BYTE**

The **EnterAction** property indicates the action to take when the end user presses the ENTER key during an edit-in-place process. There are two types of actions that EnterAction controls:

- what to do with any changes (default, save, abandon, or prompt),
- what mode to use next (continue editing or revert to non-edit mode).

The specified actions are implemented by the Ask method. Set the actions by assigning, adding, or subtracting the following EQUATEd values to ArrowAction. The following EQUATEs are in ABBROWSE.INC:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(EIPAction)
Default  EQUATE(0)      !save according to the Ask method
Always   EQUATE(1)      !always save the changes
Never    EQUATE(2)      !never save the changes
Prompted EQUATE(4)      !ask whether to save the changes
Remain   EQUATE(8)      !continue editing
END
```

Example:

```
BRW1.EnterAction = EIPAction:Prompted      !ask to save changes
BRW1.EnterAction = EIPAction:Prompted+EIPAction:Remain !ask to save, keep
editing
```

See Also: Ask

FocusLossAction (edit-in-place action on lose focus)

FocusLossAction **BYTE**

The **FocusLossAction** property indicates the action to take with regard to pending changes when the edit control loses focus during an edit-in-place process.

The specified action is implemented by the Ask method. Set the action by assigning, adding, or subtracting one of the following EQUATEd values to FocusLossAction. The following EQUATEs are in ABBROWSE.INC:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(EIPAction)
Default    EQUATE(0)      !save according to the Ask method
Always     EQUATE(1)      !always save the changes
Never      EQUATE(2)      !never save the changes
Prompted   EQUATE(4)      !ask whether to save the changes
END
```

Example:

```
BRW1.FocusLossAction = EIPAction:Prompted    !ask to save changes
```

See Also: Ask

HasThumb (vertical scroll bar flag)

HasThumb **BYTE**

The **HasThumb** property indicates whether BrowseClass object's LIST control has a vertical scroll bar. A value of one (1) indicates a scroll bar; a value of zero (0) indicates no scroll bar.

Implementation: The SetAlerts method sets the value of the HasThumb property. The UpdateThumb method uses the HasThumb property to implement correct thumb and scroll bar behavior.

See Also: ListControl, SetAlerts, UpdateThumb

HideSelect (hide select button)

HideSelect **BYTE**

The **HideSelect** property indicates whether to HIDE the Select button (as indicated by the SelectControl property) when the browse is called for update purposes (as indicated by the Selecting property). A value of one (1) hides the select button; a value of zero (0) always displays the select button.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method implements the behavior specified by the HideSelect property.

See Also: ResetQueue, SelectControl, Selecting

ILC(reference to IListControl interface)

ILC **&IListControl**

The **ILC** property is a reference to the IListControl interface which is passed to the Init method. The IListControl interface is used to implement standard behaviors for a listbox. See the IListControl interface section for more information.

Implementation: The Init method creates an instance of ILC for the list control. The Kill method disposes of that interface instance.

See Also: BrowseClass.Init, BrowseClass.Kill

InsertControl (browse insert control number)

InsertControl **SIGNED**

The **InsertControl** property contains the number of the browse's insert control. This is typically the value of the Insert BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map Insert behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the InsertControl property. You should initialize the InsertControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolbarButtons

ListQueue (browse data queue reference)

ListQueue **&BrowseQueue, PROTECTED**

The **ListQueue** property is a reference to a structure that is the source of the data elements displayed in the browse LIST.

The BrowseClass.Init method initializes the ListQueue property. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: Init

Loaded (browse queue loaded flag)

Loaded **BYTE, PROTECTED**

The **Loaded** property contains a value that indicates whether or not the BrowseClass object has tried to load the browse list queue. The BrowseClass uses this property to ensure the browse queue gets loaded and to avoid redundant reloads.

Popup (browse popup menu reference)

Popup &PopupClass

The **Popup** property is a reference to the PopupClass class used by this BrowseClass object.

Implementation: Because it directly references the PopupClass, the BrowseClass header INCLUDEs the PopupClass header. That is, the BrowseClass's implementation of the PopupClass is automatic. You need take no action.

The BrowseClass.Init method instantiates the PopupClass object referenced by the Popup property. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: Init

PrevChoice (prior LIST control entry number)

PrevChoice LONG, PROTECTED

The **PrevChoice** property represents the entry number of the previously selected record in a LIST control.

Implementation: The PrevChoice property is updated as the scroll bar for the LIST control is moved within the Listbox.

PrintControl (browse print control number)

PrintControl SIGNED

The **PrintControl** property contains the number of the browse's print control. This is typically the value of the Print BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map Print behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the PrintControl property. You should initialize the PrintControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolbarButtons

PrintProcedure (print procedure)

PrintProcedure USHORT

The **PrintProcedure** property identifies the procedure to execute when the Browse Print action is called. The procedure name is registered with the WindowManager object.

Implementation: Typically, the WindowManager object (Init method) sets the value of the PrintProcedure property when a Browse Print is called. The Ask method passes the AskProcedure value to the WindowManager.Run method to indicate which procedure to execute.

See Also: Ask
AskRecord
WindowManager.Run

Processors (reference to ProcessorQueue)

ListQueue &QUEUE, PROTECTED

The **Processors** property is a reference to the ProcessorQueue queue which contains references to the RecordProcessor interface and manages several processes.

See Also: BrowseClass.Init, BrowseClass.Kill

Query (reference to QueryClass)

Query &QueryClass

The **Query** property is a reference to the QueryClass which manages Query-by-Example processes for the BrowseClass.

See Also: BrowseClass.Init
BrowseClass.Kill

QueryControl (browse query control number)

QueryControl **SIGNED**

The **QueryControl** property contains the number of the browse's query (QBE) control. This is typically the value of the QBE BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map QBE behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the QueryControl property. You should initialize the QueryControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolbarButtons

QueryShared (share query with multiple sorts)

QueryShared **BYTE**

The **QueryShared** property contains a value that tells the BrowseClass whether or not to keep queries active when changing different sort orders. An example of this is when switching from one tab control to another in the active browse.

A value of zero (0) disables sharing (the query is only active for the tab in which it is set); a value of 1 enables sharing.

Implementation: The QueryShared property is set by the Query Button template interface when the **Auto-share between tabs** option is checked.

QuickScan (buffered reads flag)**QuickScan BYTE**

The **QuickScan** property contains a value that tells the BrowseClass whether or not to quickscan when page-loading the browse list queue. Quick scanning only affects file systems that use multi-record buffers. See *Database Drivers* for more information.

A value of zero (0) disables quick scanning; a non-zero value enables quick scanning. Quick scanning is the normal way to read records for browsing. However, rereading the buffer may provide slightly improved data integrity in some multi-user circumstances at the cost of substantially slower reads.

Implementation: TheBrowseClass.Fetch method implements the faster reads only during the page-loading process, and only if the QuickScan property is not zero. The BrowseClass.Fetch method SENDs the 'QUICKSCAN=ON' driver string to the applicable files' database drivers with the RelationManager.SetQuickScan method.

Note: The RelationManager.SetQuickScan method does *not* set the BrowseClass.QuickScan property. However if you set the BrowseClass.QuickScan property to 1, the BrowseClass uses the RelationManager.SetQuickScan method to SEND the QUICKSCAN driver string to the appropriate files.

See Also: Fetch, RelationManager.SetQuickScan.

RetainRow (highlight bar refresh behavior)

RetainRow **BYTE**

The **RetainRow** property indicates whether the BrowseClass object tries to maintain the highlight bar in the same list row following a change in sort order, an update, or other browse refresh action. A value of one (1) maintains the current highlight bar row; a value of zero (0) lets the highlight bar move to the first row.

Setting RetainRow to one (1) can cause a performance penalty in applications using TopSpeed's pre-Accelerator ODBC driver.

Implementation: The Init method sets the RetainRow property to one (1). The ResetQueue method implements the behavior specified by the RetainRow property.

See Also: Init, ResetQueue

SelectControl (browse select control number)

SelectControl **SIGNED**

The **SelectControl** property contains the number of the browse's select control. This is typically the value of the Select BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map Select behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the SelectControl property. You should initialize the SelectControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolbarButtons

Selecting (select mode only flag)**Selecting BYTE**

The **Selecting** property indicates whether the BrowseClass object selects a browse item or updates browse items. A value of zero (0) sets update mode; a value of one (1) sets select only mode.

The HideSelect property is only effective when the Selecting property indicates update mode.

Implementation: In select mode, a DOUBLE-CLICK or ENTER selects the item; otherwise, a DOUBLE-CLICK or ENTER updates the item.

See Also: HideSelect

SelectWholeRecord (select entire record flag)**SelectWholeRecord BYTE**

The **SelectWholeRecord** property indicates whether an UpdateViewRecord should be called in the TakeEvent method. A value of one (1) will get the whole record from the view; a value of zero (0), the default, gets the record from the buffer.

See Also: UpdateViewRecord, TakeEvent

Sort (browse sort information)

Sort &BrowseSortOrder

The **Sort** property is a reference to a structure containing all the sort information for this BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass methods use this property to implement multiple sort orders, range limits, filters, and locators for a single browse list.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Sort property mimics or shadows the inherited ViewManager.Order property. The Sort property is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
BrowseSortOrder  QUEUE(SortOrder),TYPE  !browse sort information
Locator          &LocatorControl        !locator for this sort order
Resets           &FieldPairsClass        !reset fields for this sort order
Thumb           &ThumbClass              !ThumbClass for this sort order
END
```

Notice this BrowseSortOrder queue contains all the fields in the SortOrder queue declared in ABFILE.INC as follows:

```
SortOrder        QUEUE,TYPE              !VIEW sort information
Filter           &FilterQueue             !ANDed filter expressions
FreeElement      ANY                      !The Free key element
LimitType        BYTE                     !Range limit type flag
MainKey          &KEY                     !The KEY
Order            &STRING                  !ORDER expression (equal to KEY)
RangeList        &FieldPairsClass        !fields in the range limit
END
```

And the SortOrder queue contains a reference to the FilterQueue declared in ABFILE.INC as follows:

```
FilterQueue      QUEUE,TYPE              !VIEW filter information
ID               STRING(30)              !filter ID
Filter           &STRING                  !filter expression
END
```

So, the BrowseSortOrder queue is, among other things, a queue of queues.

The AddSortOrder method defines sort orders for the browse. The SetSort method applies or activates a sort order for the browse. Only one sort order is active at a time.

See Also: AddSortOrder, SetSort

StartAtCurrent (initial browse position)

StartAtCurrent BYTE

The **StartAtCurrent** property indicates whether the BrowseClass object initially positions to the first item in the sort order or positions to the item specified by the contents of the Browse's view buffer. A value of zero (0 or False) positions to the first item; a value of one (1 or True) positions to the item specified by the contents of the view buffer.

Implementation: The SetSort method implements the StartAtCurrent initial position. The SetSort method positions the browse list based on the contents of the fields in the active sort order, including the free element field.

Example:

```
BRW1.StartAtCurrent = True
ST:StateCode = 'K'                            !set key component value
BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
```

See Also: SetSort

TabAction (edit-in-place action on tab key)**TabAction BYTE**

The **TabAction** property indicates the action to take when the end user presses the TAB key during an edit-in-place process. There are two types of actions that TabAction controls:

- what to do with pending changes (default, save, abandon, or prompt),
- what mode to use next (continue editing or revert to non-edit mode).

The specified actions are implemented by the Ask method. Set the actions by assigning, adding, or subtracting the following EQUATEd values to TabAction. The following EQUATEs are in ABBROWSE.INC:

```

ITEMIZE,PRE(EIPAction)
Default    EQUATE(0)      !save according to the Ask method
Always     EQUATE(1)      !always save the changes
Never      EQUATE(2)      !never save the changes
Prompted   EQUATE(4)      !ask whether to save the changes
Remain     EQUATE(8)      !continue editing
END

```

Example:

```

BRW1.TabAction = EIPAction:Prompted      !ask to save changes
BRW1.TabAction = EIPAction:Prompted+EIPAction:Remain !ask to save, keep
editing

```

See Also: Ask

Toolbar (browse Toolbar object)

Toolbar &ToolbarClass

The **Toolbar** property is a reference to the ToolbarClass for this BrowseClass object. The ToolbarClass object collects toolbar events and passes them on to the active ToolbarTarget object for processing.

The AddToolbarTarget method registers a ToolbarTarget, such as a ToolbarListBoxClass object, as a potential target of a ToolbarClass object.

The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active target for a ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass object for a browse is the object that detects toolbar events, such as scroll down or page down, and passes them on to the *active* ToolbarListBoxClass (ToolbarTarget) object. In the standard template implementation, there is a single global toolbar, and a ToolbarClass object per procedure that may drive several different browses and forms, each of which is a ToolbarTarget. Only one ToolbarTarget is active at a time.

See Also: ToolbarItem, AddToolbarTarget, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

ToolbarItem (browse ToolbarTarget object)

ToolbarItem &ToolbarListBoxClass

The **ToolbarItem** property is a reference to the ToolbarListBoxClass for this BrowseClass object. The ToolbarListBoxClass (ToolbarTarget) object receives toolbar events (from a ToolbarClass object) and processes them.

The AddToolbarTarget method registers a ToolbarTarget, such as a ToolbarListBoxClass object, as a potential target of a ToolbarClass object.

The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active target for a ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass object for a browse is the object that detects toolbar events, such as scroll down or page down, and passes them on to the *active* ToolbarListBoxClass (ToolbarTarget) object. In the standard template implementation, there is a single global toolbar, and a ToolbarClass object per procedure that may drive several different browses and forms, each of which is a ToolbarTarget. Only one ToolbarTarget is active at a time.

See Also: Toolbar, AddToolbarTarget, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

ToolControl (browse toolbox control number)

ToolControl **SIGNED**

The **ToolControl** property contains the number of the browse's toolbox control. This is typically the value of the Toolbox BUTTON's field equate. The BrowseClass methods use this value to enable and disable the control when appropriate, to post events to the control, to map Toolbox behavior to corresponding popup menu choices, etc.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Init method does not initialize the ToolControl property. You should initialize the ToolControl property after the BrowseClass.Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: UpdateToolbarButtons

ViewControl (view button)

ViewControl **SIGNED**

The **ViewControl** property contains the number (field equate) of the browse's view button control.

Window (WindowManager object)

Window **&WindowManager**

The **Window** property is a reference to the WindowManager object for this BrowseClass object. The WindowManager object forwards events to the active BrowseClass object for processing.

The WindowManager.AddItem method registers the BrowseClass object with the WindowManager object, so the WindowManager object can forward events.

The Init method sets the value of the Window property.

Implementation: The WindowManager object calls the BrowseClass.TakeEvent method so the BrowseClass object can handle the events as needed.

See Also: Init, WindowManager.AddItem

BrowseClass Methods

BrowseClass Methods

The BrowseClass inherits all the methods of the ViewManager from which it is derived. See *ViewManager Methods* for more information.

BrowseClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the BrowseClass, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the BrowseClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the BrowseClass object
AddEditControl	specify custom edit-in-place for a browse field
AddField	identify corresponding FILE and QUEUE fields
AddLocator	associate a locator with its sort order
AddResetField	specify a field that refreshes the browse list
AddSortOrder	add a sort order to the browse list
AddToolbarTarget	associate the browse list with a toolbar object
SetAlertsv	alert keys for list, locator, and edit controls
Kill v	shut down the BrowseClass object

Mainstream Use:

Nextv	get the next view record in sequence
Previousv	get the previous view record in sequence
Ask	update the selected item
TakeEventv	process the current ACCEPT loop event
TakeNewSelectionv	process a new browse list item selection

v These methods are also Virtual.

Occasional Use:

ApplyRange	refresh browse list to specified range limit
AskRecord	edit-in-place the selected item
PostNewSelection	post an EVENT:NewSelection to the browse list
Records	return the number of records in the browse list
ResetResets	snapshot the current value of the Reset fields
ResetThumbLimits	reset thumb limits to match the result set
TakeAcceptedLocator	apply an entered locator value

UpdateResets	copy reset fields to file buffer
UpdateThumb	position the scrollbar thumb
UpdateThumbFixed	position the scrollbar fixed thumb
UpdateWindow v	apply pending scroll, locator, range, etc.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

ApplyRange	conditionally range limit and filter the records
Fetch	loads a page of items into the browse list
Kill	shut down the BrowseClass object
Next	get the next record from the browse view
Previous	get the previous record from the browse view
Reset	reset the view position
ResetFromAsk	reset browse object after update
ResetFromBuffer	refill queue based on current record buffer
ResetFromFile	refill queue based on FILE POSITION
ResetFromView	reset browse object to its result set
ResetQueue	fill or refill the browse queue
ScrollEnd	scroll to the first or last item
ScrollOne	scroll up or down one item
ScrollPage	scroll up or down one page of items
SetAlerts	alert keys for list, locator, and edit controls
SetQueueRecord	copy data from file buffer to queue buffer
SetSort	apply sort order to browse
ResetSort	apply sort order to browse
TakeKey	process an alerted keystroke
TakeEvent	process the current ACCEPT loop event
TakeNewSelection	process a new browse list item selection
TakeScroll	process a scroll event
TakeVCRScroll	process a VCR scroll event
UpdateBuffer	copy data from queue buffer to file buffer
UpdateViewRecord	copy selected item to corresponding file buffers
UpdateWindow	apply pending scroll, locator, range, etc.

Tip

Use ResetSort followed by UpdateWindow to refresh and redisplay your ABC BrowseBoxes. Or, use the WindowManager.Reset method.

AddEditControl (specify custom edit-in-place class)

AddEditControl([*editclass*], *column* [, *autofree*])

AddEditControl	Specifies a custom edit-in-place class for a browse field.
<i>editclass</i>	The label of the EditClass. If omitted, the specified <i>column</i> is not editable.
<i>column</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the browse list column to edit with the specified <i>editclass</i> object. A value of one (1) indicates the first column; a two (2) indicates the second column, etc.
<i>autofree</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the BrowseClass.Kill method DISPOSEs of the <i>editclass</i> object. A zero (0) value leaves the object intact. A non-zero value DISPOSEs the object. If omitted, <i>autofree</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **AddEditControl** method specifies the *editclass* that defines the edit-in-place control for the browse *column*. Use *autofree* with caution; you should only DISPOSE of memory allocated with a NEW statement. See the *Language Reference* for more information on NEW and DISPOSE.

Implementation: You do not need to call this method to use the default *editclass*. If you do not call the AddEditControl method for a browse list column, the BrowseClass automatically instantiates the EditClass declared in ABBROWSE.INC for that column.

The *autofree* parameter defaults to zero (0). The BrowseClass.Kill method DISPOSEs the editclass objects only if *autofree* contains a non-zero value.

The BrowseClass.Ask method instantiates the *editclass* objects as needed, then creates and deletes the edit-in-place control upon the end user's insert or change request.

Example:

```

INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )           !declare browse & related classes
INCLUDE( 'MYCOMBO.INC' )           !declare custom Edit-in-place control class
!other browse class declarations
CODE
MyBrowse.AddEditControl(,1)         !column 1 not editable
MyBrowse.AddEditControl(ComboClass,2) !edit column 2 with combo control

```

See Also: Ask

AddField (specify a FILE/QUEUE field pair)

AddField(*filefield*, *queuefield*)

AddField	Identifies the corresponding FILE and QUEUE fields for a browse list column.
<i>filefield</i>	The fully qualified label of the FILE field or memory variable. The <i>filefield</i> is the original source of the browse LIST's data.
<i>queuefield</i>	The fully qualified label of the corresponding QUEUE field. The <i>queuefield</i> is loaded from the <i>filefield</i> , and is the immediate source of the browse LIST's data.

The **AddField** method identifies the corresponding FILE and QUEUE fields for a browse list column. You must call AddField for each column displayed in the browse list.

You may also use the AddField method to pair memory variables with QUEUE fields by specifying a variable label as the *filefield* parameter.

Implementation: For browses with edit-in-place, you must add fields (call the AddField method) in the same sequence that you declare the browse QUEUE fields.

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')                !declare browse & related classes
States  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(StFile) !declare States file
ByCode  KEY(StFile:Code),NOCASE,OPT
Record  RECORD,PRE()
Code     STRING(2)
Name     STRING(20)
        END
        END
StQType  QUEUE,TYPE                        !declare the St QUEUE type
Code     LIKE(StFile:Code)
Name     LIKE(StFile:Name)
Position STRING(512)
        END
BrowseStClass CLASS(BrowseClass),TYPE      !declare the BrowseSt CLASS
Q          &StQType
        END
StQ        StQType                         !declare the (real) StQ QUEUE
BrowseSt  BrowseStClass                    !declare the BrowseSt object
CODE
    BrowseSt.AddField(StFile:Code,BrowseSt.Q.Code) !pair up fields in
    BrowseSt.AddField(StFile:Name,BrowseSt.Q.Name) !FILE & QUEUE

```

AddItem(program the BrowseClass object)

AddItem(*RecordProcessor*)

AddItem Adds specific functionality to the BrowseClass object.

RecordProcessor The label of a RecordProcessor interface.

The **AddItem** method registers an ABC Library interface with the BrowseClass object and adds the interface's specific functionality to the BrowseClass.

See Also: BrowseClass.Kill

AddLocator (specify a locator)

AddLocator(*locator*)

AddLocator Specifies a locator object for a specific sort order.

locator The label of the locator object.

The **AddLocator** method specifies a locator object for the sort order defined by the preceding call to the AddSortOrder or SetSort method. Typically, you call the AddLocator method immediately after the AddSortOrder method.

Implementation: The specified *locator* is sort order specific--it is enabled only when the associated sort order is active. The SetSort method applies or activates a sort order for the browse. Only one sort order is active at a time.

Example:

```
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(BrowseSt:Step,StFile:ByCode) !add sort order and
BrowseSt.AddLocator(BrowseSt:Locator) !associated locator
BrowseSt:Locator.Init(?Loc,StFile:StCode,1,BrowseSt)!init locator object
```

See Also: AddSortOrder, LocatorClass, SetSort

AddResetField (set a field to monitor for changes)

AddResetField(*resetfield*)

AddResetField Specifies a field that resets the browse list when the contents of the field changes.

resetfield The label of the field to monitor for changes.

For the active sort order (defined by the preceding call to the AddSortOrder or SetSort method), the **AddResetField** method specifies a field that the browse object monitors for changes, then, when the contents of the field changes, refreshes the browse list. Typically, you call the AddResetField method immediately after the AddSortOrder method.

You may call AddResetField multiple times to establish multiple reset fields for a sort order.

Implementation: The specified *resetfield* is sort order specific--it is enabled only when the associated sort order is active. The SetSort method sets the active sort order for the browse. SetSort also calls ApplyRange to monitor the reset fields for changes and SetSort resets the browse when a change occurs.

The WindowManager.Reset method also initiates an evaluation of the reset fields and a subsequent browse reset if needed for any browse objects registered with the WindowManager.

Example:

```
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(BrowseSt:Step,StFile:ByCode) !add sort order
BrowseSt.AddLocator(BrowseSt:Locator)             !and associated locator
BrowseSt.AddResetField(Local:StFilter)             !and associated reset field
```

See Also: AddSortOrder, SetSort, WindowManager.Reset

AddSortOrder (specify a browse sort order)

AddSortOrder([*thumbstep*] [, *key*]), **PROC**

AddSortOrder Specifies an additional sort order for the browse list.

<i>thumbstep</i>	The label of the StepClass object that controls vertical scroll bar and thumb behavior. If omitted, the vertical scroll bar exhibits Fixed Thumb behavior. See <i>Control Templates--BrowseBox</i> for more information on thumb behavior.
<i>key</i>	The label of the KEY to sort by. If omitted, the browse list is not sorted--the items appear in physical order, or in the order specified by the inherited AppendOrder method.

The **AddSortOrder** method specifies an additional sort order for the browse list and returns the sort order's sequence number for use with the SetSort method. You must call the AddSortOrder method for each different sort order applied to the browse list.

The AddLocator method adds an associated locator for the sort order defined by the preceding call to AddSortOrder.

The AddResetField method adds an associated reset field for the sort order defined by the preceding call to AddSortOrder. You may add multiple reset fields for each sort order with multiple calls to AddResetField.

The inherited AddRange method adds an associated range limit for the sort order defined by the preceding call to AddSortOrder.

Implementation: The AddSortOrder method adds an entry at a time to the Sort property.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(BrowseSt:Step,StFile:ByCode) !add sort order
BrowseSt.AddLocator(BrowseSt:Locator) !and associated locator
BrowseSt.AddResetField(Local:StFilter) !and associated reset field
```

See Also: AddLocator, AddResetField, Sort, StepClass, SetSort, ViewManager.AddRange, ViewManager.AppendOrder

AddToolbarTarget (set the browse toolbar)**AddToolbarTarget(*toolbar*)****AddToolbarTarget** Registers the browse list as a potential target of the specified *toolbar*.*toolbar* The label of the ToolbarClass object that directs toolbar events to this BrowseClass object.

The **AddToolbarTarget** method registers the BrowseClass object as a potential target of the specified *toolbar*.

The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active target for a ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The Toolbar object for a browse is the object that detects toolbar events, such as scroll down or page down, and passes them on to the *active* ToolbarTarget object. In the standard template implementation, there is a single global toolbar, and a Toolbar object per procedure that may drive several different browses and forms, each of which is a ToolbarTarget. Only one ToolbarTarget is active at a time.

Example:

```
BrowseSt.AddToolbarTarget(Browse:Toolbar)  !tie BrowseSt object to Toolbar object
BrowseZIP.AddToolbarTarget(Browse:Toolbar) !tie BrowseZIP object to Toolbar object
!program code
Browse:Toolbar.SetTarget(?StList)           !state list is current toolbar target
!program code
Browse:Toolbar.SetTarget(?ZIPList)          !ZIP list is current toolbar target
```

See Also: Toolbar, ToolbarItem, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

ApplyRange (refresh browse based on resets and range limits)

ApplyRange, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **ApplyRange** method checks the current status of reset fields and range limits and refreshes the browse list if necessary. Then it returns a value indicating whether a screen redraw is required.

The inherited **AddRange** method adds an associated range limit for each sort order. The **AddResetField** method establishes reset fields for each browse sort order.

Implementation: The **ApplyRange** method returns one (1) if a screen redraw is required or zero (0) if no redraw is required.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
IF BrowseSt.ApplyRange()      !refresh browse queue if things changed
  DISPLAY(?StList)           !redraw LIST if queue refreshed
END
```

See Also: **AddResetField, ViewManager.AddRange**

Ask (update selected browse item)**Ask**(*request*), VIRTUAL, PROC**Ask** Updates the selected browse record.*request* A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the requested update action. Valid actions are Insert, Change, and Delete.

The **Ask** method updates the selected browse record and returns a value indicating whether the requested update was completed or cancelled.

Implementation: Depending on the value of the AskProcedure property, the Ask method either calls the WindowManager.Run method to execute a specific update procedure, or it calls the AskRecord method to do an edit-in-place update.

The TakeEvent method calls the Ask method. The Ask method assumes the UpdateViewRecord method has been called to ensure correct record buffer contents.

Return value EQUATEs are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW:

```
RequestCompleted    EQUATE (1)      !Update Completed
RequestCancelled    EQUATE (2)      !Update Aborted
```

EQUATEs for *request* are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW:

```
InsertRecord        EQUATE (1)      !Add a record to table
ChangeRecord        EQUATE (2)      !Change the current record
DeleteRecord        EQUATE (3)      !Delete the current record
```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
!procedure data
CODE
!procedure code
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF SELF.DeleteControl
SELF.Window.Update()
SELF.Ask(DeleteRecord)          !delete a browse item
OF SELF.ChangeControl
SELF.Window.Update()
SELF.Ask(ChangeRecord)         !change a browse item
OF SELF.InsertControl
SELF.Window.Update()
SELF.Ask(InsertRecord)         !insert a browse item
```

```
OF SELF.SelectControl
  SELF.Window.Response = RequestCompleted
  POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
ELSE
  SELF.TakeAcceptedLocator
END
```

See Also: AskProcedure, AskRecord, TakeEvent

AskRecord (edit-in-place selected browse item)**AskRecord(*request*), VIRTUAL, PROC****AskRecord** Does edit-in-place update of the selected browse record.*request* A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the requested edit-in-place action. Valid edit-in-place actions are Insert, Change, and Delete.

The **AskRecord** method does edit-in-place updates for the selected browse row and column, then returns a value indicating whether the requested edit was completed or cancelled. The **AddEditControl** method specifies a custom **EditClass** for a specific browse column.

Implementation: The **AskRecord** method assumes the **UpdateViewRecord** method has been called to ensure correct record buffer contents. **AskRecord** should be followed by the **ResetFromAsk** method. The **Ask** method calls the **AskRecord** method.

Return value EQUATEs are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW:

```
RequestCompleted    EQUATE (1)      !Update Completed
RequestCancelled    EQUATE (2)      !Update Aborted
```

EQUATEs for *request* are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW:

```
InsertRecord        EQUATE (1)      !Add a record to table
ChangeRecord        EQUATE (2)      !Change the current record
DeleteRecord        EQUATE (3)      !Delete the current record
```

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
BrowseClass.Ask PROCEDURE(BYTE Req)
Response BYTE
CODE
LOOP
    SELF.Window.VCRRequest = VCR:None
    IF Req=InsertRecord THEN
        SELF.PrimeRecord
    END
    IF SELF.AskProcedure
        Response = SELF.Window.Run(SELF.AskProcedure,Req)    !do edit-in-place update
        SELF.ResetFromAsk(Req,Response)
    ELSE
        Response = SELF.AskRecord(Req)
    END
UNTIL SELF.Window.VCRRequest = VCR:None
RETURN Response
```

See Also: **AddEditControl**, **Ask**, **ResetFromAsk**

Fetch (get a page of browse items)**Fetch(*direction*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

Fetch	Loads a page of items into the browse list queue.
<i>direction</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to get the next set of items or the previous set of items.

The **Fetch** method loads the next or previous page of items into the browse list queue.

Implementation: Fetch is called by the ResetQueue, ScrollOne, ScrollPage, and ScrollEnd methods. A page of items is as many items as fits in the LIST control.

BrowseClass.Fetch *direction* value EQUATEs are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
FillBackward    EQUATE(1)
FillForward     EQUATE(2)
```

Example:

```
ScrollOne PROCEDURE(SIGNED Event)
CODE
  IF Event = Event:ScrollUp AND CurrentChoice > 1
    CurrentChoice -= 1
  ELSIF Event = Event:ScrollDown AND CurrentChoice < RECORDS(ListQueue)
    CurrentChoice += 1
  ELSE
    ItemsToFill = 1
    MyBrowse.Fetch( CHOOSE( Event = EVENT:ScrollUp, FillForward, FillBackward ))
  END
```

See Also: ResetQueue, ScrollOne, ScrollPage, ScrollEnd

Init(initialize the BrowseClass object)

Init (<i>listcontrol</i> , <i>viewposition</i> , <i>view</i> , <i>listqueue</i> , <i>relationmanager</i> , <i>windowmanager</i>)	
|<i>ilistcontrol</i> , <i>view</i> , <i>browsequeue</i> , <i>relationmanager</i> , <i>windowmanager</i> |	
Init	Initializes the BrowseClass object.
<i>listcontrol</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the browse's LIST control.
<i>ilistcontrol</i>	A reference to an IListControl interface.
<i>viewposition</i>	The label of a string field within the listqueue containing the POSITION of the view.
<i>view</i>	The label of the browse's underlying VIEW.
<i>listqueue</i>	The label of the listcontrol's data source QUEUE.
<i>browsequeue</i>	A reference to a BrowseQueue interface.
<i>relationmanager</i>	The label of the browse's primary file RelationManager object. See Relation Manager for more information.
<i>windowmanager</i>	The label of the browse's WindowManager object. See Window Manager for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the BrowseClass object.

```
Init(listcontrol, viewposition, view, listqueue, relationmanager,
    windowmanager)
    Initializes the BrowseClass object using the Standard Behaviour
    interface. For more information see the StandardBehaviour
    section.
```

```
Init(ilistcontrol, view, browsequeue, relationmanager,
    windowmanager)
    Initializes the BrowseClass object without the Standard
    Behaviour interface. The Init method calls the PARENT.Init
    (ViewManager.Init) method to initialize the browse's
    ViewManager object. See View Manager for more information.
    The Init method instantiates a PopupClass object for the browse.
    The Init method calls the WindowManager.AddItem method to
    register its presence with the WindowManager.
```

Example:

```

CODE                                     !Setup the BrowseClass object:
BrowseState.Init(?StateList,|          ! identify its LIST control,
    StateQ.Position,|              ! its VIEW position string,
    StateView,|                  ! its source/target VIEW,
    StateQ,|                    ! the LIST's source QUEUE,
    Relate:State|                ! the primary file RelationManager
    ThisWindow)                  ! the WindowManager

```

See Also: ViewManager.Init, PopupClass, WindowManager.AddItem, StandardBehavior
Interface

InitSort (initialize locator values)

InitSort (*neworder*), VIRTUAL

The **InitSort** method initializes locator values when a new sort order is applied to a browse list.

See Also: SetSort

Kill (shut down the BrowseClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method shuts down the BrowseClass object.

Implementation: Among other things, the BrowseClass.Kill method calls the PARENT.Kill (ViewManager.Kill) method to shut down the browse's ViewManager object. See *View Manager* for more information.

Example:

```
CODE                                     !Setup the BrowseClass object:
BrowseState.Init(?StateList,|           ! identify its LIST control,
    StateQ.Position,|               ! its VIEW position string,
    StateView,|                   ! its source/target VIEW,
    StateQ,|                       ! the LIST's source QUEUE,
    Relate:State|                 ! the primary file RelationManager
    ThisWindow)                   ! the WindowManager

!program code

BrowseState.Kill                       !shut down the BrowseClass object
```

See Also: ViewManager.Kill

Next (get the next browse item)**Next, VIRTUAL**

The **Next** method gets the next record from the browse view and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Next returns Level:Benign if successful, Level:Notify if it reached the end of the file, and Level:Fatal if it encountered a fatal error.

Implementation: Corresponding return value EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC. See *Error Class* for more information on these severity level EQUATES.

Level:Benign	EQUATE(0)
Level:User	EQUATE(1)
Level:Program	EQUATE(2)
Level:Fatal	EQUATE(3)
Level:Cancel	EQUATE(4)
Level:Notify	EQUATE(5)

The Next method is called by the Fetch and ResetThumbLimits(PRIVATE) methods. Among other things, Next calls the PARENT.Next (ViewManager.Next) method. See *ViewManager* for more information.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

CASE MyBrowse.Next()      !get next record
OF Level:Benign           !if successful, continue
OF Level:Fatal            !if fatal error
  RETURN                  ! end this procedure
OF Level:Notify           !if end of file reached
  MESSAGE('Reached end of file.') ! acknowledge EOF
END

```

See Also: Fetch

NotifyUpdateError (throw error on update)**NotifyUpdateError(), BYTE, VIRTUAL**

The **NotifyUpdateError** method returns an error code to the active ErrorManager when an attempted update to refresh a record has failed.

Implementation: The NotifyUpdateError is called from the BrowseClass UpdateViewRecord method, which is used to retrieve the VIEW record that corresponds to a chosen listbox record.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

IF SELF.ListQueue.Records()
  SELF.CurrentChoice = SELF.ILC.Choice()
  SELF.ListQueue.Fetch(SELF.CurrentChoice)
  WATCH(SELF.View)
  REGET(SELF.View,SELF.ListQueue.GetViewPosition())

  RC = ERRORCODE()

  IF RC = NoDriverSupport
    Pos = POSITION (SELF.View)
    RESET(SELF.View,SELF.ListQueue.GetViewPosition())
    WATCH(SELF.View)
    NEXT(SELF.View)
    RC = ERRORCODE()
    RESET(SELF.View,Pos)
  END
  IF RC <> 0
    SELF.NeedRefresh = SELF.NotifyUpdateError()
  END
END

```

See Also: UpdateViewRecord

PostNewSelection (post an EVENT:NewSelection to the browse list)

PostNewSelection

The **PostNewSelection** method posts an EVENT:NewSelection to the browse list to support scrolling, inserts, deletes, and other changes of position within the browse list.

Implementation: Event EQUATEs are declared in EQUATES.CLW.

Example:

UpdateMyBrowse ROUTINE

 !update code

 MyBrowse.ResetFromFile

 MyBrowse.PostNewSelection

 !after insert or change, reload Q from file

 !after update, post a new selection event

 !so window gets properly refreshed

Previous (get the previous browse item)

Previous, VIRTUAL

The **Previous** method gets the previous record from the browse view and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: Returns Level:Benign if successful, Level:Notify if it reached the end of the file, and Level:Fatal if it encountered a fatal error. Corresponding severity level EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC. See *Error Class* for more information on error severity levels.

Level:Benign	EQUATE(0)
Level:User	EQUATE(1)
Level:Program	EQUATE(2)
Level:Fatal	EQUATE(3)
Level:Cancel	EQUATE(4)
Level:Notify	EQUATE(5)

The Previous method is called by the Fetch and ResetThumbLimits methods. Among other things, Previous calls the PARENT.Previous (ViewManager.Previous) method. See *ViewManager* for more information.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CASE MyBrowse.Previous()      !get previous record
OF Level:Benign               !if successful, continue
OF Level:Fatal               !if fatal error
  RETURN                     ! end this procedure
OF Level:Notify              !if end of file reached
  MESSAGE('Reached end of file.')! acknowledge EOF
END
```

See Also: Fetch

Records (return the number of browse queue items)

Records, PROC

The **Records** method returns the number of records in the browse list queue *and* disables appropriate controls if the record count is zero.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

DeleteMyBrowse ROUTINE

!delete code

MyBrowse.Records() **!disable delete button (and menu) if no items**

ResetFields(reinitialize FieldPairsClass)

ResetFields

The **ResetFields** method reinitializes the FieldPairs recognized by the FieldPairsClass.

Implementation: The ResetFields method reinitializes the FieldPairs by first disposing the FieldsPairsClass and then initializing the FieldPairsClass.

See Also: FieldPairsClass.Init , FieldPairsClass.Kill

ResetFromAsk (reset browse after update)**ResetFromAsk(*request*, *response*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED****ResetFromAsk** Resets the BrowseClass object following an update.

request An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the type of update requested. Valid updates are insert, change, and delete.

response An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the requested update was completed or cancelled.

The **ResetFromAsk** method resets the BrowseClass object following an Ask or AskRecord update to a browse item.

Implementation: The Ask and AskRecord methods call ResetFromAsk as needed to reset the BrowseClass object.

ResetFromAsk FLUSHes the BrowseClass object's VIEW if needed, calls the appropriate "reset" method (ResetQueue, ResetFromFile, or ResetFromView) to refill the QUEUE, then carries out any pending scroll request made concurrently with the update. See *WindowManager.VCRRequest*.

EQUATEs for the *request* parameter are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW as follows:

```
InsertRecord  EQUATE (1)  !Add a record to table
ChangeRecord  EQUATE (2)  !Change the current record
DeleteRecord  EQUATE (3)  !Delete the current record
```

EQUATEs for the *response* parameter are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW as follows:

```
RequestCompleted  EQUATE (1)  !Update Completed
RequestCancelled  EQUATE (2)  !Update Aborted
```

Example:

```
BrowseClass.Ask PROCEDURE(BYTE Req)
Response BYTE
CODE
LOOP
    SELF.Window.VCRRequest = VCR:None
    IF Req=InsertRecord THEN
        SELF.PrimeRecord
    END
    IF SELF.AskProcedure
        Response = SELF.Window.Run(SELF.AskProcedure,Req)
        SELF.ResetFromAsk(Req,Response)           !reset the browse after update
    ELSE
        Response = SELF.AskRecord(Req)
    END
UNTIL SELF.Window.VCRRequest = VCR:None
RETURN Response
```

See Also: Ask, AskRecord, ResetQueue, ResetFromFile, ResetFromView,
 WindowManager.VCRRequest

ResetFromBuffer (fill queue starting from record buffer)**ResetFromBuffer, VIRTUAL**

The **ResetFromBuffer** method fills or refills the browse queue starting from the record in the primary file buffer (and secondary file buffers if applicable). If the record is found, ResetFromBuffer fills the browse queue starting from that record. If the record is not found, ResetFromBuffer fills the browse queue starting from the nearest matching record.

If the active sort order (key) allows duplicates and duplicate matches exist, ResetFromBuffer fills the browse queue starting from the *first* matching record.

Tip: Use ResetFromBuffer when the primary and secondary file positions and values are valid, but the result set may no longer match the buffer values. For example, after a locator or scrollbar thumb move.

Implementation: ResetFromBuffer succeeds even if there is no exactly matching record and is typically used to locate the appropriate record after a thumb movement.

ResetFromBuffer calls the ViewManager.Reset method for positioning, then calls the ResetQueue method to fill the browse queue.

Example:

```

IF EVENT() = EVENT:ScrollDrag          !if thumb moved
  IF ?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos} <= 1      !handle scroll to top
    POST(Event:ScrollTop, ?MyList)
  ELIF ?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos} = 100 !handle scroll to bottom
    POST(Event:ScrollBottom, ?MyList)
  ELSE                                  !handle intermediate scroll
    MyBrowse.Sort.FreeElement =
MyBrowse.Sort.Step.GetValue(?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos})
    MyBrowse.ResetFromBuffer            !and reload the queue from that point
  END
END

```

See Also: ViewManager.Reset, ResetQueue

ResetFromFile (fill queue starting from file POSITION)

ResetFromFile, VIRTUAL

The **ResetFromFile** method fills or refills the browse queue starting from the current POSITION of the primary file. If no POSITION has been established, ResetFromFile fills the browse queue starting from the beginning of the file.

Tip: Use ResetFromFile when the primary file position is valid but secondary records and their contents may not be. For example, when returning from an update.

Implementation: ResetFromFile succeeds even if the record buffer is cleared and is typically used to get the current record after an update.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.ResetFromAsk PROCEDURE(*BYTE Request,*BYTE Response)
CODE
IF Response = RequestCompleted
  FLUSH(SELF.View)
  IF Request = DeleteRecord
    DELETE(SELF.ListQueue)
    SELF.ResetQueue(Reset:Queue) !refill queue after delete
  ELSE
    SELF.ResetFromFile          !refill queue after insert or change
  END
ELSE
  SELF.ResetQueue(Reset:Queue)
END
```

ResetFromView (reset browse from current result set)

ResetFromView, VIRTUAL

The **ResetFromView** method resets the BrowseClass object to conform to the current result set.

Tip: Use **ResetFromView** when you want to reset for any changes that may have happened to the entire record set, such as new records added or deleted by other workstations.

Implementation: The SetSort method calls the ResetFromView method.

The ResetFromView method readjusts the scrollbar thumb if necessary. The ABC Templates override the BrowseClass.ResetFromView method to recalculate totals if needed.

Example:

```
BRW1.ResetFromView PROCEDURE
ForceRefresh:Cnt LONG
CODE
SETCURSOR(Cursor:Wait)
SELF.Reset
LOOP
CASE SELF.Next()
OF Level:Notify
BREAK
OF Level:Fatal
RETURN
END
SELF.SetQueueRecord
ForceRefresh:Cnt += 1
END
ForceRefresh = ForceRefresh:Cnt
SETCURSOR()
```

ResetQueue (fill or refill queue)**ResetQueue**(*resetmode*), **VIRTUAL****ResetQueue** Fills or refills the browse queue.

resetmode A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines how ResetQueue determines the highlighted record after the reset. A value of Reset:Queue highlights the currently selected item. A value of Reset:Done highlights a record based on the view's current position and other factors, such as the RetainRow property.

The **ResetQueue** method fills or refills the browse queue and appropriately enables or disables Change, Delete, and Select controls. The refill process depends on the value of the *resetmode* parameter and several other BrowseClass properties, including ActiveInvisible, AllowUnfilled, RetainRow, etc.

A *resetmode* value of Reset:Queue usually produces a more efficient queue refill than Reset:Done.

Implementation: ResetQueue calls the Fetch method to fill the queue.

The *resetmode* EQUATEs are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```

ITEMIZE,PRE(Reset)
Queue EQUATE
Done EQUATE
END

```

Example:

```

DeleteMyBrowse ROUTINE
!delete code
MyBrowse.ResetQueue(Reset:Queue) !after delete, refresh Q
MyBrowse.PostNewSelection          !after delete, post a new selection event
                                   !so window gets properly refreshed

```

See Also: ActiveInvisible, AllowUnfilled, RetainRow, ChangeControl, DeleteControl, SelectControl, Fetch

ResetResets (copy the Reset fields)

ResetResets, PROTECTED

The **ResetResets** method copies the current values of the Reset fields so any subsequent changes in their contents can be detected.

The AddResetField method adds an associated reset field for the sort order defined by the preceding call to AddSortOrder. You may add multiple reset fields for each sort order with multiple calls to AddResetField.

Example:

```
MyBrowse.CheckReset  PROCEDURE
  IF NOT SELF.Sort.Resets.Equal()  !if reset fields changed,
    SELF.ResetQueue(Reset:Queue)  !refresh Q
    SELF.ResetResets               !take a new copy of the reset field values
  END
```

See Also: AddResetField

ResetSort (apply sort order to browse)**ResetSort(*force*), VIRTUAL, PROC**

ResetSort	Reapplies the active sort order to the browse list.
<i>force</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to reset the browse conditionally or unconditionally. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets the browse; a value of zero (0 or False) only resets the browse as circumstances require (sort order changed, reset fields changed, first loading, etc.).

The **ResetSort** method reapplies the active sort order to the browse list and returns one (1) if the sort order changed; it returns zero (0) if the order did not change. Any range limits, locators, or reset fields associated with the sort order are enabled.

Tip: Use **ResetSort** followed by **UpdateWindow** to refresh and redisplay your **ABC BrowseBoxes**. Or, use the **WindowManager.Reset** method.

Implementation: The **ResetSort** method calls the **SetSort** method to apply the current sort order. The ABC Templates override the **ResetSort** method to apply the sort order based on the selected tab.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
BRW1.ResetSort FUNCTION(BYTE Force)    !apply appropriate sort order

CODE
IF CHOICE(?CurrentTab) = 1             !If 1st tab selected
    RETURN SELF.SetSort(1,Force)       !apply first sort order
ELSE                                   !otherwise
    RETURN SELF.SetSort(2,Force)       !apply second sort order
END
```

See Also: **AddRange**, **AddResetField**, **AddSortOrder**, **Set Sort**, **UpdateWindow**

ScrollEnd (scroll to first or last item)**ScrollEnd(*scrollevent*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

ScrollEnd	Scrolls to the first or last browse list item.
<i>scrollevent</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the requested scroll action. Valid scroll actions for this method are scrolls to the top or bottom of the list.

The **ScrollEnd** method scrolls to the first or last browse list item.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.TakeScroll method calls the ScrollEnd method.

A hexadecimal *scrollevent* value of EVENT:ScrollTop scrolls to the first list item. A value of EVENT:ScrollBottom scrolls to the last list item. Corresponding scroll event EQUATES are declared in EQUATES.CLW:

```
EVENT:ScrollTop      EQUATE (07H)
EVENT:ScrollBottom  EQUATE (08H)
```

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeScroll PROCEDURE( SIGNED Event )
CODE
IF RECORDS(SELF.ListQueue)
CASE Event
OF Event:ScrollUp OROF Event:ScrollDown
SELF.ScrollOne( Event )
OF Event:PageUp OROF Event:PageDown
SELF.ScrollPage( Event )
OF Event:ScrollTop OROF Event:ScrollBottom
SELF.ScrollEnd( Event )
END
END
```

See Also: TakeScroll

ScrollOne (scroll up or down one item)**ScrollOne**(*scrollevent*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

ScrollOne	Scrolls up or down one browse list item.
<i>scrollevent</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the requested scroll action. Valid scroll actions for this method are scrolls up or down a single list item.

The **ScrollOne** method scrolls up or down one browse list item.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.TakeScroll method calls the ScrollOne method.

A hexadecimal *scrollevent* value of EVENT:ScrollUp scrolls up one list item. A value of EVENT:ScrollDown scrolls down one list item. Corresponding scroll event EQUATES are declared in EQUATES.CLW:

```
EVENT:ScrollUp      EQUATE (03H)
EVENT:ScrollDown    EQUATE (04H)
```

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeScroll PROCEDURE( SIGNED Event )
CODE
IF RECORDS(SELF.ListQueue)
CASE Event
OF Event:ScrollUp OROF Event:ScrollDown
SELF.ScrollOne( Event )
OF Event:PageUp OROF Event:PageDown
SELF.ScrollPage( Event )
OF Event:ScrollTop OROF Event:ScrollBottom
SELF.ScrollEnd( Event )
END
END
```

See Also: TakeScroll

ScrollPage (scroll up or down one page)**ScrollPage**(*scrollevent*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

ScrollPage Scrolls up or down one page of browse list items.

scrollevent A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the requested scroll action. Valid scroll actions for this method are scrolls up one page or down one page of browse list items.

The **ScrollPage** method scrolls up or down one page of browse list items.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.TakeScroll method calls the ScrollPage method.

A hexadecimal *scrollevent* value of EVENT:PageUp scrolls up one page of browse list items. A value of EVENT:PageDown scrolls down one page of browse list items. Corresponding scroll event EQUATES are declared in EQUATES.CLW:

```
EVENT:PageUp            EQUATE (05H)
EVENT:PageDown        EQUATE (06H)
```

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeScroll PROCEDURE( SIGNED Event )
CODE
IF RECORDS(SELf.ListQueue)
CASE Event
OF Event:ScrollUp OROF Event:ScrollDown
SELF.ScrollOne( Event )
OF Event:PageUp OROF Event:PageDown
SELF.ScrollPage( Event )
OF Event:ScrollTop OROF Event:ScrollBottom
SELF.ScrollEnd( Event )
END
END
```

See Also: TakeScroll

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for list and locator controls)

SetAlerts, VIRTUAL

The **SetAlerts** method alerts standard keystrokes for the browse's list control and for any associated locator controls.

The BrowseClass.TakeKey method processes the alerted keystrokes.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.SetAlerts method alerts the mouse DOUBLE-CLICK, the INSERT, DELETE and CTRL+ENTER keys for the browse's list control and calls the LocaorClass.SetAlerts method for each associated locator control. Corresponding keycode EQUATEs are declared in KEYCODES.CLW.

The BrowseClass.SetAlerts method also sets up a popup menu for the browse list that mimics the behavior of any control buttons (insert, change, delete, select).

Example:

PrepareStateBrowse ROUTINE		!Setup the BrowseClass object:
BrowseState.Init(?StateList,	|	! identify its LIST control,
StateQ.Position,	|	! its VIEW position string,
StateView,	|	! its source/target VIEW,
StateQ,	|	! the LIST's source QUEUE,
Relate:State)		! and primary file RelationManager
BrowseState.SetAlerts		!alert LIST and locator keystrokes

See Also: TakeKey

SetLocatorField (set sort free element to passed field)**SetLocatorField** (*free*), VIRTUAL

SetLocatorField Sets the sort free element to the passed field.

free An ANY data type, passed by address, that contains the free element that will be used as the locator field.

The **SetLocatorField** method sets the specified locator sort to the browse list. The free element represents a potential sort that has modified the default sort in the browse list. That element now can become the active locator.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.SetLocatorFromSort call the SetLocatorField method.

SetLocatorFromSort (use sort like locator field)**SetLocatorFromSort** (*free*), VIRTUAL

SetLocatorFromSort Applies a specified locator to the browse list.

The **SetLocatorFromSort** method uses the first field of the sort as the locator field if there is a sort order active.

Implementation: None

SetQueueRecord (copy data from file buffer to queue buffer:BrowseClass)**SetQueueRecord, VIRTUAL**

The **SetQueueRecord** method copies corresponding data from the *filefield* fields to the *queuefield* fields specified by the AddField method. Typically these are the file buffer fields and the browse list's queue buffer fields so that the queue buffer matches the file buffers.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Fetch and BrowseClass.Ask methods call the SetQueueRecord method.

Example:

MyBrowseClass.SetQueueRecord PROCEDURE

CODE

```
SELF.Fields.AssignLeftToRight      !copy data from file to q buffer
SELF.ViewPosition = POSITION( SELF.View )!set the view position
!your custom code here
```

See Also: Ask, AddField, Fetch

SetSort (apply a sort order to the browse)**SetSort**(*order*, *force reset*), VIRTUAL, PROC

SetSort	Applies a specified sort order to the browse list.
<i>order</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the sort order to apply.
<i>force reset</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that tells the method whether to reset the browse conditionally or unconditionally. A value of zero (0 or False) resets the browse only if circumstances require (sort order changed, reset fields changed, first time loading); a value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets the browse.

The **SetSort** method applies the specified sort *order* to the browse list and returns one (1) if the sort order changed; it returns zero (0) if the sort order did not change. Any range limits, locators, and reset fields associated with the sort order are enabled and applied.

The *order* value is typically a value returned by the AddSortOrder method which identifies the particular sort order. Since AddSortOrder returns sequence numbers, a value of one (1) applies the sort order specified by the first call to AddSortOrder; two (2) applies the sort order specified by the next call to AddSortOrder; etc. A value of zero (0) applies the default sort order.

Implementation: The ResetSort method calls the SetSort method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

IF FIELD() = ?FirstTab           !if first tab selected
  IF MyBrowse.SetSort(1,0)       !apply the first sort order
    MyBrowse.ResetThumbLimits    !if sort changed, reset thumb limits
  END
  MyBrowse.UpdateBuffer          !update file buffer from selected item
END

```

See Also: AddRange, AddResetField, AddSortOrder, ResetSort

TakeAcceptedLocator (apply an accepted locator value)

TakeAcceptedLocator, VIRTUAL

The **TakeAcceptedLocator** method applies an accepted locator value to the browse list--the BrowseClass object scrolls the list to the requested item.

Locators with entry controls are the only locators whose values are accepted. Other types of locators are invoked in other ways, for example, with alerted keys. Locator values are accepted when the end user TABS off or otherwise switches focus away from the locator's entry control.

The AddLocator method establishes locators for the browse.

Implementation: The TakeAcceptedLocator method calls the appropriate LocatorClass.TakeAccepted method.

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyLocator           !focus on locator field
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted      !if accepted
    MyBrowse.TakeAcceptedLocator   !BrowseClass object handles it
  END
END
```

See Also: AddLocator

TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event:BrowseClass)

TakeEvent, VIRTUAL

The **TakeEvent** method processes the current ACCEPT loop event for the BrowseClass object. The TakeEvent method handles all events associated with the browse list except a new selection event. The TakeNewSelection method handles new selection events for the browse.

Implementation: The WindowManager.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeScroll or TakeKey method as appropriate.

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
!procedure code
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Browses)
    GET(SELF.Browses,I)
    SELF.Browses.Browse.TakeEvent
END
LOOP i=1 TO RECORDS(SELF.FileDrops)
    GET(SELF.FileDrops,i)
    ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
    SELF.FileDrops.FileDrop.TakeEvent
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeKey, TakeNewSelection, TakeScroll, WindowManager.TakeEvent

TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:BrowseClass)**TakeKey, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeKey** method processes an alerted keystroke for the BrowseClass object, including DOUBLE-CLICK, INSERT, CTRLENTER, or DELETE, and returns a value indicating whether any action was taken.

Implementation: TakeKey returns one (1) if any action is taken, otherwise it returns zero (0).

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeKey method as appropriate. The BrowseClass.TakeKey method calls the Locator.TakeKey method as appropriate.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyBrowseList      !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() EVENT:AlertKey      !if alerted keystroke
    MyBrowse.TakeKey             !BrowseClass object handles it
  END
END
```

See Also: TakeEvent

TakeNewSelection (process a new selection:BrowseClass)

TakeNewSelection, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeNewSelection** method processes a new browse list item selection and returns a value indicating whether a window redraw is needed.

Implementation: TakeNewSelection returns one (1) if a window redraw is needed, otherwise it returns zero (0).

 The TakeEvent method calls the TakeNewSelection method when appropriate.
 The BrowseClass.TakeNewSelection method calls the appropriate
 Locator.TakeNewSelection method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyBrowse           !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:NewSelection !if new selection
    MyBrowse.TakeNewSelection()  !BrowseClass object handles it
  ELSE                           !if other event
    MyBrowse.TakeEvent           !BrowseClass object handles it
  END
END
END
```

TakeScroll (process a scroll event)**TakeScroll**([*scrollevent*]), **VIRTUAL****TakeScroll** Processes a scroll event for the browse list.

scrollevent An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the scroll event. Valid scroll events are up one item, down one item, up one page, down one page, up to the first item, and down to the last item. If omitted, no scrolling occurs.

The **TakeScroll** method processes a scroll event for the browse list.

Implementation: A *scrollevent* value of EVENT:ScrollUp scrolls up one item; EVENT:ScrollDown scrolls down one item; EVENT:PageUp scrolls up one page; EVENT:PageDown scrolls down one page; EVENT:ScrollTop scrolls to the first list item; EVENT:ScrollBottom scrolls to the last list item. Corresponding *scrollevent* EQUATEs are declared in EQUATES.CLW.

```
EVENT:ScrollUp      EQUATE (03H)
EVENT:ScrollDown    EQUATE (04H)
EVENT:PageUp        EQUATE (05H)
EVENT:PageDown      EQUATE (06H)
EVENT:ScrollTop     EQUATE (07H)
EVENT:ScrollBottom  EQUATE (08H)
```

The TakeScroll method calls the ScrollEnd, ScrollOne, or ScrollPage method as needed.

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyBrowse      !focus on browse list
CASE EVENT()                !scroll event
OF EVENT:ScrollUp
OROF EVENT:ScrollDown
OROF EVENT:PageUp
OROF EVENT:PageDown
OROF EVENT:ScrollTop
OROF EVENT:ScrollBottom
  MyBrowse.TakeScroll      !BrowseClass object handles it
END
END
```

See Also: ScrollEnd, ScrollOne, ScrollPage

TakeVCRScroll (process a VCR scroll event)**TakeVCRScroll**([*vcrevent*]), VIRTUAL**TakeVCRScroll** Processes a VCR scroll event for the browse list.

vcrevent An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the scroll event. Valid scroll events are up one item, down one item, up one page, down one page, up to the first item, and down to the last item. If omitted, no scrolling occurs.

The **TakeVCRScroll** method processes a VCR scroll event for the browse

Implementation: A *vcrevent* value of VCR:Forward scrolls down one item; VCR:Backward scrolls up one item; VCR:PageForward scrolls down one page; VCR:PageBackward scrolls up one page; VCR:Last scrolls to the last list item; VCR:First scrolls to the first list item. Corresponding *vcrevent* EQUATES are declared in \LIBSRC\ABTOOLBA.INC.

```

ITEMIZE,PRE(VCR)
Forward      EQUATE(Toolbar:Down)
Backward     EQUATE(Toolbar:Up)
PageForward  EQUATE(Toolbar:PageDown)
PageBackward EQUATE(Toolbar:PageUp)
First        EQUATE(Toolbar:Top)
Last         EQUATE(Toolbar:Bottom)
Insert       EQUATE(Toolbar:Insert)
None         EQUATE(0)
END

```

The TakeVCRScroll method calls the TakeScroll method, translating the *vcrevent* to the appropriate *scrollevent*.

Example:

```

LOOP                                !process repeated scroll events
  IF VCRRequest = VCR:None          !if no more events
    BREAK                           !break out of loop
  ELSE                              !if scroll event
    MyBrowse.TakeVCRScroll( VCRRequest ) !BrowseClass object handles it
  END
END

```

See Also: TakeScroll

UpdateBuffer (copy selected item from queue buffer to file buffer)

UpdateBuffer, VIRTUAL

The **UpdateBuffer** method copies corresponding data from the *queuefield* fields to the *filefield* fields specified by the AddField method for the currently selected browse item. Typically these are the browse list's queue buffer fields and the file buffer fields so that the file buffers match the currently selected browse list item.

Implementation: Many of the BrowseClass methods call the UpdateBuffer method.

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?FirstTab      !if first tab selected
  IF MyBrowse.SetSort(1,0)  !apply the first sort order
    MyBrowse.ResetThumbLimits !if sort changed, reset thumb limits
  END
  MyBrowse.UpdateBuffer      !update file buffer from selected item
  MyBrowse.UpdateResets      !update file buffer from reset fields
END
```

See Also: AddField

UpdateQuery (set default query interface)

UpdateQuery(*querymanager*, [*casesensitive*])

UpdateQuery Defines a default query interface for the BrowseClass object.

querymanager The label of the BrowseClass object's QueryClass object. See *QueryClass* for more information.

casesensitive A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the case sensitivity of the query expression. If this parameter is omitted the query is case insensitive.

The **UpdateQuery** method defines a default query interface (dialog) for the BrowseClass object.

Tip: You may use the **UpdateQuery** method in combination with the **QueryClass.AddItem** method to define a query interface that contains the displayed fields plus other queryable items.

Implementation: The UpdateQuery method sets the value of the Query property, then calls the QueryClass.AddItem method for each displayed field, so that each displayed field accepts filter criteria in the query dialog.

Example:

```
QueryForm QueryFormClass
QueryVis QueryFormVisual
BRW1 CLASS(BrowseClass)
Q &CusQ
END
```

```
CusWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
CODE
!open files, views, window, etc.
IF DefaultQuery
BRW1.UpdateQuery(QueryForm)
ELSE
BRW1.Query &= QueryForm
QueryForm.AddItem('UPPER(CUS:NAME)', '', '')
QueryForm.AddItem('UPPER(CUS:CITY)', '', '')
QueryForm.AddItem('CUS:ZIP_CODE', '', '')
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: Query, QueryClass.AddItem

UpdateResets (copy reset fields to file buffer)

UpdateResets, PROTECTED

The **UpdateResets** method copies reset field values to corresponding file buffer fields.

The AddResetField method defines the reset fields for the BrowseClass object.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.Next an BrowseClass.Previous methods call the UpdateResets method.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.Next PROCEDURE                    !method of class derived from BrowseClass
CODE
  IF Level:Fatal = PARENT.Next()                !do parent method
    POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)                    !if fails, shut down
  ELSE                                            !otherwise
    SELF.UpdateResets                            !update file buffer from reset fields
  END
```

See Also: AddResetField, Next, Previous

UpdateThumb (position the scrollbar thumb)

UpdateThumb

The **UpdateThumb** method positions the scrollbar thumb and enables or disables the vertical scroll bar depending on the number of items in the browse list, the currently selected item, and the active step distribution method. See *Control Templates--BrowseBox* for more information on thumb behavior.

Implementation: The AddSortOrder method sets the stepdistribution methods for the BrowseClass object.

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyBrowse           !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:NewSelection  !if new selection
    IF MyBrowse.TakeNewSelection() !BrowseClass object handles it
      MyBrowse.UdateThumb          !Reposition the thumb
    END
  END
END
END
```

UpdateThumbFixed (position the scrollbar fixed thumb)

UpdateThumbFixed, PROTECTED

The **UpdateThumbFixed** method positions the scrollbar fixed thumb and enables or disables the vertical scroll bar depending on the number of items in the browse list, the currently selected item, and the active step distribution method. See *Control Templates--BrowseBox* for more information on fixed thumb behavior.

Implementation: The AddSortOrder method sets the step distribution methods for the BrowseClass object.

Example:

MyBrowseClass.UpdateThumb PROCEDURE

CODE

IF SELF.Sort.Thumb &= NULL

!if no step object

SELF.UpdateThumbFixed

!reposition thumb as fixed

ELSE

!reposition thumb per step object

END

UpdateViewRecord (get view data for the selected item)

UpdateViewRecord, VIRTUAL

The **UpdateViewRecord** method regets the browse's VIEW record for the selected browse list item so the VIEW record can be written to disk. The UpdateViewRecord method arms automatic optimistic concurrency checking so the eventual write (PUT) to disk returns an error if another user changed the data since it was retrieved by UpdateViewRecord.

Implementation: The UpdateViewRecord method uses WATCH and REGET to implement optimistic concurrency checking; see the *Language Reference* for more information.

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?ChangeButton      !on change button
IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted      !if button clicked
  MyBrowse.UpdateViewRecord      !refresh buffers and arm WATCH
  DO MyBrowse:ButtonChange       !call the update routine
END
END
```

UpdateWindow (update display variables to match browse)

UpdateWindow, VIRTUAL

The **UpdateWindow** method updates display variables to match the current state of the browse list.

Tip: Use **ResetSort** followed by **UpdateWindow** to refresh and redisplay your **ABC BrowseBoxes**. Or, use the **WindowManager.Reset** method.

Implementation: The **BrowseClass.UpdateWindow** method calls the appropriate **LocatorClass.UpdateWindow** method, which ensures the locator field contains the current search value.

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyBrowse           !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT) = EVENT:NewSelection  !if new selection
    IF MyBrowse.TakeNewSelection() !BrowseClass object handles it
      MyBrowse.SetSort(0,1)        !reapply sort order
      MyBrowse.UpdateBuffer        !refresh file buffer from selected item
      MyBrowse.UpdateWindow        !update display variables (locator)
      DISPLAY()                   !and redraw the window
    END
  END
END
```

BrowseQueue Interface

BrowseQueue Concepts

The BrowseQueue interface is a defined set of behaviors that relate to the VIEW and QUEUE that the LIST control uses.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The StandardBehavior class implements the BrowseQueue interface. For more information, see the StandardBehavior class.

BrowseQueue Source Files

The BrowseQueue source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific BrowseQueue source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	BrowseQueue interface declaration
ABBROWSE.CLV	BrowseQueue method definitions

BrowseQueue Methods

Delete(remove entry in LIST queue)

Delete

The **Delete** method removes an entry in the queue that the LIST control is using.

Fetch(retrieve entry from LIST queue)

Fetch(*position*)

Fetch

Retrieves an entry from the queue for the LIST control.

position

An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the relative position in the queue for the LIST.

The **Fetch** method retrieves an entry from the queue that the LIST control is using at the relative position specified.

Free(clear contents of LIST queue)

Free

The **Free** method clears all entries from the queue that the LIST control is using.

GetViewPosition(retrieve VIEW position)

GetViewPosition

The **GetViewPosition** method retrieves the VIEW's POSITION.

Return Data Type: STRING

Insert(add entry to LIST queue)

Insert(*position*)

Insert	Adds an entry to the queue for the LIST control.
<i>position</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the relative position in the queue for the LIST.

The **Insert** method adds an entry to the queue that the LIST control is using. If no position parameter is used, the entry is added to the end of the queue. If the position parameter is used, the entry is added at the relative position specified. If an entry exists at that position, it is moved down to make room for the new entry.

Records(return number of records)

Records

The **Records** method returns the number of records available in the queue for the LIST control.

Return Data Type: UNSIGNED

SetViewPosition(set VIEW position)

SetViewPosition(*position*)

SetViewPosition	Sets the POSITION of the VIEW.
<i>position</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the POSITION to set in the VIEW.

The **SetViewPosition** sets the POSITION of the VIEW based on the position parameter.

Update(update entry in LIST queue)**Update**

The **Update** method updates an entry in the queue that the LIST control is using.

Who(returns field name)**Who**(*column*)**Who**

Returns the queue field name for the specified column.

column

An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a column number from the queue.

The **Who** method returns the queue field name for the column specified by the column parameter.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

BrowseToolbarClass

BrowseToolbarClass Overview

The BrowseToolbarClass handles events for specialized buttons for scrolling in the associated BrowseBox. This class works with the BrowseClass and the WindowManager objects to accomplish these tasks.

BrowseToolbarClass Concepts

The BrowseToolbarClass object interacts with the BrowseClass and WindowManager to allow the toolbar buttons to scroll the browse highlight bar within the BrowseBox. When a toolbar button is pressed and EVENT:Accepted is posted to the associated Browse control.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseToolbarClass works with the BrowseClass and WindowManager to accomplish its tasks.

BrowseToolbarClass ABC Template Implementation

The BrowseToolbarControl control template generates code to declare a BrowseToolbarClass object in the Browse procedure that the control template is placed. The templates also generate code to register the BrowseToolbarClass object with the BrowseClass and WindowManager objects, as well as initializing all toolbar button controls.

BrowseToolbarClass Source Files

The BrowseToolbarClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific BrowseToolbarClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABTOOLBA.INC
ABTOOLBA.CLW

BrowseToolbarClass declarations
BrowseToolbarClass method definitions

BrowseToolbarClass Properties

Browse (BrowseClass object)

Browse **&BrowseClass, PROTECTED**

The **Browse** property is a reference to the BrowseClass object. The BrowseToolbarClass object uses this property to access the BrowseClass object's properties and methods.

Implementation: The BrowseToolbarClass.Init method sets the value of the Browse property.

See Also: BrowseToolbarClass.Init

Button (toolbar buttons FEQ values)

Button **SIGNED, DIM(ToolBar:Last+1-ToolBar:First), PROTECTED**

The **Button** property is a dimensioned variable that holds the control numbers (FEQ) of the buttons that are represented on the toolbar. A value of zero (0) disables the individual toolbar button.

Implementation: The BrowseToolBarClass object uses this property to enable or disable a toolbar control.

Window (WindowManager object)

Window **&WindowManager, PROTECTED**

The **Window** property is a reference to the WindowManager object for this BrowseToolBarClass object. The WindowManager object forwards events to the BrowseToolBarClass object for processing.

Implementation: The BrowseToolBarClass.Init method sets the value of the Window property.

See Also: BrowseToolBarClass.Init

BrowseToolBarClass Methods

Init (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass object)

Init(*WindowManager*, *BrowseClass*)

Init	Initializes the BrowseToolBarClass object.
<i>WindowManager</i>	The label of the toolbar's WindowManager object. See Window Manager for more information.
<i>BrowseClass</i>	The label of the toolbar's BrowseClass object. See BrowseClass for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the BrowseToolBarClass object by declaring a reference to both the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects. All toolbar buttons are initialized to zero (0).

InitBrowse (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass update buttons)

InitBrowse(*insert*, *change*, *delete*, *select*)

InitBrowse	Initializes the BrowseToolBarClass update buttons.
<i>insert</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Insert control.
<i>change</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Change control.
<i>delete</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Delete control.
<i>select</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Select control.

The **InitBrowse** method initializes the Button property with the control numbers (FEQ) for the update controls on the toolbar.

Implementation: This method is called automatically by the ABC BrowseToolBarControl template.

InitMisc (initialize the BrowseToolbarClass miscellaneous buttons)

InitMisc(*history*, *help*)

InitMisc	Initializes the BrowseToolbarClass miscellaneous buttons.
<i>history</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the History control.
<i>help</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Help control.

The **InitMisc** method initializes the Button property with the control numbers (FEQ) for the History and Help controls on the toolbar.

Implementation: This method is called automatically by the ABC BrowseToolbarControl template.

InitVCR (initialize the BrowseToolbarClass VCR buttons)

InitVCR(*top, bottom, pageup, pagedown, up, down, locate*)

InitVCR	Initializes the BrowseToolbarClass VCR buttons.
<i>top</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Top control.
<i>bottom</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Bottom control.
<i>pageup</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the PageUp control.
<i>pagedown</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the PageDown control.
<i>up</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Up control.
<i>down</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Down control.
<i>locate</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the FEQ for the Locate control.

The **InitVCR** method initializes the Button property with the control numbers (FEQ) for the VCR controls on the toolbar.

Implementation: This method is called automatically by the ABC BrowseToolbarControl template.

ResetButton (synchronize toolbar with a corresponding browse control)**ResetButton(toolbutton, browsebutton), PROTECTED**

ResetButton	Sync Toolbar control properties with its corresponding Browse control.
<i>toolbutton</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies a particular toolbar control.
<i>browsebutton</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies a specific browse control.

The **ResetButton** method enables/disables, hides/unhides a toolbar control based on the current properties of its corresponding browse control.

There are predefined equates that represent each button available on the toolbar. These equates can be found at the top of ABTOOLBA.INC.

Implementation: This method is called by the BrowseToolBarClass.ResetFromBrowse method.

ResetFromBrowse(synchronize toolbar controls with browse controls)

ResetFromBrowse, VIRTUAL

The **ResetFromBrowse** method synchronizes the toolbar controls with their corresponding browse control. These controls include the Select, Insert, Change, Delete, History, Help and Locate buttons.

Implementation: This method is called from the BrowseToolBarClass.TakeEvent method.

TakeEvent(process the current event)

TakeEvent, VIRTUAL

The **TakeEvent** method processes all accepted events for the toolbar controls. When an accepted event occurs, an EVENT:Accepted is posted to the corresponding Browse control. When a NewSelection event occurs on the BrowseBox, the ResetFromBrowse method is called to redisplay the toolbar controls with the correct properties (hide, unhide, enable, disable).

A Level:Benign is returned from this method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

BufferedPairsClass

BufferedPairsClass Overview

The BufferedPairsClass is a FieldPairs class with a third buffer area (a "save" area). The BufferedPairsClass can compare the save area with the primary buffers, and can restore data from the save area to the primary buffers (to implement a standard "cancel" operation).

BufferedPairsClass Concepts

The BufferedPairsClass lets you move data between field pairs, and lets you compare the field pairs to detect whether any changes occurred since the last operation.

This class provides methods that let you identify or "set up" the targeted field pairs.

Note: The paired fields need not be contiguous in memory, nor do they need to be part of a structure. You can build a virtual structure simply by adding a series of otherwise unrelated fields to a BufferedPairsClass object. The BufferedPairsClass methods then operate on this virtual structure.

Once the field pairs are identified, you call a single method to move all the fields in one direction (left to right), and others single methods to move all the fields in the other directions (right to left, left to buffer, etc.). You simply have to remember which entity (set of fields) you described as "left" and which entity you described as "right." Other methods compares the sets of fields and return a value to indicate whether or not they are equivalent.

BufferedPairsClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BufferedPairsClass is derived from the FieldPairsClass. The BrowseClass, ViewManager, and RelationManager use the FieldPairsClass and BufferedPairsClass to accomplish various tasks.

BufferedPairsClass ABC Template Implementation

Various ABC Library objects instantiate BufferedPairsClass objects as needed; therefore, the template generated code does not directly reference the BufferedPairsClass.

BufferedPairsClass Source Files

The BufferedPairsClass source code is installed in the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The BufferedPairsClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABUTIL.INC	BufferedPairsClass declarations
ABUTIL.CLW	BufferedPairsClass method definitions

BufferedPairsClass Properties

BufferedPairsClass Properties

The BufferedPairsClass inherits the properties of the FieldPairsClass from which it is derived. See *FieldPairsClass Properties* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited properties, the BufferedPairsClass contains the RealList property.

RealList (recognized field pairs)

RealList &FieldPairsQueue

The **RealList** property is a reference to the structure that holds all the field pairs recognized by the BufferedPairsClass object.

Use the AddPair method to add field pairs to the RealList property. For each field pair, the RealList property includes the designated "Left" field, the designated "Right" field, plus a "Buffer" field you can use as an intermediate storage area (a save area).

The "Left," "Right," and "Buffer" designations are reflected in other BufferedPairsClass method names (for example, field assignment methods--AssignLeftToRight and AssignRightToBuffer) so you can easily and accurately control the movement of data between the three sets of fields.

Implementation: During initialization, the BufferedPairsClass initialization method "points" the inherited List property to the RealList property so there is, in fact, only one list of fields which may be referred to as RealList.

RealList is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABUTIL.INC as follows:

```
BufferedPairsQueue QUEUE,TYPE
Left                ANY
Right               ANY
Buffer              ANY
END
```

The Init method creates the List and RealList properties; the Kill method disposes of them. AddPair adds field pairs to the RealList property.

See Also: AddPair, Init, Kill

BufferedPairsClass Methods

BufferedPairsClass Methods

The BufferedPairsClass inherits all the methods of the FieldPairsClass from which it is derived. See *FieldPairsClass Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the BufferedPairsClass contains other methods listed below.

BufferedPairsClass Functional Organization Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the BufferedPairsClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the BufferedPairsClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the BufferedPairsClass object
AddPairv	add a field pair to the List property
Kill	shut down the BufferedPairsClass object

√ These methods are also Virtual.

Occasional Use:

AssignLeftToRight	assign each "left" field to its "right" counterpart
AssignLeftToBuffer	assign each "left" field to its "buffer" counterpart
AssignRightToLeft	assign each "right" field to its "left" counterpart
AssignRightToBuffer	assign each "right" field to its "buffer" counterpart
AssignBufferToLeft	assign each "buffer" field to its "left" counterpart
AssignBufferToRight	assign each "buffer" field to its "right" counterpart
EqualLeftRight	return 1 if each left equal right, otherwise return 0
EqualLeftBuffer	return 1 if each left equal buffer, otherwise return 0
EqualRightBuffer	return 1 if right equal buffer, otherwise return 0
ClearLeft	CLEAR each "left" field
ClearRight	CLEAR each "right" field

Inappropriate Use:

These methods are inherited from the FieldPairsClass and typically are not used in the context of this (BufferedPairsClass) derived class.

AddItem	add a field pair from one source field
Equal	return 1 if each left equal right, otherwise return 0

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

AddPair (add a field pair:BufferedPairsClass)**AddPair(*left, right*), VIRTUAL****AddPair** Adds a field pair to the RealList property.*left* The label of the "left" field of the pair. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.*right* The label of the "right" field of the pair. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.

The **AddPair** method adds a field pair to the RealList property. A third "buffer" field is supplied for you. You may use this third "buffer" as an intermediate storage area (a save area).

The fields need not be contiguous in memory, nor do they need to be part of a structure. Therefore you can build a virtual structure simply by adding a series of otherwise unrelated fields to a BufferedPairs object. The other BufferedPairs methods then operate on this virtual structure.

Implementation: AddPair assumes the RealList property has already been created by Init or by some other method.

By calling AddPair for a series of fields (for example, the corresponding fields in a RECORD and a QUEUE), you effectively build three virtual structures containing the fields and a (one-to-one-to-one) relationship between the structures.

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')                !declare BufferedPairs Class
Fields  &BufferedPairsClass            !declare BufferedPairs reference

Customer FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(CUST), CREATE, BINDABLE
ByNumber KEY(CUST:CustNo), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record   RECORD, PRE( )
CustNo    LONG
Name      STRING( 30 )
Phone     STRING( 20 )
          END
          END

CustQ     QUEUE
CustNo    LONG
Name      STRING( 30 )
Phone     STRING( 20 )
          END

CODE

```

```
Fields &= NEW BufferedPairsClass      !instantiate BufferedPairs object
Fields.Init                          !initialize BufferedPairs object
Fields.AddPair(CUST:CustNo, CustQ.CustNo) !establish CustNo pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name,  CustQ.Name)   !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone)  !establish Phone pair
```

See Also: Init, RealList

AssignBufferToLeft (copy from "buffer" fields to "left" fields)

AssignBufferToLeft

The **AssignBufferToLeft** method copies the contents of each "buffer" field to its corresponding "left" field in the RealList property.

Implementation: The "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method. The "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. The BufferedPairsClass automatically supplies the "buffer" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.EqualRightBuffer !compare QUEUE fields to save buffer
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft !copy changes to CUST (write) buffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignBufferToLeft !restore original to CustQ (display) buffer
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, RealList

AssignBufferToRight (copy from "buffer" fields to "right" fields)

AssignBufferToRight

The **AssignBufferToRight** method copies the contents of each "buffer" field to its corresponding "right" field in the RealList property.

Implementation: The "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method. The "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. The BufferedPairsClass automatically supplies the "buffer" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.EqualRightBuffer !compare QUEUE fields to save buffer
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToBuffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignBufferToRight
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, RealList

AssignLeftToBuffer (copy from "left" fields to "buffer" fields)

AssignLeftToBuffer

The **AssignLeftToBuffer** method copies the contents of each "left" field to its corresponding "buffer" field in the RealList property.

Implementation: The "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method. The "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. The BufferedPairsClass automatically supplies the "buffer" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.EqualRightBuffer !compare QUEUE fields to save buffer
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignLeftToBuffer
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, RealList

AssignRightToBuffer (copy from "right" fields to "buffer" fields)

AssignRightToBuffer

The **AssignRightToBuffer** method copies the contents of each "right" field to its corresponding "buffer" field in the RealList property.

Implementation: The "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method. The "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. The BufferedPairsClass automatically supplies the "buffer" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.EqualRightBuffer !compare QUEUE fields to save buffer
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToBuffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignBufferToRight
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, RealList

EqualLeftBuffer (compare "left" fields to "buffer" fields)

EqualLeftBuffer

The **EqualLeftBuffer** method returns one (1) if each "left" field equals its corresponding "buffer" field; otherwise it returns zero (0).

Implementation: The "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method. The "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. The BufferedPairsClass automatically supplies the "buffer" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.EqualLeftBuffer !compare CUST fields to save buffer
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft !copy changes to CUST (write) buffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignBufferToLeft !restore original to CustQ (display) buffer
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, RealList

EqualRightBuffer (compare "right" fields to "buffer" fields)

EqualRightBuffer

The **EqualRightBuffer** method returns one (1) if each "right" field equals its corresponding "buffer" field; otherwise it returns zero (0).

Implementation: The "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method. The "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. The BufferedPairsClass automatically supplies the "buffer" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.EqualRightBuffer !compare CUST fields to save buffer
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft !copy changes to CUST (write) buffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignBufferToLeft !restore original to CustQ (display) buffer
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, RealList

Init (initialize the BufferedPairsClass object)

Init

The **Init** method initializes the BufferedPairsClass object.

Implementation: The Init method creates the List and RealList properties. This method "points" the inherited List property to the RealList property so there is, in fact, only one list of fields which may be referred to as RealList.

Example:

```
INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')           !declare BufferedPairs Class
Fields &BufferedPairsClass      !declare BufferedPairs reference

CODE
Fields &= NEW BufferedPairsClass !instantiate BufferedPairs object
Fields.Init                     !initialize BufferedPairs object
.
.
.
Fields.Kill                     !terminate BufferedPairs object
DISPOSE(Fields)                 !release memory allocated for BufferedPairs object
```

See Also: Kill, List, RealList

Kill (shut down the BufferedPairsClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method disposes any memory allocated during the object's lifetime and performs any other necessary termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method disposes the List and RealList properties created by the Init method.

Example:

```
INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')           !declare BufferedPairs Class
Fields &BufferedPairsClass      !declare BufferedPairs reference

CODE
Fields &= NEW BufferedPairsClass !instantiate BufferedPairs object
Fields.Init                     !initialize BufferedPairs object
.
.
.
Fields.Kill                     !terminate BufferedPairs object
DISPOSE(Fields)                 !release memory allocated for BufferedPairs object
```

See Also: Init, List, RealList

ConstantClass

ConstantClass Overview

The ConstantClass provides an easy, flexible, and efficient way to "loop through" constant data. That is, the ConstantClass parses structures like the following so you can access each (unlabeled) data item discretely:

```
Errors  GROUP,STATIC
Items   USHORT(40)                                !item count
        USHORT(Msg:RebuildKey)                    !begin item 1
        BYTE(Level:Notify)
        PSTRING('Invalid Key')
        USHORT(Msg:RebuildFailed)                  !begin item 2
        BYTE(Level:Fatal)
        PSTRING('Key was not built')
        !38 more USHORT,BYTE,PSTRING combinations
END
```

ConstantClass Concepts

The ConstantClass parses and loads constant data such as error messages or translation text from the GROUP structure that declares the data into other data structures or memory variables (one item at a time). It can also write all the constant data into a QUEUE or a FILE.

The ConstantClass intelligently handles irregular data--you can declare the constant text data with a series of strings of varying lengths so that no space is wasted. The ConstantClass also handles a variety of numeric datatypes including BYTE, SHORT, USHORT, and LONG.

The ConstantClass provides several ways to stop processing the constant data, including a simple item count, a text match, and a read-to-the-end option.

A single ConstantClass object can process multiple GROUP structures with the same (or incremental) layouts.

Declaring the Data

To use the ConstantClass, you must declare the constant data within a GROUP structure. The GROUP structure may declare a single sequence using any combination of the permitted datatypes, or a series of such sequences (the GROUP repeats the combination of datatypes as many times as needed). The ConstantClass permits CSTRING, PSTRING, BYTE, SHORT, USHORT, and LONG datatypes. The GROUP structure may contain an initial BYTE or USHORT that specifies how many times a sequence of datatypes is repeated. For example:

```
Errors  GROUP,STATIC
Items   BYTE(2)                      !optional item count
        USHORT(Msg:RebuildKey)       !begin first item
        BYTE(Level:Notify)
        PSTRING('Invalid Key')      !end first item
        USHORT(Msg:RebuildFailed)    !begin second item
        BYTE(Level:Fatal)
        PSTRING('Key not built')     !end second item
END
```

Here is another example of a structure the ConstantClass can handle:

```
Translation  GROUP,STATIC                      !no item count
              PSTRING('&Across')              !default text
              PSTRING('')                    !translation text
              PSTRING('Align all window Icons') !default text
              PSTRING('')                    !translation text
              PSTRING('Arrange Icons')        !default text
              PSTRING('')                    !translation text
END
```

If the GROUP is declared within a procedure it must have the STATIC attribute. See the *Language Reference* for more information.

Describing the Data

The ConstantClass uses two methods to describe or understand the structure of the constant data it processes: the Init method and the AddItem method. The Init method (*termination* parameter) indicates whether or not the GROUP structure declares an item count as well as the datatype of the item count (see Init). The AddItem method identifies each repeating component of the GROUP structure as well as the target variable that receives the contents of the repeating component (see AddItem).

ConstantClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The TranslatorClass, ErrorClass, ToolbarClass, and PrintPreview classes all use the ConstantClass. These classes automatically instantiate the ConstantClass as needed.

ConstantClass ABC Template Implementation

All ABC Library references to the ConstantClass are encapsulated with ABC Library methods--the ABC Templates do not directly reference the ConstantClass.

ConstantClass Source Files

The ConstantClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC. The specific ConstantClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABUTIL.INC	ConstantClass declarations
ABUTIL.CLW	ConstantClass method definitions

ConstantClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ConstantClass object. The example loads translation pairs from a constant GROUP into two CSTRINGs, which are then passed as parameters to another TranslatorClass method. Note that the target CSTRINGs could just as easily be fields in a QUEUE or FILE buffer.

```

    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')           !declare ConstantClass, TranslatorClass
Spanish  GROUP                     !declare constant data
Items    BYTE(50)                  !item count
        PSTRING('One')            !begin first item
        PSTRING('Uno')
        PSTRING('Two')            !begin second item
        PSTRING('Dos')
        !48 more PSTRING pairs
    END

LangQ    QUEUE
Text     CSTRING(50)
Repl     CSTRING(50)
Done     BYTE
    END

Const    ConstantClass             !declare & instantiate Const object
Text     CSTRING(255),AUTO         !a variable to receive a constant value
Repl     CSTRING(255),AUTO         !a variable to receive a constant value

```


ConstantClass Properties

TerminatorField (identify the terminating field)

TerminatorField **USHORT**

The **TerminatorField** property contains a value that can be set to a number that represents the number (1 based) of the field that will tested to see if it contains the termination value. The default value is 1.

See Also:

TerminatorInclude

TerminatorValue

ConstantClass.Next

Conceptual Example

TerminatorInclude (include matching terminator record)

7

TerminatorInclude **BOOL**

The **TerminatorInclude** property, when set to true (1), will include the record that matches the terminator value in the "returned records". When set to FALSE (0), the record containing the termination value will not be included in the returned records. By default, this property is set to FALSE (0)

See Also:

TerminatorField

TerminatorValue

Conceptual Example

ConstantClass.Next

TerminatorValue (end of data marker)

TerminatorValue **ANY**

The **TerminatorValue** property contains a value that the ConstantClass object looks for within the constant data. When the ConstantClass object finds the TerminatorValue, it stops processing the constant data (inclusive).

The TerminatorValue property is only one of several techniques you can use to mark the end of the constant data. See the Init method for more information on this and other techniques.

Implementation: The Init method CLEARS the TerminatorValue property; therefore, you should set the TerminatorValue property *after* the Init method executes.

The Next() method returns Level:Notify when the characters of the constant data matches the value of the TerminatorValue property. The Next(FILE) and Next(Queue) methods stop processing when the ConstantClass object finds the TerminatorValue.

The TerminatorField property can be set to a number that represents the number (1 based) of the field that will tested to see if it contains the termination value.

When the TerminatorInclude property is set to true, this will include the record that matches the terminator value in the 'returned records'. When false, the record containing termination value will not be included in the returned records. By default this is set to false.

See Also: Init, Next

ConstantClass Methods

ConstantClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ConstantClass, it is useful to organize the its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ConstantClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ConstantClass object
AddItem	set constant datatype and target variable
Set	set the constant data to process
Kill	shut down the ConstantClass object

Mainstream Use:

Next	copy one or all constant items to targets
------	---

Occasional Use:

Reset	reset the object to beginning of the constant data
-------	--

Virtual Methods

The ConstantClass has no virtual methods.

AddItem (set constant datatype and target variable)**AddItem**(*datatype*, *target*)**AddItem** Sets the (repeating) constant datatype and its corresponding target variable.*datatype* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that identifies the datatype of a repeating constant within the constant GROUP structure. Valid *datatype* values are ConstType:Cstring, ConstType:Pstring, ConstType:Byte, ConstType:Short, ConstType:Ushort, and ConstType:Long.*target* The label of the variable that receives the constant value.

The **AddItem** method sets a (repeating) constant datatype and its corresponding target variable. Use multiple calls to the AddItem method to "describe" the constant data structure as well as the target variables that receive the constant data.

Implementation: You should call AddItem for each repeating datatype declared in the constant GROUP structure. The Next method processes the constant data items described by the AddItem calls. EQUATEs for the *datatype* parameter are declared in ABUTIL.INC:

```

ITEMIZE(1),PRE(ConstType)
First EQUATE
Cstring EQUATE(ConstType:First)
Pstring EQUATE
Byte EQUATE          !1 byte unsigned integer
Short EQUATE         !2 byte signed integer
Ushort EQUATE        !2 byte unsigned interger
Long EQUATE          !4 byte signed integer
Last EQUATE(ConstType:Long)
END

```

Example:

```

Errors GROUP,STATIC
    USHORT(Msg:RebuildKey)      !begin first item
    PSTRING('Invalid Key')     !end first item
    USHORT(Msg:RebuildFailed)   !begin second item
    PSTRING('Key not built')    !end second item
END

ErrorQ QUEUE
ID      LONG
Text    CSTRING(255)
END

CODE
!The following describes the Errors GROUP and its corresonding target variables
Const.AddItem(ConstType:Ushort, ErrorQ.ID)  !USHORT constant maps to error ID
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, ErrorQ.Text)!PSTRING constant maps to error text

```

See Also: Next

Init (initialize the ConstantClass object)**Init**([*termination*])

Init	Initializes the ConstantClass object.
<i>termination</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that controls when the Next(FILE) and Next(Queue) methods stop processing the constant data. If omitted, <i>termination</i> defaults to Term:Ushort. Valid <i>termination</i> values are Term:Ushort, Term:Byte, Term:EndGroup, and Term:FieldValue

The **Init** method initializes the ConstantClass object.

The termination parameter provides two important pieces of information to the ConstantClass object: it tells the ConstantClass object whether there is a non-repeating item count declared at the beginning of the constant data (describes the structure of the constant data), and it tells the ConstantClass object how to recognize the end of the constant data. Valid *termination* values are:

Term:Ushort	The GROUP declares a USHORT containing the item count--stops reading when item count reached.
Term:Byte	The GROUP declares a BYTE containing the item count--stops reading when item count reached.
Term:EndGroup	The GROUP does not declare an item count—stops reading at end of GROUP structure.
Term:FieldValue	The GROUP does not declare an item count—stops reading when it finds the TerminatorValue within the constant data.

Implementation: The Init method CLEARs the TerminatorValue property. The Init method allocates memory and should always be paired with the Kill method, which frees the memory.

EQUATEs for the *termination* parameter are declared in ABUTIL.INC:

```

ITEMIZE(1),PRE(Term)
EndGroup EQUATE !Stops reading at end of GROUP
Ushort EQUATE !Reads number of items specified by USHORT at start of group
Byte EQUATE !Reads number of items specified by BYTE at start of group
FieldValue EQUATE !Stops when specified value is found in first AddItem field,
!only first 32 chars are compared
END

```

Example:

```

Const.Init(Term:BYTE)           !Initialize the Const object,
                                !the first BYTE contains item count

Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Text)

```

!Describe constant structure and variables to accept the values
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Repl)

Const.Set(Spanish)	!pass the constant data to Const object
Const.Next(LangQ)	!copy all constant items to the LangQ
Const.Kill	!shut down Const object

See Also: Kill, Next, TerminatorValue

Kill (shut down the ConstantClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and does any other required termination code.

Example:

```
Const.Init(Term:BYTE)    !Initialize the Const object,
                        ! the first BYTE contains item count
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Text) !Describe constant structure and
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Repl) !variables to accept the values
Const.Set(Spanish)       !pass the constant data to Const object
Const.Next(LangQ)        !copy all constant items to the LangQ
Const.Kill               !shut down Const object
```

```
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Text) !Describe constant structure and
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Repl) ! variables to accept the values
Const.Set(Spanish)           !pass the constant data to Const object
Const.Next(LangQ)            !copy all constant items to the LangQ
Const.Kill                   !shut down Const object
```

See Also: AddItem, Init, Next

Next (copy next constant item to targets)**Next, PROC**

The **Next** method copies the next constant item to its respective targets (as defined by the AddItem method) and returns a value indicating whether the item was copied. A return value of Level:Benign indicates the item was copied successfully; a return value of Level:Notify indicates the item was not copied because the end of the constant data, as defined by the Init method, was reached.

Prior calls to the AddItem method determine the makeup of the item as well as the target variables that receive the item.

Implementation: The Next method parses a single item in the constant data, performing any required datatype conversions, and increments appropriate internal counters.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
Spanish GROUP          !declare constant data
Items  BYTE(50)         !item count
        PSTRING('One') !begin first item
        PSTRING('Uno')
        PSTRING('Two') !begin second item
        PSTRING('Dos')
        !48 more PSTRING pairs
END

Const  ConstantClass    !declare & instantiate Const object
Text   CSTRING(255),AUTO !a variable to receive a constant value
Repl   CSTRING(255),AUTO !a variable to receive a constant value
CODE
    !process items one-at-a-time
    Const.Init(Term:BYTE) !initialize the Const object,
                        ! the first BYTE contains item count
    Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, Text) !Describe constant structure and
    Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, Repl) ! variables to accept the values
    Const.Set(Spanish) !pass the constant data to Const object
    LOOP WHILE Const.Next()=Level:Benign !copy constant data one item at a time
        !do something with Text and Repl ! to respective AddItem target variables
    END
    Const.Kill !shut down Const object
```

See Also: AddItem, Init, Next

Reset (reset the object to the beginning of the constant data)**Reset**

The **Reset** method resets internal counters to start processing constant data from the beginning.

Implementation: The Set, Next(FILE) and Next(Queue) methods call the Reset method. Typically you will not call this method.

Example:

```
ConstantClass.Set PROCEDURE(*STRING Src)
CODE
DISPOSE(SELF.Str)
SELF.Str &= NEW STRING(LEN(Src))
SELF.Str = Src
SELF.SourceSize=LEN(SELF.Str)
SELF.Reset
```

Set (set the constant data to process)**Set**(*datasource*)**Set** Sets the GROUP structure to process.*datasource* The label of the GROUP structure the ConstantClass object processes.The **Set** method sets the GROUP structure to process.Implementation: The Set method takes a copy of *datasource* and calls the Reset method to reset internal counters to process *datasource* copy from the beginning.

Example:

```

Spanish  GROUP          !declare constant data
Items    BYTE(50)        !item count
          PSTRING('One') !begin first item
          PSTRING('Uno')
          PSTRING('Two') !begin second item
          PSTRING('Dos')
          !48 more PSTRING pairs
          END

```

```

LangQ    QUEUE
Text     CSTRING(50)
Repl     CSTRING(50)
          END

```

```

Const  ConstantClass    !declare & instantiate Const object

```

```

CODE
!process all items at a time
Const.Init(Term:BYTE)      !re initialize the Const object,
                           ! the first BYTE contains item count
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Text) !Describe constant structure and
Const.AddItem(ConstType:PString, LangQ.Repl) ! variables to accept the values
Const.Set(Spanish)         !pass the constant data to Const object
Const.Next(LangQ)         !copy all constant items to the LangQ
Const.Kill                 !shut down Const object

```

See Also: Reset

Crystal8 Class

Seagate Software's Crystal Reports is one of the leading report writers delivering Windows reports. For more information on this product see Seagate Software at www.seagatesoftware.com.

Clarion's Crystal Report interface is comprised of templates, libraries, and DLLs that communicate with Seagate's Crystal Reports, version 8. The DLL is accessed by a Class Interface and is hooked to your application using simple standard Clarion code. This interface allows a seamless integration of previously defined Crystal reports within a Clarion application. The Crystal report engine accesses data and creates the report. The report can be previewed in a Clarion window.

Clarion's Crystal Reports implementation is compatible with both the ABC and Legacy templates. It can only be used in 32-bit applications.

Crystal8 Class Concepts

Clarion's Crystal Reports implementation is a DLL that communicates with Seagate Software's Crystal Reports report writer. The Crystal 8 Class accesses the DLL. There are several templates available which make the interface to the report writer easily accessible from your Clarion program. Previewing and/or printing reports are simple.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The Crystal8 class works independently of all other ABC classes.

ABC Template Implementation

The PreviewCrystalReport and PrintCrystalReport template extensions instantiate an object based on the object name specified by either of these extensions. The object is instantiated in the procedure where the extension exists.

Crystal8 Source Files

The Crystal8 class declarations are installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The Crystal8 component is distributed as a LIB/DLL, therefore the source code for the methods is not available. However, the methods are defined in this chapter and may be implemented in applications provided the required LIB/DLL is available at runtime.

C60cr8.INC	Crystal Class Definition
C60cr8L.INC	Crystal Class Definition Local Compile
C60cr8.dll	Crystal DLL
C60cr8.lib	Crystal LIB
C60cr8L.lib	Crystal Local LIB

Crystal8 Class Properties

There are no properties associated with the Crystal8 Class Library.

Crystal8 Methods

AllowPrompt (prompt for runtime parameter data)

AllowPrompt(| *allowpromptflag* |)

AllowPrompt Allow report runtime prompting for Crystal Parameter fields.

Allowpromptflag An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the report will prompt for runtime parameter fields. A value of one (1) is used to allow prompting; a value of zero (0) is used to disallow field prompting.

The AllowPrompt method can conditionally allow the Crystal report that is being previewed or printed to prompt for runtime parameter fields. These parameter fields must be defined in the Crystal report. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *allowpromptflag*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.AllowPrompt(1)
```

CanDrillDown(allow Crystal drill down support)

CanDrillDown(*candrilldown*)

CanDrillDown Allows use of Crystal Report's drill down feature.

candrilldown An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the report make use of Crystal's drill down feature. A value of one (1) allows drill down to be used; a value of zero (0) removes the ability to drill down.

The CanDrillDown method allows a Crystal Report to use the defined drill down support. For more information on Crystal's drill down feature refer to the Crystal Report documentation. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *candrilldown*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal18.CanDrillDown(1)
```

HasCancelButton (display cancel button on report preview)

HasCancelButton (| *hascancelbutton* |)

HasCancelButton Allow a cancel button on the report preview window.

hascancelbutton An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a cancel button will appear on the report's preview window. A value of one (1) displays the cancel button; a value of zero (0) does not display the cancel button.

The HasCancelButton method is used to optionally display a cancel button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hascancelbutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasCancelButton(1)
```

HasCloseButton (display close button on report preview)

HasCloseButton (| *hasclosebutton* |)

HasCloseButton	Allow a close button on the report preview window.
<i>hasclosebutton</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a close button will appear on the reports preview window. A value of one (1) displays the close button; a value of zero (0) does not display the close button.

The HasCloseButton method is used to optionally display a close button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasclosebutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasCloseButton(1)
```

HasExportButton (display export button on report preview)

HasExportButton (| *hasexportbutton* |)

HasExportButton Allow an export button on the report preview window.

hasexportbutton An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether an export button will appear on the reports preview window. A value of one (1) displays the export button; a value of zero (0) does not display the export button.

The HasExportButton method is used to optionally display an export button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasexportbutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasExportButton(1)
```

HasLaunchButton (display launch button on report preview)

HasLaunchButton (| *haslaunchbutton* |)

HasLaunchButton Allow a launch button on the report preview window.

haslaunchbutton An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a launch button will appear on the reports preview window. A value of one (1) displays the launch button; a value of zero (0) does not display the launch button.

The HasLaunchButton method is used to optionally display a launch button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of haslaunchbutton. The launch button is used to launch the Seagate Analysis tool.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasLaunchButton(1)
```


HasNavigationControls (display navigation controls on report preview)

HasNavigationControls (| *hasnavigationcontrols* |)

HasNavigationControls	Allows navigation controls on the report preview window.
<i>hasnavigationcontrols</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the navigation controls will appear on the report's preview window. A value of one (1) displays the navigation controls; a value of zero (0) does not display the navigation controls.

The HasNavigationControls method is used to optionally display navigation controls on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasnavigationcontrols*. Navigation controls are used to navigate through a report, immediately to the beginning, end or anywhere in between.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasNavigationControls(1)
```

HasPrintButton (display print button on report preview)

HasPrintButton (| *hasprintbutton* |)

HasPrintButton Allows a print button on the report preview window.

Hasprintbutton An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a print button will appear on the report's preview window. A value of one (1) displays the print button; a value of zero (0) does not display the print button.

The HasPrintButton method is used to optionally display a print button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasprintbutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasPrintButton(1)
```

HasPrintSetupButton (display print setup button on report preview)

HasPrintSetupButton (| *hasprintsetupbutton* |)

HasPrintSetupButton Allows a print setup button on the report preview window.

hasprintsetupbutton An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a print setup button will appear on the reports preview window. A value of one (1) displays the print setup button; a value of zero (0) does not display the print setup button.

The HasPrintSetupButton method is used to optionally display a print setup button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasprintsetupbutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasPrintSetupButton(1)
```

HasProgressControls (display progress controls on report preview)

HasProgressControls (| *hasprogresscontrols* |)

HasProgressControls Allows navigation controls on the report preview window.

Hasprogresscontrols An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the progress controls will appear on the reports preview window. A value of one (1) displays the progress controls; a value of zero (0) does not display the progress controls.

The HasProgressControls method is used to optionally display progress controls on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasprogresscontrol*. The Progress controls display the progress of the report when it is running. It displays records read, records selected, etc.).

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasProgressControls(1)
```

HasRefreshButton (display refresh button on report preview)

HasRefreshButton (| *hasrefreshbutton* |)

HasRefreshButton Allows a refresh button on the report preview window.

hasrefreshbutton An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a refresh button will appear on the report's preview window. A value of one (1) displays the refresh button; a value of zero (0) does not display the refresh button.

The HasRefreshButton method is used to optionally display a refresh button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hasrefreshbutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasRefreshButton(1)
```

HasSearchButton (display search button on report preview)

HasSearchButton (| *hassearchbutton* |)

HasSearchButton	Allows a search button on the report preview window.
<i>hassearchbutton</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a search button will appear on the reports preview window. A value of one (1) displays the search button; a value of zero (0) does not display the search button.

The HasSearchButton method is used to optionally display a search button on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *hassearchbutton*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal18.HasSearchButton(1)
```

HasZoomControl (display zoom control on report preview)

HasZoomControl (| *haszoomcontrol* |)

HasZoomControl Allows a zoom control on the report preview window.

haszoomcontrol An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether a zoom button will appear on the report's preview window. A value of one (1) displays the zoom control; a value of zero (0) does not display the zoom control.

The HasZoomControl method is used to optionally display a zoom control on the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *haszoomcontrol*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.HasZoomControl(1)
```

Init (initialize Crystal8 object)

Init (*reportname*)

Init Initialize the Crystal8 object.

reportname A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the report name. This report name is used when previewing a report. It is also the window caption (text).

The Init method initializes the Crystal8 object. This method also sets the title of the preview window, if the report is previewed. A BYTE is returned from this method and represents whether the report engine is successfully initialized.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.Init( ReportPathName )
```


Kill (shut down Crystal8 object)

Kill

The Kill method shuts down the Crystal8 object, releasing any memory allocated during the lifetime of the object.

Example:

```
oCrystal8.Kill()
```

Preview (preview a Crystal Report)

	Preview (<i>| windowtitle, initstate, frame, icon, systemmenu, maximizebox, 3dflag</i>)
Preview	Preview a Crystal Report.
<i>windowtitle</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text to display in the report preview window's title bar. This parameter is optional.
<i>initstate</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing an N , M , or I . Use N (Normal) to display the preview window at the default size. Use M (Maximized) to display the preview window in a maximized state. Use I (Iconized) to display the preview window in an iconized state. This parameter is optional.
<i>frame</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing an S , D , R , or N . Use S to give the preview window a single pixel frame. Use D to give the preview window a thick frame. Use R to give the preview window a thick but resizeable frame. Use N to give the preview window no frame under Windows 3.1 or a single pixel frame under Window 95/98. This parameter is optional.
<i>icon</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing an icon filename. By specifying an icon file, a minimize button is automatically placed on the preview window. This parameter is optional.
<i>systemmenu</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the preview window will contain a system menu. A value of TRUE will give the preview window a system menu. A value of FALSE (the default value) will not include the system menu on the preview window. This parameter is optional.
<i>maximizebox</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the preview window will contain a maximize button. A value of TRUE (the default value) will place the maximize button on the preview window. A value of FALSE will not include the maximize box on the preview window. This parameter is optional.
<i>3dflag</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the preview window will have a 3D look. The 3D look provides the window with a gray background and chiseled control look. A value of TRUE (the default value) will provide the preview window with the 3D look. A value of FALSE will not provide the preview window with the 3d look. This parameter is optional.

The Preview method is used to preview a Crystal report within a Clarion window. This method supports several preview window options.

Example:

```
oCrystal8.Preview( 'My Report','I','R',,0,1,1 )
```

_Print (print a Crystal Report)

	<code>_Print(| <i>copies</i>, <i>printersetup</i> |)</code>
<code>_Print</code>	Print a Crystal Report.
<code>copies</code>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the number of copies of the report to print. The default for this parameter is 1. This parameter is optional.
<code>printersetup</code>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the Printer Setup dialog is displayed before sending the report to the printer. Specifying TRUE or 1 for this parameter will cause the Printer Setup dialog to be displayed; a value of FALSE or 0 (the default value) will allow the report to go directly to the printer. This parameter is optional.

The `_Print` method prints a Crystal report directly to the printer without any option to preview the report. The printer setup dialog is optional before the report is sent to the printer.

Example:

```
oCrystal8._Print( 1, 1 )
```

Query (retrieve or set the SQL data query)

Query([*querystring*])

Query Set or retrieve the SQL data query.

querystring A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the SQL query to be sent to the SQL data source. This parameter is optional.

The Query method is used to either get or set the SQL query. If the *querystring* is omitted from the method call, the current query is retrieved.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
formula = oCrystal8.Query()!retrieve query into formula variable
formula = '{{Customer.Country} in ["Australia"]}' ! SQL query
oCrystal8.Query( formula )        ! Set the query
```

SelectionFormula (retrieve or set the Crystal formula)

SelectionFormula(*formulastring*)

SelectionFormula Set or retrieve the Crystal formula.

Formulastring A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the Crystal formula. This parameter is optional.

The SelectionFormula method is used to either get or set the report's formula used to limit retrieved records. If the *formulastring* is omitted from the method call, the current formula is retrieved.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
formula = oCrystal8.SelectionFormula()!retrieve selection formula into formula variable  
formula = '{{Customer.Country} in ["Australia"]}' ! SQL query  
oCrystal8.SelectionFormula( formula )      ! Set the query
```

ShowDocumentTips (show tips on document in the preview window)

ShowDocumentTips(*showdocumenttips*)

ShowDocumentTips Display tooltips in the document being previewed.

showdocumenttips An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether to enable tooltips on the document in the report preview window. A value of one (1) indicates that tooltips will be shown. A value of zero (0) indicates that tooltips will not be displayed on the document in the preview window. This is the default if the parameter is omitted.

The ShowDocumentTips method is used to enable tooltips on the document being previewed in the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of showdocumenttips.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.ShowDocumentTips(1)
```

ShowReportControls (show print controls)

ShowReportControls (| *showreportcontrols* |)

ShowReportControls Display tooltips in the document being previewed.

showreportcontrols An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether the print controls are displayed. A value of one (1) will cause the print controls to be displayed. A value of zero (0) indicates that will hide the print controls. This parameter is optional and defaults to TRUE if omitted.

The ShowReportControls method is used to display the print controls. The print controls include the First, Previous, Next, and Last Page buttons as well as the buttons for Cancel, Close, Export, and Print to Printer. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *showreportcontrols*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.ShowReportControls(1)
```

ShowToolBarTips (show tips on preview window toolbar)

ShowToolBarTips(*showtooltips*)

ShowToolBarTips Display tooltips in the preview window's toolbar.

showtooltips An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies whether to enable tooltips on the toolbar in the report preview window. A value of one (1) indicates that tooltips will be shown. This is the default if the parameter is omitted. A value of zero (0) indicates that tooltips will not be displayed in the report preview window.

The ShowToolBarTips method is used to enable tooltips on the toolbar of the report preview window. This method returns a BYTE representing the value of *showtooltips*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
oCrystal8.ShowToolBarTips(1)
```


cwRTF Class

cwRTF Overview

Clarion's implementation of Rich Text Format (RTF) is derived from Microsoft's Rich Edit Control, version 3.0. Rich Text provides a storage format for text that keeps the text compatible among different operating systems, and software applications. A rich text control allows a user to enter, edit, format, print, and save text.

cwRTF Class Concepts

The features of Clarion's RTF control include the support for colorized text, fonts, font sizes, bold, italics, underlining, paragraph justification, bullets, undo, redo, cut, copy and paste clipboard functionality, search, print, new open and save to file, ruler, and tab settings.

Clarion's Rich Text support is compatible with both the ABC and Legacy templates. It may only be used in a 32-bit application. Multiple RTF controls may be used on a single window.

Clarion's Rich Text Classes and Templates are wrappers around Microsoft's Rich Edit Control DLL's. The presence of RichEdxx.DLL is required in the Windows/System directory. There are three versions of this DLL. The following list of operating systems shows which DLL each system installs and supports. Other programs may install a newer version of the Rich Edit DLL.

Windows NT/Windows 2000

Microsoft® Windows NT® version 4.0 includes Rich Edit 1.0 and 2.0. Microsoft Windows® 2000 includes Rich Edit 3.0 with a Rich Edit 1.0 emulator.

Windows 98

Windows 98 includes Rich Edit 1.0 and 2.0.

Windows 95

Windows 95 includes only Rich Edit 1.0. However, Riched20.dll is compatible with Windows 95 and may be installed if an application that uses Rich Edit 2.0 has been installed.

cwRTF Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The cwRTF class works independantly of all other ABC classes.

cwRTF ABC Template Implementation

Once the cwRTF procedure template extension is added to a procedure, the templates instantiate a cwRTF object into the generated code for the procedure. This is also where the cwRTF object is initialized.

cwRTF Source Files

The cwRTF class declarations are installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The cwRTF component is distributed as a LIB/DLL, therefore the source code for the methods is not available. However, the methods are defined in this chapter and may be implemented in applications provided the required LIB/DLL is available at runtime.

C60RTF.INC	Rich Text Class Definition
C60RTFL.INC	Rich Text Class Definition Local Compile
C60RTF.dll	Rich Text DLL
C60RTF.lib	Rich Text LIB
C60RTFL.lib	Rich Text Local LIB

cwRTF Properties

cwRTF Properties

The cwRTF class contains many properties that although are not PRIVATE, should not be used. These methods are used internally.

hRTFWindow(RTF control handle)

hRTFWindow LONG

The **hRTFWindow** property is a handle to the RTF control.

cwRTF Methods

AlignParaCenter (center paragraph)

AlignParaCenter

The **AlignParaCenter** method is used to center the current or selected paragraph of text within the rich text control. The current paragraph is the one that the cursor is within.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.AlignParaCenter() !Center paragraph
```

AlignParaLeft (left justify paragraph)

AlignParaLeft

The **AlignParaLeft** method is used to left justify the current or selected paragraph of text within the rich text control. The current paragraph is the one that the cursor is within.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.AlignParaLeft() !Left justify paragraph
```

AlignParaRight (right justify paragraph)

AlignParaRight

The **AlignParaRight** method is used to right justify the current or selected paragraph of text within the rich text control. The current paragraph is the one that the cursor is within.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.AlignParaRight() !Right justify paragraph
```

ChangeFontStyle (set current font style)

ChangeFontStyle(*fontstyle*)

ChangeFontStyle Sets the current font style.

fontstyle An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a value that represents a fontstyle. Valid fontstyle equates can be found in EQUATES.CLW.

The **ChangeFontStyle** method is used to set the current font style. The style of a font represents the strike weight and style of the font.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.ChangeFontStyle(FONT:Italic )    !Font Style
oRTF_RTFTextBox.ChangeFontStyle(loc:fontstyle ) !Variable Font Style
```

CanRedo (check for redo data)

CanRedo

The **CanRedo** method is used to see if there is data in the redo buffer. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates there is redo data in the buffer, a redo operation is available; a return value of zero (0 or False) is returned if there is no redo data in the buffer, a redo operation is not available.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
loc:redo =oRTF_RTFTextBox.CanRedo() !Check for data in the Redo buffer
```

CanUndo (check for undo data)

CanUndo

The **CanUndo** method is used to see if there is data in the undo buffer. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates there is undo data in the buffer, an undo operation is available; a return value of zero (0 or False) is returned if there is no undo data in the buffer, an undo operation is not available.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
loc:undo =oRTF_RTFTextBox.CanUndo() !Check for data in the Undo buffer
```

Color (set text color)

Color

The **Color** method calls the Windows standard color choice dialog box in order to allow a user to choose a color. If text is selected prior to calling the color dialog, the selected text will be colored the selected color.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Color()!Color text
```

Copy (copy selected text to clipboard)

Copy

The **Copy** method is used to copy selected text from the rich text control into the clipboard.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Copy() !Copy text to clipboard
```

Cut (cut selected text)**Cut**

The **Cut** method is used to cut the selected text from the rich text control into the clipboard.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Cut() !Cut text to clipboard
```

Find (set current font style)**Find([findtext])****Find**

Search for text within the rich text field.

findtext

A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text for search for. If this is omitted the Find dialog is presented.

The **Find** method is used to search the Rich Text field for the text specified in *findtext*. If no *findtext* is specified, the Find dialog is presented. The user can type in the text to search for as well as specify other search options such as Whole Words Only, Case Sensitive Search, and Search Direction (up or down).

This method returns a value indicating the character position where the text was found.

Return Data Type: **LONG**

Example:

```
loc:position =oRTF_RTFTextBox.Find(loc:find ) ! Search for contents of
loc:find
loc:position =oRTF_RTFTextBox.Find('mytext ' ) ! Search for 'mytext'
loc:position =oRTF_RTFTextBox.Find()           ! Show find dialog
```

FlatButtons (use flat button style)**FlatButtons**(*buttonstatus*)**FlatButtons**

Set the FormatBar and Toolbar buttons to appear in a flat or raised mode.

buttonstatus

A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to use flat or raised buttons. A TRUE value is passed to the method to use flat buttons. A FALSE value is passed to the FlatButtons method to raised buttons.

The **FlatButtons** method is used to set the FormatBar and Toolbar buttons to appear in a flat or raised mode. A flat button remains flat until the mouse cursor passes over it.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTeXtBox.FlatButtons(1 ) !Flat buttons
oRTF_RTFTeXtBox.FlatButtons(0 ) !Raised buttons
```


Font (apply font attributes)

Font(*[fontname]*, *[fontsize]*, *[fontcolor]*, *[fontstyle]*)

Font	Apply font attributes to rich text.
<i>fontname</i>	A string constant or variable containing a font name.
<i>fontsize</i>	An integer constant containing the size (in points) of the font.
<i>fontcolor</i>	An integer constant containing the red, green, and blue values for the color of the font in the low-order three bytes, for an EQUATE for a standard Windows color value.
<i>fontstyle</i>	An integer constant, constant expression, or EQUATE specifying the strike weight and style of the font.

The **Font** method is used to set font attributes at the current insertion point or apply it to the currently selected text. If all of the parameters for this method are omitted the Windows standard font dialog box is called in order to allow a user to set standard font attributes.

Example:

```
!Using variables  
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Font(FontName,FontSize,FontColor,FontStyle )  
!Specific Font Attributes  
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Font('Arial ',10,COLOR:Red,FONT:Underline )  
!Font Dialog  
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Font()
```

GetText (copy text to variable)**GetText**(*text*, [*startpos*], [*endpos*])

GetText	Copy indicated text to a variable.
<i>text</i>	A string variable that will receive the specified text. The highlighted text will be assigned to the variable if no starting and ending positions are specified. If positions are specified the text specified by these positions will be assigned to the string variable.
<i>startpos</i>	An integer constant or variable that specifies the starting character position to copy text from.
<i>endpos</i>	An integer constant or variable that specifies the ending character position to copy text from.

The **GetText** method is used to copy the specified text to a string or variable. The method can return a result that specifies the length (number of characters) of the copied text.

Return Data Type: **LONG**

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.GetText(loc:find, ,)           !read text into loc:find
loc:length =oRTF_RTFTextBox.GetText(loc:find,,) !return string length

!read text into loc:find from specified position
oRTF_RTFTextBox.GetText(loc:find,10,20)
```

Init (initialize the cwRTF object)

Init(*window*, *textbox*, [*rulerflag*], [*toolbarflag*], [*formatbarflag*])

Init	Initialize the cwRTF object.
<i>window</i>	The label of the WINDOW that contains the rich text control.
<i>textbox</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number (FEQ) of the rich text control.
<i>rulerflag</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to initially display the RulerBar with the rich text control.
<i>toolbarflag</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to initially display the ToolBar with the rich text control.
<i>formatbarflag</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to initially display the FormatBar with the rich text control.

The **Init** method initializes the cwRTF object. This method also sets the initial states of the RulerBar, ToolBar, and FormatBar. By default all three bars are displayed.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Init( Window, ?RTFTextBox, 1, 1, 1 )
```

IsDirty (indicates modified data)**IsDirty**(*saveflag*)**IsDirty**

Determines if the data in the rich text control has been modified.

saveflag

A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to prompt the user to save changes to the rich text field if the field has changed data. A one (1 or True) value signifies the user will be prompted. This is the default value. A zero (0 or False) value signifies the user will not be prompted to save the data.

The **IsDirty** method is used to determine if the text in the RTF control has changed. If the text has changed, the user can be prompted to save all changes. A one (1 or True) is returned if the data in the rich text control contains changes; a zero (0 or False) is returned if the data in the rich text control does not contain data changes.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
loc:dirty =oRTF_RTFTextBox.IsDirty(1) !Prompt to save changes
loc:dirty =oRTF_RTFTextBox.IsDirty(0) !No prompt to save changes
```

Kill (shut down the csRTF object)**Kill**(*isdirty*)**Kill**

Shut down the cwRTF object.

isdirty

A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the rich text control's modified data should be saved to disk.

The **Kill** method shuts down the cwRTF object, releasing any memory allocated during the life of the object. Passing a one (1 or True) value to this method will force the modified data to be saved upon termination of the method; a value of zero (0 or False) will not save the modified data to the table.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Kill( TRUE )
```

LeftIndent (indent the current or selected paragraph)**LeftIndent**(*indentsize*)**LeftIndent**

Indent the current or selected paragraph.

indentsize

A REAL numeric constant, variable, or expression that indicates the number of inches to indent. A negative value will reverse the indent.

The **LeftIndent** method is used to indent the current or selected paragraph. The indentation size is specified in inches and may also be a negative number to reverse the indentation.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.LeftIndent(.5) !Indent 1/2 inch from left
```

LimitTextSize (limit amount of text)

LimitTextSize(*maxtextsize*)

LimitTextSize	Limits the amount of text that can be placed in the rich text control regardless of the method used to save the data field or file.
<i>maxtextsize</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the maximum number of characters allowed in the rich text field. This includes the rich text formatting characters.

The **LimitTextSize** method is used limit the number of text that can be placed in the rich text control regardless of the method used to save the data field or file. This method should be called before the rich text control is loaded.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.LimitTextSize(2000) !Limit text to 2000 characters
```

LoadField (load rich text data from field)

LoadField(*fieldname*)

LoadField	Load the rich text control with the data contained in the field specified.
<i>fieldname</i>	The fully qualified label of a field to load the data from.

The **LoadField** method is used to load a string or memo rich text field into the rich text control.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.LoadField(let:letter ) !Load RTF field
```

LoadFile (load rich text data from file)**LoadFile**(*filename*)**LoadFile**

Load the rich text control with the data contained in the file specified.

*filename*A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the .RTF filename. If no *filename* is specified, the Open file dialog is opened.

The **LoadFile** method is used to load a .RTF file into the rich text control.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.LoadField(let:letter ) !Load RTF field
```

NewFile (clear rich text data)**NewFile**

The **NewFile** method is used to clear the contents of the rich text control.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.NewFile( )
```

Offset (offset current or selected paragraph)**Offset**(*offsetsize*)**Offset**

Offset the second and subsequent lines of a paragraph.

offsetsize

A REAL numeric constant, variable, or expression that indicates the number of inches to offset. A negative value will reverse the offset.

The **Offset** method is used to offset the second and subsequent lines of the current or selected paragraph. The *offsetsize* is specified in inches and may also be a negative number to reverse the offset.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Offset(1 ) !Offset by 1 inch
```

PageSetup (set page attributes)

PageSetup

The **PageSetup** method calls the Windows standard page setup dialog box. This dialog allows the setting of the paper size and source, orientation, margins and printer selection and defaults.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.PageSetup( )
```

ParaBulletsOff (turn off paragraph bullets)

ParaBulletsOff

The **ParaBulletsOff** method is used turn off bullets for the current or selected paragraph. The current paragraph is the one that the cursor is within.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.ParaBulletsOff() !Turn bullets off
```

ParaBulletsOn (turn on paragraph bullets)

ParaBulletsOn(*bulletstyle*)

ParaBulletsOn	Turn on paragraph bullets.
<i>bulletstyle</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the bullet style. Bullet styles are defined in C60RTF.INC.

The **ParaBulletsOn** method is used turn on bullets for the current or selected paragraph. The current paragraph is the one that the cursor is within.

Supported bullet styles are:

Bullets:On (•)
 Bullets:Arabic (1, 2, 3,...)
 Bullets:LowerLetters (a, b, c,...)
 Bullets:UpperLetters (A, B, C,...)
 Bullets:LowerRoman (i, ii, iii,...)
 Bullets:UpperRoman (I, II, III,...)

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.ParaBulletsOn(BULLET:On) !Turn bullets on
```


Paste (paste text from clipboard)**Paste**

The **Paste** method is used to paste clipboard text into the rich text control .

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Paste() !Paste text to clipboard
```

Print (print rich text control contents)

_Print(*showsetup*, [*jobtitle*])

_Print	Print rich text control data.
<i>showsetup</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether to show the Windows Print Setup dialog.
<i>jobtitle</i>	A string constant or variable containing a title of the job being printed. The job title is seen from the print spooler. If no job title is specified, the default job title is 'Untitled'. If the Print icon is used from the toolbar, the job title is set to 'RTF Data'.

The **_Print** method is used to simply print the rich text data.

If the PageSetup dialog is used, the method will return a one (1 or True) value if the OK button on the dialog is pressed. A zero (0 or False) is returned if the Cancel button on the Page Seup dialog is pressed. If the Page Setup dialog is not used, a one (1 or True) is returned.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox._Print(1 )           !Show Print Setup dialog before printing
oRTF_RTFTextBox._Print(0 )           !Do not show Print Setup dialog
oRTF_RTFTextBox._Print(0, 'JobTitle' ) !Do not show Print Setup dialog
status = oRTF_RTFTextBox._Print(1, 'JobTitle' )!Do not show Print Setup dialog
```

Redo (reapply action)

Redo

The **Redo** method is used to reapply the action that was previously undone on the rich text control. Redo can be used on the previous 100 actions.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Redo() !Redo previous undo action to rich text control
```

Replace (find and replace search)

Replace([*findtext*], [*replacetext*])

Replace	Search for text within the rich text field.
<i>findtext</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text for search for. If this is omitted the Find dialog is presented.
<i>replacetext</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text for search for. If this is omitted the Find dialog is presented.

The **Replace** method is used to do a Find and Replace search option within the rich text control. If the *findtext* and *replacetext* parameters are omitted the Find and Replace dialog will appear.

This method returns a value indicating the number of applied replaces.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
!Using Variables
loc:replace =oRTF_RTFTextBox.Replace(loc:find,loc:replace )
!Replace dialog
loc:replace =oRTF_RTFTextBox.Replace()
```

ResizeControls (used internally)

The **ResizeControls** method is used internally and should not be called otherwise.

RightIndent (indent the current or selected paragraph)

RightIndent(*indentsize*)

RightIndent

Indent the current or selected paragraph.

indentsize

A REAL numeric constant, variable, or expression that indicates the number of inches to indent. A negative value will reverse the indent.

The **RightIndent** method is used to indent the current or selected paragraph from the right side of the rich text control. The indentation size is specified in inches and may also be a negative number to reverse the indentation.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.RightIndent(.5) !Indent 1/2 inch from right
```

SaveField (save rich text data to field)

SaveField(*fieldname*)

SaveField

Save the rich text control data to the field specified.

fieldname

The fully qualified label of a field to save to.

The **SaveField** method is used to save rich text data into a table field.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SaveField(let:letter )
```

SaveFile (save rich text data to file)

SaveFile(*filename*)

SaveFile	Save the rich text data to the file specified.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the .RTF filename to save the data to.

The **SaveFile** method is used to save rich text data to a .RTF file.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SaveFile(loc:Filename )
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SaveFile('0101SS.RTF ' )
```

SelectText (select characters)

SelectText(*startpos, endpos*)

GetText	Select a specific set of characters by character position.
<i>startpos</i>	An integer constant or variable that specifies the starting character position to select text from.
<i>endpos</i>	An integer constant or variable that specifies the ending character position to select text from.

The **SelectText** method is used select a specific set of characters by character position. The text is highlighted when it is selected.

Example:

```
!Select text from position 1 to 20
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SelectText(1,20 )
!Select text from variable positions
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SelectText(loc:startpos,loc:endpos )
```

SetDirtyFlag (set modified flag)

SetDirtyFlag(*status*)

SetDirtyFlag

Sets the modified flag for the rich text control

status

A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to set or clear the dirty flag. A one (1 or True) sets the flag; a zero (0 or False) clears the flag.

The **SetDirtyFlag** method is used to set or clear the modified flag for the rich text control. This can be used to clear the flag so the user is not prompted to save data.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SetDirtyFlag( 0)  ! Clear dirty flag
```

SetFocus (give rich text control focus)

SetFocus

The **SetFocus** method is used to give the rich text control focus.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SetFocus
```

SetText (place text into rich text control)

SetText(*text*, [*allowundo*], [*startpos*], [*endpos*])

SetText	Place indicated text into rich text control.
<i>text</i>	A string constant or variable containing the text to place in the rich text control.
<i>allowundo</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether the placement of text action is saved into the undo buffer. This allows the undo method to be called for this action. A one (1 or True) allows an undo for this action; a zero (0 or False) does not allow an undo for this action. The default value is False.
<i>startpos</i>	An integer constant or variable that specifies the starting character position to place the text to.
<i>endpos</i>	An integer constant or variable that specifies the ending character position to to place the text to.

The **SetText** method is used to place the text to a specified position within the a rich text control. The text to place comes from the specified string or variable. If the start and end positions are not available the current cursor position is used.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SetText(loc:find,0,) !place text at current position
oRTF_RTFTextBox.SetText(loc:find,10,20) !place text at specified position
```

ShowControl (hide/unhide RTF control)

ShowControl(*showstate*)

ShowControl	Hide/Unhide RTF control
<i>showstate</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the RTF control is displayed or hidden. A one (1 or True) unhides the control; a zero (0 or False) hides the control.

The **ShowControl** method is used to hide or unhide the RTF control. When hidden, the ruler bar is also hidden.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.ShowControl( 0 ) ! Hide control
oRTF_RTFTextBox.ShowControl( 1 ) ! Unhide control
```

Undo (undo action)

Undo

The **Undo** method is used to undo (reverse) the action previously taken on the rich text control.

Example:

```
oRTF_RTFTextBox.Undo()!Undo previous change to rich text control
```


DbAuditManager

DbAuditManager Overview

The DbAuditManager class declares an audit manager that consistently handles all database auditing operations. This class provides methods that create and update an audit log file.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The DbAuditManager class uses the DbFileManager to handle the opening of the log file. This also takes care of any errors that may occur when opening the file. The DbAuditManager class uses the DbChangeManager class to update the audit log file.

This class also implements the DbdChangeAudit interface. This interface aids in the update of the log file.

DbAuditManager ABC Template Implementation

The DbAuditManager class is used in an application when the Global Database Auditing extension is added to the application. The ABC Templates instantiate the DbAuditManager class in the global module of the application where the class is also initialized.

The DbAuditManager class implements the IDbdChangeAudit interface.

DbAuditManager Source Files

The DbAuditManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific DbAuditManager source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABFILE.INC	DbAuditManager declarations
ABFILE.CLV	DbAuditManager method definitions

DbAuditManager Properties

The DbAuditManager contains the following properties:

Action (log file action column)

Action **STRING(20)**

The **Action** property contains a string that is used to update the Action column in the audit log file. The action column show the type of update that was performed on the data file.

Implementation: The Action property is set by the OnInsert, OnDelete, OnChange, and BeforeChange methods. It is used to update the log file by the AddLogFile method.

See Also: OnInsert, OnDelete, OnChange, and BeforeChange, AddLogFile

ColumnInfo (log file column queue)

ColumnInfo **&DbColumnQueue, PROTECTED**

The **ColumnInfo** property is a reference to a structure that is the source of the data that is added to the audit log file.

Implementation: The ColumnInfo queue is initialized by the Init method and updated by the AddItem method.

See Also: AddItem, AppendLog, CreateHeader, Init, Kill

LogFiles (log file queue)

LogFiles **&LogFileQueue, PROTECTED**

The **LogFiles** property is a reference to a structure that keeps track of all audit log files.

Implementation: The LogFiles queue is initialized by the Init method and updated by the AddLogFile method.

See Also: AddLogFile, Init, Kill, SetFm, OpenLogFile

FM (DbLogFileManager object)

LFM **&DbLogFileManager, PROTECTED**

The **LFM** property is a reference to the DbLogFileManager object that creates and opens the various audit log files.

Implementation: The LFM property is initialized in the Init method.

See Also: AppendLog, CreateHeader, Init, Kill, OpenLogFile

Errors (ErrorClass object)

Errors **&ErrorClass, PROTECTED**

The Errors property is a reference to the ErrorClass object that handles unexpected conditions for the DbAuditManager. In an ABC Template enenerated program, the ErroClass object is called GlobaErros by default.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the Errors property.

See Also: Init, OpenLogFile

DbAuditManager Methods

The DbAuditManager class contains the following methods:

AddItem (maintain the columninfo structure)

AddItem(*filename, fieldname, field, fieldheader, fieldpicture*)

AddItem	Adds fields to the columninfo structure so they can be monitored in the audit log file.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>fieldname</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the field that is to be audited.
<i>field</i>	The fully qualified label for the FILE field.
<i>fieldheader</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the field header (title) field that is to be audited. This is the column header that will appear in the audit log file.
<i>fieldpicture</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the picture of the field that is to be audited. This defines how the column in the audit log file will be formatted.

The **AddItem** method maintains the ColumnInfo queue by updating it with field information needed to create and update the log file.

Implementation: This method is called one time for each field that will appear in the log file. There is one extra column that always appears in the log file. This is the action column that defines the update action that occurred to cause the log file update.

See Also: AddLogFile

AddLogFile (maintain log file structure)

AddLogFile(*filename*, *logfilename*)

AddLogFile	Maintain the log file queue.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>logfilename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the audit log file name.

The **AddLogFile** method maintains the LogFiles structure in order to keep track of each log file and its associated data file.

Implementation: In template generated code, the AddLogFile method is called after the DbAuditManager object is initialized. This method should be called once for each file being audited.

AppendLog (initiate audit log file update)

AppendLog(*filename*)

AppendLog	Initiate audit log file update.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.

The **AppendLog** method initiates the audit log file update by retrieving the field information and setting the date and time of the update. This information is added to the log file by the FileManager.

See Also: LFM

BeforeChange (update audit log file before file change)

BeforeChange(*filename*, *BFP*), VIRTUAL

BeforeChange

<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>BFP</i>	The label of a BufferedPairsClass object. See <i>BufferedPairsClass</i> for more information.

The **BeforeChange** method saves the values of the record before a change is made. These values are used for comparison after the record is saved back to disk.

Implementation: The BeforeChange method sets the Action property and saves the current field values to the log file. This method is called from the DbChangeManager.CheckChanges method.

See Also: BufferedPairsClass, DbChangeManager.CheckChanges

CreateHeader (create log file header records)

CreateHeader(*filename*, *LFM*), VIRTUAL

CreateHeader	Create the header records in the audit log file.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>LFM</i>	The label of the log file's DbLogFileManager object.

The **CreateHeader** method updates the audit log file just after file creation. It adds header records to the log file which serve as column heading information. The header includes the Date, Time, Action, and Field header.

Implementation: The CreateHeader method is called by the OpenLogFile method.

See Also: OpenLogFile

Init (initialize the DbAuditManager object)

Init(*error handler*), VIRTUAL

Init	Initializes the DbAuditManager object
<i>error handler</i>	The label of an ErrorClass object. See <i>Error Class</i> for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the DbAuditManager object. The *error handler* object, ColumnInfo, LogFiles, and LFM properties are initialized at this time.

Implementation: In template generated code, the Init method is called in the main application module. It is called with the GlobalErrors error handler.

Kill (shut down DbAuditManger object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and does any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method frees memory allocated to the ColumnInfo, LogFiles, and LFM properties.

OnChange (update audit log file after a record change)**OnChange**(*filename*, *file*), VIRTUAL

OnChange	Initiates an update to the audit log file after a Change to the file.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>file</i>	The label of the FILE being audited.

The **OnChange** method initiates the update to the audit log file after a Change action.

Implementation: The OnChange method sets the Action property and calls the AppendLog method. This method is called from the DbChangeManager.CheckChanges method.

See Also: DbChangeManager.CheckChanges

OnDelete (update audit log file when a record is deleted)**OnDelete**(*filename*, *file*), VIRTUAL

OnDelete	Initiates an update the audit log file on a Delete action.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>file</i>	The label of the FILE being audited.

The **OnDelete** method initiates the update to the audit log file on a Delete action.

Implementation: The OnDelete method sets the Action property and calls the AppendLog method. This method is called from the RelationManager's Delete method.

See Also: RelationManager.Delete

OnFieldChange (virtual method for each field change)

OnFieldChange(*left, right, fieldname, filename*), **VIRTUAL**

OnFieldChange	Manage field changes.
<i>left</i>	The label of the "left" field of the pair that contains the original value of the field being updated. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.
<i>right</i>	The label of the "right" field of the pair that contains the new value of the field being updated. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.
<i>fieldname</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the field that is to be audited.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **OnFieldChange** method is called for each field in the record that has changed. The before and after values are passed to this method.

Implementation: **OnFieldChange** is a VIRTUAL method so that other base class methods can directly call the OnFieldChange virtual method in a derived class. This lets you easily implement your own custom version of this method.

See Also: DbChangeManager.CheckPair

OnInsert (update audit log file when a record is added)**OnInsert**(*filename*, *file*), VIRTUAL

OnInsert	Initiates an update the audit log file on an Insert action.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>file</i>	The label of the FILE being audited.

The **OnInsert** method initiates the update to the audit log file on an Insert action.

Implementation: The OnInsert method sets the Action property and calls the AppendLog method. This method is called from the FileManager's Insert method.

See Also: FileManager.Insert

OpenLogFile (open the audit log file)**OpenLogFile**(*filename*), PROTECTED

OpenLogFile	Opens the audit log file.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **OpenLogFile** method opens the audit log file that is to be updated. If the log file does not already exist, the file is created and the headers are added to it.

Implementation: This method is called by the AppendLog method to ensure the log file exists before trying to update it.

See Also: AppendLog, DbLogFileManager class

SetFM (determine log file status)**SetFM**(*filename*), PROTECTED

SetFM	Determines log file status.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **SetFM** method is used to determine if the log file has been initialized by the AddLogFile method.

A one (1 or True) value is returned if the log file has been correctly initialized into the LogFiles structure; a zero (0 or False) is returned otherwise.

Implementation: The SetFM method is called by the AddItem and AppendLog methods.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: AddItem, AppendLog

DbChangeManager

DbChangeManager Overview

The DbChangeManager class declares an audit manager that consistently handles all database change operations.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The DbChangeManager class works in conjunctions with the DbAuditManager class and the IDbChangeManager interface.

DbChangeManager ABC Template Implementation

The DbChangeManager class is used in an application when the Global Database Auditing extension is added to the application. The ABC Templates instantiate the DbChangeManager class in the global module of the application where the class is also initialized.

DbChangeManager Source Files

The DbChangeManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific DbChangeManager source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABFILE.INC
ABFILE.CLV

DbChangeManager declarations
DbChangeManager method definitions

DbChangeManager Properties

The DbChangeManager contains the following properties:

NameQueue (pointer into trigger queue)

NameQueue &DbNameQueue, PROTECTED

The **NameQueue** property keeps track of the file and field names when a change is made to a file that is being audited. The NameQueue queue entry also points into the trigger queue for the change data.

Implementation: The NameQueue structure is updated in the DbChangeManager.AddItem method. This queue contains a pointer into the TriggerQueue.

See Also: DbChangeManager.Init, DbChangeManager.Kill,
DbChangeManager.AddItem, DbChangeManager.CheckPair

TriggerQueue (pointer to BFP for field changes)

TriggerQueue &DbTriggerQueue, PROTECTED

The **TriggerQueue** property contains the field change information by managing the BufferFieldPairs structure.

DbChangeManager Methods

The DbChangeManager class contains the following methods:

AddItem (maintain the namequeue structure)

AddItem(*left, name, filename*)

AddItem	Maintains the namequeue structure.
<i>left</i>	The label of the "left" field of the pair that contains the original value of the field being updated. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the field that is to be audited.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **AddItem** method maintains the NameQueue structure by updating it with field information needed to track before and after file changes.

Implementation: This method is called one time for each field that will appear in the log file.

AddThread (maintains the triggerqueue)

AddThread(*filename*)

AddThread	Maintains the TriggerQueue.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **AddThread** method maintains the TriggerQueue by updating it with the current thread number and an instance of the BufferedPairsClass.

CheckChanges(check record for changes)**CheckChanges**(*filename*, *file*)

CheckChanges	Checks the record for changes.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.
<i>file</i>	The label of the FILE being audited.

The **CheckChanges** method checks to see if there were any changes made to the columns in the audited file. This method calls the CheckPairs method to compare the before and after field values of the audited file.

See Also: DbChangeManagerBeforeChange, IDbChangeManagerOnChange,
DbChangeManager.CheckPair

CheckPair(check field pairs for changes)**CheckPair**(*FP*)

CheckPairs	Checks fields for changes.
<i>FP</i>	The label of a FieldPairsClass object. See <i>FieldPairsClass</i> for more information.

The **CheckPair** method compares the before and after values of a field to see if there were changes made. This is needed to know whether to update the audit log file.

Equal(checks for equal before and after values)**Equal**(*filename*)

Equal	Compares before and after values of fields.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **Equal** method returns one (1) if all pairs are equal and returns zero (0) if any pairs are not equal.

Implementation: The Equal method simply calls FieldPairsClass.Equat method which calls the FieldPairsClass.EqualLeftRight method which in turn does all the comparison work.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: FieldPairsClass.Equal

Init (initialize the DbChangeManager object)**Init**(*IDBC*), VIRTUAL

Init	Initializes the DbChangeManager object
<i>IDBC</i>	The label of an IDbChangeManager interface. See <i>IDbChangeManager</i> for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the DbChangeManager object. The *TriggerQueue* and *NameQueue* are also initialized at this time.

Implementation: In template generated code, the Init method is called in the main application module.

Kill (shut down DbChangeManger object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and does any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method frees memory allocated to the NameQueue and TriggerQueue structures.

SetThread (read triggerqueue)

SetThread(*filename*)

SetThread	Reads the TriggerQueue for the specified file and current thread.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **SetThread** method reads the TriggerQueue for the specified file and current thread. If a matching entry is found in the queue a one (1 or True) is returned; if an entry is not found in the TriggerQueue a zero (0 or False) is returned.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Update (update the audit log file buffer)

Update(*filename*)

Update

filename A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **Update** method calls the BufferFieldPairs class to update the record buffer with the changes made in order for the audit log file to be updated with the before and after values.

See Also: BFP.AssignLeftToRight

DbLogFileManager

DbLogFileManager Overview

The DbLogFileManager class declares a file manager that consistently handles the routine database operations on the audit log file. The DbLogFileManager is derived from the FileManager class.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The DbLogFileManager class is derived from the FileManager class. This class inherits all FileManager class properties and methods. The DbLogFileManager also relies on the ErrorClass for most of its error handling.

DbLogFileManager ABC Template Implementation

The DbLogFileManager class is instantiated by the DbAuditManager LFM property in the DbAuditManager.Init method.

DbLogFileManager Source Files

The DbLogFileManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific DbLogFileManager source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABFILE.INC	DbLogFileManager declarations
ABFILE.CLW	DbLogFileManager method definitions

DbLogFileManager Properties

DbLogFileManager Properties

The DbLogFileManager inherits all the properties of the FileManager class from which it is derived. See FileManager Properties for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the DbLogFileManager contains the following properties:

Opened (file opened flag)

Opened **BYTE**

The **Opened** property indicates whether the DbLogFileManager's FILE (the log file) has been opened. A value of one (1 or True) indicates the FILE is open; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates the FILE is not opened.

DbLogFileManager Methods

DbLogFileManager Methods

The DbLogFileManager inherits all the methods of the FileManager class from which it is derived. See FileManager Methods for more information.

In addition to the inherited methods, the DbLogFileManager contains the following methods:

Init (initialize the DbLogFileManager object)

Init(*errorclass*, *logfilename*), VIRTUAL

Init	Initializes the DbAuditManager object
<i>errorclass</i>	The label of an ErrorClass object. See <i>Error Class</i> for more information.
<i>logfilename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the audit log file name.

The **Init** method initializes the DbLogFileManager object.

EditClass

EditClass Overview

The EditClass lets you implement a dynamic edit-in-place control for each column in a LIST. The EditClass is an abstract class--it is not useful by itself, but serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. See *EditCheckClass*, *EditColorClass*, *EditFileClass*, *EditDropListClass*, *EditFontClass*, and *EditMultiSelectClass*.

EditClass Concepts

The EditClass creates an input control (CHECK, ENTRY, SPIN, COMBO, etc.), accepts input from the end user, then returns the input to a specified variable, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE. The EditClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditClass provides virtual methods (TakeEvent) to allow you to take control of significant edit-in-place events.

The BrowseClass (AskRecord method) uses the EditClass to accomplish edit-in-place data entry by assigning the EditClass input control to a specific LIST cell--see *BrowseClass.AskRecord*.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

Derived Classes

The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. See *EditCheckClass*, *EditColorClass*, *EditEntryClass*, *EditFileClass*, *EditFileDropClass*, *EditFontClass*, and *EditMultiSelectClass*. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to this chapter's specification; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

The BrowseClass.AskProcedure property indicates whether the BrowseClass object uses the EditClass for updates.

The BrowseClass.AskRecord method is the engine for the edit-in-place functionality. This method uses the EditClass to dynamically create the Edit-in-place control upon request (Insert, Change, or Delete) by the end user. When the end user moves off the edited record (enter key, click on another item) the AskRecord method saves or deletes the record and uses the EditClass to destroy the Edit-in-place control.

ABC Template Implementation

The BrowseUpdateButtons template generates references to EditClass objects as needed. One check box on the BrowseUpdateButtons control template enables default edit-in-place support for a given BrowseBox--any associated Form (update) procedure then becomes redundant.

If you accept the BrowseUpdateButtons default edit-in-place behavior, the generated code does not reference the EditClass, because the default edit-in-place behavior is implemented in the BrowseClass (see BrowseClass.AskRecord), and no additional generated code is needed.

If you use custom (**Configure EditInPlace**) edit-in-place behavior, the BrowseUpdateButtons template generates the code to instantiate the requested object (derived from the EditClass) and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditClass Source Files

The EditClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditClass method definitions
ABEIP.TRN	EditClass translation strings

EditClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate several EditClass objects and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the list items with a variety of edit-in-place objects. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditClass objects' methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')      !declare WindowManager
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')      !declare BrowseClass
  INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')         !declare Edit-in-place classes
  MAP
  END

Property  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey   KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record    RECORD,PRE()
FieldName STRING(30)
Color     STRING(20)
Hidden    STRING(1)
IconFile  STRING(30)
ControlType STRING(12)
          END
          END
PropView  VIEW(Property)
          END

PropQ      QUEUE
PR:FieldName LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color     LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)
PR:Hidden    LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile  LIKE(PR:IconFile)
ViewPosition STRING(1024)
          END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'),AT(,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
'60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
'20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
          END

```

```

Edit:PR:FieldName  EditEntryClass      !declare Edit:PR:FieldName-EIP ENTRY control

Edit:PR:Color CLASS(EditColorClass)    !declare Edit:PR:Color-EIP color dialog
Init          PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar),VIRTUAL
              END

Edit:PR:Hide CLASS(EditCheckClass) !declare Edit:PR:Color-EIP CHECK control
Init          PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar),VIRTUAL
              END
Edit:PR:IconFile CLASS(EditFileClass)!declare Edit:PR:IconFile-EIP file dialog
Init          PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar),VIRTUAL
              END

Edit:PR:ControlType CLASS(EditDropListClass) !declare Edit:PR:ContolType-EIP droplist
Init          PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar),VIRTUAL
              END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
              END

BRW1          CLASS(BrowseClass) !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q             &PropQ             ! that drives the EditClass objects--
              END                ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors  ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
              END

GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse  BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest     LONG(0),THREAD
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

```

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open
BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
?PropList{PROP:LineHeight}=12    !enlarge rows to accomodate EditClass icons
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:FieldName,1)    !Register Edit:PR:FieldName with BRW1
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:Color,2)        !Register Edit:PR:Color with BRW1
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:ControlType,3)!Register Edit:PR:ControlType with BRW1
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:Hide,4)         !Register Edit:PR:Hide with BRW1
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:IconFile,5)     !Register Edit:PR:IconFile with BRW1
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:Color.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Title='Select field color'    !set EIP color dialog title

Edit:PR:Hide.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)

CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)

```

```

SELF.Feq{PROP:Text}='Hide '      !set EIP check box text
SELF.Feq{PROP:Value,1}='Y'       !set EIP check box true value
SELF.Feq{PROP:Value,2}='N'       !set EIP check box false value

Edit:PR:IconFile.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Title='Select icon file'      !set EIP file dialog title
SELF.FilePattern='Icon files *.ico|*.ico' !set EIP file dialog file masks
SELF.FileMask=FILE:KeepDir+FILE:LongName !set EIP file dialog behavior flag

Edit:PR:ControlType.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Feq{PROP:From}='ENTRY|SPIN|TEXT|STRING' !set ControlType droplist
choices

Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE      !initialize FileManager
CODE
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE      !initialize RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)

Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE      !shut down RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill

```

EditClass Properties

The EditClass contains the following properties.

FEQ (the edit-in-place control number)

FEQ UNSIGNED

The **FEQ** property contains the control number of the edit-in-place control.

The CreateControl method sets the value of the FEQ property when it creates the control.

See Also: CreateControl

ReadOnly (edit-in-place control is read-only)

ReadOnly BYTE

The **ReadOnly** property is a flag indicating that the edit-in-place control is not editable.

See Also: SetReadOnly

EditClass Methods

Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init ^v	initialize the EditClass object
Kill ^v	shut down the EditClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent ^v	handle events for the edit control
------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol ^v	a virtual to create the edit control
SetAlerts ^v	alert appropriate keystrokes for the edit control

^v These methods are also virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init	initialize the EditClass object
CreateContol	a virtual to create the edit control
SetAlerts	alert appropriate keystrokes for the edit control
TakeAccpted	handle accepted events for the edit control
TakeEvent ^v	handle events for the edit control
Kill	shut down the EditClass object

CreateControl (a virtual to create the edit control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method is a virtual placeholder to create the appropriate window control for derived classes.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method must set the value of the FEQ property.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
    SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
    SELF.CreateControl()
    ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
    SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
    SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
    SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
    SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditCheckClass.CreateControl, EditColorClass.CreateControl,
EditEntryClass.CreateControl, EditFileClass.CreateControl,
EditDropListClass.CreateControl, EditMultiSelectClass.CreateControl

Init (initialize the EditClass object)

Init(*column*, *listbox*, *editedfield*), **VIRTUAL**

Init	Initializes the EditClass object.
<i>column</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the edited column number of the <i>listbox</i> .
<i>listbox</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the control number of the edited LIST control--typically a BrowseClass object's LIST.
<i>editedfield</i>	The fully qualifiedlabel of the edited field--typically a field in the BrowseClass object's QUEUE.

The **Init** method initializes the EditClass object.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the Init method. The Init method creates the edit-in-place control, loads it with the selected list item's data, and alerts the appropriate edit-in-place navigation keys.

Example:

```
MyEditClass.Init(1,?MyList,StateQ:StateCode)    !initialize EditClass object
!program code
MyEditClass.Kill                                !shut down EditClass object
```

See Also: BrowseClass.AskRecord

Kill (shut down the EditClass object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. The Kill method must leave the object in an Initable state.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the Kill method. The Kill method destroys the edit-in-place control created by the Init method.

Example:

```
MyEditClass.Init(1,?MyList,StateQ:StateCode)      !initialize EditClass object
!program code
MyEditClass.Kill                                !shut down EditClass object
```

See Also: BrowseClass.AskRecord

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control)**SetAlerts, VIRTUAL**

The **SetAlerts** method method alerts appropriate keystrokes for the edit-in-place control.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method to create the input control and set the FEQ property. The Init method then calls the SetAlerts method to alert standard edit-in-place keystrokes for the edit control. Alerted keys are:

TabKey	!next field
ShiftTab	!previous field
EnterKey	!complete and save
EscKey	!complete and cancel
DownKey	!complete and save, then edit next row
UpKey	!complete and save, then edit prior row

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: Init

SetReadOnly (set edit control to read-only)

SetReadOnly(*state*), VIRTUAL

SetReadOnly The **SetReadOnly** method places the edit-in-place control in a read-only state.

state An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to disable a droplist control's dropdown button. A value of one (1 or True) disables the button. A value of zero (0 or False) has no effect on the control.

Implementation: The SetReadOnly method uses PROP:ReadOnly to place the edit-in-place control in a read-only state. After the parent call in the Init method of the EditInPlace object is the recommended place to call SetReadOnly.

Example:

```
EditInPlace::CUS:Number.SetReadOnly( )
```

See Also: ReadOnly, EditDropListClass.SetReadOnly

TakeAccepted (validate EIP field)

TakeAccepted (Action), VIRTUAL

The **TakeAccepted** method processes the accepted EIP field value and returns a value indicating whether to continue editing or to complete the field. If the EIPManager Class attribute SELF.REQ is TRUE, the field will be required, and the row can not be accepted if the field is blank. If the TakeAccepted method returns the EditAction:Cancel equate, the EIP will remain on the current field.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: EIPManager.TakeAcceptAll

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events)**TakeEvent**(*event*), VIRTUAL

TakeEvent	Processes an event for the EditClass object.
<i>event</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the <i>Language Reference</i>).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method process an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control and returns a value indicating the user requested action. The BrowseClass.AskRecord method carries out the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

EditAction	ITEMIZE(0),PRE	
None	EQUATE	! no action
Forward	EQUATE	! next field
Backward	EQUATE	! previous field
Complete	EQUATE	! OK
Cancel	EQUATE	! cancel
Next	EQUATE	! next record
Previous	EQUATE	! previous record
	END	

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
EditClassAction ROUTINE
  CASE SELF.EditList.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT())
  OF EditAction:Forward
    !handle tab forward (new field, same record)
  OF EditAction:Backward
    !handle tab backward (new field, same record)
  OF EditAction:Next
    !handle down arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
  OF EditAction:Previous
    !handle up arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
  OF EditAction:Complete
    !handle OK or enter key (save record)
  OF EditAction:Cancel
    !handle Cancel or esc key (restore record)
  END
```

See Also: BrowseClass.AskRecord

EditSpinClass

EditSpinClass--Overview

The EditSpinClass is an EditClass that supports a SPIN control. The EditSpinClass lets you implement a dynamic edit-in-place SPIN control for a column in a LIST.

EditSpinClass Concepts

The EditSpinClass creates a SPIN control, accepts input from the end user, then returns the input to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE. The EditSpinClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditSpinClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditSpinClass -- Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditSpinClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseEIPManagerClass

The EditClass is managed by the BrowseEIPManagerClass. The BrowseEIPManagerClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditSpinClass--ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditSpinClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditSpinClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information. EditSpinClass Source Files

The EditSpinClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditSpinClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditSpinClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditSpinClass method definitions

EditSpinClass--Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditSpinClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of actions and associated attributes (priority and completed), then edits the "Priority" items with an EditSpinClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditSpinClass object's methods as needed.

Note: The EditSpinClass requires values for PROP:RangeLow, PROP:RangeHigh, and PROP:Step to function correctly. The EditSpinClass.Init method is the proper place to set these properties. See *SPIN* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC'),ONCE
  INCLUDE('ABEIP.CWL'),ONCE
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.CWL'),ONCE
  MAP
  END
  Actions          FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ACT),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
  KeyAction         KEY(ACT:Action),NOCASE,OPT
  Record            RECORD,PRE()
  Action            STRING(20)
  Priority           DECIMAL(2)
  Completed         DECIMAL(1)
  END
  ViewActions       VIEW(Actions)
  END
  ActQ              QUEUE
  ACT:Action        LIKE(ACT:Action)
  ACT:Priority       LIKE(ACT:Priority)
  ACT:Completed     LIKE(ACT:Completed)
  ViewPosition      STRING(1024)
  END

  ActionWindow      WINDOW('Actions File'),AT(,,164,144),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY|
  LIST,AT(8,6,148,115),USE(?List),IMM,HVSCROLL,FORMAT('80L(2)|~Action~'|&|
  '@S20@31C|~Priority~@N2@40L(2)|~Done~L(0)@N1@'),FROM(ActQ)
  BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(10,126,45,14),USE(?Insert:2)
  BUTTON('&Change'),AT(59,126,45,14),USE(?Change:2),DEFAULT
  BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(108,126,45,14),USE(?Delete:2)
  END

```



```

ThisWindow      CLASS(WindowManager)
Init            PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
Kill            PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
                END
BRW1            CLASS(BrowseClass)
Q              &ActQ
                END

```

```

Edit:ACT:Priority CLASS(EditSpinClass)  ! Edit-in-place class for field ACT:Priority
Init          PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar),DERIVED
                END

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

```

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue =PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?List
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
Relate:Actions.Open
FilesOpened = True
BRW1.Init(?List,ActQ.ViewActions,BRW1::ViewActions,ActQ,Relate:Actions,SELF)
OPEN(ActionWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= ActQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(ACT:KeyAction)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Action,BRW1.Q.ACT:Action)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Priority,BRW1.Q.ACT:Priority)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Completed,BRW1.Q.ACT:Completed)
BRW1.AddEditControl(EditInPlace::ACT:Priority,2)  !Add cutom edit-inplace class
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert:2
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change:2
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete:2
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

```

```

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue =PARENT.Kill()

```

```
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.  
IF FilesOpened  
    Relate:Actions.Close  
END  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
Edit:ACT:Priority.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*?  
UseVar)  
CODE  
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)  
SELF.FEQ{PROP:RANGE,1} = 1           !Set the Low Range for the Spinbox  
SELF.FEQ{PROP:RANGE,2} = 10          !Set the High Range for the Spinbox  
SELF.FEQ{PROP:Step} = 1              !Set the incremental steps of the Spinbox
```

EditSpinClass Properties

EditSpinClass Properties

The EditSpinClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

EditSpinClass Methods

EditSpinClass Methods

The EditSpinClass inherits all the methods of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Methods* and *EditClass Concepts*.

EditSpinClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditSpinClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditSpinClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _v	initialize the EditSpinClass object
Kill _v	shut down the EditSpinClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _v	handle events for the SPIN control
------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the SPIN control
SetAlerts _v	alert keystrokes for the SPIN control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditSpinClass object
CreateContol _i	create the SPIN control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the SPIN control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the SPIN control
Kill _i	shut down the EditSpinClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place SPIN control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place SPIN control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method sets the value of the FEQ property. Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the SPIN control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
    SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
    SELF.CreateControl()
    ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
    SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
    SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
    SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
    SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

EditCheckClass

EditCheckClass Overview

The EditCheckClass is an EditClass that supports a CHECK control. The EditCheckClass lets you implement a dynamic edit-in-place CHECK control for a column in a LIST.

EditCheckClass Concepts

The EditCheckClass creates a CHECK control, accepts input from the end user, then returns the input to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell—a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE. The EditCheckClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditCheckClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditCheckClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditCheckClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditCheckClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditCheckClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditCheckClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates—BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditCheckClass Source Files

The EditCheckClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditCheckClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC
ABEIP.CLW

EditCheckClass declarations
EditCheckClass method definitions

EditCheckClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditCheckClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the "Hide" items with an EditCheckClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditCheckClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')           !declare WindowManager
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')           !declare BrowseClass
  INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')              !declare Edit-in-place classes

  MAP
  END

Property FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record RECORD,PRE()
FieldName STRING(30)
Color STRING(20)
Hidden STRING(1)
IconFile STRING(30)
ControlType STRING(12)
      END
      END

PropView VIEW(Property)
      END

PropQ QUEUE
PR:FieldName LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)
PR:Hidden LIKE(PR:Hidden)           !edit this LIST field with a CHECK control
PR:IconFile LIKE(PR:IconFile)
ViewPosition STRING(1024)
      END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'),AT(,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
  LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
  FORMAT( ' 50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
    '60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
    '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
  BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
  BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT

```

```

        BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
    END

Edit:PR:Hide CLASS(EditCheckClass) !declare Edit:PR:Color-EIP CHECK control
Init        PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar),VIRTUAL
            END

ThisWindow  CLASS(WindowManager)
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
            END

BRW1        CLASS(BrowseClass)      !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q           &PropQ                  ! that drives the EditClass objects--
            END                     ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
            END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
            END

GlobalRequest BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD
CODE
    GlobalErrors.Init
    Relate:Property.Init
    GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
    Relate:Property.Kill
    GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO

CODE
    SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
    SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
    SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
    SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
    Relate:Property.Open
    BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)

```

```

OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:Hide,4)      !Use Edit:PR:Hide to edit BRW1 column 4
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:Hide.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text}='Hide '             !set EIP check box text
SELF.Feq{PROP:Value,1}='Y'              !set EIP check box true value
SELF.Feq{PROP:Value,2}='N'              !set EIP check box false value

Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE          !initialize FileManager
CODE
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE          !initialize RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)

Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE          !shut down RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill

```

EditCheckClass Properties

The EditCheckClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

EditCheckClass Methods

The EditCheckClass inherits all the methods of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Methods* and *EditClass Concepts*.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the EditCheckClass contains the following methods:

EditCheckClass Functional Organization—Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditCheckClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use—the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditCheckClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _{vi}	initialize the EditCheckClass object
Kill _{vi}	shut down the EditCheckClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _{vi}	handle events for the CHECK control
-------------------------	-------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the CHECK control
SetAlerts _{vi}	alert keystrokes for the CHECK control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly—the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditCheckClass object
CreateContol _i	create the CHECK control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the CHECK control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the CHECK control
Kill _i	shut down the EditCheckClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place CHECK control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place CHECK control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method sets the value of the FEQ property. Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the CHECK control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

EditColorClass

EditColorClassOverview

The EditColorClass is an EditClass that supports the Windows Color dialog by way of a dynamic edit-in-place COMBO control.

EditColorClass Concepts

The EditColorClass creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button that invokes the Windows Color dialog. The EditColorClass accepts a color selection from the end user, then returns the selection to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE.

The EditColorClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditColorClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditColorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditColorClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditColorClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditColorClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditColorClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditColorClass Source Files

The EditColorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditColorClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditColorClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditColorClass method definitions
ABEIP.TRN	EditColorClass translation strings

EditColorClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditColorClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the "Color" items with an EditColorClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditColorClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM

_AB CDllMode_   EQUATE(0)
_AB CLinkMode_  EQUATE(1)

      INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')      !declare WindowManager
      INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')      !declare BrowseClass
      INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')         !declare Edit-in-place classes

MAP
END

Property      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey        KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record         RECORD,PRE()
FieldName      STRING(30)
Color          STRING(20)
Hidden         STRING(1)
IconFile       STRING(30)
ControlType    STRING(12)
              END
              END

PropView       VIEW(Property)
              END

PropQ          QUEUE
PR:FieldName   LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color       LIKE(PR:Color)      !edit this LIST field with the color dialog
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)
PR:Hidden      LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile    LIKE(PR:IconFile)
ViewPosition   STRING(1024)
              END

```

```

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'),AT(, ,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
    FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
        '60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
        '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
    BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
    BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
END

Edit:PR:Color CLASS(EditColorClass) !declare Edit:PR:Color-EIP color dialog
Init          PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar),VIRTUAL
              END

ThisWindow    CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
              END

BRW1          CLASS(BrowseClass)    !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q             &PropQ                ! that drives the EditClass objects--
              END                    ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors  ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
              END

GlobalRequest BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

```

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
    SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
    SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
    SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
    Relate:Property.Open
    BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
    OPEN(PropWindow)
    SELF.Opened=True
    BRW1.Q &= PropQ
    BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
    BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
    BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
    BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
    BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
    BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
    BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:Color,2)      !Use Edit:PR:Color to edit BRW1 column 2
    BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
    BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
    BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
    BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
    SELF.SetAlerts()
    RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
    Relate:Property.Close
    RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:Color.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar)
CODE
    PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
    SELF.Title='Select field color'          !set EIP color dialog title

Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE              !initialize FileManager
CODE
    PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
    SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
    SELF.Create = 1
    SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

```

```
Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE      !initialize RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)

Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE      !shut down RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill
```

EditColorClass Properties

EditColorClass Properties

The EditColorClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the EditColorClass contains the following properties:

Title (color dialog title text)

Title CSTRING(256)

The **Title** property contains a string that sets the title bar text in the Windows color dialog.

Implementation: The EditColorClass (TakeEvent method) uses the Title property as the *title* parameter to the COLORDIALOG procedure. See *COLORDIALOG* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

See Also: TakeEvent

EditColorClass Methods

EditColorClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditColorClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditColorClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _{vi}	initialize the EditColorClass object
Kill _{vi}	shut down the EditColorClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _v	handle events for the edit control
------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateControl _v	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _{vi}	alert keystrokes for the edit control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditColorClass object
CreateControl _i	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the edit control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the edit control
Kill _i	shut down the EditColorClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place COMBO control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button and sets the value of the FEQ property.

Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the COMBO control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditColorClass)**TakeEvent**(*event*), VIRTUAL

TakeEvent	Processes an event for the EditColorClass object.
<i>event</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the <i>Language Reference</i>).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditColorClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method processes an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control. On EVENT:DroppingDown, TakeEvent invokes the Windows color dialog and stores the color selection in the edited field specified by the Init method. Finally, TakeEvent returns a value indicating the user requested action. The BrowseClass.AskRecord method carries out the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```

EditAction      ITEMIZE(0),PRE
None            EQUATE          ! no action
Forward        EQUATE          ! next field
Backward       EQUATE          ! previous field
Complete       EQUATE          ! OK
Cancel         EQUATE          ! cancel
Next           EQUATE          ! next record
Previous       EQUATE          ! previous record
Ignore         EQUATE          ! no action
END

```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

EditClassAction ROUTINE
CASE SELF.EditList.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT())
OF EditAction:Forward   !handle tab forward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Backward  !handle tab backward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Next      !handle down arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Previous  !handle up arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Complete  !handle OK or enter key (save record)
OF EditAction:Cancel    !handle Cancel or esc key (restore record)
END

```

See Also: Init, BrowseClass.AskRecord

EditDropComboClass

EditDropComboClass Overview

The EditDropComboClass is an EditClass that supports a dynamic edit-in-place COMBO control for a column in a LIST.

EditDropComboClass Concepts

The EditDropComboClass creates a COMBO control, accepts input from the end user, then returns the input to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell—a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE. The EditDropComboClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, canceling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditDropComboClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditDropComboClass is derived from the EditDropListClass which in turn is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseEIPManagerClass

The EditClass is managed by the BrowseEIPManagerClass. The BrowseEIPManagerClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditDropComboClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (Configure EditInPlace) to generate the code to instantiate an EditDropComboClass object called EditInPlace:*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditDropComboClass object's methods as needed. See Control Templates—BrowseUpdateButtons for more information.

EditDropComboClass Source Files

The EditDropComboClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditDropComboClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditDropComboClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditDropComboClass method definitions

EditDropComboClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditDropComboClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the "ControlType" items with an EditDropComboClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditDropComboClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')      !declare WindowManager
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')      !declare BrowseClass
  INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')         !declare Edit-in-place classes

MAP
END

Property  FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(PR), CREATE, BINDABLE, THREAD
NameKey    KEY(PR:FieldName), NOCASE, OPT
Record     RECORD, PRE()
FieldName  STRING(30)
Color      STRING(20)
Hidden     STRING(1)
IconFile   STRING(30)
ControlType STRING(12)
          END
          END

PropView   VIEW(Property)
          END

PropQ      QUEUE
PR:FieldName LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color     LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType) !edit this field with a COMBO control
PR:Hidden    LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile  LIKE(PR:IconFile)
ViewPosition STRING(1024)
          END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'), AT(, , 318, 137), IMM, SYSTEM, GRAY
LIST, AT(8, 4, 303, 113), USE(?PropList), IMM, HVSCROLL, FROM(PropQ), |
FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
        '60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
        '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
BUTTON('&Insert'), AT(169, 121), USE(?Insert)

```

```

        BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
        BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
    END
!declare Edit:PR:ControlType-EIP COMBO
Edit:PR:ControlType CLASS(EditDropComboClass)
Init    PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar),VIRTUAL
        END

ThisWindow    CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
        END

BRW1 CLASS(BrowseClass) !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q      &PropQ           ! that drives the EditClass objects-
        END             ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors    ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init            PROCEDURE
        END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init            PROCEDURE
Kill            PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
        END

GlobalRequest    BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse    BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest        LONG(0),THREAD

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init    PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue        BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open

```

```

BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
!Use Edit:PR:ControlType to edit BRW1 col 3
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:ControlType,3)
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:ControlType.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED
ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Feq{PROP:From}='ENTRY|SPIN|TEXT|STRING'!set ControlType droplist
choices

Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE !initialize FileManager
CODE
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)
Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE !initialize RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)
Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE !shut down RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill

```

EditDropComboClass Properties

The EditDropComboClass inherits all of the properties of the EditDropListClass and EditClass from which is derived. See EditClass Properties and EditClass Concepts for more information.

EditDropComboClass Methods

The EditDropComboClass inherits all the methods of the EditDropListClass and EditClass from which it is derived. See EditClass Methods and EditClass Concepts for more information.

EditDropComboClass Functional Organization

Non-Virtual Methods

Occasional Use:

CreateContol ^v	create the LIST control
---------------------------	-------------------------

^v This method is also virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call this method directly—the Non-Virtual methods call it. However, we anticipate you will often want to override this method, and because it is virtual, it is very easy to override. This method does provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override it.

CreateContol	create the LIST control
--------------	-------------------------

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place COMBO control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place COMBO control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method sets the value of the FEQ property. Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the COMBO control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

EditDropListClass

EditDropListClass Overview

The EditDropListClass is an EditClass that supports a DROPLIST control. The EditDropListClass lets you implement a dynamic edit-in-place DROPLIST control for a column in a LIST.

EditDropListClass Concepts

The EditDropListClass creates a DROPLIST control, accepts input from the end user, then returns the input to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE. The EditDropListClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditDropListClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditDropListClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditDropListClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditDropListClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditDropListClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditDropListClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditDropListClass Source Files

The EditDropListClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditDropListClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC
ABEIP.CLW

EditDropListClass declarations
EditDropListClass method definitions

EditDropListClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditDropListClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the "ControlType" items with an EditDropListClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditDropListClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')      !declare WindowManager
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')      !declare BrowseClass
  INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')         !declare Edit-in-place classes

MAP
END

Property  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey    KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record     RECORD,PRE()
FieldName  STRING(30)
Color      STRING(20)
Hidden     STRING(1)
IconFile   STRING(30)
ControlType STRING(12)
          END
          END
PropView   VIEW(Property)
          END

PropQ      QUEUE
PR:FieldName LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color     LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)      !edit this field with a DROPLIST control
PR:Hidden    LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile  LIKE(PR:IconFile)
ViewPosition STRING(1024)
          END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'),AT(,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
        '60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
        '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
          END

```

```

!declare Edit:PR:ControlType-EIP DROPLIST
Edit:PR:ControlType CLASS(EditDropListClass)
Init      PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar),VIRTUAL
          END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
          END

BRW1      CLASS(BrowseClass) !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q         &PropQ             ! that drives the EditClass objects--
          END                ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
          END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
          END

GlobalRequest BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open
BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True

```

```

BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
!Use Edit:PR:ControlType to edit BRW1 col 3
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:ControlType,3)
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:ControlType.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Feq{PROP:From}='ENTRY|SPIN|TEXT|STRING'!set ControlType droplist choices

Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE !initialize FileManager
CODE
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE !initialize RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)

Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE !shut down RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill

```

EditDropListClass Properties

EditDropListClass Properties

The EditDropListClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

EditDropListClass Methods

EditDropListClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditDropListClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditDropListClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The non-virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _{vi}	initialize the EditDropListClass object
Kill _{vi}	shut down the EditDropListClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _{vi}	handle events for the LIST control
-------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the LIST control
SetAlerts _v	alert keystrokes for the LIST control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditDropListClass object
CreateContol	create the LIST control
SetAlerts	alert keystrokes for the LIST control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the LIST control
Kill _i	shut down the EditDropListClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place DROPLIST control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place DROPLIST control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method sets the value of the FEQ property. Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the DROPLIST control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control:EditDropListClass)

SetAlerts, VIRTUAL

The **SetAlerts** method alerts appropriate keystrokes for the edit-in-place DROPLIST control.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method to create the input control and set the FEQ property. The Init method then calls the SetAlerts method to alert appropriate edit-in-place keystrokes for the edit control. Alerted keys are:

TabKey	!next field
ShiftTab	!previous field
EnterKey	!complete and save
EscKey	!complete and cancel

Tip: Arrowup and Arrowdown keys are not alerted for a DROPLIST control because these keys are used to navigate within the DROPLIST.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: Init

SetReadOnly (set edit control to read-only:EditDropClass)**SetReadOnly(*state*), VIRTUAL**

SetReadOnly	The SetReadOnly method places the edit-in-place control in a read-only state.
<i>state</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to disable the droplist control's dropdown button. A value of one (1 or True) disables the button. A value of zero (0 or False) has no effect on the control.

Implementation: The SetReadOnly method uses PROP:ReadOnly to place the edit-in-place control in a read-only state. After the parent call in the Init method of the EditInPlace object is the recommended place to call SetReadOnly.

Example: **EditInPlace::CUS:Number.SetReadOnly()**

See Also: **ReadOnly**

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditDropList Class)**TakeEvent(event), VIRTUAL**

TakeEvent	Processes an event for the EditDropListClass object.
<i>event</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the <i>Language Reference</i>).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditDropListClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method is called by the WindowManager.TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method processes an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control. TakeEvent returns a value indicating the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATES for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABEIP.INC as follows:

EditAction	ITEMIZE(0),PRE	
None	EQUATE	! no action
Forward	EQUATE	! next field
Backward	EQUATE	! previous field
Complete	EQUATE	! OK
Cancel	EQUATE	! cancel
Next	EQUATE	! next record
Previous	EQUATE	! previous record
Ignore	EQUATE	! no action
	END	

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

WindowManager.TakeEvent  PROCEDURE
CODE
! Event handling code
  LOOP i=1 TO RECORDS(SELF.FileDrops)
    GET(SELF.FileDrops,i)
    ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
    SELF.FileDrops.FileDrop.TakeEvent
  END

```

See Also: **Init**

EditEntryClass

EditEntryClass Overview

The EditEntryClass is an EditClass that supports an ENTRY control. The EditEntryClass lets you implement a dynamic edit-in-place ENTRY control for a column in a LIST.

EditEntryClass Concepts

The EditEntryClass creates an ENTRY control, accepts input from the end user, then returns the input to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE. The EditEntryClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditEntryClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditEntryClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditEntryClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

Tip: The BrowseClass instantiates the EditEntryClass as the default edit-in-place object whenever edit-in-place is requested (when BrowseClass.AskProcedure is zero).

EditEntryClass ABC Template Implementation

When you check the **Use EditInPlace** box and you do not set column-specific configuration, the BrowseUpdateButtons control template relies on the default BrowseBox edit-in-place behavior--which is the default BrowseClass edit-in-place implementation--which instantiates an EditEntryClass object for each BrowseBox column.

You can also use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to explicitly instantiate an EditEntryClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditEntryClass object's methods as needed. By explicitly requesting an EditEntryClass object, you gain access to EditEntryClass method embed points. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditEntryClass Source Files

The EditEntryClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditEntryClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditEntryClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditEntryClass method definitions

EditEntryClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditEntryClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the items with an EditEntryClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the EditEntryClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_  EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')  !declare WindowManager
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')  !declare BrowseClass
  INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')     !declare Edit-in-place classes

MAP
END

Property  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey   KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record    RECORD,PRE()
FieldName STRING(30)
Color     STRING(20)
Hidden    STRING(1)

```

```

IconFile      STRING(30)
ControlType   STRING(12)
              END
              END

PropView      VIEW(Property)
              END

PropQ          QUEUE
PR:FieldName   LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color       LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)
PR:Hidden      LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile    LIKE(PR:IconFile)
ViewPosition   STRING(1024)
              END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'),AT(, ,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
              LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
              FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
              '60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
              '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
              BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
              BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
              BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
              END

Edit:PR:Name CLASS(EditEntryClass) !declare Edit:PR:Name-EIP ENTRY control
Init         PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar),VIRTUAL
              END

ThisWindow   CLASS(WindowManager)
Init         PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill         PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
              END

BRW1         CLASS(BrowseClass)    !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q            &PropQ                ! that drives the EditClass objects--
              END                  ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors ErrorClass

Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init           PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE

```

```
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
              END
```

```
GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest     LONG(0),THREAD
```

```
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill
```

```
ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open
BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)      !edit with Edit:PR:Name
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)              !default EditEntryClass
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)!edit with default EditEntryClass
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)            !edit with default EditEntryClass
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)        !edit with default EditEntryClass
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:Name,1)                  !Use Edit:PR:Name for BRW1 col 1
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue
```



```
Edit:PR:Name.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
```

```
CODE
```

```
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
```

```
SELF.Feq{PROP:CAP}=True           !force EIP mixed case input
```

```
Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE           !initialize FileManager
```

```
CODE
```

```
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
```

```
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
```

```
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
```

```
SELF.Create = 1
```

```
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)
```

```
Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE           !initialize RelationManager
```

```
CODE
```

```
Access:Property.Init
```

```
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)
```

```
Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE           !shut down RelationManager
```

```
CODE
```

```
Access:Property.Kill
```

```
PARENT.Kill
```

EditEntryClass Properties

EditEntryClass Properties

The EditEntryClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

EditEntryClass Methods

EditEntryClass Methods

The EditEntryClass inherits all the methods of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Methods* and *EditClass Concepts*.

EditEntryClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditEntryClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditEntryClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _{vi}	initialize the EditEntryClass object
Kill _{vi}	shut down the EditEntryClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _{vi}	handle events for the ENTRY control
-------------------------	-------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the ENTRY control
SetAlerts _{vi}	alert keystrokes for the ENTRY control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditEntryClass object
CreateContol _i	create the ENTRY control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the ENTRY control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the ENTRY control
Kill _i	shut down the EditEntryClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place ENTRY control)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place ENTRY control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method sets the value of the FEQ property. Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the ENTRY control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,?? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

EditFileClass

EditFileClass Overview

The EditFileClass is an EditClass that supports the Windows File dialog by way of a dynamic edit-in-place COMBO control.

EditFileClass Concepts

The EditFileClass creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button that invokes the Windows File dialog. The EditFileClass accepts a pathname selection from the end user, then returns the selection to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE.

The EditFileClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditFileClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditFileClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditFileClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditFileClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditFileClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditFileClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditFileClass Source Files

The EditFileClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditFileClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditFileClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditFileClass method definitions

EditFileClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditFileClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, icon, etc.), then edits the "IconFile" items with an EditFileClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditFileClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCDllMode_   EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_  EQUATE(1)

INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')      !declare WindowManager
INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')      !declare BrowseClass
INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')         !declare Edit-in-place classes

MAP
END

Property      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey        KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record         RECORD,PRE()
FieldName      STRING(30)
Color          STRING(20)
Hidden         STRING(1)
IconFile       STRING(30)
ControlType    STRING(12)
               END
               END

PropView       VIEW(Property)
               END

PropQ          QUEUE
PR:FieldName   LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color       LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)
PR:Hidden      LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile    LIKE(PR:IconFile)      !edit this LIST field with the file dialog
ViewPosition   STRING(1024)
               END

```

```

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Field Properties'),AT(, ,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
'60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
'20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@]|M')
BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
END

Edit:PR:IconFile CLASS(EditFileClass) !declare Edit:PR:IconFile-EIP file dialog
Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar),VIRTUAL
END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
END

BRW1 CLASS(BrowseClass) !declare BRW1, the BrowseClass object
Q &PropQ ! that drives the EditClass objects--
END ! i.e. calls Init, TakeEvent, Kill

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init PROCEDURE
END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init PROCEDURE
Kill PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
END

GlobalRequest BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest

```



```

ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open
BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:IconFile,5)      !Use Edit:PR:IconFile to edit BRW1 col 5
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:IconFile.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*?
UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Title='Select icon file'                !set EIP file dialog title
SELF.FilePattern='Icon files *.ico|*.ico'    !set EIP file dialog file masks
SELF.FileMask=FILE:KeepDir+FILE:LongName     !set EIP file dialog behavior flag

```

```
Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE                                !initialize FileManager
CODE
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE                                !initialize RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)

Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE                                !shut down RelationManager
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill
```

EditFileClass Properties

EditFileClass Properties

The EditFileClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

FileMask (file dialog behavior)

FileMask **BYTE**

The **FileMask** property is a bitmap that indicates the type of file action the Windows file dialog performs (select, multi-select, save directory, lock directory, suppress errors).

Implementation: The EditFileClass (TakeEvent method) uses the FileMask property as the *flag* parameter to the FILEDIALOG procedure. See *FILEDIALOG* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

See Also: TakeEvent

FilePattern (file dialog filter)

FilePattern **CSTRING(1024)**

The **FilePattern** property contains a text string that defines both the file masks and the file mask descriptions that appear in the file dialog's **List Files of Type** drop-down list. The first mask is the default selection in the file dialog.

The FilePattern property should contain one or more descriptions followed by their corresponding file masks in the form *description|mask|description|mask*. All elements in the string must be delimited by the vertical bar (|). For example, 'all files *.*|*.*|Clarion source *.clw;*.inc|*.clw;*.inc' defines two selections for the File dialog's **List Files of Type** drop-down list. See the *extensions* parameter to the FILEDIALOG function in the *Language Reference* for more information.

Title (file dialog title text)**Title CSTRING(256)**

The **Title** property contains a string that sets the title bar text in the Windows file dialog.

Implementation: The EditFileClass (TakeEvent method) uses the Title property as the *title* parameter to the FILEDIALOG procedure. See *FILEDIALOG* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

See Also: TakeEvent

EditFileClass Methods

EditFileClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditFileClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditFileClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _{vi}	initialize the EditFileClass object
Kill _{vi}	shut down the EditFileClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _{vi}	handle events for the edit control
-------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _{vi}	alert keystrokes for the edit control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditFileClass object
CreateContol _i	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the edit control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the edit control
Kill _i	shut down the EditFileClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditFileClass)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place COMBO control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button and sets the value of the FEQ property.

Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the COMBO control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditFileClass)**TakeEvent**(*event*), VIRTUAL

TakeEvent	Processes an event for the EditFileClass object.
<i>event</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the <i>Language Reference</i>).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditFileClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method processes an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control. On EVENT:DroppingDown, TakeEvent invokes the Windows file dialog and stores the pathname selection in the edited field specified by the Init method. Finally, TakeEvent returns a value indicating the user requested action. The BrowseClass.AskRecord method carries out the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```

EditAction    ITEMIZE(0),PRE
None          EQUATE          ! no action
Forward       EQUATE          ! next field
Backward      EQUATE          ! previous field
Complete      EQUATE          ! OK
Cancel        EQUATE          ! cancel
Next          EQUATE          ! next record
Previous      EQUATE          ! previous record
Ignore        EQUATE          ! no action
END

```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
EditClassAction ROUTINE
  CASE SELF.EditList.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT())
  OF EditAction:Forward    !handle tab forward (new field, same record)
  OF EditAction:Backward   !handle tab backward (new field, same record)
  OF EditAction:Next       !handle down arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
  OF EditAction:Previous   !handle up arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
  OF EditAction:Complete   !handle OK or enter key (save record)
  OF EditAction:Cancel     !handle Cancel or esc key (restore record)
  END
```

See Also: Init, BrowseClass.AskRecord

EditFontClass

EditFontClass Overview

The EditFontClass is an EditClass that supports the Windows Font dialog by way of a dynamic edit-in-place COMBO control.

EditFontClass Concepts

The EditFontClass creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button that invokes the Windows Font dialog. The EditFontClass accepts a font specification from the end user, then returns the specification to the variable specified by the Init method, typically the variable associated with a specific LIST cell--a field in the LIST control's data source QUEUE.

The EditFontClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditFontClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditFontClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditFontClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditFontClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditFontClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditFontClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditFontClass Source Files

The EditFontClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditFontClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditFontClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditFontClass method definitions

EditFontClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditFontClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, font, icon, etc.), then edits the "Font" items with an EditFontClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditFontClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM

_AB CDllMode_   EQUATE(0)
_AB CLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')           !declare WindowManager
INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')           !declare BrowseClass
INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC')              !declare EditInPlace classes

MAP      END

Property  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PR),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
NameKey   KEY(PR:FieldName),NOCASE,OPT
Record    RECORD,PRE()
FieldName STRING(30)
Color     STRING(20)
Hidden    STRING(1)
IconFile  STRING(30)
Font      STRING(40)
ControlType STRING(12)
ApplyTo   CSTRING(500)
          END
          END

PropView VIEW(Property)
          END

PropQ      QUEUE
PR:FieldName LIKE(PR:FieldName)
PR:Color     LIKE(PR:Color)
PR:Font      LIKE(PR:Font)
PR:ControlType LIKE(PR:ControlType)
PR:Hidden    LIKE(PR:Hidden)
PR:IconFile  LIKE(PR:IconFile)
PR:ApplyTo   LIKE(PR:ApplyTo)
ViewPosition STRING(1024)
          END

BRW1      CLASS(BrowseClass)      !declare BRW1--a BrowseClass object

```

```

Q      &PropQ      ! that drives the EditClass objects
      END

Edit:PR:Font CLASS(EditFontClass)      !declare Edit:PR:Font-EIP font dialog
Init      PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?* UseVar),VIRTUAL
TakeEvent PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED Event),BYTE,VIRTUAL
TypeFace  CSTRING(30)      !declare font typeface property
FontSize  LONG      !declare font size property
FontStyle LONG      !declare font style property
FontColor LONG      !declare font color property
      END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Properties'),AT(,,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
      LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
      FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
      '60L(2)|_M~Font~@s40@60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
      '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@' &|
      '120L(2)|_M~Apply To~L(0)@s25@]|M')
      BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
      BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
      BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
      END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init      PROCEDURE
      END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init      PROCEDURE
Kill      PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
      END

GlobalRequest BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
      END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

```

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open
BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
?PropList{PROP:LineHeight}=12 !enlarge rows to accomodate EIP icons
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Font,BRW1.Q.PR:Font)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ApplyTo,BRW1.Q.PR:ApplyTo)
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:Font,3) !Use Edit:PR:Font to edit BRW1 col 3
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:Font.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?* UseVar)
Comma BYTE(1)
SaveFont CSTRING(100) !indexable hold area for font spec
i USHORT
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SaveFont=SELF.UseVar !comma separated font attributes
IF SaveFont ! e.g. Arial,14,255,400
LOOP WHILE Comma !parse/separate the font attributes

```

```

        Comma = INSTRING(',',SaveFont,1,1)
        i+=1
        IF Comma
            EXECUTE i
                SELF.TypeFace = SaveFont[1 : Comma-1] !get Typeface
                SELF.FontSize = SaveFont[1 : Comma-1] !get FontSize
            BEGIN
                SELF.FontColor = SaveFont[1 : Comma-1] !get FontColor & Style
                SELF.FontStyle = SaveFont[Comma+1 : LEN(SaveFont)]
            END
        END
        SaveFont=SaveFont[Comma+1 : LEN(SaveFont)]
    END
END
END

Edit:PR:Font.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED Event)
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
CASE Event
OF EVENT:DroppingDown !call Font dialog & store result
                        ! in comma separated string
IF FONTDIALOG(SELF.Title,SELF.TypeFace,SELF.FontSize,SELF.FontColor,SELF.FontStyle)
    SELF.UseVar = SELF.TypeFace&','&SELF.FontSize&','&SELF.FontColor&','&SELF.FontStyle
    DISPLAY(SELF.Feq)
END
RETURN EditAction:Ignore          !no I/O action on DroppingDown
ELSE                               !otherwise, default I/O action:
    RETURN PARENT.TakeEvent(Event) ! save, cancel, next field, etc.
END

Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Property.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)

Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Property.Kill
PARENT.Kill

```

EditFontClass Properties

EditFontClass Properties

The EditFontClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the EditFontClass contains the following properties:

Title (font dialog title text)

Title CSTRING(256)

The **Title** property contains a string that sets the title bar text in the Windows font dialog.

Implementation: The EditFontClass (TakeEvent method) uses the Title property as the *title* parameter to the FONTDIALOG procedure. See *FONTDIALOG* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

See Also: TakeEvent

EditFontClass Methods

EditFontClass Methods

The EditFontClass inherits all the methods of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Methods* and *EditClass Concepts*.

EditFontClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditFontClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditFontClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _v	initialize the EditFontClass object
Kill _v	shut down the EditFontClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _v	handle events for the edit control
------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _v	alert keystrokes for the edit control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditFontClass object
CreateContol _i	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the edit control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the edit control
Kill _i	shut down the EditFontClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditFontClass)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place COMBO control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button and sets the value of the FEQ property.

Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the COMBO control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditFontClass)**TakeEvent**(*event*), VIRTUAL**TakeEvent** Processes an event for the EditFontClass object.*event* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the *Language Reference*).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditFontClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method processes an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control. On EVENT:DroppingDown, TakeEvent invokes the Windows font dialog and stores the font specification in the edited field specified by the Init method. Finally, TakeEvent returns a value indicating the user requested action. The BrowseClass.AskRecord method carries out the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABEIP.INC as follows:

EditAction	ITEMIZE(0),PRE	
None	EQUATE	! no action
Forward	EQUATE	! next field
Backward	EQUATE	! previous field
Complete	EQUATE	! OK
Cancel	EQUATE	! cancel
Next	EQUATE	! next record
Previous	EQUATE	! previous record
Ignore	EQUATE	! no action
	END	

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

EditClassAction ROUTINE
CASE SELF.EditList.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT())
OF EditAction:Forward    !handle tab forward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Backward   !handle tab backward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Next       !handle down arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Previous   !handle up arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Complete   !handle OK or enter key (save record)
OF EditAction:Cancel     !handle Cancel or esc key (restore record)
END

```

See Also: Init, BrowseClass.AskRecord

EditMultiSelectClass

EditMultiSelectClass Overview

The EditMultiSelectClass is an EditClass that supports a MultiSelect dialog by way of a dynamic edit-in-place COMBO control.

EditMultiSelectClass Concepts

The EditMultiSelectClass creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button that invokes the MultiSelect dialog. The MultiSelect dialog is an interface for selecting and ordering items from a list.

The EditMultiSelectClass provides an AddValue method so you can prime the dialog's Available Items and Selected Items lists.

The EditMultiSelectClass accepts input (selection actions) from the end user, then signals the calling procedure when selection actions occur. The EditMultiSelectClass provides a virtual TakeAction method to let you take control of the end user input.

The EditMultiSelectClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, canceling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditMultiSelectClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditMultiSelectClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditMultiSelectClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseClass

The EditClass is loosely integrated into the BrowseClass. The BrowseClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

EditMultiSelectClass ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditMultiSelectClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditMultiSelectClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates--BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditMultiSelectClass Source Files

The EditMultiSelectClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditMultiSelectClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditMultiSelectClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditMultiSelectClass method definitions

EditMultiSelectClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an EditMultiSelectClass object and a related BrowseClass object. The example page-loads a LIST of fieldnames and associated control attributes (such as color, font, when-to-apply, etc.), then edits the "when-to-apply" items with an EditMultiSelectClass object. Note that the BrowseClass object calls the "registered" EditMultiSelectClass object's methods as needed.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCEllMode_   EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_  EQUATE(1)

INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABEIP.INC' )

MAP
END

Property      FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( PR ), CREATE, BINDABLE, THREAD
NameKey        KEY( PR:FieldName ), NOCASE, OPT
Record         RECORD, PRE( )
FieldName      STRING( 30 )
Color          STRING( 20 )
Hidden         STRING( 1 )
IconFile       STRING( 30 )
Font           STRING( 40 )
ControlType    STRING( 12 )
ApplyTo        CSTRING( 500 )
              END
              END

PropView       VIEW( Property )
              END

PropQ          QUEUE
PR:FieldName   LIKE( PR:FieldName )
PR:Color       LIKE( PR:Color )
PR:Font        LIKE( PR:Font )
PR:ControlType LIKE( PR:ControlType )
PR:Hidden      LIKE( PR:Hidden )
PR:IconFile    LIKE( PR:IconFile )
PR:ApplyTo     LIKE( PR:ApplyTo )
ViewPosition   STRING( 1024 )
              END

```

```

BRW1      CLASS(BrowseClass)
Q         &PropQ
          END
!declare Edit:PR:ApplyTo-EIP multi dialog
Edit:PR:ApplyTo CLASS(EditMultiSelectClass)
Init      PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,?* UseVar),VIRTUAL
TakeAction PROCEDURE(BYTE Action,<STRING Item>,LONG Pos1=0,LONG Pos2=0),VIRTUAL
          END

PropWindow WINDOW('Browse Properties'),AT(,,318,137),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
          LIST,AT(8,4,303,113),USE(?PropList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PropQ),|
          FORMAT( '50L(2)|_M~Field Name~@s30@[70L(2)|_M~Color~@s20@' &|
          '60L(2)|_M~Font~@s40@60L(2)|_M~Control Type~@s12@' &|
          '20L(2)|_M~Hide~L(0)@s1@/130L(2)|_M~Icon File~@s30@' &|
          '120L(2)|_M~Apply To~L(0)@s25@]|M')
          BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(169,121),USE(?Insert)
          BUTTON('&Change'),AT(218,121),USE(?Change),DEFAULT
          BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(267,121),USE(?Delete)
          END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Property CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
          END

Relate:Property CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
          END

GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
          END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Property.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Property.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

```

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?PropList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:Property.Open
BRW1.Init(?PropList,PropQ.ViewPosition,PropView,PropQ,Relate:Property,SELF)
OPEN(PropWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
?PropList{PROP:LineHeight}=12 !enlarge rows to accomodate EIP icons
BRW1.Q &= PropQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,PR:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(PR:FieldName,BRW1.Q.PR:FieldName)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Color,BRW1.Q.PR:Color)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Font,BRW1.Q.PR:Font)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ControlType,BRW1.Q.PR:ControlType)
BRW1.AddField(PR:Hidden,BRW1.Q.PR:Hidden)
BRW1.AddField(PR:IconFile,BRW1.Q.PR:IconFile)
BRW1.AddField(PR:ApplyTo,BRW1.Q.PR:ApplyTo)
BRW1.AddEditControl(Edit:PR:ApplyTo,7) !use Edit:PR:ApplyTo to edit BRW1 col 7
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Property.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Edit:PR:ApplyTo.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Reset
SELF.AddValue('Browse',INSTRING('Browse',SELF.UseVar,1,1))!set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Form',INSTRING('Form',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Report',INSTRING('Report',SELF.UseVar,1,1))!set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Window',INSTRING('Window',SELF.UseVar,1,1))!set multi-select choice

```

```

Edit:PR:ApplyTo.TakeAction PROCEDURE(BYTE Action,<STRING Item>,LONG Pos1=0,LONG Pos2=0)
HoldIt  CSTRING(1024)          !indexable string of end user choices
Pos      USHORT                !index to parse end user selections
Comma    USHORT                !index to parse end user selections
ItemQ    QUEUE                 !Q to reorder end user selections
Item     CSTRING(100)
Ord      BYTE
      END

CODE
PARENT.TakeAction(Action,Item,Pos1,Pos2)
HoldIt=SELF.UseVar
CASE Action
OF MSAction:Add                !end user selected an Item
  IF HoldIt
    HoldIt=HoldIt&','&Item
  ELSE
    HoldIt=Item
  END
OF MSAction:Delete            !end user deselected an Item
  Pos=INSTRING(Item,HoldIt,1,1)
  CASE Pos
  OF 0
    MESSAGE(Item&' not found!')
  OF 1                        !first item
    HoldIt=HoldIt[Pos+LEN(Item)+1 : LEN(HoldIt)] !deselect first item
  ELSE
    IF Pos+LEN(Item) > LEN(HoldIt)                !last item
      HoldIt=HoldIt[1 : Pos-2]                    !deselect last item
    ELSE
      HoldIt=HoldIt[1 : Pos-1] & HoldIt[Pos+LEN(Item)+1 : LEN(HoldIt)] !deselect any other item
    END
  END
END
OF MSAction:Move              !Selected Item moved up or down
  FREE(ItemQ)                 ! Pos1=Item's "old" position
  CLEAR(ItemQ)                ! Pos2=Item's "new" position
  Comma=1
  LOOP WHILE Comma            !build Q of Selected Items
    Comma = INSTRING(',',HoldIt,1,1) ! to use for repositioning
    ItemQ.Ord+=1
    IF Comma
      ItemQ.Item = HoldIt[1 : Comma-1]
      ADD(ItemQ,ItemQ.Ord)
    HoldIt=HoldIt[Comma+1 : LEN(HoldIt)] !comma separated list of user choices
  ELSE
    ItemQ.Item = HoldIt
    ADD(ItemQ,ItemQ.Ord)
  END
END
END

```



```

    ItemQ.Ord=Pos2
    GET(ItemQ, ItemQ.Ord)                !get the "bumped" item
    ItemQ.Ord=Pos1
    PUT(ItemQ)                           !reposition the "bumped" item
    ItemQ.Item=Item
    GET(ItemQ, ItemQ.Item)               !get the selected item
    ItemQ.Ord=Pos2
    PUT(ItemQ)                           !reposition the selected item
    SORT(ItemQ,ItemQ.Ord)                !reorder Q of selected items
    HoldIt=''
    LOOP Pos = 1 TO RECORDS(ItemQ)       !refill comma separated list
        GET(ItemQ,Pos)
        IF HoldIt
            HoldIt=HoldIt&','&ItemQ.Item
        ELSE
            HoldIt=ItemQ.Item
        END
    END
    END
    OF MSAction:StartProcess              !begin AddAll (>>) or DeleteAll (<<)
        SETCURSOR(CURSOR:Wait)
    OF MSAction:EndProcess                !end AddAll (>>) or DeleteAll (<<)
        SETCURSOR()
    END
    SELF.UseVar=HoldIt
Access:Property.Init PROCEDURE
    CODE
    PARENT.Init(Property,GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'Property'
    SELF.Buffer &= PR:Record
    SELF.Create = 1
    SELF.AddKey(PR:NameKey,'PR:NameKey',0)

Relate:Property.Init PROCEDURE
    CODE
    Access:Property.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:Property,1)
Relate:Property.Kill PROCEDURE
    CODE
    Access:Property.Kill
    PARENT.Kill

```

EditMultiSelectClass Properties

EditMultiSelectClass Properties

The EditMultiSelectClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Properties* and *EditClass Concepts* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the EditMultiSelectClass contains the following properties:

Title (font dialog title text:EditMultiSelectClass)

Title CSTRING(256)

The **Title** property contains a string that sets the title bar text in the MultiSelect dialog.

EditMultiSelectClass Methods

EditMultiSelectClass Methods

The EditMultiSelectClass inherits all the methods of the EditClass from which it is derived. See *EditClass Methods* and *EditClass Concepts*.

EditMultiSelectClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditMultiSelectClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditMultiSelectClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _v	initialize the EditMultiSelectClass object
AddValue	prime the MultiSelect dialog
Kill _v	shut down the EditMultiSelectClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeAction _v	handle user actions for the dialog
TakeEvent _v	handle events for the edit control

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the edit (COMBO) control
Reset	clear the MultiSelect dialog
SetAlerts _v	alert keystrokes for the edit control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init	initialize the EditMultiSelectClass object
CreateControl	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts	alert keystrokes for the edit control
TakeAction	handle user actions for the dialog
TakeEvent	handle events for the edit control
Kill	shut down the EditMultiSelectClass object

AddValue (prime the MultiSelect dialog)

AddValue(*item* [,*selected*])

AddValue	Primes the Available and Selected items lists in the MultiSelect dialog.
<i>item</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the value to add to the item list.
<i>selected</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which list to update. A value of zero (0 or False) adds the <i>item</i> to the Available Items list; a value of one (1 or True) adds the <i>item</i> to the Selected Items list. If omitted, <i>selected</i> defaults to zero and AddValue adds the <i>item</i> to the Available Items list.

The **AddValue** method primes the Available and Selected items lists in the MultiSelect dialog.

Example:

```

Edit:PR:ApplyTo.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Reset
SELF.AddValue('Browse',INSTRING('Browse',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Form',INSTRING('Form',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Report',INSTRING('Report',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Window',INSTRING('Window',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice

```

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditMultiSelectClass)

CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place COMBO control and sets the FEQ property.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method creates a read only COMBO control with an ellipsis button and sets the value of the FEQ property.

Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the COMBO control.

Example:

```

EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts

```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

Reset (reset the EditMultiSelectClass object)

Reset

The **Reset** method resets the EditMultiSelectClass object.

Implementation: The Reset method clears the Available and Selected items lists in the MultiSelect dialog. Use the AddValue method to refill these lists.

Example:

```

Edit:PR:ApplyTo.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNumber,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
PARENT.Init(FieldNumber,ListBox,UseVar)
SELF.Reset
SELF.AddValue('Browse',INSTRING('Browse',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Form',INSTRING('Form',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Report',INSTRING('Report',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice
SELF.AddValue('Window',INSTRING('Window',SELF.UseVar,1,1)) !set multi-select choice

```

See Also: AddValue

TakeAction (process MultiSelect dialog action)

TakeAction(*action* [, *item*] [,*oldposition*] [,*newposition*]), VIRTUAL

TakeAction	Processes a MultiSelect dialog action.
<i>action</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the action to process. Valid actions are add (select), delete (deselect), move, begin process, and end process.
<i>item</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the value of the list item affected by the <i>action</i> . If omitted, the <i>action</i> affects no <i>item</i> . For example a begin process action is not associated with a list item.
<i>oldposition</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the ordinal position of the <i>item</i> (in the Selected Items list) prior to the move <i>action</i> . If omitted, <i>oldposition</i> defaults to zero (0), indicating a non-move <i>action</i> .
<i>newposition</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the ordinal position of the <i>item</i> (in the Selected Items list) after the move <i>action</i> . If omitted, <i>newposition</i> defaults to zero (0), indicating a non-move <i>action</i> .

The **TakeAction** method processes a MultiSelect dialog action for the EditMultiSelectClass object. The TakeAction method is your opportunity to interpret and implement the meaning of the end user's selection.

Tip: The TakeAction processing is immediate and occurs while the MultiSelect dialog is open. The MultiSelect dialog does not generate an action or an event when the dialog closes.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method (indirectly) calls the TakeAction method each time the end user makes a new selection or moves a selection in the MultiSelect dialog.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the MultiSelect dialog *action* are declared in ABEIP.INC as follows:

```

MSAction      ITEMIZE(1),PRE
Add           EQUATE      !add / select
Delete       EQUATE      !delete / deselect
Move         EQUATE      !reposition a selected item
StartProcess EQUATE      !begin an add/delete series
EndProcess   EQUATE      !end an add/delete series
END

```

Example:

```

!This implementation of TakeAction converts the end user selections into
!comma separated items in a string.
Edit:PR:ApplyTo.TakeAction PROCEDURE(BYTE Action,<STRING Item>,LONG Pos1=0,LONG Pos2=0)
HoldIt CSTRING(1024)      !indexable string of end user choices
Pos     USHORT            !index to parse end user selections
Comma   USHORT            !index to parse end user selections
ItemQ   QUEUE             !Q to reorder end user selections
Item    CSTRING(100)
Ord     BYTE
END
CODE
PARENT.TakeAction(Action,Item,Pos1,Pos2)
HoldIt=SELF.UseVar
CASE Action
OF MSAction:Add           !end user selected an Item
    HoldIt=CHOOSE(HoldIt,HoldIt&','&Item,Item)
OF MSAction>Delete       !end user deselected an Item
    Pos=INSTRING(Item,HoldIt,1,1)
    IF Pos=1              !first item
        HoldIt=HoldIt[Pos+LEN(Item)+1 : LEN(HoldIt)] !deselect first item
    ELSE
        IF Pos+LEN(Item) > LEN(HoldIt)      !last item
            HoldIt=HoldIt[1 : Pos-2]         !deselect last item
        ELSE
            !deselect any other item
            HoldIt=HoldIt[1 : Pos-1] & HoldIt[Pos+LEN(Item)+1 : LEN(HoldIt)]
        END
    END
END
OF MSAction:Move          !Selected Item moved up or down
    FREE(ItemQ)           ! Pos1=Item's "old" position
    CLEAR(ItemQ)          ! Pos2=Item's "new" position
    Comma=1
    LOOP WHILE Comma      !build Q of Selected Items
        Comma = INSTRING(',',HoldIt,1,1)    ! to use for repositioning
        ItemQ.Ordinal+=1
        IF Comma
            ItemQ.Item = HoldIt[1 : Comma-1]

```



```

        ADD(ItemQ,ItemQ.Ord)
HoldIt=HoldIt[Comma+1 : LEN(HoldIt)] !comma separated list of user choices
    ELSE
        ItemQ.Item = HoldIt
        ADD(ItemQ,ItemQ.Ord)
    END
END
ItemQ.Ord=Pos2
GET(ItemQ, ItemQ.Ord)                !get the "bumped" item
ItemQ.Ord=Pos1
PUT(ItemQ)                          !reposition the "bumped" item
ItemQ.Item=Item
GET(ItemQ, ItemQ.Item)              !get the selected item
ItemQ.Ord=Pos2
PUT(ItemQ)                          !reposition the selected item
SORT(ItemQ,ItemQ.Ord)              !reorder Q of selected items
HoldIt=''

    LOOP Pos = 1 TO RECORDS(ItemQ)    !refill comma separated list
        GET(ItemQ,Pos)
        HoldIt=CHOOSE(HoldIt,HoldIt&','&ItemQ.Item,ItemQ.Item)
    END
OF MSAction:StartProcess              !begin AddAll (>>) or DeleteAll (<<)
    SETCURSOR(CURSOR:Wait)
OF MSAction:EndProcess              !end AddAll (>>) or DeleteAll (<<)
    SETCURSOR()
END
SELF.UseVar=HoldIt

```

See Also: TakeEvent

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditMultiSelectClass)**TakeEvent**(*event*), VIRTUAL**TakeEvent** Processes an event for the EditMultiSelectClass object.*event* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the *Language Reference*).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditMultiSelectClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.AskRecord method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method processes an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control. On EVENT:DroppingDown, TakeEvent invokes the MultiSelect dialog. Finally, TakeEvent returns a value indicating the user requested action. The BrowseClass.AskRecord method carries out the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABEIP.INC as follows:

```

EditAction      ITEMIZE(0),PRE
None            EQUATE          ! no action
Forward        EQUATE          ! next field
Backward       EQUATE          ! previous field
Complete       EQUATE          ! OK
Cancel         EQUATE          ! cancel
Next           EQUATE          ! next record
Previous       EQUATE          ! previous record
Ignore         EQUATE          ! no action
END

```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

EditClassAction ROUTINE
CASE SELF.EditList.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT())
OF EditAction:Forward      !handle tab forward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Backward    !handle tab backward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Next        !handle down arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Previous    !handle up arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Complete    !handle OK or enter key (save record)
OF EditAction:Cancel      !handle Cancel or esc key (restore record)
END

```

See Also: Init, BrowseClass.AskRecord

EditTextClass

EditTextClass: Overview

The EditTextClass is an EditClass that supports memo and large string fields by way of an edit-in-place COMBO control.

EditTextClass Concepts

The EditTextClass creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button that invokes a text dialog.

The EditTextClass also signals the calling procedure whenever significant edit-in-place events occur, such as tabbing to a new column, cancelling the edit, or completing the edit (moving to a new record or row). The EditTextClass provides a virtual TakeEvent method to let you take control of significant edit-in-place events.

EditTextClass:Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

EditClass

The EditTextClass is derived from the EditClass. The EditClass serves as the foundation and framework for its derived classes. These derived classes each provide a different type of input control or input user interface. You can control the values returned by these derived EditClass objects by using their virtual methods. See the *Conceptual Example*.

BrowseEIPManagerClass

The EditClass is managed by the BrowseEIPManagerClass. The BrowseEIPManagerClass depends on the EditClass operating according to its documented specifications; however, the EditClass may be called by non-BrowseClass procedures and objects.

ABC Template Implementation

You can use the BrowseUpdateButtons control template (**Configure EditInPlace**) to generate the code to instantiate an EditTextClass object called EditInPlace::*fieldname* and register the object with the BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object then calls the registered EditTextClass object's methods as needed. See *Control Templates—BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EditTextClass Source Files

The EditTextClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EditTextClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditTextClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditTextClass method definitions

EditTextClass Properties

The EditTextClass inherits all the properties of the EditClass from which it is derived. See EditClass Properties and EditClass Concepts for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the EditTextClass contains the following properties:

Title (text dialog title text)

Title **CSTRING(256)**

The **Title** property contains a string that sets the title bar text in the dialog containing the text control.

Implementation: The EditTextClass (TakeEvent method) uses the Title property as the title text for the titlebar of the dialog containing the text control.

See Also: TakeEvent

EditTextClass Methods

The EditTextClass inherits all the methods of the EditClass from which it is derived. See EditClass Methods *and* EditClass Concepts.

EditTextClass: Functional Organization—Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EditTextClass it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use—the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EditTextClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _v	initialize the EditTextClass object
Kill _v	shut down the EditTextClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeEvent _v	handle events for the edit control
------------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

CreateContol _v	create the edit (COMBO) control
SetAlerts _v	alert keystrokes for the edit control

_v These methods are also virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the EditClass

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly—the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _i	initialize the EditTextClass object
CreateContol _i	create the edit COMBO control
SetAlerts _i	alert keystrokes for the edit control
TakeEvent _i	handle events for the edit control
Kill _i	shut down the EditTextClass object

CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control:EditTextClass)**CreateControl, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

The **CreateControl** method creates the edit-in-place COMBO control.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method. The CreateControl method creates a COMBO control with an ellipsis button.

Use the Init method or the CreateControl method to set any required properties of the COMBO control.

Example:

```
EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts
```

See Also: FEQ, EditClass.CreateControl

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:EditTextClass)**TakeEvent**(*event*), VIRTUAL**TakeEvent** Processes an event for the EditTextClass object.*event* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the *Language Reference*).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the EditTextClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, complete or OK, cancel, next record, previous record, next field, and previous field.

Implementation: The EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method processes an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control. On EVENT:DroppingDown, TakeEvent invokes a Window with a text control. Finally, TakeEvent returns a value indicating the user requested action.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the possible edit-in-place actions are declared in ABEIP.INC as follows:

```

EditAction ITEMIZE(0),PRE
None      EQUATE    ! no action
Forward   EQUATE    ! next field
Backward  EQUATE    ! previous field
Complete  EQUATE    ! OK
Cancel    EQUATE    ! cancel
Next      EQUATE    ! next record
Previous  EQUATE    ! previous record
Ignore    EQUATE    ! no action
          END

```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

EditClassAction ROUTINE
CASE SELF.EditList.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT())
OF EditAction:Forward    !handle tab forward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Backward   !handle tab backward (new field, same record)
OF EditAction:Next       !handle down arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Previous   !handle up arrow (new record, offer to save prior record)
OF EditAction:Complete   !handle OK or enter key (save record)
OF EditAction:Cancel     !handle Cancel or esc key (restore record)
END

```

See Also: Init

EIPManagerClass

EIPManagerClass--Overview

The EIPManagerClass is a WindowManager that displays an edit-in-place dialog, and handles events for that dialog . The EIPManagerClass is an abstract class--it is not useful by itself, but serves as the foundation and framework for the BrowseEIPManagerClass. See *BrowseEIPManagerClass*.

EIPManagerClass Concepts

Each edit-in-place control is created on top of the browse from which it is called. The EIPManager dynamically creates an edit-in-place object and control upon request (Insert, Change, or Delete) by the end user. When the end user accepts the edited record the EIPManager destroys the edit-in-place object and control.

EIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

WindowClass

The EIPManager class is derived from the WindowManager class.

BrowseClass

Each BrowseClass utilizing edit-in-place requires an BrowseEIPManager to manage the events and processes that are used by each edit-in-place field in the browse.

The BrowseClass.AskRecord method is the calling method for edit-in-place functionality.

EditClasses

The EIPManager provides the basic or "under the hood" interface between the Edit classes and the Browse class. The EIPManager uses the EditQueue to keep track of the fields in the browse utilizing edit-in-place.

EIPManagerClass--ABC Template Implementation

The Browse template declares a BrowseEIPManager when the BrowseUpdateButtons control template enables default edit-in-place support for the BrowseBox.

See *Control Templates--BrowseBox* and *BrowseUpdateButtons* for more information.

EIPManagerClass Source Files

The EIPManagerClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EIPManagerClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	EditClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	EditClass method definitions
ABEIP.TRN	EditClass translation strings

EIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example

The following example shows a sequence of statements to declare, and instantiate an EIPManager object. The example page-loads a LIST of actions and associated priorities, then edits the list items via edit-in-place. Note that the BrowseClass object references the BrowseEIPManager which is an EIPManager object, as referenced in ABBrowse.INC.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCEllMode_   EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_  EQUATE(1)

INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABEIP.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC'),ONCE
MAP
END

Actions          FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ACT),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
KeyAction         KEY(ACT:Action),NOCASE,OPT
Record            RECORD,PRE()
Action            STRING(20)
Priority           DECIMAL(2)
Completed         DECIMAL(1)
                  END
                  END

Access:Actions    &FileManager
Relate:Actions    &RelationManager
GlobalErrors      ErrorClass
GlobalRequest     BYTE(0),THREAD
ActionsView       VIEW(Actions)
                  END

Queue:Browse      QUEUE
ACT:Action        LIKE(ACT:Action)
ACT:Priority       LIKE(ACT:Priority)
ViewPosition      STRING(1024)
                  END

BrowseWindow      WINDOW('Browse Records'),AT(0,0,247,140),SYSTEM,GRAY
                  LIST,AT(5,5,235,100),USE(?List),IMM,HVSCROLL,MSG('Browsing Records'),|
                  FORMAT('80L~Action~@S20@8R~Priority~L@N2@'),FROM(Queue:Browse)
                  BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(5,110,40,12),USE(?Insert),KEY(InsertKey)
                  BUTTON('&Change'),AT(50,110,40,12),USE(?Change),KEY(CtrlEnter),DEFAULT
                  BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(95,110,40,12),USE(?Delete),KEY(DeleteKey)
                  END

```

```

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
            END

BRW1 CLASS(BrowseClass)
Q      &Queue:Browse
Init PROCEDURE(SIGNED ListBox,*STRING Posit,VIEW V,QUEUE Q,RelationManager RM,WindowManager WM)
            END

BRW1::EIPManager      BrowseEIPManager      ! EIPManager for Browse using ?List

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Actions.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
Relate:Actions.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE

ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue =PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?List
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
Relate:Actions.Open
FilesOpened = True
BRW1.Init(?List,Queue:Browse.ViewPosition,BRW1::View:Browse,Queue:Browse,Relate:Actions,SELF)
OPEN(BrowseWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= Queue:Browse
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,ACT:KeyAction)
BRW1.AddLocator(BRW1::Sort0:Locator)
BRW1::Sort0:Locator.Init(,ACT:Action,1,BRW1)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Action,BRW1.Q.ACT:Action)
BRW1.AddField(ACT:Priority,BRW1.Q.ACT:Priority)
BRW1.ArrowAction = EIPAction:Default+EIPAction:Remain+EIPAction:RetainColumn
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete

```

```
BRW1.AddToolBarTarget(ToolBar)
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue
```

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE

```
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue =PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
IF FilesOpened
    Relate:Actions.Close
END
RETURN ReturnValue
```

BRW1.Init|

PROCEDURE(SIGNED ListBox,*STRING Posit,VIEW V,QUEUE Q,RelationManagerRM,WindowManager WM)

```
CODE
PARENT.Init(ListBox,Posit,V,Q,RM,WM)
SELF.EIP &= BRW1::EIPManager    ! Browse object's reference to the BrowseEIPManager
```

EIPManagerClass Properties

Again (column usage flag)

Again BYTE, PROTECTED

The **Again** property contains a value that indicates whether or not the current edit-in-place column has been selected by the user during an edit-in-place process.

The TakeEvent method is where the Again property receives a value.

Arrow (edit-in-place action on arrow key)

Arrow &BYTE

The **Arrow** property is a reference to a BYTE which indicates the action to take when the end user presses the up or down arrow key during an edit-in-place process.

Note: The **Arrow** property should be treated as a **PROTECTED** property except during initialization.

Implementation: When the EIPManager is instantiated from a browse the Arrow property will point to the BrowseClass.ArrowAction.

See Also: BrowseClass.ArrowAction

Column (listbox column)

Column UNSIGNED

The **Column** property contains a value that indicates the column number of the listbox field which currently has focus in an edit-in-place process.

Enter (edit-in-place action on enter key)**Enter &BYTE**

The **Enter** property is a reference to the BrowseClass.EnterAction property, and indicates the action to take when the end user presses the ENTER key during an edit-in-place process.

Note: The Enter property should be treated as a PROTECTED property except during initialization.

See Also: BrowseClass.EnterAction

EQ (list of edit-in-place controls)**EQ &EditQueue**

The **EQ** property is a reference to a structure containing a list of browse list columns that will not utilize the default edit-in-place control. This list includes columns that will not utilize edit-in-place.

Implementation: The AddControl method adds browse list columns to the EQ property. An entry without an associated control indicates a column that has been specified as non-edit-in-place.

You do not need to initialize this property to implement the default edit-in-place controls. The EQ property supports custom edit-in-place controls.

The EQ property is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABEdit.INC as follows:

```

EditQueue        QUEUE,TYPE
Field            UNSIGNED
FreeUp           BYTE
Control          &EditClass
END

```

Note: The EQ property should be treated as a PROTECTED property except during initialization.

See Also: AddControl

Fields (managed fields)

Fields &FieldPairsClass, PROTECTED

The **Fields** property is a reference to the FieldPairsClass object that moves and compares data between the BrowseClass object's FILE and the EditClasses.

Note: The **Fields** property should be treated as a PROTECTED property except during initialization.

See Also: BrowseClass.TabAction

FocusLoss (action on loss of focus)

FocusLoss &BYTE

The **FocusLoss** property is a reference to the BrowseClass.FocusLossAction property, and indicates the action to take with regard to pending changes when the edit control loses focus during an edit-in-place process.

Note: The **FocusLoss** property should be treated as a PROTECTED property except during initialization.

See Also: BrowseClass.TabAction, BrowseClass.FocusLossAction

Insert (placement of new record)

Insert BYTE

The **Insert** property indicates where in the list a new record will be added when the end user inserts a new record. The default placement is below the selected record.

Implementation: There are three places a new record can be placed in a list when using edit-in-place: above the selected record; below the selected record (the default); or appended to the bottom of the list.

Note: This does not change the sort order. After insertion, the list is resorted and the new record appears in the proper position within the sort sequence.

The specified placements are implemented by the BrowseEIPManager.Init method. Set the record insertion point by assigning, adding, or subtracting the following EQUATED values to Insert. The following EQUATES are in ABEdit.INC:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(EIPAction)
Default  EQUATE(0)
Always   EQUATE(1)
Never    EQUATE(2)
Prompted EQUATE(4)
Save     EQUATE(7)
Remain   EQUATE(8)
Before   EQUATE(9)  ! insert before/above selected record
Append   EQUATE(10) ! insert at the bottom of the list
RetainColumn EQUATE(16)
END
```

See Also: BrowseEIPManager.Init

ListControl (listbox control number)

ListControl SIGNED

The **ListControl** property contains the control number of the LIST control that is utilizing edit-in-place.

Note: The **ListControl** property should be treated as a **PROTECTED** property except during initialization.

See Also: BrowseClass.TabAction

LastColumn (previous edit-in-place column)

LastColumn BYTE, PROTECTED

The **LastColumn** property contains the column number of the previously used edit-in-place control to facilitate the appropriate processing of a NewSelection.

Implementation: The LastColumn method is assigned the value of the Column property in the ResetColumn method.

Repost (event synchronization)

Repost UNSIGNED, PROTECTED

The **Repost** property indicates the appropriate event to post to the edit-in-place control based on events posted from the browse procedure window.

Implementation: The TakeEvent and TakeFieldEvent methods assign the appropriate value to the Repost property. The Kill method posts the specified event to the appropriate edit-in-place control based on the value contained in the RepostField property.

See Also: RepostField

RepostField (event synchronization field)

RepostField UNSIGNED, PROTECTED

The **RepostField** property contains the field control number of the listbox field that is being edited.

Implementation: The TakeFieldEvent method assigns the appropriate value to the RepostField property. The Kill method posts the specified event to the appropriate edit-in-place control based on the value contained in the RepostField property.

See Also: Repost

Req (database request)

Req BYTE, PROTECTED

The **Req** property indicates the database action the procedure is handling. The EIPManager uses this property to make appropriate processing decisions with regard to priming records, saving or abandoning changes, etc.

Implementation: The Run method is passed a parameter which contains the value assigned to the Req property.

See Also: WindowManager.Request

SeekForward (get next field flag)

SeekForward BYTE, PROTECTED

The **SeekForward** property indicates that the end user has pressed the TAB key during an edit-in-place process.

Implementation: The TakeAction method conditionally assigns a value of one (1) to the SeekForward property based on the actions of the end user.

See Also: Next

Tab (action on a tab key)

Tab &BYTE

The **Tab** property is a reference to the BrowseClass.TabAction property that indicates the action to take when the end user presses the TAB key during an edit-in-place process.

Note: The Tab property should be treated as a PROTECTED property except during initialization.

See Also: BrowseClass.TabAction

EIPManagerClass Methods

EIPManagerClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the EIPManagerClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the EIPManagerClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Run	run this procedure
Init _D	initialize the EditClass object
InitControls	initialize edit-in-place controls
Kill _D	shut down the EditClass object

Mainstream Use:

TakeAcceptAll	handle all validation settings
TakeEvent _D	handle events for the edit control
TakeNewSelection _D	handle Event:NewSelection

Occasional Use:

AddControl	register edit-in-place controls
ClearColumn _v	reset column property values
CreateContol _v	a virtual to create the edit control
GetEdit _v	identify edit-in-place field
Next	get the next edit-in-place field
ResetColumn _v	reset edit-in-place object to selected field
SetAlerts _v	alert appropriate keystrokes for the edit control
TakeAction _v	process end user actions
TakeCompleted _v	process completion of edit
TakeFocusLoss _v	process loss of focus
TakeFieldEvent _D	handle field specific events

_D These methods are also derived.

_v These methods are also virtual.

Virtual and Derived Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are either derived or virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

InitD	initialize the EditClass object
Kill D	shut down the EditClass object
TakeEventD	handle events for the edit control
TakeNewSelectionD	handle Event:NewSelection
ClearColumnV	reset column property values
CreateContolV	a virtual to create the edit control
GetEditV	identify edit-in-place field
ResetColumnV	reset edit-in-place object to selected field
SetAlertsV	alert appropriate keystrokes for the edit control
TakeActionV	process end user actions
TakeCompletedV	process completion of edit
TakeFocusLossV	process loss of focus
TakeFieldEventD	handle field specific events

AddControl (register edit-in-place controls)**AddControl([EditClass], Column, AutoFree)****AddControl** Specifies an edit-in-place control.*EditClass* The label of the EditClass. If omitted, the specified *column* is not editable.*Column* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the browse list column to edit with the specified *editclass* object.*AutoFree* A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the BrowseClass.Kill method DISPOSEs of the *editclass* object. A zero (0) value leaves the object intact. A non-zero value DISPOSEs the object.

The **AddControl** method specifies the *editclass* that defines the edit-in-place control for the browse *column*. Use *autofree* with caution; you should only DISPOSE of memory allocated with a NEW statement. See the *Language Reference* for more information on NEW and DISPOSE.

The AddControl method also registers fields which will not be editable via edit-in-place. In this instance the EditClass parameter is omitted.

Implementation: The InitControls and BrowseClass.AddEditControl methods call the AddControl method. The BrowseClass.AddEditControl method defines the *editclass* for a column not utilizing the default *editclass*.

The AddControl method ADDs a record containing the values of *EditClass*, *Column*, and *AutoFree*, to the EditQueue which is declared in ABEdit.INC as follows:

```

EditQueue QUEUE,TYPE
Field      UNSIGNED
FreeUp     BYTE
Control    &EditClass
END

```

Example:

```

BrowseClass.AddEditControl PROCEDURE(EditClass EC,UNSIGNED Id,BYTE Free)
CODE
  SELF.CheckEIP
  SELF.EIP.AddControl(EC,Id,Free)

```

See Also: EQ, InitControls, BrowseClass.AddEditControl

ClearColumn (reset column property values:EIPManagerClass)

ClearColumn, VIRTUAL

The **ClearColumn** method checks for a value in the LastColumn property and conditionally sets the column values to zero (0).

The TakeAction and TakeNewSelection methods call the ClearColumn method.

Example:

```
EIPManager.TakeNewSelection PROCEDURE    ! Must be overridden to handle out-of-row click
CODE
  IF FIELD() = SELF.ListControl AND KEYCODE() = MouseLeft  ! An in-row mouse click
    SELF.ClearColumn
    SELF.Column = SELF.ListControl{PROPLIST:MouseUpField}
    SELF.ResetColumn
  END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: Column, TakeAction, TakeNewSelection

GetEdit (identify edit-in-place field)**GetEdit, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

The **GetEdit** method checks for a value in the Control field of the EditQueue.

Implementation: GetEdit is called by the Next method, and returns one (1) if any value is in the Control field of the EditQueue, otherwise it returns zero (0).

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
EIPManager.Next PROCEDURE
CODE
```

```
    GET(SELF.EQ,RECORDS(SELF.EQ))
? ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
    LastCol=SELF.EQ.Field

LOOP
    CLEAR(SELF.EQ)
    SELF.EQ.Field = SELF.Column
    GET(SELF.EQ,SELF.EQ.Field)
    IF ~ERRORCODE() AND SELF.GetEdit()
        BREAK
    END
!executable code
```

See Also: EQ, Next

Init (initialize the EIPManagerClass object)**Init, DERIVED, PROC**

The **Init** method initializes the EIPManagerClass object.

Implementation: The BrowseEIPManager.Init method calls the Init method. The Init method primes variables and calls the InitControls method which then initializes the appropriate edit-in-place controls.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
BrowseEIPManager.Init      ! initialize BrowseEIPManagerClass object
!program code
RETURN PARENT.Init()      ! call to the EIPManager.Init
```

See Also: BrowseEIPManager.Init, InitControls

InitControls (initialize edit-in-place controls)**InitControls, VIRTUAL**

The **InitControls** method registers the default edit-in-place controls with the EIPManager by calling the AddControl method, and initializes each added control.

Implementation: The Init method calls the InitControls method. The InitControls method checks for custom edit-in-place controls in the EditQueue before adding a default edit-in-place control.

Example:

```
EIPManager.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF SELF.Column = 0 THEN SELF.Column = 1.
  SELF.LastColumn = 0
  SELF.Repost = 0
  SELF.RepostField = 0
  ASSERT(~SELF.EQ &= NULL)
  SELF.EQ.Field = 1

  SELF.InitControls
  SELF.ResetColumn
  RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: Init, EQ, AddControl

Kill (shut down the EIPManagerClass object)**Kill, DERIVED, PROC**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. The Kill method must leave the object in a state in which an Init can be called.

Implementation: The BrowseEIPManager.Kill method calls the Kill method with a PARENT call. The Kill method destroys the edit-in-place controls created by the InitControls method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
BrowseEIPManager.Kill PROCEDURE  
CODE  
    SELF.BC.ResetFromAsk(SELF.Req,SELF.Response)  
    RETURN PARENT.Kill()
```

See Also: BrowseEIPManager.Kill

Next (get the next edit-in-place field)**Next, PROTECTED**

The **Next** method gets the next edit-in-place control in the direction specified (forward or backward) by the end user.

Implementation: The Next method loops through the EditQueue and gets the next edit-in-place control based on the RETURN value of the GetEdit method.

Example:

EIPManager.ResetColumn PROCEDURE

CODE

SETKEYCODE(0)

SELF.Next

IF SELF.Column <> SELF.LastColumn

SELF.ListControl{PROP:Edit,SELF.EQ.Field} = SELF.EQ.Control.Feq

SELECT(SELF.EQ.Control.Feq)

SELF.LastColumn = SELF.Column

END

See Also: GetEdit, SeekForward, Column, EQ

ResetColumn (reset edit-in-place object to selected field)

ResetColumn, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **ResetColumn** method selects the appropriate edit-in-place control based on the selected listbox field.

Implementation: The ResetColumn method resets the FEQ to the selected ListControl field.

Example:

```
EIPManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE(BYTE Force)
CODE
  SELF.Column = 1
  IF SELF.Again
    SELF.ResetColumn
  END
```

See Also: EditClass.FEQ

Init, ListControl, TakeAction, TakeCompleted, TakeNewSelection

Run (run the EIPManager)

Run(*request*)

Run	Run the EIPManager.
<i>request</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the database action (insert, change, delete) requested.

The **Run** method assigns the passed value to the Req property and executes the EIPManager.

Implementation: Return value EQUATEs are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.C LW as follows:

RequestCompleted	EQUATE (1)	!Update Completed
RequestCancelled	EQUATE (2)	!Update Cancelled

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
BrowseClass.AskRecord PROCEDURE(BYTE Req)
CODE
SELF.CheckEIP
RETURN SELF.EIP.Run(Req)
```

See Also: **Req**

TakeAcceptAll (validate completed row)

TakeAcceptAll (), VIRTUAL

TakeAcceptAll	Processes edit-in-place validation.
----------------------	-------------------------------------

When an Edit-in-Place row is completed, the **TakeAcceptAll** method will validate and reselect any column that is required and empty, or any column that returns an EditAction:Cancel equate by the EditClass:TakeAccepted method, with the exception of any cancel action performed during an Insert or Change session. If all columns are successfully validated, TakeAcceptAll returns TRUE (1).

Return Value: **BYTE**

TakeAction (process edit-in-place action)**TakeAction(*action*), VIRTUAL**

TakeAction Processes edit-in-place action.

action An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the action to process. Valid EQUATEs are forward, backward, next, previous, complete, and cancel.

The **TakeAction** method processes an EIPManager dialog action. The TakeAction method is your opportunity to interpret and implement the meaning of the end user's selection.

Implementation: The TakeFieldEvent conditionally calls the TakeAction method.

Corresponding EQUATEs are declared in ABEIP.INC as follows:

```

EditAction ITEMIZE(0),PRE
None      EQUATE
Forward   EQUATE    ! Next field
Backward  EQUATE    ! Previous field
Complete  EQUATE    ! OK
Cancel    EQUATE    ! Cancel
Next       EQUATE    ! Focus moving to Next record
Previous   EQUATE    ! Focus moving to Previous record
Ignore     EQUATE
          END

```

Example:

```

EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent      PROCEDURE
I UNSIGNED(1)
CODE
IF FIELD() = SELF.ListControl THEN RETURN Level:Benign .
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.EQ)+1
! Optimised to pick up subsequent events from same field
IF ~SELF.EQ.Control &= NULL AND SELF.EQ.Control.Feq = FIELD()
SELF.TakeAction(SELF.EQ.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT()))
RETURN Level:Benign
END
GET(SELF.EQ,I)
END
! Code to handle an unknown field

```

See Also: TakeFieldEvent

TakeCompleted (process completion of edit:EIPManagerClass)

TakeCompleted(*force*), VIRTUAL

TakeCompleted Determines the edit-in-place dialog's action after either a loss of focus or an end user action.

action An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates an end user requested action.

The **TakeCompleted** method conditionally calls the **ResetColumn** method. The **BrowseEIPManager.TakeCompleted** provides the bulk of the process completion functionality, and is derived from the **TakeCompleted** method.

Implementation: The **BrowseEIPManager.TakeCompleted** method calls the **TakeCompleted** method via PARENT syntax. **TakeFocusLoss** and **TakeAction** also call the **TakeCompleted** method.

Note: **TakeCompleted** does not override the **WindowManager.TakeCompleted** method.

Example:

```
EIPManager.TakeFocusLoss PROCEDURE
CODE
CASE CHOOSE(SELF.FocusLoss&=NULL,EIPAction:Default,BAND(SELF.FocusLoss,EIPAction:Save)
OF EIPAction:Always OROF EIPAction:Default
    SELF.TakeCompleted(Button:Yes)
OF EIPAction:Never
    SELF.TakeCompleted(Button:No)
ELSE
    SELF.TakeCompleted(0)
END
```

See Also: **BrowseEIPManager.TakeCompleted**, **TakeFocusLoss**, **TakeAction**

TakeEvent (process window specific events)**TakeEvent, DERIVED, PROC**

The **TakeEvent** method processes window specific events and returns Level:Notify for an EVENT:Size, EVENT:Iconize, or EVENT:Maximize; it returns a Level:Fatal for an EVENT:CloseDown, EVENT:CloseWindow, or EVENT:Sized; all other window events return a Level:Benign.

Implementation: The TakeFieldEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeFocusLoss method subsequent to returning a Level:Fatal.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent      PROCEDURE
I UNSIGNED(1)
CODE
IF FIELD() = SELF.ListControl THEN RETURN Level:Benign .
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.EQ)+1
! Optimised to pick up subsequent events from same field
IF ~SELF.EQ.Control &= NULL AND SELF.EQ.Control.Feq = FIELD()
SELF.TakeAction(SELF.EQ.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT()))
RETURN Level:Benign
END
GET(SELF.EQ,I)
END
! Code to handle an unknown field

```

See Also: TakeFieldEvent, TakeFocusLoss

TakeFieldEvent (process field specific events)

TakeFieldEvent, DERIVED, PROC

The **TakeFieldEvent** method processes all field-specific/control-specific events for the window. It returns a value indicating whether edit-in-place process is complete and should stop.

TakeFieldEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The WindowManager.TakeEvent method calls the TakeFieldEvent method.

Return value EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

TakeFocusLoss (a virtual to process loss of focus)

TakeFocusLoss, VIRTUAL

The **TakeFocusLoss** method determines the appropriate action to take when the EIPManager window loses focus, and calls the TakeCompleted method with the appropriate parameter.

Implementation: TakeEvent and TakeFieldEvent methods conditionally call the TakeFocusLoss method.

Example:

```
EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent      PROCEDURE
I UNSIGNED(1)
CODE
IF FIELD() = SELF.ListControl THEN RETURN Level:Benign .
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.EQ)+1
! Optimized to pick up subsequent events from same field
IF ~SELF.EQ.Control &= NULL AND SELF.EQ.Control.Feq = FIELD()
SELF.TakeAction(SELF.EQ.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT()))
RETURN Level:Benign
END
GET(SELF.EQ,I)
END
! Code to handle an unknown field
```

See Also: TakeCompleted

TakeNewSelection (reset edit-in-place column:EIPManagerClass)

TakeNewSelection, DERIVED, PROC

The **TakeFieldEvent** method resets the edit-in-place column selected by the end user.

Implementation: TakeNewSelection is called by the BrowseEIPManager.TakeNewSelection method.

TakeNewSelection calls ResetColumn, and returns a Level:Benign.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
BrowseEIPManager.TakeNewSelection PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF FIELD() = SELF.ListControl
    IF CHOICE(SELF.ListControl) = SELF.BC.CurrentChoice
      RETURN PARENT.TakeNewSelection()
    ELSE
      ! Code to handle Focus change to different record
    END
  END
END
```

See Also: ResetColumn

EntryLocatorClass

EntryLocatorClass Overview

The EntryLocatorClass is a LocatorClass with an input control (ENTRY, COMBO, or SPIN). An Entry Locator is a multi-character locator that activates when the locator control is *accepted* (not upon each keystroke).

Use an Entry Locator when you want a multi-character search on numeric or alphanumeric keys and you want to delay the search until the user accepts the locator control. This delayed search reduces network traffic and provides a smoother search in a client-server environment.

EntryLocatorClass Concepts

The EntryLocatorClass lets you specify a locator control and a sort field on which to search (the free key element) for a BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object uses the EntryLocatorClass to locate and scroll to the nearest matching item.

When the end user places one or more characters in the locator control, then *accepts* the control by pressing TAB, pressing a locator button, or selecting another control on the screen, the EntryLocatorClass object advances the BrowseClass object's LIST to the nearest matching record.

EntryLocatorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass uses the EntryLocatorClass to locate and scroll to the nearest matching item. Therefore, if your program's BrowseClass objects use an Entry Locator, your program must instantiate the EntryLocatorClass for each use. Once you register the EntryLocatorClass object with the BrowseClass object (see BrowseClass.AddLocator), the BrowseClass object uses the EntryLocatorClass object as needed, with no other code required. See the *Conceptual Example*.

EntryLocatorClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC BrowseBox template generates code to instantiate the EntryLocatorClass for your BrowseBoxes. The EntryLocatorClass objects are called BRW*n*::Sort#::Locator, where *n* is the template instance number and # is the sort sequence (id) number. As this implies, you can have a different locator for each BrowseClass object sort order.

You can use the BrowseBox's **Locator Behavior** dialog (the **Locator Class** button) to derive from the EntryLocatorClass. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the locator's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

EntryLocatorClass Source Files

The EntryLocatorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific EntryLocatorClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	EntryLocatorClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	EntryLocatorClass method definitions

EntryLocatorClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a BrowseClass object and related objects, including an EntryLocatorClass object. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including scrolling, updating, and locating records.

Note that the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the locator.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )           !declare WindowManager class
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )           !declare BrowseClass and Locator
  MAP
  END
State      FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ST ), THREAD
StateCodeKey  KEY( ST:STATECODE ), NOCASE, OPT
Record      RECORD, PRE( )
STATECODE   STRING( 2 )
STATENAME   STRING( 20 )
            END
            END
StView      VIEW( State )              !declare VIEW to process
            END
StateQ      QUEUE                      !declare Q for LIST
ST:STATECODE LIKE( ST:STATECODE )
ST:STATENAME LIKE( ST:STATENAME )
ViewPosition STRING( 512 )
            END
Access:State CLASS( FileManager )      !declare Access:State object
Init        PROCEDURE
            END
Relate:State CLASS( RelationManager ) !declare Relate:State object
Init        PROCEDURE
            END
VCRRequest  LONG( 0 ), THREAD

```

```

StWindow WINDOW('Browse States'),AT(,,123,152),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('Find:'),AT(9,6)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(29,4),USE(ST:STATECODE)
    LIST,AT(8,5,108,124),USE(?StList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(StateQ),|
    FORMAT('27L(2)|M~CODE~@s2@80L(2)|M~STATENAME~@s20@')
END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)          !declare ThisWindow object
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
          END
BrowseSt   CLASS(BrowseClass)             !declare BrowseSt object
Q          &StateQ
          END

StLocator  EntryLocatorClass              !declare StLocator object
StStep     StepStringClass                !declare StStep object

CODE
    ThisWindow.Run()                      !run the window procedure

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()               !initialize things
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()           !call base class init
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    Relate:State.Init                     !initialize Relate:State object
    SELF.FirstField = ?ST:STATECODE       !set FirstField for ThisWindow
    SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest        !VCRRequest not used
    Relate:State.Open                     !open State and related files
    !Init BrowseSt object by naming its LIST,VIEW,Q,RelationManager & WindowManager
    BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
    OPEN(StWindow)
    SELF.Opened=True
    BrowseSt.Q &= StateQ                  !reference the browse QUEUE
    StStep.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime)!initialize the StStep object
    BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(StStep,ST:StateCodeKey) !set the browse sort order
    BrowseSt.AddLocator(StLocator)         !plug in the browse locator
    StLocator.Init(?ST:STATECODE,ST:STATECODE,1,BrowseSt) !initialize locator object
    BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATECODE,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATECODE) !set a column to browse
    BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATENAME,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATENAME) !set a column to browse
    SELF.SetAlerts()                      !alert any keys for ThisWindow
    RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()               !shut down things
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO

```

```
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()           !call base class shut down
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Close                    !close State and related files
Relate:State.Kill                     !shut down Relate:State object
GlobalErrors.Kill                     !shut down GlobalErrors object
RETURN ReturnValue
```


EntryLocatorClass Properties

EntryLocatorClass Properties

The EntryLocatorClass inherits all the properties of the LocatorClass from which it is derived. See *LocatorClass Properties* and *LocatorClass Concepts* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the EntryLocatorClass also contains the following property:

Shadow (the search value)

Shadow CSTRING(40)

The **Shadow** property contains the search value for the entry locator.

The TakeKey method adds to the search value based on the end user's keyboard input. The BrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator method implements the search for the specified value.

See Also: TakeKey, BrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator

EntryLocatorClass Methods

The EntryLocatorClass inherits all the methods of the LocatorClass from which it is derived. See *LocatorClass Methods* and *LocatorClass Concepts* for more information.

GetShadow(return shadow value)

GetShadow, DERIVED

The **GetShadow** method returns the value of the Shadow property. The Shadow property is set based on the users keyboard input into the entry locator field.

Return Data Type: STRING

See Also: EntryLocatorClass.SetShadow, EntryLocatorClass.Shadow

Init (initialize the EntryLocatorClass object)

Init([*control*] , [*freeelement*] [,*ignorecase*] [,*browseclass*])

Init	Initializes the EntryLocatorClass object.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that sets the locator control for the locator. If omitted, the control number defaults to zero (0) indicating there is no locator control.
<i>freeelement</i>	The fully qualified label of a component of the sort sequence of the searched data set. The ABC Templates further require this to be a free component of a key. A free component is one that is not range limited to a single value. Typically this is also the USE variable of the locator control.
<i>ignorecase</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether the locator does case sensitive searches or ignores case. A value of one (1) or True does case insensitive searches; a value of zero (0) or False ignores case. If omitted, nocase defaults to 0.
<i>browseclass</i>	The label of the BrowseClass object for the locator. If omitted, the LocatorClass object has no direct access to the browse QUEUE or it's underlying VIEW.

The **Init** method initializes the EntryLocatorClass object.

Implementation: The Init method sets the values of the Control, FreeElement, NoCase, and ViewManager properties. The Shadow property is the *control*'s USE variable.

By default, only the StepLocatorClass and FilterLocatorClass use the *browseclass*. The other locator classes do not.

Example:

```
BRW1::Sort1:Locator.Init(,CUST:StateCode,1)           !without locator control
BRW1::Sort2:Locator.Init(?CUST:CustMo,CUST:CustNo,1)  !with locator control
```

See Also: Control, FreeElement, NoCase, ViewManager

Set (restart the locator:EntryLocatorClass)

Set, DERIVED

The **Set** method prepares the locator for a new search.

Implementation: The Set method clears the FreeElement property and the Shadow property.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.TakeScroll PROCEDURE(SIGNED Event)    !process a scroll event
CODE
!handle the scroll
SELF.PostNewSelection                               !post EVENT:NewSelection to list
IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL                       !if locator is present
    SELF.Sort.Locator.Set                           ! clear it
END
IF SELF.Sort.Thumb &= NULL                           !if thumb is present
    SELF.UpdateThumbFixed                           ! reposition it
END
```

See Also: FreeElement, Shadow

SetShadow(set shadow value)SetShadow(*shadow*), DERIVED**SetShadow** Set the Shadow property.*shadow* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the value to give to the Shadow property.The **SetShadow** property sets the Shadow property with the passed **value**.

See Also: EntryLocatorClass.GetShadow, EntryLocatorClass.Shadow

TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value:EntryLocatorClass)**TakeAccepted**, DERIVEDThe **TakeAccepted** method processes the accepted locator value and returns a value indicating whether the browse list display should change.

A locator value is accepted when the end user changes the locator value, then TABS off the locator control or otherwise switches focus to another control on the same window.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method primes the FreeElement property with the entered search value, then returns one (1 or True) if a new search is required or returns zero (0 or False) if no new search is required.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

MyBrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator PROCEDURE

```

CODE
IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL           !if locator is present
  IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeAccepted()    !if locator value requires a search
    SELF.Reset(1)                        !reposition the view
    SELECT(SELF.ListControl)             !focus on the list control
    SELF.ResetQueue( Reset:Done )        !reset the browse queue
    SELF.Sort.Locator.Reset              !reset the locator USE variable
  END
END

```

See Also: FreeElement

TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:EntryLocatorClass)**TakeKey, DERIVED**

The **TakeKey** method processes an alerted keystroke for the LIST control that displays the data to be searched and returns a value indicating whether the browse list display should change. **By default, all alphanumeric keys are alerted for LIST controls.**

Implementation: The BrowseClass.TakeKey method calls the locator TakeKey method. The TakeKey method stuffs the keystroke detected by the LIST into the locator's input control and returns zero (0 or False).

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

MyBrowseClass.TakeKey PROCEDURE

```
CODE
IF RECORDS(SELF.ListQueue)
CASE KEYCODE()
OF InsertKey OROF DeleteKey OROF CtrlEnter OROF MouseLeft2 ;!handle keys
ELSE
DO CheckLocator !handle all other keystrokes
END
END
RETURN 0
```

CheckLocator ROUTINE

```
IF ~(SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL)
IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeKey() !add keystroke to locator input control
SELF.Reset(SELF.GetFreeElementPosition()) !and refresh browse if necessary
SELF.ResetQueue(Reset:Done)
DO HandledOut
ELSE
IF RECORDS(SELF.ListQueue)
DO HandledOut
END
END
END
```

HandledOut ROUTINE

```
SELF.UpdateWindow
SELF.PostNewSelection
RETURN 1
```

See Also: BrowseClass.TakeKey

Update (update the locator control and free elements)**Update, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL**

The **Update** method redraws the locator control and updates the free key elements in the record buffer with the current locator value.

Implementation: The Update method primes the FreeElement property with the current search value (the Shadow property), then calls the UpdateWindow method to redraw the locator control.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.UpdateWindow PROCEDURE      !update browse related controls
CODE
  IF ~(SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL)        !if locator is present
    SELF.Sort.Locator.UpdateWindow        !redraw locator control
  END
```

See Also: FreeElement, Shadow, UpdateWindow

UpdateWindow (redraw the locator control)**UpdateWindow, DERIVED**

The **UpdateWindow** method redraws the locator control with the current locator value.

Implementation: The Update method calls the UpdateWindow method to redraw the locator control with the current locator contents.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.UpdateWindow PROCEDURE      !update browse related controls
CODE
  IF ~(SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL)        !if locator is present
    SELF.Sort.Locator.UpdateWindow        ! redraw locator control
  END
```

See Also: Update

ErrorClass

ErrorClass Overview

The ErrorClass declares an error manager which consistently and flexibly handles any errors. That is, for a given program scope, you define all possible errors by ID number, severity, and message text, then when an error or other notable condition occurs, you simply pass the appropriate ID to the error manager which processes it appropriately based on its severity level.

The defined "errors" may actually include questions, warnings, notifications, messages, benign tracing calls, as well as true errors. The ErrorClass comes with about forty general purpose database errors already defined. You can expand this list to include additional general purpose errors, your own application-specific errors, or even field specific data validation errors. Your expansion of the errors list may be "permanent" or may be done dynamically at runtime.

ErrorClass Source Files

The ErrorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC. The specific ErrorClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABERROR.INC	ErrorClass declarations
ABERROR.CLW	ErrorClass method definitions
ABERROR.TRN	ErrorClass default error definitions

Multiple Customizable Levels of Error Treatment

Six Levels of Treatment

By default, the error manager recognizes six different levels of error severity. The default actions for these levels range from no action for benign errors to halting the program for fatal errors. The error manager also supports the intermediate actions of simply notifying the user, or of notifying the user and letting the user decide whether to continue or abort.

Customizable Treatments

These various levels of treatment are implemented with virtual methods so they are easy to customize. The error manager calls a different virtual method for each severity level, so you can override the default error actions with your own application specific error actions. See the various *Take* methods for examples.

The recognized severity EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC. These severity levels and their default actions are:

Level:Benign	no action, returns Level:Benign
Level:User	displays message, returns Level:Benign or Level:Cancel
Level:Notify	displays message, returns Level:Benign
Level:Fatal	displays message, halts the program
Level:Program	treated as Level:Fatal
Level:Cancel	used to confirm no action taken by User
any other value	treated as Level:Program

You may define your own additional severity levels *and* their associated actions.

Predefined Windows and Database Errors

A list of common database errors are defined in ABERROR.TRN for your use and for the ABC Templates. The defined "errors" include questions, warnings, messages, notifications, benign tracing calls, as well as true errors.

You may edit these error definitions to suit your own requirements. That is, you may add new error definitions, change the wording of the error message text, or even translate the English text to another language.

Note: If you use the ABC Templates you should not remove any of the default error definitions or change their ID numbers.

Dynamic Extensibility of Errors

You may add new error definitions, override default error definitions, and modify default error definitions at runtime with the methods provided for these purposes:

AddErrors	Adds new errors, overrides errors, or both.
RemoveErrors	Removes errors, restores overridden errors, or both.
SetFatality	Modifies the severity level of an error.

ErrorClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates instantiate a global ErrorClass object called GlobalErrors. All template recognized errors are defined at program startup and almost every generated procedure then relies on the GlobalErrors object to handle known error conditions. You can use the Application Template's Global Properties dialog to specify a different class to instantiate as GlobalErrors--providing complete flexibility for error handling in your template generated procedures.

ErrorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

All the classes that access files (ASCIIFileClass, ASCIIViewerClass, FileManager, RelationManager, ViewManager, and BrowseClass) use the ErrorClass. Therefore, if your program instantiates any of these classes, it must also instantiate the ErrorClass.

ErrorClass Macro Expansion

The following ErrorClass methods allow runtime customization of error message text through expansion of macro symbols:

SetField	Names the field that produced the error.
SetFile	Names the file that produced the error.
ThrowFile	Names the file that produced the error, then handles the error.
ThrowMessage	Modifies error text, then handles the error.

Each error has associated message text. The error message text may contain macro symbols recognized by the ErrorClass object. The ErrorClass object expands these macro symbols to their current runtime values before displaying the message. Supported macros and their runtime substitution values are:

%File	The ErrorClass.FileName property
%Field	The ErrorClass.FieldName property
%Message	The ErrorClass.MessageText property
%Error	Value returned by ERROR()
%ErrorCode	Value returned by ERRORCODE()
%FileError	Value returned by FILEERROR()
%FileErrorCode	Value returned by FILEERRORCODE()
%ErrorText	%Error(%ErrorCode) or %FileError(%FileErrorCode)
%Previous	Text from prior defined error with the same id

The %ErrorText macro uses %FileError(%FileErrorCode)--the more specific backend server error information--when it is available, otherwise it uses %Error(%ErrorCode).

This macro expansion capability is a feature of the ErrorClass and is not a feature of the Clarion language in general.

Tip: You do not need to specify two percent signs (%%) to display a percent sign (%) in your message text.

ErrorClass Multi-Language Capability

Because all error message text is defined in one place (ABERROR.TRN), it is easy to implement non-English error messages. For static (permanent) language translation, simply translate the English text in ABERROR.TRN to the language of your choice. Alternatively, for dynamic language translation, you may add an error definition block to ABERROR.TRN for each supported language. For example in ABERROR.TRN declare:

```
DefaultErrors  GROUP      !English error messages
                END
GermanErrors   GROUP      !German error messages
                END
```

Then at runtime, initialize the error manager with the appropriate error definition block. For example, you could override the Init method (defined in ABERROR.CLW) with something like this:

```
        INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')                !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass  CLASS(ErrorClass)                !declare derived class
Init          PROCEDURE(BYTE PreferredLanguage)
                END

GlobalErrors  MyErrorClass                    !declare GlobalErrors object
Language      BYTE                            !Language Flag
Language:English  EQUATE(0)                    !English equate
Language:German   EQUATE(1)                    !German equate

CODE
Language = GETINI('Preferences','Language',0) !get language preference
GlobalErrors.Init(Language)                  !GlobalErrors initialization
                                              !with preferred language

MyErrorClass.Init PROCEDURE(BYTE PreferredLanguage) !New Init method
CODE
SELF.Errors &= NEW ErrorEntry                !allocate new Errors list
CASE PreferredLanguage                        !which language was selected
OF Language:German                            !if German
    SELF.AddErrors(GermanErrors)              !add German errors to list
ELSE                                           !otherwise...
    SELF.AddErrors(DefaultErrors)              !add default (English) errors
END
```

Alternatively, you could call the AddErrors method to define *additional* errors for the selected language as shown in the following example.

ErrorClass Properties

ErrorClass Properties

There are two types of ErrorClass properties, the Errors list and the macro substitution values. The most important property is the Errors list--the list of errors recognized by ErrorClass. The defined "errors" may actually include questions, warnings, notifications, benign tracing calls, as well as true errors. This list is established by the ErrorClass initialization method, ErrorClass.Init. The list may be modified thereafter by methods provided for this purpose, allowing application specific errors (such as field specific invalid data messages).

The other three ErrorClass properties support the error text "macros" recognized by the error manager. The error manager expands these macro symbols to their current runtime values before displaying the message.

DefaultCategory (error category)

DefaultCategory **ASTRING, PROTECTED**

The **DefaultCategory** is a string that is a classification of the type of error. This property is set by the SetCategory. The Init method sets the DefaultCategory to 'ABC'. When the category is changed by SetCategory, the new category becomes the default category.

See Also:

ErrorClass.Init, ErrorClass.SetCategory, ErrorClass.GetCategory

ErrorLog (errorlog interface)

ErrorLog **&ErrorLogInterface, PROTECTED**

The **ErrorLog** property is a reference to the errorlog interface that manages the error log file.

Errors (recognized error definitions)

Errors &ErrorEntry, PROTECTED

The **Errors** property is a reference to the data structure that holds all errors recognized by the ErrorClass. The defined "errors" may actually include questions, warnings, messages, notifications, benign tracing calls, as well as true error conditions.

The default errors are defined in ABERROR.TRN. You may edit ABERROR.TRN to customize the default error list. The Init method adds these default error definitions to the Errors property at runtime. You may also use the SetFatality method, the AddErrors method, and the RemoveErrors method to customize the Errors property at runtime.

The SetFatality method changes the severity level of a specified error.

The AddErrors method lets you add more error definitions, override existing error definitions, or both. The Errors property may have more than one error with the same ID. Error definitions added later "override" any earlier definitions with the same IDs. The "overridden" definitions are preserved for substitution into the %Previous macro symbol.

The RemoveErrors method lets you remove error definitions, restore previously overridden errors, or both.

The error message text may contain "macros" recognized by the error manager. The error manager expands these macro symbols to their current runtime values before displaying the message. See *Macro Expansion* for more information.

Implementation: Errors is a reference to a queue declared in ABERROR.INC as follows. For each recognized error, the Errors property includes an ID number, error message text, window title text, and a severity indicator.

```

ErrorEntry QUEUE,TYPE            !List of all error definitions
Id            USHORT            !Error message identifier
Message       &STRING           !Message text
Title         &STRING           !Error window caption bar text
Fatality      BYTE              !Severity of error
END
```

See Also: AddErrors, Init, RemoveErrors, SetFatality

FieldName (field that produced the error)

FieldName **CSTRING(MessageMaxlen), PROTECTED**

The **FieldName** property contains the name of the field that produced the error. The SetField method sets the value of the FieldName property. The FieldName value replaces any %Field symbols within the error message text.

MessageMaxlen is a constant EQUATE declared in ABERROR.INC.

See Also: SetField

FileName (file that produced the error)

FileName **CSTRING(MessageMaxlen), PROTECTED**

The **FileName** property contains the name of the file that produced the error. The SetFile and ThrowFile methods both set the value of the FileName property. The FileName value then replaces any %File symbols within the error message text.

MessageMaxlen is a constant EQUATE declared in ABERROR.INC.

See Also: SetFile, ThrowFile

History (error history structure)

History **&ErrorHistoryList,PROTECTED**

The **History** property is a reference to the ErrorHistoryList structure that holds the history for errors that have previously occurred. The error History is determined based on the HistoryThreshold and HistoryResetOnView properties.

HistoryResetOnView(clear error history log file)**HistoryResetOnView BYTE**

The **HistoryResetOnView** property determines if the error history view structure should be cleared upon viewing an error message. If this property is set to one (1 or True), the History structure will be reset after each error is viewed. Setting this property to zero (0 or False) will cause the errors to be queued in the History structure.

HistoryThreshold (determine size of error history)**HistoryThreshold LONG**

The **HistoryThreshold** property sets the number of items to store in the error log file. Setting this property to -1 keeps all errors. Setting this property to 0 switches off error history logging.

HistoryViewLevel (trigger error history)**HistoryViewLevel LONG**

The **HistoryViewLevel** property sets the error level which triggers error history viewing. This property is only valid with a HistoryThreshold other than 0.

KeyName (key that produced the error)**KeyName CSTRING(MessageMaxlen), PROTECTED**

The **KeyName** property contains the name of the key that produced the error. The SetKey method sets the value of the KeyName property. The KeyName value then replaces any %Key symbols within the error message text.

MessageMaxlen is a constant EQUATE declared in ABERROR.INC.

See Also: SetKey

LogErrors (turn on error history logging)

LogErrors **BYTE**

The **LogErrors** property turns the error history logging on or off. Setting this property to one (1 or True) turns on the error logging. Setting this property to zero (0 or False) turns off the error logging.

MessageText (custom error message text)

MessageText **CSTRING(MessageMaxlen), PROTECTED**

The **MessageText** property contains text to substitute for any %Message symbols within the error message text. The ThrowMessage method sets the value of the MessageText property. The MessageText value then replaces any %Message symbols within the error message text.

MessageMaxlen is a constant EQUATE declared in ABERROR.INC.

See Also: ThrowMessage

Silent (silent error flag)

Silent **BYTE**

The **Silent** property determines whether an error will be displayed to the screen. If Silent is set to one (1 or True), the error message box will not be displayed to the screen; however it will be added to the error log file. If Silent is set to zero, (0 or False) the error is displayed to the screen as well as added to the error log file.

ErrorClass Methods

ErrorClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ErrorClass, it is useful to organize the various ErrorClass methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ErrorClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ErrorClass object
AddErrors	add or override recognized error definitions
SetFatality	change the severity level of a specific error
Kill	terminate the ErrorClass object

Mainstream Use:

Throw	process an error
ThrowFile	set substitution value of %File then process an error
ThrowMessage	set substitution value of %Message then process an error
Message	display an error message from the Errors list

Occasional Use:

SetField	set the substitution value of the %Field macro
SetFile	set the substitution value of the %File macro
SetErrors	save the current error state
SetId	make a selected error the current one
RemoveErrors	remove (and/or restore) error definitions
TakeError	process an error, assuming SetErrors has been called

Virtual Methods

Typically, you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. We anticipate you will want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. However they do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them. These methods are listed functionally rather than alphabetically.

TakeBenign	process benign errors
TakeNotify	process notify errors
TakeUser	process user errors
TakeFatal	process fatal errors
TakeProgram	process program errors
TakeOther	process any other errors

AddErrors (add or override recognized errors)**AddErrors(*error block*), VIRTUAL**

AddErrors	Adds entries to the Errors property from the <i>error block</i> passed to it.
<i>error block</i>	A GROUP whose first component field is a USHORT containing the number of error entries in the GROUP. Subsequent component fields define the error entries.

The **AddErrors** method receives error entries and adds them to the existing Errors property. These later added Error definitions "override" any earlier definitions with the same IDs. The "overridden" definitions are preserved for substitution into the %Previous macro symbol, and may be fully restored by removing the overriding error entries with the RemoveErrors method.

Implementation: AddErrors assumes the Errors property has already been created by Init or by some other method.

Each *error block* entry consists of a USHORT containing the error ID, a BYTE containing the severity level, a PSTRING containing the title to display on the error message window, and another PSTRING containing the error message text.

Example:

```
AppErrors GROUP
Number      USHORT(2)                !number of errors in the group
            USHORT(Msg:RebuildKey)    !first error ID
            BYTE(Level:Notify)        !severity level
            PSTRING('Invalid Key')    !window title
            PSTRING('%File key is invalid.') !message text
            USHORT(Msg:RebuildFailed)  !second error ID
            BYTE(Level:Fatal)          !severity level
            PSTRING('Key was not built') !window title
            PSTRING('Repairing key for %File.') !message text
        END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass                !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                      !GlobalErrors initialization
GlobalErrors.AddErrors(AppErrors)      !add some app specific errors
Main                                  !call main procedure
GlobalErrors.Kill                      !GlobalErrors termination
```

See Also: Init, Errors, RemoveErrors

AddHistory (update History structure)

AddHistory, VIRTUAL

The **AddHistory** method adds an entry to the History structure. This structure is used to display the message to the screen.

GetCategory (retrieve error category)

GetCategory([*id*])

GetCategory Retrieves the current error category.

id An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the error id.

The **GetCategory** method retrieves the error category from the ErrorEntry structure. If the *id* is omitted the DefaultCategory is returned.

Return Data Type: ASTRING

GetError (Retrieve the current error message)

GetError([*errorlevel*])

GetError Retrieves the current error message.

errorlevel An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the error level.

The **GetError** method retrieves the error message from the SaveError or SaveFileError property, based on the type of *errorlevel* that is detected.

Return Data Type: CSTRING

GetErrorCode (Retrieve the current Errorcode)

GetErrorCode(*errorlevel*)

GetErrorCode Retrieves the current error code

errorlevel An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the error level.

The **GetErrorCode** method retrieves the error code from the SaveErrorCode or SaveFileErrorCode property, based on the type of errorlevel detected.

Return Data Type: LONG

GetProcedureName (return procedure name)

GetProcedureName

The **GetProcedureName** method returns the name of the procedure in which it has been called.

Implementation: Returns the name of the procedure as established in the .APP file providing that the procedure name has been added to a PRIVATE queue by the SetProcedureName method. The GetProcedureName method is not called by any other methods or templates.

Return Data Type: STRING

**MESSAGE(GlobalErrors.GetProcedureName()) ! Displays the procedure name in
! a MESSAGE dialog**

See Also: SetProcedureName

HistoryMsg (initialize the message window)**HistoryMsg(*caption, icon, buttons, default button*), PROC, VIRTUAL**

HistoryMsg	Initialize the message box window and controls.
<i>caption</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the message box window caption.
<i>icon</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the icon to display on the message box.
<i>buttons</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which Windows standard buttons to place on the message box. This may indicate multiple buttons.
<i>default button</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the default button on the message box.

The **HistoryMsg** method initializes the error message dialog.

Return Data Type: LONG

Init (initialize the ErrorClass object)

Init
Init(*errorlog*), VIRTUAL

Init	Initialize the ErrorClass object.
<i>errorlog</i>	The label of the ErrorLogInterface.

The **Init** method initializes the ErrorClass object and adds the default errors.

Implementation: Creates the Errors property and calls the AddErrors method to initialize it with the default errors defined in ABERROR.TRN. Default error ID EQUATES are defined in ABERROR.INC.

The standard templates instantiate a single global ErrorClass object and make a single global call to Init. However, you may wish to instantiate an ErrorClass object with a separate set of errors for each base class, or for any other logical entity (for example a PayrollErrors object for the Payroll segment of your program).

Example:

```
GlobalErrors ErrorClass      !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init            !GlobalErrors initialization
Main                        !call main procedure
GlobalErrors.Kill           !GlobalErrors termination
```

See Also: AddErrors, Errors, Kill

Kill (perform any necessary termination code)**Kill**

The **Kill** method disposes any memory allocated during the object's lifetime and performs any other necessary termination code.

Implementation: Disposes the Errors queue created by the Init method.

Example:

```
GlobalErrors ErrorClass !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init       !GlobalErrors initialization
Main                   !call main procedure
GlobalErrors.Kill       !GlobalErrors termination
```

See Also: Init

Message (display an error message)**Message**(*error id*, *buttons*, *default button*)

Message	Displays an error message dialog box and returns the button the user pressed.
<i>error id</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which ErrorClass.Errors message to show in the dialog box.
<i>buttons</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which Windows standard buttons to place on the dialog box. This may indicate multiple buttons.
<i>default button</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the default button on the dialog box.

The **Message** method displays a Windows-standard message box containing the error message text from the Errors property, and returns the number of the button the user presses to exit the dialog box. This method provides a simple, centrally maintainable, consistent way to display messages.

Implementation: Uses the MESSAGE statement to display an application modal window with a question icon, the caption defined in the Errors property, and the message text defined in the Errors property.

The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default symbolic constants for the *error id* parameter.

The EQUATES.CLW file contains symbolic constants for the *buttons* and *default button* parameters. The EQUATES are:

```

BUTTON:OK
BUTTON:YES
BUTTON:NO
BUTTON:ABORT
BUTTON:RETRY
BUTTON:IGNORE
BUTTON:CANCEL
BUTTON:HELP

```

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```

!attempted auto increment of key has failed,
!show Message box with Yes and No buttons, the default is No
GlobalErrors.SetErrors      !Set value of %ErrorText macro
IF GlobalErrors.Message(Msg:RetryAutoInc,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No,BUTTON:No) = BUTTON:Yes
CYCLE
END

```

Msg (initiate error message destination)

Msg(*txt*, [*caption*], [*icon*], [*buttons*], [*default button*], [*style*]), PROC, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

Msg	Initiates the destination of the error message.
<i>txt</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the error message text to display in the message box.
<i>caption</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the message box window caption.
<i>icon</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the icon to display on the message box.
<i>buttons</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which Windows standard buttons to place on the message box. This may indicate multiple buttons. If omitted this is equivalent to Button:OK.
<i>default button</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the default button on the message box.
<i>style</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the font style to use withing the list control on the message box dialog.

The **Msg** method initiates the error destination. If the error is to be written to the error log file, the AddHistory method is called. The MessageBox method is called to display the error message to the window.

Return Data Type: LONG

MessageBox (display error message to window)

MessageBox(*[Level]*, *txt*, [*caption*], [*icon*], *buttons*, *default button*, *style*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

MessageBox A simple MESSAGE() window to display error.

<i>level</i>	The default error level is Level:Benign.
<i>txt</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the error message text to display in the message box.
<i>caption</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the message box window caption.
<i>icon</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the icon to display on the message box.
<i>buttons</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which Windows standard buttons to place on the message box. This may indicate multiple buttons. If omitted this is equivalent to Button:OK.
<i>default button</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the default button on the message box.
<i>style</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the font style to use withing the list control on the message box dialog.buttons

The **MessageBox** method implements a simple MESSAGE() dialog to display the error message to the window. This can be called independantly. It is also used is the ErrorClass is configured to not have a HistoryThreshold.

Return Data Type: LONG

RemoveErrors (remove or restore recognized errors)**RemoveErrors**(*error block*)**RemoveErrors** Removes the entries specified in the *error block* from the Errors property.

error block A GROUP whose first component field is a USHORT containing the number of error entries in the GROUP. Subsequent component fields define the error entries.

The **RemoveErrors** method receives error entries and deletes them from the existing Errors property.

The Errors property may contain more than one error with the same ID. Errors added later override earlier added errors with the same IDs. If you remove an overriding error definition, the "overridden" error is fully restored.

Implementation: RemoveErrors assumes the Errors property has already been created by Init or by some other method.

Each *error block* entry consists of a USHORT containing the error ID, a BYTE containing the severity level, a PSTRING containing the title to display on the error message window, and another PSTRING containing the error message text. However, RemoveErrors only considers the error ID when removing errors.

Example:

```
GlobalErrors ErrorClass                                !declare GlobalErrors object
Payroll PROCEDURE
PayErrors GROUP,STATIC
Number        USHORT(2)                                !number of errors in the group
               USHORT(Msg:RebuildKey)                  !first error ID
               BYTE(Level:Notify)                      !severity level
               PSTRING('Invalid Key')                  !window title
               PSTRING('%File key is invalid.') !message text
               USHORT(Msg:RebuildFailed)                !second error ID
               BYTE(Level:Fatal)                        !severity level
               PSTRING('Key was not built')             !window title
               PSTRING('Repairing key for %File.') !message text
            END
CODE
GlobalErrors.AddErrors(PayErrors)                      !add Payroll specific errors
!process payroll
GlobalErrors.RemoveErrors(PayErrors)                   !remove Payroll specific errors
```

See Also: AddErrors, Init, Errors

ResetHistory(clear History structure)**ResetHistory**

The **ResetHistory** method resets the error History structure. This can be done after the view of each error message if the ResetHistoryOnView property is set.

SetCategory (set error category)**SetCategory([*id*], *category*)**

SetCategory Retrieves the current error category.

id An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the error id.

<i>category</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the category for the corresponding id
-----------------	--

The **SetCateogry** method sets the error category in the ErrorEntry structure. If the *id* is omitted the DefaultCategory is used.

SetErrors (save the error state)

SetErrors

The **SetErrors** method saves the current error state for use by the ErrorClass.

Implementation: The **SetErrors** method saves the return values from `ERROR()`, `ERRORCODE()`, `FILEERROR()`, and `FILEERRORCODE()`. The saved values are used for expansion of any `%Error`, `%ErrorCode`, `%FileError`, or `%FileErrorCode` macro symbols within the error message text.

The `Throw` method calls `SetErrors` prior to handling the specified error, therefore you only need to call the `SetErrors` method when you do not use the `Throw` method.

Example:

```
!an error occurs
GlobalErrors.SetErrors                !save the error state
OPEN(LogFile)                        !open log (changes the error state)
Log:Text = FORMAT(TODAY(),@D1)&' '&FORMAT(CLOCK(),@T1)
ADD(LogFile)                          !write log (changes the error state)
RETURN GlobalErrors.TakeError(Msg:AddFailed)!process error with saved error state
```

See Also: `Throw`

SetFatality (set severity level for a particular error)

SetFatality(*error id*, *severity*)

SetFatality	Specifies the severity of a particular error in the Errors property.
<i>error id</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which error definition to modify.
<i>severity</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the severity of the error.

The **SetFatality** method specifies the severity of a particular error in the Errors property. If there is more than one error with the same *error id*, only the *last* matching error in the list is affected.

Implementation: The SetFatality method calls the SetId method to locate the specified error.

The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default symbolic constants for the *error id* parameter. It also contains symbolic constants for the *severity* parameter. The severity EQUATEs and their default actions are:

Level:Benign	no action, returns Level:Benign
Level:User	displays message, returns Level:Benign or Level:Cancel
Level:Notify	displays message, returns Level:Benign
Level:Fatal	displays message, halts the program
Level:Program	treated as Level:Fatal
any other value	treated as Level:Program

You may define your own additional severity levels *and* their associated actions.

Example:

```
GlobalErrors ErrorClass
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
GlobalErrors.SetFatality(Msg:CreateFailed,Level:Fatal) !change severity to fatal
CREATE(MyFile)
IF ERRORCODE( )
    GlobalErrors.SetFile('MyFile')           !specify file that failed
    GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed)      !issue fatal error message
END
```

See Also: Errors, SetId

SetField (set the substitution value of the %Field macro)**SetField**(*fieldname*)

SetField	Sets the substitution value of the %Field macro.
<i>fieldname</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which field produced the error.

The **SetField** method sets the substitution value of the %Field macro. This value replaces any %Field symbols within the error message text.

Implementation: Assigns the *fieldname* parameter to the ErrorClass.FieldName property.

Example:

```
!Lookup on State Code failed
GlobalErrors.SetField('State')           !set field that failed
GlobalErrors.ThrowMessage(Msg:FieldNotInFile,'State File') !process the error
```

See Also: FieldName

SetFile (set the substitution value of the %File macro)**SetFile**(*filename*)

SetFile	Sets the substitution value of the %File macro.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which file produced the error.

The **SetFile** method sets the substitution value of the %File macro. This value replaces any %File symbols within the error message text.

The ThrowFile method sets the %File macro before processing the specified error. That is, ThrowFile combines the functionality of SetFile and Throw into a single method.

Implementation: Assigns the *filename* parameter to the ErrorClass.FileName property.

Example:

```
CREATE(MyFile)
IF ERRORCODE( )           !if error occurred
  GlobalErrors.SetFile(NAME(MyFile))  !set file that failed
  GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed) !process the error
END
```

See Also: FileName, ThrowFile

SetKey (set the substitution value of the %Key macro)**SetKey**(*keyname*)

SetKey Sets the substitution value of the %Key macro.

keyname A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which key produced the error.

The **SetKey** method sets the substitution value of the %Key macro. This value replaces any %Key symbols within the error message text.

Implementation: Assigns the *keyname* parameter to the ErrorClass.KeyName property.

Example:

```

CASE ERRORCODE()
OF NoError
    SELF.AutoIncDone = 0
    RETURN Level:Benign
OF DupKeyErr
    IF HandleError
        IF ~SELF.HasAutoInc
            GET(SELF.File,0)      ! Flag for DUPLICATE function
        END
        LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Keys)
            GET(SELF.Keys,I)
            IF DUPLICATE(SELF.Keys.Key)
                SELF.Errors.SetKey(CHOOSE(CLIP(SELF.Keys.Description)<>' ',|
                CLIP(SELF.Keys.Description),SELF.Keys.Key{PROP:NAME}))
                SELF.ThrowMessage(Msg:DuplicateKey,SELF.Keys.Description)
                RETURN Level:Notify
            END
        END
    ELSE
        SELF.SetError(Msg:DuplicateKey)
    END
ELSE
    SELF.SetError(Msg:AddFailed)
    IF HandleError
        RETURN SELF.Throw()
    END
END
RETURN Level:Notify

```

See Also: [KeyName](#)

SetId (make a specific error current)**SetId(*error id*), PROTECTED**

SetId	Makes the specified error the current one.
<i>error id</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which error definition is current.

The **SetId** method makes the specified error the current one for processing by other ErrorClass methods. If more than one error definition matches the specified *error id*, the last defined error is used. This lets errors defined later override earlier defined errors with the same ID, while preserving the earlier defined errors for substitution into the %Previous macro symbol.

This method is PROTECTED, therefore, it can only be called from an ErrorClass method, or a method in a class derived from ErrorClass.

Implementation: The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default EQUATEs for the *error id* parameter.

Example:

```

ErrorClass.TakeError PROCEDURE(SHORT Id)
  CODE
  SELF.SetId(Id)
  CASE SELF.Errors.Fatality
  OF Level:Benign
    RETURN SELF.TakeBenign()
  OF Level:User
  OROF Level:Cancel
    RETURN SELF.TakeUser()
  OF Level:Program
    RETURN SELF.TakeProgram()
  OF Level:Fatal
    RETURN SELF.TakeFatal()
  OF Level:Notify
    SELF.TakeNotify()
    RETURN Level:Notify
  ELSE
    RETURN SELF.TakeOther()
  END

```

See Also: Errors

SetProcedureName (stores procedure names)

SetProcedureName([*name*])

SetProcedureName

The **SetProcedureName** method stores the name of the procedure, as defined in the .APP file, in a PRIVATE queue.

name A string constant, variable or EQUATE containing the name of the procedure to add to ProcName queue. If omitted, the current procedure name is deleted from the ProcName queue.

Implementation: SetProcedureName is called by the ABWindow.tpw so that every template generated procedure utilizing a window will have an entry in the ProcName queue. SetProcedureName is inserted into the Init method of the window using the %Procedure macro as the passed parameter. It is called again in the Kill method of the window, and the *name* parameter is omitted.

The ProcName queue is a PRIVATE queue declared in ABError.clw.

Example:

```
GlobalErrors.SetProcedureName( '%Procedure' )
```

See Also: GetProcedureName

SubsString (resolves error message macros)

SubsString, PROTECTED

The **SubsString** method returns the current error message text with all runtime macros resolved.

Implementation: The TakeFatal, TakeNotify, TakeUser, and Message methods call the SubsString method to resolve macros.

Return Data Type: STRING

ErrorClass.TakeFatal PROCEDURE

CODE

```
MESSAGE(Self.SubsString() & ' Press OK to end this application', |  
  Self.Errors.Title,ICON:Exclamation,Button:OK,BUTTON:OK,0)  
HALT(0,Self.Errors.Title)  
RETURN Level:Fatal
```

See Also: FileName, FieldName, Message, MessageText, TakeFatal, TakeNotify, TakeUser

TakeBenign (process benign error)**TakeBenign, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeBenign** method is called when an error with Level:Benign is "Thrown" to the ErrorClass (see Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage).

TakeBenign must return a severity level.

Implementation: The base class method (ErrorClass.TakeBenign) returns Level:Benign.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

        INCLUDE( 'ABERROR.INC' )           !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass CLASS(ErrorClass)             !declare derived class
TakeBenign   FUNCTION,BYTE,VIRTUAL !prototype corresponding virtual
        END
GlobalErrors MyErrorClass                 !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                         !GlobalErrors initialization
.
.
.
GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:NoError) !Throw method calls SELF.TakeBenign to
                                !automatically call the derived class method
                                !rather than the base class method
.
.
.

MyErrorClass.TakeBenign FUNCTION           !derived class virtual to handle benign
errors
CODE
    !your custom code here
RETURN Level:Benign

```

See Also: TakeError, Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

TakeError (process specified error)

TakeError(*error id*), PROC

TakeError	Locates the specified error, calls the appropriate method to handle it, then returns the severity level.
<i>error id</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which error to process.

The **TakeError** method locates the specified error, then based on its severity level calls the appropriate (*TakeLevel*) method to process the error, then returns the severity level.

TakeError assumes SetErrors has already been called to save the current error state.

Implementation: The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default symbolic constants for the *error id* parameter.

By default, the error manager recognizes six different levels of error severity. The TakeError method calls a different virtual method (*TakeLevel*) for each severity level, which makes it easy to override the default error actions with your own application-specific error actions. The recognized severity EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC. These severity levels and their default actions are:

Level:Benign	no action, returns Level:Benign
Level:User	displays message, returns Level:Benign or Level:Cancel
Level:Notify	displays message, returns Level:Benign
Level:Fatal	displays message, halts the program
Level:Program	treated as Level:Fatal
any other value	treated as Level:Program

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: Errors, SetErrors, TakeBenign, TakeNotify, TakeUser, TakeFatal, TakeProgram, TakeOther, Throw

TakeFatal (process fatal error)**TakeFatal, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeFatal** method is called when an error with Level:Fatal is "Thrown" to the ErrorClass (see Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage).

TakeFatal must return a severity level (if the program is not HALTed).

Implementation: The base class method (ErrorClass.TakeFatal) displays the error message and HALTs the program. Although this method does not actually return, the RETURN statement is required to avoid compile errors.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

        INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')      !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass CLASS(ErrorClass)      !declare derived class
TakeFatal    FUNCTION,BYTE,VIRTUAL !prototype corresponding virtual
        END
GlobalErrors MyErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                   !GlobalErrors initialization
!program code
GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed) !Throw method calls SELF.TakeFatal to
                                     !automatically call the derived class method
                                     !rather than the base class method
!program code

MyErrorClass.TakeFatal FUNCTION      !derived class virtual to handle fatal
errors
CODE
!your custom code here
RETURN Level:Fatal

```

See Also: TakeError, Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

TakeNotify (process notify error)**TakeNotify, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL**

The **TakeNotify** method is called when an error with Level:Notify is "Thrown" to the ErrorClass (see Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage).

Implementation: The base class method (ErrorClass.TakeNotify) displays the error message and returns nothing. Note however, that the various "Throw" methods return Level:Benign (via the TakeError method) when a Level:Notify error is "Thrown."

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')           !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass CLASS(ErrorClass)      !declare derived class
TakeNotify  PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL      !prototype corresponding virtual
    END
GlobalErrors MyErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
    GlobalErrors.Init                !GlobalErrors initialization
    !program code
    GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed) !Throw method calls SELF.TakeNotify to
                                     !automatically call the derived class method
                                     !rather than the base class method
    !program code

MyErrorClass.TakeNotify PROCEDURE !derived class virtual to handle notify errors
CODE
    !your custom code here
RETURN

```

See Also: TakeError, Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

TakeOther (process other error)**TakeOther, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeOther** method is called when an error with an unrecognized severity level is "Thrown" to the ErrorClass (see Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage). By default, an "other" error is treated as a program error.

TakeOther must return a severity level.

Implementation: The base class method (ErrorClass.TakeOther) calls TakeProgram.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')           !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass CLASS(ErrorClass)      !declare derived class
TakeOther    FUNCTION,BYTE,VIRTUAL !prototype corresponding virtual
    END
GlobalErrors MyErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                   !GlobalErrors initialization
!program code
GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed) !Throw calls SELF.TakeOther to
                                     !automatically call the derived class method
                                     !rather than the base class method
!program code

MyErrorClass.TakeOther FUNCTION      !derived class virtual to handle "other" errors
CODE
!your custom code here
RETURN Level:Program

```

See Also: TakeError, Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

TakeProgram (process program error)**TakeProgram, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeProgram** method is called when an error with Level:Program is "Thrown" to the ErrorClass (see Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage). By default, a program error is treated as a fatal error.

TakeProgram must return a severity level.

Implementation: The base class method (ErrorClass.TakeProgram) calls TakeFatal.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')           !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass CLASS(ErrorClass)       !declare derived class
TakeProgram FUNCTION,BYTE,VIRTUAL !prototype corresponding virtual
    END
GlobalErrors MyErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                   !GlobalErrors initialization
!program code
GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed) !Throw calls SELF.TakeProgram to
                                     !automatically call the derived class method
                                     !rather than the base class method
!program code

MyErrorClass.TakeProgram FUNCTION    !derived class virtual to handle program errors
CODE
!your custom code here
RETURN Level:Program

```

See Also: TakeError, Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

TakeUser (process user error)**TakeUser, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeUser** method is called when an error with Level:User is "Thrown" to the ErrorClass (see Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage).

TakeUser must return a severity level to denote the user's response.

Implementation: The base class method (ErrorClass.TakeUser) displays the error message and returns either Level:Benign or Level:Cancel depending on the end user's response.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')           !declare ErrorClass
MyErrorClass CLASS(ErrorClass)      !declare derived class
TakeUser    FUNCTION,BYTE,VIRTUAL !prototype corresponding virtual
    END
GlobalErrors MyErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                   !GlobalErrors initialization
!program code
GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:CreateFailed) !Throw method calls SELF.TakeUser to
    !automatically call the derived class method
.                                   !rather than the base class method
!program code

MyErrorClass.TakeUser FUNCTION      !derived class virtual to handle user errors
CODE
!your custom code here
IF MESSAGE(SELF.SubsString(),SELF.Errors.Title,ICON:Question, |
    Button:Yes+Button:No,BUTTON:Yes,0) = Button:Yes
    !your custom code here
    RETURN Level:Benign
ELSE
    !your custom code here
    RETURN Level:Cancel
END

```

See Also: TakeError, Throw, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

Throw (process specified error)**Throw**(*error id*), PROC

Throw	Processes the specified error then returns its severity level.
<i>error id</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which error to process.

The **Throw** method processes the specified error by calling other ErrorClass methods, then returns its severity level.

Typically, Throw is the method your program calls when it encounters a known error. That is, as your program encounters errors or other notable conditions, it simply calls the Throw method or one of its variations (ThrowFile or ThrowMessage), passing it the appropriate *error id*. Throw then calls any other ErrorClass methods required to handle the specified error.

Implementation: The Throw method saves the error state (ERROR, ERRORCODE, FILEERROR, and FILEERRORCODE), locates the specified error, calls the appropriate method to handle the error according to its severity level, then returns the severity level.

The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default symbolic constants for the *error id* parameter.

Note: The Throw method may or may not RETURN to your calling program, depending on the severity of the error.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
!user level error occurred. ask user to confirm
Severity = GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:ConfirmCancel) !handle the error condition
IF Severity = Level:Cancel
    LocalResponse = RequestCancelled
    DO ProcedureReturn
END
```

See Also: Errors, ThrowFile, ThrowMessage

ThrowFile (set value of %File, then process error)

ThrowFile(*error id*, *filename*), PROC

ThrowFile	Sets the substitution value of %File, then processes the error.
<i>error id</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which error to process.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which file produced the error.

The **ThrowFile** method sets the substitution value of %File, then processes the error, and finally returns the severity level of the error.

ThrowFile combines the functionality of SetFile and Throw into a single method.

Implementation: The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default symbolic constants for the *error id* parameter. The value of the ErrorClass.FileName property is substituted for any %File symbols in the error message text.

Note: The ThrowFile method may or may not RETURN to your calling program, depending on the severity of the error.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
OPEN(MyFile)
IF ERRORCODE( )
    Severity = GlobalErrors.ThrowFile(Msg:OpenFailed, NAME(MyFile))
END
```

See Also: FileName, SetFile, Throw

ThrowMessage (set value of %Message, then process error)**ThrowMessage(*error id*, *messagetext*), PROC****ThrowMessage**

Sets the substitution value of the %Message macro, then processes the error.

error id An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which error to process.*messagetext* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression to replace any %Message symbols in the message text.The **ThrowMessage** method sets the substitution value of the %Message macro, then processes the error, and finally returns the severity level of the error.Implementation: The ABERROR.INC file contains a list of default symbolic constants for the *error id* parameter. The value of the ErrorClass.MessageText property is substituted for any %Message symbols in the error message text.**Note:** The **ThrowMessage** method may or may not RETURN to your calling program, depending on the severity of the error.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

OPEN(MyFile)
IF ERRORCODE( )
    Severity = GlobalErrors.ThrowMessage(Msg:OpenFailed, NAME(MyFile))
END

```

See Also: MessageText, Throw

ViewHistory (initiates the view of the current errors)**ViewHistory**The **ViewHistory** method initiates the viewing of the current error History structure. This structure may contain more than one error.

ErrorLogInterface

ErrorLogInterface Concepts

The ErrorLogInterface is used to manage the update of the StdErrorFile.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ErrorLogInterface is implemented by the StandardErrorLogClass and used as a reference by the ErrorClass and MsgBoxClass.

ErrorLogInterface Source Files

The ErrorLogInterface source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific ErrorLogInterface source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABERROR.INC	ErrorLogInterface declaration
ABERROR.CLW	StandardErrorLogClass.ErrorLogInterface method definitions

ErrorLogInterface Methods

ErrorLogInterface Methods

The ErrorLogInterface defines the following methods.

Close (initiate close of log file)

Close(*force*), PROC

Close

Initiate the close of the StdErrorFile.

force

An numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the log file must be closed or whether it should be conditionally closed. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally closes the errorlog file; a value of zero (0 or False) only closes the errorlog file as circumstances require.

The **Close** method closes the ErrorLog file. Level:Benign is returned from this method if no errors occur. A Level:Fatal is returned if an error occurs.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: StandardErrorLogClass.Close

Open (method to initiate open of log file)**Open**(*force*), PROC, PROTECTED

Open	Create and open the StdErrorFile.
<i>force</i>	An numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the log file must be opened or whether it should be conditionally opened. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally opens the errorlog file; a value of zero (0 or False) only opens the errorlog file as circumstances require.

The **Open** method creates and opens the ErrorLog file. Level:Benign is returned from this method. A Level:Fatal is returned if an error occurs.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: StandardErrorLogClass.Open

Take (update the log file)**Take**(*errtext*), PROC

Take	Update the StdErrorFile.
<i>errtext</i>	The complete line of text to add to the log file.

The Take method updates the StdErrorFile with the complete line of text, including the error code, error message, date, and time.

Return Data Type: BYTE

FieldPairsClass

FieldPairsClass Overview

In database oriented programs there are some fundamental operations that occur over and over again. Among these repetitive operations is the saving and restoring of field values, and comparing current field values against previous values.

The ABC Library provides two classes (FieldPairsClass and BufferedPairsClass) that supply this basic buffer management. These classes are completely generic so that they may apply to any pairs of fields, regardless of the fields' origins.

Tip: **The fundamental benefit of these classes is their generality; that is, they let you *move* data between pairs of structures such as FILE or QUEUE buffers, and *compare* the data, without knowing in advance what the buffer structures look like or, for that matter, without requiring that the fields even reside in conventional buffer structures.**

In some ways the FieldPairsClass is similar to Clarion's deep assignment operator (`:=`: see the *Language Reference* for a description of this operator). However, the FieldPairsClass has the following advantages over deep assignment:

- Field pair labels need not be an exact match
- Field pairs are not limited to GROUPs, RECORDs, and QUEUEs
- Field pairs are not restricted to a single source and a single destination
- You can compare the sets of fields for equivalence
- You can mimic a data structure where no structure exists

The FieldPairsClass has the disadvantage of not handling arrays (because the FieldPairsClass relies on the ANY datatype which only accepts references to simple datatypes). See the *Language Reference* for more information on the ANY datatype.

FieldPairsClass Concepts

The FieldPairsClass lets you move data between field pairs, and lets you compare the field pairs to detect whether any changes occurred since the last operation.

This class provides methods that let you identify or "set up" the targeted field pairs.

Once the field pairs are identified, you call a single method to move all the fields in one direction (left to right), and another method to move all the fields in the other direction (right to left). You simply have to remember which entity (set of fields) you described as "left" and which entity you described as "right." A third method compares the two sets of fields and returns a value to indicate whether or not they are equivalent.

Note: The paired fields need not be contiguous in memory, nor do they need to be part of a structure. You can build a virtual structure simply by adding a series of otherwise unrelated fields to a FieldPairs object. The other FieldPairs methods then operate on this virtual structure.

FieldPairsClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ViewManager and the BrowseClass use the FieldPairsClass and BufferedPairsClass to accomplish various tasks.

The BufferedPairsClass is derived from the FieldPairs class, so it provides all the functionality of the FieldPairsClass; however, this class also provides a third buffer area (a "save" area), plus the ability to compare the save area with the primary buffers, and the ability to restore data from the save area to the primary buffers (to implement a standard "cancel" operation).

FieldPairsClass ABC Template Implementation

Various ABC Library objects instantiate the FieldPairsClass as needed; therefore, the template generated code does not directly reference the FieldPairsClass (or BufferedPairsClass).

FieldPairsClass Source Files

The FieldPairsClass source code is installed by default in the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific files and their respective components are:

ABUTIL.INC	FieldPairsClass declarations
ABUTIL.CLW	FieldPairsClass method definitions

FieldPairsClass Conceptual Example

The FieldPairs classes are very abstract, so here is a concrete example to help your understanding. The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a FieldPairsClass object.

Let's assume you have a Customer file declared as:

```
Customer  FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(CUST), CREATE, BINDABLE
ByNumber  KEY(CUST:CustNo), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record    RECORD, PRE()
CustNo     LONG
Name       STRING(30)
Phone      STRING(20)
Zip        DECIMAL(5)
          END
          END
```

And you have a Customer queue declared as:

```
CustQ     QUEUE
CustNo     LONG
Name       STRING(30)
Phone      STRING(20)
Zip        DECIMAL(5)
          END
```

And you want to move data between the file buffer and the queue buffer.

```
INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')           !declare FieldPairs Class
Fields FieldPairsClass          !declare Fields object

CODE
Fields.Init                     !initialize FieldPairs object
Fields.AddPair(CUST:CustNo, CustQ.CustNo) !establish CustNo pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name,  CustQ.Name)    !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone)    !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Zip,   CustQ.Zip)      !establish Zip pair

Fields.AssignLeftToRight        !copy from Customer FILE to CustQ QUEUE

IF Fields.Equal()               !compare the CustQ QUEUE and Customer FILE
  MESSAGE('Buffers are equal')
ELSE
  MESSAGE('Buffers not equal')
END

Fields.AssignRightToLeft        !copy from CustQ QUEUE to Customer FILE
Fields.Kill                     !terminate FieldPairs object
```

FieldPairsClass Properties

The FieldPairsClass contains the following properties.

List (recognized field pairs)

List &FieldPairsQueue

The **List** property is a reference to the structure that holds all the field pairs recognized by the FieldPairsClass object. Use the AddPair or AddItem methods to add field pairs to the List property. For each field pair, the List property includes a "Left" field and a "Right" field.

The "Left" and "Right" designations are reflected in other method names (for example, field assignments methods--AssignLeftToRight and AssignRightToLeft) so you can easily and accurately control the movement of data between the two sets of fields.

Implementation: List is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABUTIL.INC as follows:

```
FieldPairsQueue QUEUE,TYPE
Left             ANY
Right            ANY
                END
```

The Init method creates an empty List, and the Kill method disposes of the List. AddPair and AddItem add field pairs to the List.

See Also: AddPair, AddItem, Init

FieldPairsClass Methods

FieldPairsClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the FieldPairsClass, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the FieldPairsClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the FieldPairsClass object
AddItem	add a field pair based on one source field
Kill	terminate the FieldPairsClass object

Mainstream Use:

AssignLeftToRight	assign each "left" field to its "right" counterpart
AssignRightToLeft	assign each "right" field to its "left" counterpart
Equal	return 1 if all pairs are equal, 0 if any pair is not equal

Occasional Use:

ClearLeft	CLEAR each "left" field
ClearRight	CLEAR each "right" field
EqualLeftRight	return 1 if all pairs are equal, 0 if any pair is not equal

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

AddPairadd a field pair to the List property

AddItem (add a field pair from one source field)**AddItem**(*left*)**AddItem** Adds a field pair to the List property from one source field.*left* The address of the "left" field of the pair. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.

The **AddItem** method adds a field pair to the List property from one source field. The "right" field is supplied for you, and initially contains a copy of the data in the "left" field.

The fields need not be contiguous in memory, nor do they need to be part of a structure. Therefore you can build a virtual structure simply by adding a series of otherwise unrelated fields to a FieldPairs object. The other FieldPairs methods then operate on this virtual structure.

Implementation: AddItem assumes the List property has already been created by Init or by some other method.

By calling AddItem for a series of fields, you effectively build two virtual structures containing the fields--the "Left" is the original fields and the "Right" contains a copy of the data in the original fields at the time you call AddItem.

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')      !declare FieldPairs Class
DKeyPair FieldPairsClass      !declare FieldPairs reference
Org    FILE                   !declare a file
DptKey KEY(Dept,Grade)        !declare a multicomponent key
    RECORD
Dept    SHORT
Mgr     SHORT
Grade   SHORT
    END
    END

CODE
DKeyPair.Init                 !initialize FieldPairs object
DKeyPair.AddItem(Org:Dept)     !add Dept (left) and a copy of Dept (right)
DKeyPair.AddItem(Org:Grade)    !add Grade (left) and a copy of Grade (right)
!some code
DKeyPair.AssignLeftToRight     !Save the current key fields' values
SET(Org:DptKey,Org:DptKey)     !position the file
NEXT(Org)                      !retrieve (hopefully) a specific record
IF ERRORCODE() OR |           !confirm retrieval of matching record by
    ~DKeyPair.Equal()          !comparing retrieved key values with saved values
    MESSAGE('Record not found!')
END

```

See Also: Init, List

AddPair (add a field pair:FieldPairsClass)**AddPair**(*left*, *right*), **VIRTUAL****AddPair** Adds a field pair to the List property.*left* The label of the "left" field of the pair. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.*right* The label of the "right" field of the pair. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.

The **AddPair** method adds a field pair to the List property. The fields need not be contiguous in memory, nor do they need to be part of a structure. Therefore you can build a virtual structure simply by adding a series of otherwise unrelated fields to a FieldPairs object. The other FieldPairs methods then operate on this virtual structure.

Implementation: AddPair assumes the List property has already been created by Init or by some other method.

By calling AddPair for a series of fields (for example, the corresponding fields in a RECORD structure and a QUEUE structure), you effectively build two virtual structures containing the fields and a (one-to-one) relationship between the two structures.

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')           !declare FieldPairs Class
Fields  FieldPairsClass           !declare FieldPairs object
Customer  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUST)
ByNumber  KEY(CUST:CustNo),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record    RECORD,PRE()
CustNo    LONG
Name      STRING(30)
Phone     STRING(20)
ZIP       DECIMAL(5)
          END
          END

CustQ     QUEUE
CustNo    LONG
Name      STRING(30)
Phone     STRING(20)
ZIP       DECIMAL(5)
          END

```

CODE

```
Fields.Init                                !initialize FieldPairs object
Fields.AddPair(CUST:CustNo, CustQ.CustNo) !establish CustNo pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name,  CustQ.Name)    !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone)    !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP,   CustQ.ZIP)      !establish ZIP pair
```

See Also: Init, List

AssignLeftToRight (copy from "left" fields to "right" fields)

AssignLeftToRight

The **AssignLeftToRight** method copies the contents of each "left" field to its corresponding "right" field in the List property.

Implementation: For AddPair pairs, the "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method; the "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. For AddItem pairs, the "left" field is the *only* parameter of the AddItem method. The "right" field is the FieldPairs supplied copy of the "left" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone)!establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.Equal !compare field pairs
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft !copy changes to CUST (write) buffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignLeftToRight !restore original to CustQ (display) buffer
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair, AddItem, List

AssignRightToLeft (copy from "right" fields to "left" fields)

AssignRightToLeft

The **AssignRightToLeft** method copies the contents of each "right" field to its corresponding "left" field in the List property.

Implementation: For AddPair pairs, the "left" field is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method; the "right" field is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. For AddItem pairs, the "left" field is the *only* parameter of the AddItem method. The "right" field is the FieldPairs supplied copy of the "left" field.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.Equal !compare field pairs
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft !copy changes to CUST (write) buffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignLeftToRight !restore original to CustQ (display) buffer
END
END
```

See Also: AddPair
 AddItem

ClearLeft (clear each "left" field)**ClearLeft**

The **ClearLeft** method clears the contents of each "left" field in the List property.

Implementation: For AddPair pairs, the "left" field is the field whose label is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method; the "right" field is the field whose label is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. For AddItem pairs, the "left" field is the field whose label is the *only* parameter of the AddItem method. The "right" field is the FieldPairs supplied copy of the "left" field.

The ClearLeft method CLEARS the field. See the *Language Reference* for more information on CLEAR.

Example:

```
Fields &= NEW FieldPairsClass           !instantiate FieldPairs object
Fields.Init                             !initialize FieldPairs object
Fields.AddPair(CUST:CustNo, CustQ.CustNo) !establish CustNo pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name,  CustQ.Name)   !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone)  !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP,   CustQ.ZIP)    !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF LocalRequest = InsertRecord
  Fields.ClearRight                     !clear the CustQ fields to blank or zero
END
```

See Also: AddPair

 AddItem

ClearRight (clear each "right" field)**ClearRight**

The **ClearRight** method clears the contents of each "right" field in the List property.

Implementation: For AddPair pairs, the "left" field is the field whose label is the *first* (left) parameter of the AddPair method; the "right" field is the field whose label is the *second* (right) parameter of the AddPair method. For AddItem pairs, the "left" field is the field whose label is the *only* parameter of the AddItem method. The "right" field is the FieldPairs supplied copy of the "left" field.

The **ClearRight** method CLEARS the field. See the *Language Reference* for more information on CLEAR.

Example:

```
Fields &= NEW FieldPairsClass           !instantiate FieldPairs object
Fields.Init                             !initialize FieldPairs object
Fields.AddPair(CUST:CustNo, CustQ.CustNo) !establish CustNo pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name)    !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone)  !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP)      !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF LocalRequest = InsertRecord
    Fields.ClearRight                    !clear the CustQ fields to blank or zero
END
```

See Also: AddPair
 AddItem

Equal (return 1 if all pairs are equal)**Equal**

The **Equal** method returns one (1) if all pairs are equal and returns zero (0) if any pairs are not equal.

Implementation: The Equal method simply calls the EqualLeftRight method which does all the comparison work. Therefore, there are two different methods (Equal and EqualLeftRight) that produce exactly the same result.

This provides an alternative calling convention for the FieldPairsClass and the BufferedPairsClass. The EqualLeftRight method name is consistent with the other comparison methods in the BufferedPairsClass and is provided for that purpose. See *BufferedPairsClass Methods* for more information.

Example:

```
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Name, CustQ.Name) !establish Name pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:Phone, CustQ.Phone) !establish Phone pair
Fields.AddPair(CUST:ZIP, CustQ.ZIP) !establish ZIP pair
!some code
IF ~Fields.Equal !compare field pairs
CASE MESSAGE('Abandon Changes?',,,BUTTON:Yes+BUTTON:No)
OF BUTTON:No
Fields.AssignRightToLeft !copy changes to CUST (write) buffer
OF BUTTON:Yes
Fields.AssignLeftToRight !restore original to CustQ (display) buffer
END
END
```

See Also: EqualLeftRight

EqualLeftRight (return 1 if all pairs are equal)

EqualLeftRight

The **EqualLeftRight** method returns one (1) if all pairs are equal and returns zero (0) if any pairs are not equal.

Implementation: The Equal method simply calls the EqualLeftRight method which does all the comparison work. Therefore, there are two different methods (Equal and EqualLeftRight) that produce exactly the same result.

This provides an alternative calling convention for the FieldPairsClass and the BufferedPairsClass. The EqualLeftRight method name is consistent and compatible with the other comparison methods in the BufferedPairsClass and is provided for that purpose. See *BufferedPairsClass Methods* for more information.

See Also: Equal

Init (initialize the FieldPairsClass object)

Init

The **Init** method initializes the FieldPairsClass object.

Implementation: The Init method creates the List property.

Example:

```

    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')      !declare FieldPairs Class
Fields  &FieldPairsClass      !declare FieldPairs reference

CODE
Fields &= NEW FieldPairsClass !instantiate FieldPairs object
Fields.Init                    !initialize FieldPairs object
.
.
.
Fields.Kill                    !terminate FieldPairs object
DISPOSE(Fields)                !release memory allocated for FieldPairs object

```

See Also: Kill, List

Kill (shut down the FieldPairsClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method disposes any memory allocated during the object's lifetime and performs any other necessary termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method disposes the List property created by the Init method.

Example:

```
INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')      !declare FieldPairs Class
Fields &FieldPairsClass    !declare FieldPairs reference

CODE
Fields &= NEW FieldPairsClass !instantiate FieldPairs object
Fields.Init                !initialize FieldPairs object
.
.
.
Fields.Kill                !terminate FieldPairs object
DISPOSE(Fields)            !release memory allocated for FieldPairs object
```

See Also: Init, List

FileDropComboClass

Overview:FileDropComboClass

The FileDropComboClass is a FileDropClass based on a COMBO control rather than a LIST control. Therefore it supports not only the selection of existing list items but also the *selection of values not in the list*, and optionally the *addition of new values to the list*. See *Control Templates--FileDropCombo* for information on the template implementation of the FileDropCombo control.

Future File DropCombo Classes

The current implementation of the FileDropComboClass is a place-holder implementation. In the future the FileDropComboClass, or its replacement, will be derived from the BrowseClass.

FileDropComboClass Concepts

Based on the end user selection, you can assign one or more values from the selected item to one or more target fields. You may display one field (e.g., a description field) but assign another field (e.g., a code field) from the selected list item.

The FileDropClass also supports filters, range limits, colors, icons, sorting, and multiple item selection (marking). See *Control Templates--FileDropCombo* for information on the template implementation of these features.

FileDropComboClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The FileDropComboClass is closely integrated with the WindowManager. These objects register their presence with each other, set each other's properties, and call each other's methods as needed to accomplish their respective tasks.

The FileDropComboClass is derived from the FileDropClass, plus it relies on several of the other Application Builder Classes to accomplish its tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the FileDropClass, it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the FileDropClass header (ABDROPS.INC) in your program's data section. See the *Conceptual Example*.

FileDropComboClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in your application's FileDropCombo control templates.

The templates *derive* a class from the FileDropComboClass and instantiate an object for *each* FileDropComboControl template in the application. The derived class and object is called FDCB# where # is the FileDropCombo Control template instance number. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the FileDropComboControl template **Classes** tab to modify the FileDropCombo's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

The derived FileDropComboClass is local to the procedure, is specific to a single FileDropCombo and relies on the global ErrorClass object and the file-specific RelationManager and FileManager objects for the displayed lookup file.

FileDropComboClass Source Files

The FileDropComboClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The FileDropComboClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABDROPS.INC	FileDropComboClass declarations
ABDROPS.CLW	FileDropComboClass method definitions

FileDropComboClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a FileDropComboClass object and related objects.

This example uses the FileDropComboClass object to let the end user select or enter a valid state code for a given client. The state code comes from the state file.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABDROPS.INC' )
  MAP
  END

State      FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ST ), THREAD
StateCodeKey KEY( ST:STATECODE ), NOCASE, OPT
Record     RECORD, PRE( )
StateCode  STRING( 2 )
StateName  STRING( 20 )
          END
          END

```



```

Customer    FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(CUS), CREATE, THREAD
BYNUMBER    KEY(CUS:CUSTNO), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record      RECORD, PRE()
CUSTNO      LONG
Name        STRING(30)
State       STRING(2)
            END
            END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
VCRRequest  LONG(0), THREAD

Access:State CLASS(FileManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
            END

Relate:State CLASS(RelationManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
            END

Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
            END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
            END

StateQ      QUEUE
ST:STATECODE LIKE(ST:STATECODE)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
            END
StateView VIEW(State)
            END

CusWindow WINDOW('Add Customer'), AT(, , 157, 58), IMM, SYSTEM, GRAY
    PROMPT('Customer:'), AT(5, 7), USE(?NamePrompt)
    ENTRY(@s20), AT(61, 5, 88, 11), USE(CUS:NAME)
    PROMPT('State:'), AT(5, 22), USE(?StatePrompt)
    LIST, AT(61, 20, 65, 11), USE(CUS:State), FROM(StateQ), |
    FORMAT('8L~STATECODE~@s2@'), DROP(5)
    BUTTON('OK'), AT(60, 39), USE(?OK), DEFAULT
    BUTTON('Cancel'), AT(104, 39), USE(?Cancel)
    END

```

```

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
              END

StateDrop CLASS(FileDropClass)
Q            &StateQ
              END

CODE
ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue   BYTE,AUTO
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:State.Init
Relate:Customer.Init
SELF.Request = InsertRecord
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?CUS:NAME
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddUpdateFile(Access:Customer)
SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled)
SELF.OkControl = ?OK
Relate:Customer.Open
Relate:State.Open
SELF.Primary &= Relate:Customer
SELF.InsertAction = Insert:Batch
IF SELF.PrimeUpdate() THEN RETURN Level:Notify.
OPEN(CusWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
!initialize the FileDropCombo Class with:
! the combo's USE variable, COMBO control, view POSITION, VIEW, combo's FROM QUEUE,
! primary file RelationManager object, WindowManager object, ErrorClass object,
! add records flag, hot fields flag, case sensitive flag
StateDrop.Init(?CUS:State,StateQ.ViewPosition,|
StateView,StateQ,Relate:State,ThisWindow,GlobalErrors,1,0,0)
StateDrop.Q &= StateQ
StateDrop.AddSortOrder()
StateDrop.AddField(ST:STATECODE,StateDrop.Q.ST:STATECODE)
StateDrop.AddUpdateField(ST:STATECODE,CUS:State)
ThisWindow.AddItem(StateDrop)
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

```

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    Relate:Customer.Close
    Relate:State.Close
    Relate:State.Kill
    Relate:Customer.Kill
    GlobalErrors.Kill
    RETURN ReturnValue

Access:State.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    PARENT.Init(State,GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'State'
    SELF.Buffer &= ST:Record
    SELF.LazyOpen = False
    SELF.AddKey(ST:StateCodeKey,'ST:StateCodeKey',0)

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
    SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
    SELF.Create = True
    SELF.LazyOpen = False
    SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER,'CUS:BYNUMBER',0)

Relate:State.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:State.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:State,1)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:Customer.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)
```

FileDropComboClass Properties

FileDropComboClass Properties

The FileDropComboClass inherits all the properties of the FileDropClass from which it is derived. See *FileDropClass Properties* and *ViewManager Properties* for more information.

AskProcedure (update procedure)

AskProcedure USHORT

The **AskProcedure** property is used to determine which Update Procedure to call if the FileDropCombo control allows updates.

Implementation: The FileDropCombo control template allows the filedrop queue to be updated if the entry does not exist in the queue. This property identifies the procedure to call to update the queue. The template generates the code that initiates the value of this property.

See Also: FileDropComboClass.Ask

ECon (current state of entry completion)

ECon BYTE, PROTECTED

The **ECon** property indicates the current state of EntryCompletion. A value of one (1 or True) indicates the current state of entry completion is on; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates it is off.

See Also: EntryCompletion

EntryCompletion (automatic fill-ahead flag)

EntryCompletion **BYTE**

The **EntryCompletion** property indicates whether FileDropComboClass tries to automatically complete the end user selection. A value of one (1) or True enables the automatic completion; a value of zero (0) or False disables automatic completion.

When EntryCompletion is enabled, the FileDropComboClass object displays the list item that is nearest the value entered by the end user. The FileDropComboClass object reevaluates the display immediately after each end user keystroke.

Implementation: The Init method sets the EntryCompletion property to True. The TakeEvent and TakeNewSelection methods implement the behavior specified by EntryCompletion.

See Also: Init, TakeEvent, TakeNewSelection

RemoveDuplicatesFlag (remove duplicate data)

RemoveDuplicatesFlag **BYTE**

The **RemoveDuplicatesFlag** property is a flag used to determine if duplicates are not allowed in the filedrop queue. A value of one (1 or True) does not allow duplicates in the filedrop queue; a value of zero (0 or False) allows duplicates into the filedrop queue.

Implementation: The RemoveDuplicatesFlag is set by the ABC templates when the FileDropCombo control template is used. The 'Remove Duplicates' checkbox controls this setting.

See Also: FileDropComboClass.Init, FileDropComboClass.AddRecord

UseField (COMBO USE variable)

UseField **ANY, PROTECTED**

The **UseField** property is a reference to the COMBO's USE variable. The FileDropComboClass uses this property to lookup the USE value in the current queue.

Implementation: The Init method initializes the UseField property.

See Also: Init

FileDropComboClass Methods

FileDropComboClass Methods

The FileDropComboClass inherits all the methods of the FileDropClass from which it is derived. See *FileDropClass Methods* and *ViewManager Methods* for more information.

FileDropComboClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the FileDropComboClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the FileDropComboClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the FileDropComboClass object
AddField _i	specify display fields
AddUpdateField _i	specify field assignments
AddRange _{ii}	add a range limit to the active sort order
AppendOrder _{ii}	refine the active sort order
Kill _{ii}	shut down the FileDropComboClass object

Mainstream Use:

ResetQueue	refresh filedrop queue
GetQueueMatch	locate a list item
Ask _v	add a record to the lookup file
TakeEvent _v	process the current ACCEPT loop event
TakeNewSelection _v	process the EVENT:Selected events

Occasional Use:

Open _{ii}	open the filedrop view
PrimeRecord _{ii}	prepare an item for adding
SetFilter _{ii}	specify a filter for the active sort order
ApplyFilter _{ii}	range limit and filter the result set
ApplyOrder _{ii}	sort the result set
GetFreeElementName _{ii}	return the free element field name
SetOrder _{ii}	replace the active sort order
Close _{ii}	close the filedrop view

_i These methods are inherited from the FileDropClass.

_{ii} These methods are inherited from the ViewManager.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Ask	add a record to the lookup file
SetQueueRecord ⁱ	copy data from file buffer to queue buffer
Reset ⁱⁱ	reset the view position
TakeEvent	process the current ACCEPT loop event
TakeNewSelection	process the EVENT:Selected events
ValidateRecord ⁱ	validate the current result set element

ⁱ These methods are inherited from the FileDropClass.

ⁱⁱ These methods are inherited from the ViewManager.

AddRecord (add a record filedrop queue)**AddRecord, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

The **AddRecord** method adds a record to the filedropcombo's queue.

Ask (add a record to the lookup file)**Ask, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

The **Ask** method adds a new record to the filedrop's lookup file and returns a value indicating its success or failure. If it succeeds it returns Level:Benign, otherwise it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered while trying to add the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the Ask method. Return value EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC (see *Error Class* for more information):

Level:Benign	EQUATE(0)
Level:User	EQUATE(1)
Level:Program	EQUATE(2)
Level:Fatal	EQUATE(3)
Level:Cancel	EQUATE(4)
Level:Notify	EQUATE(5)

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyFileDropComboClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
UserStr      CSTRING(256),AUTO
CODE
!procedure code
IF SELF.Ask() = Level:Benign      !update lookup file
  SELF.UpdateFields.AssignLeftToRight
  SELF.Close
  SELF.ResetQueue
  SELF.ListField{PROP:Selected} = SELF.GetQueueMatch(UserStr)
  DISPLAY(SELF.ListField)
END
!procedure code
```

SeeAlso:

TakeEvent

GetQueueMatch (locate a list item)**GetQueueMatch(*search value*), PROTECTED****GetQueueMatch** Locates the *search value* within the first field of the display queue.*search value* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the value to locate.

The **GetQueueMatch** method locates a value within the first field of the display queue and returns the position of the matching item. A return value of zero (0) indicates no matching items.

The Init method case parameter determines the type of search (case sensitive or insensitive) performed.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
MyFileDropComboClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
UserStr      CSTRING(256),AUTO
CODE
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
UserStr=CLIP(SELF.UseField)
IF SELF.GetQueueMatch(UserStr) = 0      !if entered value not in
SELF.Reset                             ! lookup file / queue
IF SELF.Ask()=Level:Benign             !update the lookup file
SELF.UpdateFields.AssignLeftToRight
SELF.Close
SELF.ResetQueue
SELF.ListField{PROP:Selected}=SELF.GetQueueMatch(UserStr)!position to new item
DISPLAY(SELF.ListField)
END
!procedure code
```

See Also: Init

Init (initialize the FileDropComboClass object)

Init(*use*, *combo*, *position*, *view*, *queue*, *relationmgr*, *windowmgr*, *errormgr* [,*add*] [,*sync*] [,*case*])

Init	Initializes the FileDropCombClass object.
<i>use</i>	The label of the <i>combo</i> 's USE attribute variable.
<i>combo</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the filedrop's COMBO control.
<i>position</i>	The label of a string variable within the <i>queue</i> containing the POSITION of the <i>view</i> .
<i>view</i>	The label of the filedrop's underlying VIEW.
<i>queue</i>	The label of the <i>combo</i> 's data source QUEUE.
<i>relationmgr</i>	The label of the filedrop's primary file RelationManager object. See <i>Relation Manager</i> for more information.
<i>windowmgr</i>	The label of the filedrop's WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.
<i>errormgr</i>	The label of the filedrop's ErrorClass object. See <i>Error Management</i> for more information.
<i>add</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating whether records may be added to the lookup file. A value of zero (0 or False) prevents adds; a value of one (1 or True) allows adds. If omitted, <i>add</i> defaults to one (1).
<i>sync</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating whether to reget the underlying data on a new selection (allows hot fields). A value of one (1 or True) regets the data (so it can be displayed in other controls besides the COMBO control); a value of zero (0 or False) does not. If omitted, <i>sync</i> defaults to one (1).
<i>case</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating whether filedrop searches are case sensitive. A value of one (1 or True) provides case sensitive searches; a value of zero (0 or False) gives case insensitive searches. If omitted, <i>case</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **Init** method initializes the FileDropComboClass object.

Implementation: Among other things, the Init method calls the PARENT.Init (FileDropClass.Init) method. See *FileDropClass* for more information.

Example:

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE

CODE

```
!procedure code                                !init filedropcombo object
FDBC4.Init( CLI:StateCode,                      |           ! USE variable
           ?CLI:StateCode,                     |           ! COMBO control
           Queue:FileDropCombo.ViewPosition,  | ! VIEW POSITION variable
           FDCB4::View:FileDropCombo,         | ! VIEW
           Queue:FileDropCombo,               | ! QUEUE
           Relate:States,                      | ! RelationManager object
           ThisWindow,                        | ! WindowManager object
           GlobalErrors,                      | ! ErrorClass object
           1,                                | ! allow adds
           0,                                | ! refresh hot fields on new selection
           0)                                | ! case insensitive searches

FDBC4.Q &= Queue:FileDropCombo
FDBC4.AddSortOrder()
FDBC4.AddField(ST:StateCode,FDBC4.Q.ST:StateCode)
FDBC4.AddField(ST:State,FDBC4.Q.ST:State)
FDBC4.AddUpdateField(ST:StateCode,CLI:StateCode)
```

See Also: FileDropClass.Init

KeyValid (check for valid keystroke)

KeyValid, VIRTUAL

The **KeyValid** method determines if a valid keystroke is in the keyboard buffer. If LeftKey (cursor left), RightKey (cursor right), ShiftLeft (Shift-cursor left), ShiftRight (Shift-cursor right) are in the buffer a False value is returned from this method. A True value is returned if any other keystroke is pressed.

ReturnDataType: BYTE

See Also:

FileDropComboClass.TakeNewSelection

Kill (shut down the FileDropComboClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method releases any memory allocated during the life of the FileDropComboClass object and performs any other required termination code.

Implementation: Among other things, the Kill method calls the PARENT.Kill (FileDropClass.Kill) method to shut down the FileDropClass object.

ResetFromList (reset VIEW)

ResetFromList, PROTECTED

The **ResetFromList** method resets the VIEW based on the current record in the FileDropComboClass's object.

Implementation: The ResetFromList method is called by the FileDropComboClass.TakeAccepted method and the FileDropComboClass.TakeNewSelection method.

See Also:

FileDropComboClass.TakeAccepted, FileDropComboClass.TakeNewSelection

ResetQueue (refill the filedrop queue)**ResetQueue**([*force*]), VIRTUAL, PROC**ResetQueue** Refills the filedrop queue and the COMBO's USE variable.

force A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to refill the queue even if the sort order did not change. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally refills the queue; a value of zero (0 or False) only refills the queue if circumstances require it. If omitted, *force* defaults to zero.

The **ResetQueue** method refills the filedrop's display queue and the COMBO's USE variable, applying the applicable sort order, range limits, and filters, then returns a value indicating which item, if any, in the displayed lookup file already matches the *target* fields' values specified by the AddUpdateField method. A return value of zero (0) indicates no matching items; any other value indicates the position of the matching item.

For example, if the filedrop "looks up" the state code for a customer, and the current customer's state code field already contains a valid value, then the ResetQueue method positions the filedrop list to the current customer's state code value.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the ResetQueue method. The ResetQueue calls the PARENT.ResetQueue method, then enables or disables the drop button depending on the presence or absence of pick list items.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

MyFileDropComboClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE

UserStr CSTRING(256),AUTO

CODE

CASE EVENT()

OF EVENT:Accepted

UserStr=CLIP(SELf.UseField)

IF SELf.GetQueueMatch(UserStr) = 0 !if entered value not in

SELf.Reset ! lookup file / queue

IF SELf.Ask()=Level:Benign !update the lookup file

SELf.UpdateFields.AssignLeftToRight

SELf.Close

SELf.ResetQueue(1) !refill the updated queue

SELf.ListField{PROP:Selected}=SELf.GetQueueMatch(UserStr)!position to new item

DISPLAY(SELf.ListField)

END

!procedure code

See Also: TakeEvent, FileDropClass.ResetQueue

TakeAccepted (process accepted event)**TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL**

The TakeAccepted method processes the accepted event of the entry portion of the FileDropCombo control.

TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event:FileDropComboClass)**TakeEvent, VIRTUAL**

The **TakeEvent** method processes the current ACCEPT loop event for the FileDropComboClass object.

Implementation: The WindowManager.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. On a new item selection, the TakeEvent method calls the TakeNewSelection method.

On EVENT:Accepted for the entry portion of the COMBO, the TakeEvent method calls the GetQueueMatch method to locate the list item nearest to the entered value. If the entered value is not in the lookup file, the TakeEvent method calls the Ask method to add the new value to the lookup file. If the add is successful, TakeEvent calls the ResetQueue method to refill the display queue.

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
!procedure code
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Browses)
  GET(SELF.Browses,I)
  SELF.Browses.Browse.TakeEvent
END
LOOP i=1 TO RECORDS(SELF.FileDrops)
  GET(SELF.FileDrops,i)
  ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
  SELF.FileDrops.FileDrop.TakeEvent
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: Ask, GetQueueMatch, ResetQueue, TakeNewSelection, WindowManager.TakeEvent

TakeNewSelection (process NewSelection events:FileDropComboClass)**TakeNewSelection(*field*), VIRTUAL**

TakeNewSelection Processes the EVENT:NewSelection event.

field A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control that generated the EVENT:NewSelection event.

The **TakeNewSelection** method processes the EVENT:NewSelection event for the FileDropComboClass object.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method and the TakeEvent method call the TakeNewSelection method. If the FileDropComboClass object's LIST generated the new selection event, then the TakeNewSelection method does the field assignments specified by the AddUpdateField method or clears the target fields if there is no valid selection.

Example:

FileDropComboClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE

```
CODE
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:NewSelection
  SELF.TakeNewSelection(FIELD( ))
  SELF.WindowManager.Reset
END
```

See Also: AddUpdateField, ResetQueue, TakeEvent

UniquePosition (check queue for duplicate record by key position)**UniquePosition, Protected**

The **UniquePosition** method checks the FileDropComboClass's queue for a duplicate record by checking for duplicate key values. A return value of zero (0 or False) means there was a matching value already in the queue. Any other return value indicates no match was found.

Implementation: The UniquePosition method is called by the FileDropComboClass.AddRecord method which checks for duplicate values before adding the record to the filedropcombo's queue.

Return Data Type: LONG

See Also: FileDropComboClass.AddRecord

FileDropClass

FileDropClass Overview

Future FileDropClasses

The current implementation of the FileDropClass is a place-holder implementation. In the future the FileDropClass, or its replacement, will be derived from the BrowseClass.

FileDropClass Concepts

The FileDropClass is a ViewManager that supports a file-loaded scrollable list on a window. By convention, a FileDrop provides a "pick list" for the end user. A pick list is a finite list of mutually exclusive or alternative choices--the end user may choose only one of several items, but need not memorize the choices, because all the choices are displayed.

Based on the end user selection, you can assign one or more values from the selected item to one or more target fields. You may display one field (e.g., a description field) but assign another field (e.g., a code field) from the selected list item.

The FileDropClass also supports filters, range limits, colors, icons, sorting, and multiple item selection (marking). See Control Templates--FileDrop for information on the template implementation of these features.

FileDropClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The FileDropClass is closely integrated with the WindowManager. These objects register their presence with each other, set each other's properties, and call each other's methods as needed to accomplish their respective tasks.

The FileDropComboClass is derived from the FileDropClass, and the FileDropClass is derived from the ViewManager. The FileDropClass relies on several of the other Application Builder Classes to accomplish its tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the FileDropClass, it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the FileDropClass header (ABDROPS.INC) in your program's data section. See the *Conceptual Example*.

FileDropClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in your application's FileDrop control templates.

The templates *derive* a class from the FileDropClass and instantiate an object for *each* FileDropControl template in the application. The derived class and object is called FDB# where # is the FileDrop Control template instance number. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the FileDropControl template **Classes** tab to modify the FileDrop's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

The derived FileDropClass is local to the procedure, is specific to a single FileDropCombo and relies on the global file-specific RelationManager and FileManager objects for the displayed lookup file.

FileDropClass Source Files

The FileDropClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The FileDropClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABDROPS.INC	FileDropClass declarations
ABDROPS.CLW	FileDropClass method definitions

FileDropClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a FileDropClass object and related objects.

This example uses the FileDropClass object to let the end user select a valid state code for a given client. The state code comes from the State file. When they are initialized properly, the FileDropClass and WindowManager objects do most of the work (event handling and field assignments) internally.

PROGRAM

```
INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABDROPS.INC' )
MAP
END
```

```
State          FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ST ), THREAD
StateCodeKey   KEY( ST:STATECODE ), NOCASE, OPT
Record         RECORD, PRE( )
StateCode      STRING( 2 )
```

```

StateName      STRING(20)
                END
                END

Customer FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(CUS), CREATE, THREAD
BYNUMBER KEY(CUS:CUSTNO), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record      RECORD, PRE()
CUSTNO      LONG
Name        STRING(30)
State       STRING(2)
                END
                END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
VCRRequest  LONG(0), THREAD

Access:State CLASS(FileManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
                END

Relate:State CLASS(RelationManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
                END

Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
                END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init         PROCEDURE
                END

StateQ        QUEUE
ST:STATECODE  LIKE(ST:STATECODE)
ViewPosition  STRING(512)
                END
StateView VIEW(State)
                END
CusWindow WINDOW('Add Customer'), AT(, , 157, 58), IMM, SYSTEM, GRAY
    PROMPT('Customer:'), AT(5, 7), USE(?NamePrompt)
    ENTRY(@s20), AT(61, 5, 88, 11), USE(CUS:NAME)
    PROMPT('State:'), AT(5, 22), USE(?StatePrompt)
    LIST, AT(61, 20, 65, 11), USE(CUS:State), FROM(StateQ), |
    FORMAT('8L~STATECODE~@s2@'), DROP(5)
    BUTTON('OK'), AT(60, 39), USE(?OK), DEFAULT
    BUTTON('Cancel'), AT(104, 39), USE(?Cancel)
    END
ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)

```

```

Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
          END

StateDrop CLASS(FileDropClass)
Q         &StateQ
          END

CODE
  ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  GlobalErrors.Init
  Relate:State.Init
  Relate:Customer.Init
  SELF.Request = InsertRecord
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
  IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
  SELF.FirstField = ?CUS:NAME
  SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
  SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
  SELF.AddUpdateFile(Access:Customer)
  SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled)
  SELF.OkControl = ?OK
  Relate:Customer.Open
  Relate:State.Open
  SELF.Primary &= Relate:Customer
  SELF.InsertAction = Insert:Batch
  IF SELF.PrimeUpdate() THEN RETURN Level:Notify.
  OPEN(CusWindow)
  SELF.Opened=True
!initialize the FileDrop Class with:
! the LISTS's USE variable, LIST control, view POSITION, VIEW, LISTS's FROM QUEUE,
! primary file RelationManager object, WindowManager object
  StateDrop.Init(?CUS:State,StateQ.ViewPosition,StateView,StateQ,Relate:State,ThisWindow)
  StateDrop.Q &= StateQ
  StateDrop.AddSortOrder()
  StateDrop.AddField(ST:STATECODE,StateDrop.Q.ST:STATECODE)
  StateDrop.AddUpdateField(ST:STATECODE,CUS:State)
  ThisWindow.AddItem(StateDrop)
  SELF.SetAlerts()
  RETURN ReturnValue

```

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
  IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
  Relate:Customer.Close
  Relate:State.Close
  Relate:State.Kill
  Relate:Customer.Kill
  GlobalErrors.Kill
  RETURN ReturnValue

Access:State.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  PARENT.Init(State,GlobalErrors)
  SELF.FileNameValue = 'State'
  SELF.Buffer &= ST:Record
  SELF.LazyOpen = False
  SELF.AddKey(ST:StateCodeKey,'ST:StateCodeKey',0)

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
  SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
  SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
  SELF.Create = True
  SELF.LazyOpen = False
  SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER,'CUS:BYNUMBER',0)

Relate:State.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  Access:State.Init
  PARENT.Init(Access:State,1)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  Access:Customer.Init
  PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)
```

FileDropClass Properties

FileDropClass Properties

The FileDropClass inherits all the properties of the ViewManager from which it is derived. See *ViewManager Properties* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the FileDropClass contains the properties listed below.

AllowReset (allow a reset)

AllowReset **BYTE**

The **AllowReset** property indicates that a reset of the object's data can occur.

DefaultFill (initial display value)

DefaultFill **BYTE**

The **DefaultFill** property indicates whether FileDropClass object's LIST displays an initial value or blank, before the end user selects a value. A value of one (1) displays an initial value; a value of zero (0) displays nothing.

Implementation: The Init method sets the DefaultFill property to one (1). The ResetQueue method implements the behavior specified by DefaultFill.

See Also: Init, ResetQueue

InitSyncPair (initial list position)

InitSyncPair **BYTE**

The **InitSyncPair** property controls the initial position of the droplist. A value of one (1 or True) initially positions the list closest to the value already contained in the target assignment fields. A value of zero (0 or False) positions the list to the first item in the specified sort order.

Implementation: The Init method sets the InitSyncPair property to one (1). The ResetQueue method implements the behavior specified by the InitSyncPair property.

See Also: Init, ResetQueue

FileDropClass Methods

FileDropClass Methods

The FileDropClass inherits all the methods of the ViewManager from which it is derived. See *ViewManager Methods* for more information.

FileDropClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the FileDropClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the FileDropClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the FileDropClass object
AddField	specify display fields
AddUpdateField	specify field assignments
AddRange	add a range limit to the active sort order
AppendOrder	refine the active sort order
Kill	shut down the FileDropClass object

Mainstream Use:

ResetQueue	fill or refill filedrop queue
TakeEvent _v	process the current ACCEPT loop event
TakeNewSelection _v	processes EVENT:Selected events

Occasional Use:

Open _i	open the filedrop view
PrimeRecord _i	prepare an item for adding
SetFilter _i	specify a filter for the active sort order
ApplyFilter _i	range limit and filter the result set
ApplyOrder	sort the result set
GetFreeElementName _i	return the free element field name
SetOrder _i	replace the active sort order
Close _i	close the filedrop view

_i These methods are inherited from the ViewManager Class.

_v These methods are also virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

SetQueueRecord	copy data from file buffer to queue buffer
Reset	reset the view position
TakeEvent	process the current ACCEPT loop event
TakeNewSelection	processes EVENT:Selected events
ValidateRecord	validate the current result set element

| These methods are inherited from the ViewManager Class.

AddField (specify display fields)

AddField(*filefield*, *queuefield*)

AddField	Identifies the corresponding FILE and QUEUE fields for a filedrop list column.
<i>filefield</i>	The fully qualified label of the FILE field. The <i>filefield</i> is the original source of the filedrop LIST's data.
<i>queuefield</i>	The fully qualified label of the corresponding QUEUE field. The <i>queuefield</i> is loaded from the <i>filefield</i> , and is the immediate source of the filedrop LIST's data.

The **AddField** method identifies the corresponding FILE and QUEUE fields for a filedrop list column. You must call AddField for each column displayed in the filedrop list.

You may also use the AddField method to display memory variables by specifying a variable label as the *filefield* parameter.

Implementation: The AddField method uses the FieldPairsClass to manage the specified field pairs.

Example:

```
CODE
StFD.Init(?CLI:StCode,StateQ.Pos,StateView,StateQ,Relate:States,ThisWindow)
StFD.Q &= StateQ
StFD.AddSortOrder(StCodeKey)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StCode,StFD.Q.StCode)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StName,StFD.Q.StName)
StFD.AddUpdateField(STFile:StCode,CLI:StCode)
```

AddRecord (update filedrop queue)

AddRecord, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **AddRecord** method adds data to the filedrop's display queue.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method calls the AddRecord method to build the queue.

See Also: ResetQueue

AddUpdateField (specify field assignments)

AddUpdateField(*source*, *target*)

AddUpdateField Identifies a *source* field and its corresponding *target* or destination field.

source The fully qualified label of the field to copy from when the end user selects a filedrop list item.

target The fully qualified label of the field to copy to when the end user selects a filedrop list item.

The **AddUpdateField** method identifies a *source* field and its corresponding *target* or destination field that receives the *source* field's contents when the end user selects a filedrop list item.

You may call the AddUpdateField multiple times to accomplish multiple field assignments on end user selection.

Implementation: The AddUpdateField method uses the FieldPairsClass to manage the specified field pairs.

The TakeEvent method performs the specified copy.

Example:

```
CODE
StFD.Init(?CLI:StCode,StateQ.Pos,StateView,StateQ,Relate:States,ThisWindow)
StFD.Q &= StateQ
StFD.AddSortOrder(StCodeKey)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StCode,StFD.Q.StCode)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StName,StFD.Q.StName)
StFD.AddUpdateField(STFile:StCode,CLI:StCode)
```

See Also: TakeEvent

Init (initialize the FileDropClass object)

Init(*listcontrol*, *viewposition*, *view*, *listqueue*, *relationmanager* , *window manager*)

Init	Initializes the FileDropClass object.
<i>listcontrol</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the filedrop's LIST control.
<i>viewposition</i>	The label of a string variable within the <i>listqueue</i> containing the POSITION of the <i>view</i> .
<i>view</i>	The label of the filedrop's underlying VIEW.
<i>listqueue</i>	The label of the <i>listcontrol</i> 's data source QUEUE.
<i>relationmanager</i>	The label of the filedrop's primary file RelationManager object. See <i>Relation Manager</i> for more information.
<i>windowmanager</i>	The label of the FileDrop object's WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the FileDropClass object.

Implementation: Among other things, the Init method calls the PARENT.Init (ViewManager.Init) method to initialize the view related parts of the FileDropClass object. See *View Manager* for more information.

Example:

CODE

```
StFD.Init( ?CLI:StCode,StateQ.Pos,StateView,StateQ,Relate:States,ThisWindow)
StFD.Q &= StateQ
StFD.AddSortOrder( StCodeKey)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StCode,StFD.Q.StCode)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StName,StFD.Q.StName)
StFD.AddUpdateField(STFile:StCode,CLI:StCode)
```

See Also: ViewManager.Init

Kill (shut down the FileDropClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method releases any memory allocated during the life of the FileDropClass object and performs any other required termination code.

Implementation: Among other things, the Kill method calls the PARENT.Kill (ViewManager.Kill) method to shut down the initialize the view related parts of the FileDropClass object. See *View Manager* for more information.

Example:

CODE

```
StFD.Init(?CLI:StCode,StateQ.Pos,StateView,StateQ,Relate:States,ThisWindow)
StFD.Q &= StateQ
StFD.AddSortOrder(StCodeKey)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StCode,StFD.Q.StCode)
StFD.AddField(STFile:StName,StFD.Q.StName)
StFD.AddUpdateField(STFile:StCode,CLI:StCode)
!procedure code
StFD.Kill
```

See Also: ViewManager.Kill

ResetQueue (fill filedrop queue)**ResetQueue([*force*]), VIRTUAL, PROC****ResetQueue** Fills or refills the filedrop's display queue.

force A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to refill the queue even if the sort order did not change. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally refills the queue; a value of zero (0 or False) only refills the queue if circumstances require it. If omitted, *force* defaults to zero.

The **ResetQueue** method fills or refills the filedrop's display queue, applying the applicable sort order, range limits, and filters, then returns a value indicating which item, if any, in the displayed lookup file already matches the value of the *target* fields (specified by the AddUpdateField method). A return value of zero (0) indicates no matching items; any other value indicates the position of the matching item.

For example, if the filedrop "looks up" the state code for a customer, and the current customer's state code field already contains a valid value, then the ResetQueue method conditionally (based on the InitSyncPair property) positions the filedrop list to the current customer's state code value.

Return Data Type: **LONG**

Example:

```
ACCEPT
  IF EVENT( ) = EVENT:OpenWindow
    StateFileDrop.ResetQueue
  END
  !program code
END
```

See Also: **InitSyncPair**

SetQueueRecord (copy data from file buffer to queue buffer:FileDropClass)

SetQueueRecord, VIRTUAL

The **SetQueueRecord** method copies corresponding data from the *filefield* fields to the *queuefield* fields specified by the AddField method. Typically these are the file buffer fields and the filedrop list's queue buffer fields so that the queue buffer matches the file buffers.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method calls the SetQueueRecord method.

Example:

MyFileDropClass.SetQueueRecord PROCEDURE

CODE

```
SELF.ViewPosition=POSITION(SELF.View)
SELF.DisplayFields.AssignLeftToRight
!Custom code here
```

See Also: ResetQueue

TakeAccepted (a virtual to accept data)

TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL

The **TakeAccepted** method is a virtual placeholder to accept data in a FileDropCombo control.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method is a placeholder for the derived FileDropComboClass. The FileDropClass.TakeEvent calls the TakeAccepted method.

See Also: FileDropClass.TakeEvent, FileDropComboClass.TakeAccepted

TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event--FileDropClass)

TakeEvent, VIRTUAL

The **TakeEvent** method processes the current ACCEPT loop event for the FileDropClass object.

Implementation: The WindowManager.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeNewSelection method.

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
!procedure code
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Browses)
    GET(SELF.Browses,I)
    SELF.Browses.Browse.TakeEvent
END
LOOP i=1 TO RECORDS(SELF.FileDrops)
    GET(SELF.FileDrops,i)
    ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
    SELF.FileDrops.FileDrop.TakeEvent
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeNewSelection, WindowManager.TakeEvent

TakeNewSelection (process EVENT:NewSelection events:FileDropClass)**TakeNewSelection(*field*), VIRTUAL**

TakeNewSelection Processes the EVENT:NewSelection event.

field A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control that generated the EVENT:NewSelection event.

The **TakeNewSelection** method processes the EVENT:NewSelection event for the FileDropClass object.

Implementation: The ResetQueue method and the TakeEvent method call the TakeNewSelection method. If the FileDropClass object's LIST generated the new selection event, then the TakeNewSelection method does the field assignments specified by the AddUpdateField method or clears the target fields if there is no valid selection.

Example:

FileDropClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE

```
CODE
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:NewSelection
  SELF.TakeNewSelection(FIELD( ))
END
```

See Also: AddUpdateField, ResetQueue, TakeEvent

ValidateRecord (a virtual to validate records)**ValidateRecord, VIRTUAL**

The **ValidateRecord** method is a virtual called when the FileDropClass object fills its display QUEUE. ValidateRecord returns a value indicating whether to include the current record in the displayed list. Thus ValidateRecord provides a filtering mechanism in addition to the ViewManager.SetFilter method. Valid return values include:

Record:OK	includes the record
Record:OutOfRange	excludes the record
Record:Filtered	excludes the record

Implementation: The ResetQueue method calls the ValidateRecord method. The ValidateRecord method calls the PARENT.ValidateRecord method (ViewManager.ValidateRecord).

Return value EQUATEs are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW:

Record:OK	EQUATE(0)	!Record passes range and filter
Record:OutOfRange	EQUATE(1)	!Record fails range test
Record:Filtered	EQUATE(2)	!Record fails filter tests

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyFileDropClass.ResetQueue PROCEDURE
i LONG
CODE
SETCURSOR(CURSOR:Wait)
FREE(SELF.ListQueue)
SELF.ApplyRange
SELF.Reset
LOOP UNTIL SELF.Next()
    IF SELF.ValidateRecord()=Record:OK      !Validate Records
        SELF.SetQueueRecord
        ADD(SELF.ListQueue)
        ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
        IF SELF.UpdateFields.Equal()
            i=RECORDS(SELF.ListQueue)
        END
    END
END
END
!procedure code
```

See Also: ResetQueue, ViewManager.SetFilter, ViewManager.ValidateRecord

FileManager

FileManager Overview

The FileManager class declares a file manager that consistently and flexibly handles all the routine database operations for a given file. The file manager provides "setup" methods that let you describe the file and its keys, as well as other methods to open, read, write, and close the file.

The file manager automatically handles autoincrementing keys, and, as implemented by the ABC Templates, handles some of the validity checks specified in the Clarion data dictionary, and some of the file handling settings specified in the data dictionary or application generator. However, even if you don't use the data dictionary, the application generator, or if you don't specify validity checks in your dictionary, the file manager can still competently and efficiently handle routine database operations for your files.

Note: The FileManager class handles individual files; it does not handle referential integrity (RI) between related files. The RelationManager class enforces RI between related files.

Dual Approach to Database Operations

The FileManager methods that do standard database operations come in two versions--the plain (or interactive) version and the "Try" (or silent) version.

Interactive Database Operations

When any of these methods are called (Open, Fetch, Next, Previous, Insert, and Update), they may take several approaches and several attempts to complete the requested operation--including issuing error messages where appropriate. They may solicit information from the end user in order to proceed with the requested task. They may even terminate the application under sufficient provocation. This means the programmer can rely on the fact that if the method returned, it worked.

Silent Database Operations

When any of these methods are prepended with "Try" (TryOpen, TryFetch, TryNext, TryPrevious, TryInsert, and TryUpdate), the method makes a single attempt to complete the requested operation, then returns a success or failure indicator to the calling procedure for it to handle accordingly.

FileManager Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The FileManager relies on the ErrorClass for most of its error handling. Therefore, if your program instantiates the FileManager it must also instantiate the ErrorClass. See *Error Class* for more information.

Perhaps more significantly, the FileManager serves as the foundation or "errand boy" of the RelationManager. If your program instantiates the RelationManager it must also instantiate the FileManager. See *Relation Manager Class* for more information.

FileManager and Threaded Files

FileManager objects are designed to support multiple execution threads in a way that Clarion developers will recognize. That is, several MDI procedures may access the same file at the same time, with each procedure maintaining its own file buffer and file positioning information, so there is no conflict or confusion between the procedures.

To accomplish this desirable state of independence among several MDI procedures, you only need to add the THREAD attribute to your file declaration (see the *Language Reference* for more information), then instantiate a single global FileManager object for each file. This global object automatically handles multiple execution threads, so you can use it within each procedure that accesses the file. The ABC Templates generate exactly this type of code for files with the THREAD attribute.

When you want to access a file with a single shared buffer from multiple execution threads, you simply omit the THREAD attribute from the file declaration and, again, instantiate a global file-specific FileManager object within the program. This lets all your program's procedures access the file with a single shared record buffer and a single set of positioning information.

FileManager ABC Template Implementation

There are several important points to note regarding the ABC Template implementation of the FileManager class.

First, the ABC Templates *derive* a class from the FileManager class for *each* file the application processes. The derived classes are called Hide:Access:*filename*, but may be referenced as Access:*filename*. These derived classes and their methods are declared in the generated *appnaBC0.CLW* through *appnaBC9.CLW* files (depending on how many files your application uses). The derived class methods are specific to the file being managed, and they implement many of the file properties specified in the data dictionary such as access modes, keys, field validation and initialization, etc.

Second, the ABC Templates generate housekeeping procedures to initialize and shut down the FileManager objects. The procedures are DctInit and DctKill. These are generated into the *appnaBC.CLW* file.

Third, the derived FileManager classes are configurable with the **Global Properties** dialog. See *Template Overview--File Control Options and Classes Options* for more information.

Finally, the ABC Templates also derive a RelationManager for each file. These objects are called Hide:Relate:*filename*, but may be referenced as Relate:*filename*. The template generated code seldom calls the derived FileManager methods directly. Instead, it calls a RelationManager method that echoes the command to the appropriate (related files') FileManager methods. See *Relation Manager* for more information on the RelationManager class.

FileManager Source Files

The FileManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific FileManager source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABFILE.INC	FileManager declarations
ABFILE.CLW	FileManager method definitions

FileManager Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a FileManager object.

This example uses the FileManager to insert a valid record with an auto-incrementing key.

```
PROGRAM

    INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
    MAP                             !program map
    END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)   !derive Access:Client object
Init PROCEDURE                     !initialize Access:File object
PrimeRecord PROCEDURE,BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL !prime new record (autoinc)
ValidateField PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED Id),BYTE,VIRTUAL !validate a field
ValidateRecord PROCEDURE(<*UNSIGNED Id>),BYTE,VIRTUAL !validate all fields
    END

Client FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
NameKey KEY(CLI:Name),DUP,NOCASE
Record RECORD,PRE()
ID LONG
Name STRING(20)
StateCode STRING(2)
    END
END
```

```

InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
    PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init              !initial Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open              !open the Client file

IF Access:Client.PrimeRecord()    !prime Client record (autoinc)
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)      !if prime fails, close down
END

OPEN(InsertWindow)

ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
    IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted    !on OK button
        IF Access:Client.Insert() = Level:Benign !add the new Client record
            POST(Event:CloseWindow) !if add succeeds, close down
        ELSE                       !if add fails
            SELECT(?CLI:Name:Prompt) !select client name field
            CYCLE                   !and start over
        END
    END
OF ?CLI:StateCode                !on StateCode field
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
        IF Access:Client.ValidateField(3) !validate the StateCode (3rd) field
            SELECT(?CLI:StateCode) !if invalid, select StateCode field
            CYCLE                   !and start over
        END
    END
END
END
Access:Client.Close              !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill               !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill               !shut down the GlobalErrors object
RETURN

Access:Client.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Client, GlobalErrors) !call the base class Init method
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Client'    !set the file name

```



```
SELF.Buffer &= CLI:Record           !point Access:Client to Client buffer
SELF.AddKey(CLI:IDKey,'Client ID',1) !describe the primary autoinc key
SELF.AddKey(CLI:NameKey,'Client Name') !describe another key

Access:Client.PrimeRecord PROCEDURE           !called by base class Insert method
Result BYTE,AUTO
CODE
Result = PARENT.PrimeRecord()               !call base class PrimeRecord method
CLI:StateCode = 'FL'                        !default statecode to Florida
RETURN Result

Access:Client.ValidateField PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED Id)!called by base class ValidateFields
CODE                                           !and by this program too
IF ID = 3                                     !validate the statecode (3rd) field
    GlobalErrors.SetField('StateCode')        !set field in case of error
    IF ~CLI:StateCode                         !if statecode is blank
        RETURN SELF.Throw(Msg:FieldNotInList) !pass error to error handler
    END
END
RETURN Level:Benign

Access:Client.ValidateRecord PROCEDURE(<*UNSIGNED F>)!called by base class
Insert
CODE
RETURN SELF.ValidateFields(1,3,F)           !validate all 3 fields
```

FileManager Properties

The FileManager properties include references to the specific file being managed, as well as several flags or switches that tell the FileManager how to manage the referenced file.

The references are to the file, the file name, and the file's record buffer. These references allow the otherwise generic FileManager object to process a specific file.

The processing switches include file access (sharing) mode, a create/nocreate switch, a held records mode, and a LOCK wait time parameter.

Each of these properties is fully described below.

AliasedFile (the primary file)

AliasedFile **&FileManager**

The **AliasedFile** property is a reference to the actual file's FileManager. A nonnull value for this property indicates the managed file is an alias of another file. The FileManager uses this property to synchronize commands, buffers, etc. between the alias file and its actual file.

Tip: **This property should be null (uninitialized) for the actual file and initialized for any aliases.**

Implementation: If the managed file is an alias, you should initialize the AliasedFile property after the Init method is called, or within a derived Init method specific to the managed file. See the *Conceptual Example*. The ABC Templates generate code to set this property for alias files in the *appnaBC0.CLW* file.

Buffer (the record buffer)**Buffer &GROUP, PROTECTED**

The **Buffer** property is a reference to the record buffer of the managed file. You can use the property to access the buffer for the file from within a generically derived class.

Implementation: The SaveBuffer method stores a copy of the current Buffer contents into the Buffers property for subsequent retrieval by the RestoreBuffer method.

You should initialize the Buffer property after the Init method is called, or within a derived Init method specific to the managed file. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: Buffers, RestoreBuffer, SaveBuffer

Buffers (saved record buffers)**Buffers &BufferQueue, PROTECTED**

The **Buffers** property contains saved copies of the record buffer for the managed file. The saved record images may be used to detect changes by other workstations, to implement cancel operations, etc.

Implementation: The SaveBuffer method stores a copy of the current Buffer contents into the Buffers property and returns an ID which may subsequently be used by the RestoreBuffer method to retrieve the buffer contents.

The RestoreBuffer method releases memory allocated by the SaveBuffer method. Therefore, to prevent a memory leak, each call to SaveBuffer should be paired with a corresponding call to RestoreBuffer.

Buffers is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABFILE.INC as follows:

```
BufferQueue  QUEUE,TYPE      !Saved records
Id           LONG            !Handle to recognize saved instance
Buffer       &STRING         !Reference to a saved record
END
```

See Also: Buffer, RestoreBuffer, SaveBuffer

Create (create file switch)

Create **BYTE**

The **Create** property contains a value that tells the file manager whether or not to create the file if no file exists.

A value of one (1) creates the file; a value of zero (0) does not create the file.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Create property to a value of one (1), which invokes automatic file creation. The ABC Templates override this default with the appropriate setting from the data dictionary or application generator. See *Template Overview--File Handling* for more information.

The Open method creates the file when an attempt to open the file fails because there is no file.

See Also: Init, Open

Errors (the ErrorManager)

Error **&ErrorClass, PROTECTED**

The **Error** property is a reference to the ErrorManager. The Error property simply identifies the ErrorManager for the various FileManager methods.

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the Error property.

See Also: Init

File (the managed file)

File **&FILE**

The **File** property is a reference to the managed file. The File property simply identifies the managed file for the various FileManager methods.

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the File property.

See Also: Init

FileName (variable filename)**FileName ANY, PROTECTED**

The **FileName** property is a reference to the variable specified by the managed file's NAME attribute. The FileName property determines which DOS/Windows file is accessed by the FileManager object. The FileName property may also be used for error messages and other display purposes.

The SetName method sets the contents of the filename variable. The GetName method returns the filename.

Implementation: You must initialize either the FileName property or the FileNameValue property (but not both) after the Init method is called, or within a derived Init method specific to the managed file. See the *Conceptual Example*.

Example:

```
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)      !derive Access:Client object
Init          PROCEDURE                !prototype Access:Client init
          END
ClientFileName STRING('Client01.tps')!variable for filename

Client FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),NAME(ClientFileName) !file with variable name
Record RECORD,PRE()
ID          LONG
Name        STRING(20)
          END
          END
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Access:Client.Init
!program code

Access:Client.Init PROCEDURE          !initialize Access:Client object
CODE
PARENT.Init(GlobalErrors)             !call the base class Init method
SELF.File      &= Client               !set File property
SELF.FileName  &= ClientFileName       !set variable filename
```

See Also: FileNameValue, GetName, SetName

FileNameValue (constant filename)

FileNameValue STRING(File:MaxFilePath), PROTECTED

The **FileNameValue** property contains the constant value specified by the managed file's NAME attribute. The FileNameValue property supplies the managed file's DOS filename for error messages or other display purposes.

The GetName method returns the DOS file name.

Implementation: You must initialize either the FileNameValue property or the FileName property (but not both) after the Init method is called, or within a derived Init method specific to the managed file. See the *Conceptual Example*.

Example:

PROGRAM

```
INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')      !declare FileManager class
MAP                        !program map
END
```

```
GlobalErrors ErrorClass    !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE        !prototype Access:Client init
      END
```

```
Client      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),NAME('Client.TPS')!constant filename
Record      RECORD,PRE()
ID           LONG
Name        STRING(20)
      END
      END
```

```
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Access:Client.Init
!program code
```

```
Access:Client.Init  PROCEDURE    !initialize Access:Client object
CODE
PARENT.Init(GlobalErrors)        !call the base class Init method
SELF.File      &= Client         !point Access:Client to Client file
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Client.TPS'!set constant DOS filename
```

See Also: FileName, GetName, SetName

LazyOpen (delay file open until access)

LazyOpen **BYTE**

The **LazyOpen** property indicates whether to open the managed file immediately when a related file is opened, or to delay opening the file until it is actually accessed. A value of one (1 or True) delays the opening; a value of zero (0 or False) immediately opens the file.

Delaying the open can improve performance when accessing only one of a series of related files.

Implementation: The Init method sets the LazyOpen property to True. The ABC Templates override this default if instructed. See *Template Overview--File Handling* for more information.

The various file access methods (Open, TryOpen, Fetch, TryFetch, Next, TryNext, Insert, TryInsert, etc.) use the UseFile method to implement the action specified by the LazyOpen property

See Also: Init, Open, TryOpen, Fetch, TryFetch, Next, TryNext, Insert, TryInsert, UseFile

LockRecover (/RECOVER wait time parameter)

LockRecover **SHORT**

The **LockRecover** property contains the wait time parameter for the /RECOVER driver string used by the Clarion database driver. See *Database Drivers--Clarion* for more information on the /RECOVER driver string.

Implementation: The Init method sets the LockRecover property to a value of ten (10) seconds. The ABC Templates override this default with the appropriate value from the application generator. See *Template Overview--File Handling* for more information.

The Open method implements the recovery when an attempt to open the file fails because the file is LOCKed. See the *Language Reference* for more information on LOCK.

See Also: Init, Open

OpenMode (file access/sharing mode)

OpenMode **BYTE**

The **OpenMode** property contains a value that determines the level of access granted to both the user opening the file and other users in a multi-user system.

Implementation: The Init method sets the OpenMode property to a hexadecimal value of 42h (ReadWrite/DenyNone). The ABC Templates override this default with the appropriate value from the application generator. See *Template Overview--File Handling* for more information.

The Open method uses the OpenMode property when it OPENS the file for processing. See the *Language Reference* for more information on OPEN and access modes.

See Also: Init, Open

SkipHeldRecords (HELD record switch)

SkipHeldRecords **BYTE**

The **SkipHeldRecords** property contains a value that tells the file manager how to react when it encounters held records. See the *Language Reference* for more information on HOLD.

A value of one (1) skips or omits the held record and continues processing; a value of zero (0) aborts the current operation.

Implementation: The Init method sets the SkipHeldRecords property to a value of zero (0).

The Next, TryNext, Previous, and TryPrevious methods implement the action specified by the SkipHeldRecords property when an attempt to read a record fails because the record is held.

See Also: Init, Next, Previous, TryNext, TryPrevious

FileManager Methods

Naming Conventions and Dual Approach to Database Operations

As you study the functional organization of the FileManager methods, please keep this in mind: most of the common database operations (Open, Next, Previous, Fetch, Insert, and Update) come in two versions. The versions are easily identifiable based on their naming conventions:

<i>Operation</i>	Do <i>Operation</i> and handle any errors (automatic)
<i>TryOperation</i>	Do <i>Operation</i> but do not handle errors (manual)

Interactive Database Operations

When any of these methods are called (Open, Fetch, Next, Previous, Insert, and Update), they may take several approaches and several attempts to complete the requested operation, including issuing error messages where appropriate. These methods provide automatic error handling. They may solicit information from the end user in order to proceed with the requested task. They may even terminate the application under sufficient provocation. This means the programmer can rely on the fact that if the method returned, it worked.

Silent Database Operations

When any of these methods prepend "Try" (TryOpen, TryFetch, TryNext, TryPrevious, TryInsert, and TryUpdate), the method makes a single attempt to complete the requested operation, then returns a success or failure indicator to the calling procedure for it to handle accordingly. These methods require manual error handling.

FileManager Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the FileManager class, it is useful to organize the various FileManager methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the FileManager methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the FileManager object
Kill	terminate the FileManager object

Mainstream Use:

Open _v	open the file
TryOpen	open the file
Next	get the next record in sequence
TryNext	get the next record in sequence
Previous	get the previous record in sequence
TryPrevious	get the previous record in sequence
Fetch	get a specific record by key value
TryFetch	get a specific record by key value
Position	return the unique position of the current record
TryReget	get a specific record by unique position
PrimeAutoInc _v	prepare an autoincremented record for adding
Insert	add a new record
TryInsert	add a new record
CancelAutoInc _v	restore file to its pre-PrimeAutoInc state
Update	change the current record
TryUpdate	change the current record
Close _v	close the file

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Occasional Use:

ClearKey	clear a range of key component fields
SetKey	make a specific key current for other methods
KeyToOrder	return ORDER expression equal to specified key
GetComponents	return the number of components of a key
GetField	return a reference to a key component
GetFieldName	return the field name of a key component
GetEOF	return current end of file status
GetError	return the current error ID
SetError	save the current error state

GetName	return the name of the file
SetName	set the file name
SaveBuffer	save the current record buffer contents
RestoreBuffer	restore previously saved buffer contents
SaveFile	save the current file state
RestoreFile	restore a previously saved file state
UseFile	open a LazyOpen file
AddKey	describe the soft KEYs

Virtual Methods

Typically, with the possible exception of Open and Close, you will not call these methods directly- the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Open	open the file
BindFields	BIND all the file's fields
PrimeAutoInc	prepare an autoincremented record for adding
TryPrimeAutoInc	prepare an autoincremented record for adding
CancelAutoInc	restore file to its pre-PrimeAutoInc state
EqualBuffer	detect record buffer changes
PrimeFields	prepare record fields for adding
PrimeRecord	prepare a record for adding
Throw	process an error
ThrowMessage	set custom message text then process an error
ValidateField	validate a specific field in the current buffer
ValidateFields	validate a range of fields in the current buffer
ValidateRecord	validate all fields in the current buffer
Close	close the file

AddField(track fields in a structure)

AddField(*field tag*, *field*, *field type*, [*field picture*]), **PROC**

AddField Updates internal queue to track fields in a structure.

field tag A variable length string that represents the actual field name.

field The field represents the field name used in a queue structure.

field type A variable length string that represents the field type.

field picture A variable length string that represents the field picture.

The **AddField** method updates an internal queue which keeps track of the relationship of fields in a file structure to their equivalent field in a queue structure. An internal queue tracks the field name, structure field name and field type.

Implementation: The AddField method returns Level:Benign if no error occurs when the field information is added to the internal tracking queue, otherwise Level:Notify is returned.

Return Data Type: BYTE

AddKey (set the file's keys)

AddKey (*key*, *description* [,*autoincrement*])

AddKey	Describes a KEY or static INDEX of the managed file.
<i>key</i>	The label of the KEY or static INDEX.
<i>description</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression describing the key.
<i>autoincrement</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the FileManager automatically generates incrementing numeric values for the key when inserting new records. A value of one (1 or True) automatically increments the key; a value of zero (0 or False) does not increment the key. If omitted, <i>autoincrement</i> defaults to zero.

The **AddKey** method describes a KEY or static INDEX of the managed file so that other FileManager methods can process it. You should typically call AddKey after the Init method is called (or within your derived Init method).

Implementation: The *description* appears at runtime on certain key related error messages.

Example:

```
Access:Client.Init  PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Client, GlobalErrors)      !call the base class Init method
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Client'           !set the file name
SELF.Buffer &= CLI:Record               !point Access:Client to Client buffer
SELF.AddKey(CLI:IDKey,'Client ID',1)    !describe the primary key
SELF.AddKey(CLI:NameKey,'Client Name') !describe another key
```

See Also: Init

BindFields (bind fields when file is opened)

BindFields, VIRTUAL

The **BindFields** method BINDs the fields when the file is opened. See the *Language Reference* for more information on BIND.

Implementation: The Open method calls the BindFields method.

Example:

```
PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                             !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass          !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
BindFields  PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL    !prep fields for dynamic use
      END

Client  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey   KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record  RECORD,PRE()
ID       LONG
Name     STRING(20)
StateCode STRING(2)
      END
      END

CODE
!program code

Access:Client.BindFields PROCEDURE !called by the base class Open method
CODE
  BIND(CLI:RECORD)                !bind all fields for dynamic use
```

See Also: Open

CancelAutoInc (undo PrimeAutoInc)

CancelAutoInc([*relation manager*]), **VIRTUAL**, **PROC**

CancelAutoInc Undoes any PrimeAutoInc action.

relation manager

The label of the managed file's RelationManager object. If present, the "undo" action cascades to any related files. If omitted, the "undo" action does not cascade to related files.

The **CancelAutoInc** method restores the managed file, and optionally any related files, to their pre-PrimeAutoInc state, typically when an insert operation is cancelled. CancelAutoInc returns a value indicating its success or failure. A return value of zero (0 or Level:Benign) indicates success; any other return value indicates a problem.

Implementation: The PrimeAutoInc method adds a "dummy" record when inserting records with autoincrementing keys. CancelAutoInc deletes this "dummy" record, and, if the *relation manager* parameter is present, CancelAutoInc deletes any children of the "dummy" record as well.

If CancelAutoInc succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it ultimately fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to restore the files. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                             !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE               !prototype Access:File init
CancelAutoInc PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL  !prototype CancelAutoInc
  END

Client      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey       KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE()
ID          LONG
Name        STRING(20)
StateCode   STRING(2)

```

```

        END
    END
InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
    PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(82,53,45,14),USE(?Cancel)
END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init           !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init          !initialize Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open          !open the Client file
IF Access:Client.PrimeRecord() !prime Client record (autoinc)
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !if prime fails, close down
END

OPEN(InsertWindow)

ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
    IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted    !on OK button
        IF Access:Client.Insert() = Level:Benign!finish adding the new Client record
            POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !if add succeeds, close down
        ELSE                        !if add fails
            SELECT(?CLI:Name:Prompt)    !select client name field
            CYCLE                     !and start over
        END
    END
OF ?Cancel
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted    !on Cancel button
        Access:Client.CancelAutoInc    !restore Client to pre-PrimeRecord
        POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !close down
    END
END
END
END

```



```

Access:Client.Close          !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill           !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill           !shut down the GlobalErrors object
RETURN

```

```

Access:Client.CancelAutoInc PROCEDURE      !restore file to pre-PrimeAutoInc
CODE
!your custom code here
PARENT.CancelAutoInc                    !call the base class method
!your custom code here

```

See Also: PrimeAutoInc

ClearKey (clear specified key components)

ClearKey (*key* [, *firstcomponent*] [, *lastcomponent*] [, *highvalue*])

ClearKey	Clears or (re)initializes the specified range of key component fields.
<i>key</i>	The label of the KEY.
<i>firstcomponent</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the first component to clear. If omitted, <i>firstcomponent</i> defaults to one (1).
<i>lastcomponent</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the last component to clear. If omitted, <i>lastcomponent</i> defaults to twenty-two (22).
<i>highvalue</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to clear the components to zero (or spaces for string fields) or to their highest possible values. A value of one (1) applies the highest possible value; a value of zero (0) applies spaces for strings and zeros for numerics. If omitted, <i>highvalue</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **ClearKey** method clears or (re)initializes the specified range of key component fields.

Implementation: ClearKey is useful for range limiting to the first instance of the first "free" key component. By retaining higher order key component values and clearing lower order key component values, you can fetch the first (or last) record that matches the retained higher order component values; for example, the first order (lower order key component) for a customer (higher order key component).

The value ClearKey assigns depends on three things: the data type of the component field (numeric or string), the sort direction of the component (ascending or descending), and the value of the *highvalue* parameter (True or False). The following table shows the values ClearKey assigns for each combination of data type, sort direction, and *highvalue*.

<u><i>highvalue</i></u>	Numeric Fields		String Fields	
	<u>Ascending</u>	<u>Descending</u>	<u>Ascending</u>	<u>Descending</u>
True (1)	High Values	zero	High Values	spaces
False (0)	zero	High Values	spaces	High Values

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )                !declare FileManager class
  MAP                                     !program map
  END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass                  !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Order CLASS(FileManager)         !derive Access:Order object
END

```

```
Order      FILE,DIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ORD),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey      KEY(Ord:Cust,Ord:ID,Ord:Date),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record     RECORD,PRE()
Cust       LONG
ID         LONG
Date       LONG
           END
           END

CODE
!program code
!find first order for current customer by clearing all components except Ord:Cust
Access:Order.ClearKey( ORD:IDKey, 2 ) !clear Ord:ID and Ord:Date
Access:Order.Fetch           !get the next record by key
```

Close (close the file)**Close, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Close** method tells the FileManager the calling procedure is done with the file, then closes the file if no other procedure is using it. The Close method handles any errors that occur while closing the file.

Implementation: The Close method returns a value of Level:Benign (EQUATE declared in ABERROR.INC). See *Error Class* for more information on Level:Benign and other severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                             !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE              !prototype Access:File init
  END

Client      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
  !file declaration
  END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                 !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init               !initialize Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open               !open the Client file

!program code

Access:Client.Close              !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill               !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill               !shut down the GlobalErrors object

```

Deleted (return record status)**Deleted,VIRTUAL**

The **Deleted** method returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC) if the current record is active, i.e., if the record has not been identified in some way as deleted. In cases where the DeleteRecord method has been derived to say, flag deleted records rather than physically delete them, deriving a corresponding Deleted method allows these records to be identified.

The standard Deleted method always returns Level:Benign.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
MAP . !program map
GlobalErrors ErrorClass         !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) . !derive Access:Client object
InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
    PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
END
CODE
!program code
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted           !on OK button
    IF Access:Client.Deleted() = Level:Benign !if the record is not already deleted
        IF Access:Client.DeleteRecord = Level:Benign !delete it
            POST(Event:CloseWindow) !if add succeeds, close down
        ELSE !if add fails
            Access:Client.CancelPrimeAutoInc !restore the file
        CYCLE !and start over
    END
END
END
!more code

```

See Also: DeleteRecord

DeleteRecord (delete a record)

DeleteRecord(< query >),PROC,VIRTUAL

DeleteRecord Deletes a record from a file.

query A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether DeleteRecord offers to confirm the delete with the end user. A value of one (1 or True) deletes only on confirmation from the end user; a value of zero (0 or False) delete without confirmation. If omitted, query defaults to 1.

The **DeleteRecord** method deletes a record from the file and returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). The primary purpose of this method is to permit the redefinition of "Delete" where appropriate. Possible uses include flagging a record as opposed to physically deleting it or logging delete transactions as they occur. The Query parameter is provided for compatibility with the Relation Manager's Delete method (See...) RelationManager.Delete calls FileManager.DeleteRecord with Query = 1 in all cases except that where a delete has been requested without notifying the user. This allows derived versions of FileManager.DeleteRecord to physically delete a record after, say, the cancellation of autoincremented update.

The standard DeleteRecord method physically deletes the record and always returns Level:Benign.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
MAP
END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass         !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
END
InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('&Name: '),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
    PROMPT('State Code: '),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
END
CODE
!program code
ACCEPT
    CASE FIELD()
    OF ?OK
    IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted           !on OK button
    IF Access:Client.DeleteRecord() = Level:Benign !delete the new Client record
        POST(Event:CloseWindow)           !if add succeeds, close down
    ELSE                                   !if add fails

```

```
Access:Client.CancelPrimeAutoInc      !restore the file
CYCLE                                !and start over
END
END
!more code
```

See Also: Deleted

Destruct (automatic destructor)

Destruct, VIRTUAL

The **Destruct** method is an automatic destructor that is called when the object is removed from memory. This ensures that all data allocated by the object is removed from memory.

EqualBuffer (detect record buffer changes)**EqualBuffer**(*buffer id*), VIRTUAL

EqualBuffer Compares the managed file's record buffer with the specified buffer and returns a value indicating whether the buffers are equal.

buffer id An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the buffer contents to compare--typically a value returned by the SaveBuffer method.

The **EqualBuffer** method compares the managed file's record buffer, including any MEMOs or BLOBs, with the specified buffer and returns a value indicating whether the buffers are equal. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates the buffers are equal; a return value of zero (0 or False) indicates the buffers are not equal. Assigning PROP:Handle on a BLOB field constitutes a change to the BLOB and will cause EqualBuffer() to return False.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

MyWindowManager.TakeCloseEvent PROCEDURE

CODE

```
IF SELF.Response = RequestCancelled           !if end user cancelled the form
  IF ~SELF.Primary.Me.EqualBuffer(SELF.Saved)  !check for any pending changes
    !handle cancel of pending changes
```

END

END

See Also: SaveBuffer

Fetch (get a specific record by key value)**Fetch(key), VIRTUAL, PROC****Fetch** Gets a specific record by its key value and handles any errors.*key* The label of the primed KEY.

The **Fetch** method gets a specific record by its key value and handles any errors. You must prime the key before calling Fetch. If the key is not unique, Fetch gets the first record with the specified key value.

The TryFetch method provides a slightly different (manual) alternative for fetching specific records.

Implementation: Fetch tries to get the specified record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns Level:Notify (also declared in ABERROR.INC) and *clears the record buffer*. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                               !program map
  END
GlobalErrors  ErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:States CLASS(FileManager)   !declare Access:States object
  END

States        FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ST ), CREATE, BINDABLE, THREAD
StateCodeKey  KEY( ST:StateCode ), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record        RECORD, PRE( )
StateCode     STRING( 2 )
State         STRING( 20 )
  END
  END

CODE
!program code
!get the state record for Florida
ST:StateCode = 'FL'                 !prime the state key for the fetch
Access:States.Fetch(ST:StateCodeKey)!fetch the record and handle any errors

```

See Also: TryFetch

GetComponents (return the number of key components)**GetComponents**(*key*)**GetComponents** Returns the number of components in the specified key.*key* The label of the KEY.The **GetComponents** method returns the number of components in the specified key.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager
  MAP                               !program map
  END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors objec
Access:Order CLASS(FileManager)     !derive Access:Order object
  END
I      BYTE
Order  FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(ORD),THREAD !declare order file
IDKey  KEY(Ord:Cust,Ord:ID,Ord:Date),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record RECORD,PRE( )
Cust   LONG
ID     LONG
Date   LONG
      END
      END
KeyQueue QUEUE,PRE(KeyQ)           !a list of key components
Field  ANY                         !component field reference
FieldName STRING(12)               !component field name
      END
CODE
!program code
LOOP Access:Order.GetComponents( ORD:IDKey ) TIMES !step thru key components
  I += 1                                     !increment counter
  KeyQ.Field    = Access:Order.GetField(ORD:IDKey,I)!get component reference
  KeyQ.FieldName = Access:Order.GetFieldName(ORD:IDKey,I)!get component name
END

```

GetEOF (return end of file status)**GetEOF**

The **GetEOF** method returns the current end of file status for the managed file.

Tip: **GetEOF** is designed to be used after a call to the **Next** or **Previous** method. The **GetEOF** return value is undefined prior to the call to **Next** or **Previous**.

Implementation: **GetEOF** returns one (1 or True) if the last record in a Next/Previous series was read; otherwise it returns zero (0 or False).

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                               !program map
  END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)    !derive Access:Client object
  END
CODE
!program code
LOOP                                !loop through client file
  CASE Access:Client.Next()          !get next record in sequence
  OF Level:Notify OROF Level:Fatal!if error occurred
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)          !shut down
    BREAK
  ELSE                               !otherwise
    PRINT(Rpt:Detail)                 !print the record
  END
UNTIL Access:Client.GetEOF()         !stop looping at end of file

```

See Also: Next, TryNext, Previous, TryPrevious

GetError (return the current error ID)**GetError**

The **GetError** method returns the current error ID for the managed file. See *Error Class* for more information on error IDs.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')                !declare FileManager class
  MAP                                  !program map
    LogError(STRING filename, SHORT error) !prototype LogError procedure
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass                !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)      !derive Access:Client object
  END

ErrorLog FILE,DRIVER('TopSpeed'),PRE(LOG),CREATE,THREAD!declare log file
Record RECORD
Date LONG
Time LONG
File STRING(20)
ErrorId SHORT
  END
END

CODE
!program code
IF Access:Client.Open()                !if error occurs
  LogError(Access:Client.GetName(),Access:Client.GetError())!log name and error id
END
!program code

LogError PROCEDURE(STRING filename, SHORT error)
CODE
LOG:Date = TODAY()                    !store date
LOG:Time = CLOCK()                   !store time
LOG:File = filename                  !store filename
LOG:ErrorId = error                  !store error id
ADD(ErrorLog)                        !write logfile

```



```

Access:Order CLASS(FileManager)      !derive Access:Order object
      END
I      BYTE

Order      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ORD),THREAD !declare order file
IDKey      KEY(Ord:Cust,Ord:ID,Ord:Date),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record     RECORD,PRE( )
Cust       LONG
ID         LONG
Date       LONG
      END
      END
KeyQueue   QUEUE,PRE(KeyQ)           !a list of key components
Field      ANY                      !component field reference
FieldName  STRING(12)                !component field name
      END

CODE
!program code
LOOP Access:Order.GetComponents( ORD:IDKey ) TIMES      !step thru key components
  I += 1                                              !increment counter
  KeyQ.Field      = Access:Order.GetField(ORD:IDKey,I)  !get component reference
  KeyQ.FieldName = Access:Order.GetFieldName(ORD:IDKey,I)!get component name
END

```

GetFieldName (return a key component field name)

GetFieldName(|key, component |), STRING

|field number|

GetFieldName Returns the field name of the specified key component or field number in the record buffer.

<i>key</i>	The label of the key.
------------	-----------------------

<i>component</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the key component number. A value of one (1) specifies the first component; two (2) specifies the second component, etc.
------------------	---

<i>field number</i>	A variable name that represents the field number in the record buffer. A value of one (1) specifies the first field in the record buffer; two (2) specifies the second field in the record buffer, etc.
---------------------	---

The **GetFieldName** method returns a field name from the record structure.

GetFieldName(key, component)

Returns the field name based on the specified key and component. This form of the GetFieldName method returns a STRING data type.

GetFieldName(field number)

Returns the field name based on the specified field number from the record buffer. See WHO.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Example:

PROGRAM

```
INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )
```

```
!declare FileManager
```

MAP

```
!program map
```

END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass

```
!declare GlobalErrors objec
```

```
Access:Order CLASS(FileManager)
```

```
!derive Access:Order object
```

END

I BYTE

```
Order      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(ORD),THREAD  !declare order file
```

IDKey KEY(Ord:Cust,Ord:ID,Ord:Date),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY

Record	RECORD,PRE()
--------	---------------

Cust LONG

ID LONG

Date LONG

• •

KeyQueue QUEUE,PRE (KeyQ)

!a list of key components

Field ANY

```
!component field reference
```

```
FieldName    STRING(12)                !component field name
      END
CODE
!program code
LOOP Access:Order.GetComponents( ORD:IDKey ) TIMES      !step thru key components
  I += 1                                              !increment counter
  KeyQ.Field    = Access:Order.GetField(ORD:IDKey,I)    !get component reference
  KeyQ.FieldName = Access:Order.GetFieldName(ORD:IDKey,I)!get component name
END
```


GetFields(get number of fields)

GetFields

The **GetFields** method returns the number of fields in the file's record structure.

Return Data Type: LONG

GetFieldPicture(get field picture)

GetFieldPicture(*field tag*)

GetFieldPicture Returns the field type of the specified field.

field tag A variable length string that represents the field picture.

The **GetFieldPicture** method returns the field picture based on the specified field.

Return Data Type: ASTRING

GetFieldType(get field type)

GetFieldType(*field*)

GetFieldType Returns the field type of the specified field.

field A variable length string that represents the field name to be queried.

The **GetFieldType** method returns the field type based on the specified field.

Return Data Type: ASTRING

GetName (return the filename)**GetName**

The **GetName** method returns the filename of the managed file for display in error messages, etc.

The SetName method sets the (variable) filename of the managed file.

Implementation: GetName returns the value of the FileNameValue property if it has a value; otherwise, it returns the value of the FileName property.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')                !declare FileManager class
  MAP                                  !program map
LogError (STRING filename, SHORT error)!prototype LogError procedure
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass                !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)      !derive Access:Client object
  END

ErrorLog FILE,DRIVER('TopSpeed'),PRE(LOG),CREATE,THREAD!declare log file
Record   RECORD
Date     LONG
Time     LONG
File     STRING(20)
ErrorId  SHORT
  . .
CODE
  !program code
  IF Access:Client.Open()              !if error occurs
    LogError(Access:Client.GetName(),Access:Client.GetError())!log name and error id
  END
  !program code

LogError PROCEDURE(STRING filename, SHORT error)
CODE
LOG:Date   = TODAY()                  !store date
LOG:Time   = CLOCK()                  !store time
LOG:File   = filename                 !store filename
LOG:ErrorId = error                   !store error id
ADD(ErrorLog)                         !write logfile
```

See Also: FileName, FileNameValue, SetName

Access:Client.Init PROCEDURE

CODE

PARENT.Init(Client, GlobalErrors)!call the base class Init method

SELF.FileNameValue = 'Client' !set the file name

SELF.Buffer &= CLI:Record !point Access:Client to Client buffer

SELF.AddKey(CLI:IDKey,'Client ID',1) !describe the primary key

See Also: Buffer, File, FileName, FileNameValue

Insert (add a new record)**Insert, PROC**

The **Insert** method adds a new record to the file, making sure the record is valid, and automatically incrementing key values as required. The Insert method handles any errors that occur while adding the record.

The TryInsert method provides a slightly different (manual) alternative for adding new records.

Implementation: If Insert succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered while trying to add the record. See Error Class for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
  MAP .                           !program map
GlobalErrors ErrorClass          !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
  END
InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
  PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
  ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
  PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
  ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
  BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
  END CODE
!program code
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
  IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted      !on OK button
  IF Access:Client.Insert() = Level:Benign !add the new Client record
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)        !if add succeeds, close down
  ELSE                             !if add fails
    Access:Client.CancelPrimeAutoInc !restore the file
    CYCLE                          !and start over
  . .
!more code

```

See Also: TryInsert, PrimeRecord

KeyToOrder (return ORDER expression for a key)

KeyToOrder(*key*, *component*)

KeyToOrder	Returns an ORDER attribute expression list (for a VIEW) that mimics the specified key components.
<i>key</i>	The label of the KEY.
<i>component</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the first component field to include in the expression. A value of one (1) specifies the first component; two (2) specifies the second component, etc.

The **KeyToOrder** method returns an ORDER attribute expression list (for a VIEW) that mimics the specified key components. The expression list includes the specified component field plus all the subsequent component fields in the key.

See the *Language Reference* for more information on ORDER.

Implementation: The *component* defaults to one (1). The maximum length of the returned expression is 512 characters.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )                !declare FileManager
  MAP                                     !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass                  !declare GlobalErrors
Access:Order CLASS(FileManager)         !derive Access:Order
  END
Order FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE(ORD), THREAD !declare order file
IDKey KEY(ORD:Cust, ORD:ID, ORD:Date), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record RECORD, PRE( )
Cust LONG
ID LONG
Date LONG
  END
END

```

```
ClientView  VIEW(Order)                !declare order view
           PROJECT(ORD:Cust,ORD:ID,ORD:Date)
           END

CODE
!program code
ClientView{PROP:Order}=Access:Order.KeyToOrder(ORD:IDKey,2)!set runtime view order
!ClientView{PROP:Order}='ORD:ID,ORD:Date'           !equivalent to this
OPEN(ClientView)
SET(ClientView)
```

Kill (shutdown the FileManager object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method disposes any memory allocated during the object's lifetime and performs any other necessary termination code.

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                               !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)    !derive Access:Client object
  END

Client      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey       KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE()
ID          LONG
Name        STRING(20)
StateCode   STRING(2)
  END
END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                   !initialize the GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init                  !initialize Access:Client object
!program code
Access:Client.Kill                  !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill

```


Next (get next record in sequence)**Next, PROC**

The **Next** method gets the next record in sequence. The Next method handles any errors, except end of file, that occur while getting the record.

The TryNext method provides slightly different (manual) alternative for getting records in sequence.

Implementation: If Next succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it ultimately fails, it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered while trying to get the next record. See Error Class for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class

Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
  END

CODE
  !program code
  LOOP                           !loop through client file
    CASE Access:Client.Next()    !get next record in sequence
    OF Level:Notify OROF Level:Fatal !if error occurred
      POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !shut down
      BREAK
    ELSE                           !otherwise
      PRINT(Rpt:Detail)          !print the record
    END
  END
END

```

See Also: TryNext

Open (open the file)

Open, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **Open** method tells the FileManager the calling procedure is using the file, then OPENS the file if it is not already open. The Open method handles any errors that occur while opening the file, including creating the file and rebuilding keys if necessary.

The TryOpen method provides slightly different (manual) alternative for opening files.

Implementation: If the file does not exist and the Create property is not zero, Open tries to create the file. If Open succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it ultimately fails, it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered while trying to open the file. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class

GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)    !derive Access:Client object
Init                                !prototype Access:File init
      PROCEDURE
      END

Client FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
      !file declaration
      END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                   !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init                  !initialize Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open                  !open the Client file

!program code

Access:Client.Close                 !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill                  !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill                   !shut down the GlobalErrors object

```

See Also: Create, TryOpen

Position (return the current record position)

Position

The **Position** method returns the unique position of the current record.

The TryReget method retrieves a record based on the value returned by Position.

Implementation: Position returns the POSITION of the primary key if there is one; otherwise it returns the file POSITION. See the *Language Reference* for more information on POSITION.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
Hold = SELF.Position()  
PUT( SELF.File )  
CASE ERRORCODE()  
OF NoError  
OF RecordChangedErr  
  SELF.SetError(Msg:ConcurrencyFailedFromForm)  
  SELF.Throw  
  WATCH( SELF.File )  
  SELF.TryReget(Hold)  
ELSE  
  SELF.SetError(Msg:PutFailed)  
  RETURN SELF.Throw()  
END
```

See Also: TryReget

PostDelete(trigger delete action post-processing)**PostDelete**(*ErrCode*, *ErrMsg*), *returncode*

PostDelete Returns confirmation that valid dictionary trigger activity has occurred after delete action, and optionally sets an error code and message to be processed.

ErrCode A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error code.

ErrMsg A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error message.

returncode Indicates if an error occurs.

The **PostDelete** method is a virtual method that returns a TRUE value by default if post delete trigger activity was processed normally. The developer must set the return level to FALSE if any problem occurred in the post delete trigger activity code. When PostDelete returns FALSE, an ERRORCODE 100 (trigger error) is posted. If *ErrCode* is set, then FILEERRORCODE will be set to the contents of *ErrCode* when the error is processed by the ErrorClass object for the associated file (table). Similarly, FILEERROR will be set to *ErrMsg*.

The PostDelete method is accessible from a table's trigger properties located in the Dictionary Editor, or, in the Global Embeds of a target application

Implementation: PostDelete is implemented using the file driver callback mechanism, therefore, this method will have access to all variables that the File Manager has access to. These variables and the ones added in the Data section of the method will allow the developer to insert code that will be executed after a DELETE action for a file.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CODE
!Push any pending errors on stack, to allow trigger error detection
PUSHERRORS()
ReturnValue = PARENT.PostDelete(ErrCode,ErrMsg) !returns TRUE by default
!trigger processing here - optionally set ErrCode, ErrMsg and ReturnValue
POPERRORS()
!restore errors saved on the stack
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: PreDelete

PostInsert

PostUpdate

PostInsert(trigger insert action post-processing)**PostInsert**(*ErrCode*, *ErrMsg*), *returncode*

PostInsert	Returns confirmation that valid dictionary trigger activity has occurred after an insert action, and optionally sets an error code and message to be processed.
<i>ErrCode</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error code.
<i>ErrMsg</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error message.
<i>returncode</i>	Indicates if an error occurs.

The **PostInsert** method is a virtual method that returns a TRUE value by default if post insert trigger activity was processed normally. The developer must set the return level to FALSE if any problems occurred in the post insert trigger activity code. When **PostInsert** returns FALSE, an ERRORCODE 100 (trigger error) is posted. If *ErrCode* is set, then FILEERRORCODE will be set to the contents of *ErrCode* when the error is processed by the ErrorClass object for the associated file (table). Similarly, FILEERROR will be set to *ErrMsg*.

The PostInsert method is accessible from a table's trigger properties located in the Dictionary Editor, or, in the Global Embeds of a target application

Implementation: PostInsert is implemented using the file driver callback mechanism, therefore, this method will have access to all variables that the File Manager has access to. These variables and the ones added in the Data section of the method will allow the developer to insert code that will be executed after an INSERT action for a file.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CODE
!Push any pending errors on stack, to allow trigger error detection
PUSHERRORS()
ReturnValue = PARENT.PostInsert(ErrCode,ErrMsg) !returns TRUE by default
!trigger processing here - optionally set ErrCode, ErrMsg and ReturnValue
POPERRORS()
!restore errors saved on the stack
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: PreDelete

 PostDelete

 PostUpdate

PostUpdate(trigger update action post-processing)**PostUpdate(*ErrCode*, *ErrMsg*), *returncode***

PostUpdate Returns confirmation that valid dictionary trigger activity has occurred after an insert action, and optionally sets an error code and message to be processed.

ErrCode A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error code.

ErrMsg A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error message.

returncode Indicates if an error occurs.

The **PostUpdate** method is a virtual method that returns a TRUE value by default if post update trigger activity was processed normally. The developer must set the return level to FALSE if any problems occurred in the post update trigger activity code. When PostUpdate returns FALSE, an ERRORCODE 100 (trigger error) is posted. If *ErrCode* is set, then FILEERRORCODE will be set to the contents of *ErrCode* when the error is processed by the ErrorClass object for the associated file (table). Similarly, FILEERROR will be set to *ErrMsg*.

The PostUpdate method is accessible from a table's trigger properties located in the Dictionary Editor, or, in the Global Embeds of a target application

Implementation: PostUpdate is implemented using the file driver callback mechanism, therefore, this method will have access to all variables that the File Manager has access to. These variables and the ones added in the Data section of the method will allow the developer to insert code that will be executed after a CHANGE action for a file.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CODE
!Push any pending errors on stack, to allow trigger error detection
PUSHERRORS()
ReturnValue = PARENT.PostUpdate(ErrCode,ErrMsg) !returns TRUE by default
!trigger processing here - optionally set ErrCode, ErrMsg and ReturnValue
POPERRORS()
!restore errors saved on the stack
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: PreDelete

 PostDelete

 PostInsert

PreDelete(trigger delete action pre-processing)**PreDelete(*ErrCode*, *ErrMsg*), *returncode***

PreDelete	Returns confirmation that valid dictionary trigger activity has occurred before a delete action is executed, and optionally sets an error code and message to be processed.
<i>ErrCode</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error code.
<i>ErrMsg</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error message.
<i>returncode</i>	Indicates if an error occurs.

The **PreDelete** method is a virtual method that returns a TRUE value by default if pre-delete trigger activity was processed normally. The developer must set the return level to FALSE if any problems occurred in the pre-delete trigger activity code. When **PreDelete** returns FALSE, an ERRORCODE 100 (trigger error) is posted. If *ErrCode* is set, then FILEERRORCODE will be set to the contents of *ErrCode* when the error is processed by the ErrorClass object for the associated file (table). Similarly, FILEERROR will be set to *ErrMsg*.

The **PreDelete** method is accessible from a table's trigger properties located in the Dictionary Editor, or, in the Global Embeds of a target application

Implementation: **PreDelete** is implemented using the file driver callback mechanism, therefore, this method will have access to all variables that the File Manager has access to. These variables and the ones added in the Data section of the method will allow the developer to insert code that will be executed after a CHANGE action for a file.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
CODE
!Push any pending errors on stack, to allow trigger error detection
PUSHERRORS()
ReturnValue = PARENT.PreDelete(ErrCode,ErrMsg) !returns TRUE by default
!trigger processing here - optionally set ErrCode, ErrMsg and ReturnValue
POPERRORS()
!restore errors saved on the stack
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: **PostDelete**

PreInsert

PreUpdate

PreInsert(trigger insert action pre-processing)

PreInsert(*OpCode*, *AddLength* *ErrCode*, *ErrMsg*), *returncode*

PreInsert	Returns confirmation that valid dictionary trigger activity has occurred before an insert action, and optionally sets an error code and message to be processed.
<i>OpCode</i>	A SIGNED integer that indicates the type of ADD that will be attempted.
<i>AddLength</i>	An UNSIGNED integer that indicates the record length about to be added when the ADD (File, Length) mode is active.
<i>ErrCode</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error code.
<i>ErrMsg</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error message.
<i>returncode</i>	Indicates if an error occurs.

The **PreInsert** method is a virtual method that returns a TRUE value by default if pre-insert trigger activity was processed normally. The developer must set the return level to FALSE if any problems occurred in the pre-insert trigger activity code. When **PreInsert** returns FALSE, an ERRORCODE 100 (trigger error) is posted. If *ErrCode* is set, then FILEERRORCODE will be set to the contents of *ErrCode* when the error is processed by the ErrorClass object for the associated file (table). Similarly, FILEERROR will be set to *ErrMsg*.

The *OpCode* and *AddLength* parameters can be used in your pre-processing trigger code.

DriverOp:ADD	ADD(FILE)
DriverOp:Append	APPEND(FILE)
DriverOp:AddLen	ADD(FILE,LENGTH)
DriverOp:AppendLen	APPEND(FILE,LENGTH)

Use the Equates provided in EQUATES.CLW (shown above) to test the *OpCode*. *AddLength* is used to return the value of the length parameter if used with ADD.

The **PreInsert** method is accessible from a table's trigger properties located in the Dictionary Editor, or, in the Global Embeds of a target application

Implementation: PreInsert is implemented using the file driver callback mechanism, therefore, this method will have access to all variables that the File Manager has access to. These variables and the ones added in the Data section of the method will allow the developer to insert code that will be executed before an INSERT action for a file.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CODE
PUSHERRORS()
ReturnValue = PARENT.PreInsert(OpCode,AddLen,ErrCode,ErrMsg)
  MESSAGE('Trigger Test Before Insert')
  !Trigger code entered here
POPERERRORS()
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: PostInsert, PreDelete, PreUpdate

PreUpdate(trigger update action pre-processing)

PreUpdate(*Pointer*, *PutLength*, *ErrCode*, *ErrMsg*), *returncode*

PreUpdate Returns confirmation that valid dictionary trigger activity has occurred before an attempted action, and optionally sets an error code and message to be processed.

Pointer A LONG that represents the file pointer to be written if PUT (File, Pointer) or PUT (File, Pointer, Length) is used.

PutLength An UNSIGNED integer that represents the number of bytes to write to the file when PUT (File, Pointer, Length) is used.

ErrCode A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error code.

ErrMsg A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents an error message.

returncode Indicates if an error occurs.

The **PreUpdate** method is a virtual method that returns a TRUE value by default if pre-update trigger activity was processed normally. The developer must set the return level to FALSE if any problems occurred in the pre-update trigger activity code. When **PreUpdate** returns FALSE, an ERRORCODE 100 (trigger error) is posted. If *ErrCode* is set, then FILEERRORCODE will be set to the contents of *ErrCode* when the error is processed by the ErrorClass object for the associated file (table). Similarly, FILEERROR will be set to *ErrMsg*.

The **PreUpdate** method is accessible from a table's trigger properties located in the Dictionary Editor, or, in the Global Embeds of a target application

Implementation: PreUpdate is implemented using the file driver callback mechanism, therefore, this method will have access to all variables that the File Manager has access to. These variables and the ones added in the Data section of the method will allow the developer to insert code that will be executed after a CHANGE action for a file.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

CODE
!Push any pending errors on stack, to allow trigger error detection
PUSHERRORS()
  ReturnValue = PARENT.PreUpdate(ErrCode,ErrMsg) !returns TRUE by default
  !trigger processing here - optionally set ErrCode, ErrMsg and ReturnValue
POPERRORS()
!restore errors saved on the stack
RETURN ReturnValue

```

See Also:

- PreDelete
- PostDelete
- PostInsert

Previous (get previous record in sequence)

Previous, PROC

The **Previous** method gets the previous record in sequence. The Previous method handles any errors that occur while getting the record.

The TryPrevious method provides a slightly different (manual) alternative for getting records in sequence.

Implementation: If Previous succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it ultimately fails, it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered while trying to get the previous record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class

Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)  !derive Access:Client object
  END

  CODE
  !program code
  LOOP                             !loop through client file
    CASE Access:Client.Previous()  !get previous record in sequence
    OF Level:Notify OROF Level:Fatal !if error occurred
      POST(Event:CloseWindow)      !shut down
      BREAK
    ELSE                             !otherwise
      PRINT(Rpt:Detail)             !print the record
    END
  END
END

```

See Also: TryPrevious

PrimeAutoInc (prepare an autoincremented record for adding)

PrimeAutoInc, VIRTUAL, PROC

When a record is inserted, the **PrimeAutoInc** method prepares an autoincremented record for adding to the managed file and handles any errors it encounters. If you want to provide an update form that displays the auto-incremented record ID or where RI is used to keep track of children, then you should use the PrimeAutoInc method to prepare the record buffer.

The TryPrimeAutoInc method provides a slightly different (manual) alternative for preparing autoincremented records.

The CancelAutoInc method restores the managed file to its pre-PrimeAutoInc state.

Implementation: The PrimeRecord method calls PrimeAutoInc if the file contains an autoincrementing key.

If PrimeAutoInc succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it ultimately fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to prime the record. See Error Class for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                             !program map
  END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE               !initialize Access:File object
PrimeAutoInc PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL    !prepare new record for adding
      END

Client      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey       KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE()
ID          LONG
Name        STRING(20)
StateCode   STRING(2)
      END
      END

InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
      PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)

```

```

    ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
    PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(82,53,45,14),USE(?Cancel)
END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init           !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init          !initialize Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open          !open the Client file
IF Access:Client.PrimeAutoInc() !prime Client record
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !if prime fails, close down
END

OPEN(InsertWindow)
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
    IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted !on OK button
        IF Access:Client.Insert() = Level:Benign !finish adding the new Client record
            POST(Event:CloseWindow) !if add succeeds, close down
        ELSE
            SELECT(?CLI:Name:Prompt) !select client name field
            CYCLE !and start over
        END
    END
OF ?Cancel
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted !on Cancel button
        Access:Client.CancelAutoInc !restore Client to pre-PrimeRecord
        POST(Event:CloseWindow) !close down
    END
END
END

Access:Client.Close          !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill           !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill           !shut down the GlobalErrors object
RETURN

Access:Client.PrimeAutoInc PROCEDURE
CODE
!your custom code here
PARENT.PrimeAutoInc          !call the base class method
!your custom code here

```

See Also: CancelAutoInc, PrimeRecord, TryPrimeAutoInc

PrimeFields (a virtual to prime fields)

PrimeFields, VIRTUAL

The **PrimeFields** method is a virtual placeholder method to prime fields before adding a record.

Implementation: The ABC Templates use the PrimeFields method to implement field priming specified in the Data Dictionary.

 The PrimeRecord method calls the PrimeFields method before calling the PrimeAutoInc method. You can use the PrimeRecord method to prime the nonincrementing components of an autoincrementing key.

Example:

```
Access:Customer.PrimeFields PROCEDURE  
CODE  
CLI:StateCode = 'FL'
```

PrimeRecord (prepare a record for adding:FileManager)**PrimeRecord**([*suppress clear*]), **VIRTUAL**, **PROC****PrimeRecord** Prepares a record for adding to the managed file.

suppress clear An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether or not to clear the record buffer. A value of zero (0 or False) clears the buffer; a value of one (1 or True) does not clear the buffer. If omitted, *suppress clear* defaults to zero (0).

The **PrimeRecord** method prepares a record for adding to the managed file and returns a value indicating success or failure. A return value of Level:Benign indicates success; any other return value indicates a problem.

Implementation: PrimeRecord prepares the record by optionally clearing the record buffer, then calling the PrimeFields method to prime field values, and the PrimeAutoInc method to increment autoincrementing key values. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC), otherwise it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels. The *suppress clear* parameter lets you clear or retain any other values in the record buffer.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                               !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)    !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE                 !initialize Access:File object
PrimeAutoInc PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL      !prepare new record for adding
      END

Client      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey       KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE( )
ID          LONG
Name        STRING( 20 )
StateCode   STRING( 2 )
      END
END

```



```

InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
    PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(82,53,45,14),USE(?Cancel)
END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init          !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init         !initialize Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open         !open the Client file
IF Access:Client.PrimeRecord() !prime Client record
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !if prime fails, close down
END
OPEN(InsertWindow)
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
    IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted !on OK button
        IF Access:Client.Insert() = Level:Benign !finish adding the new Client record
            POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !if add succeeds, close down
        ELSE
            !if add fails
            SELECT(?CLI:Name:Prompt)    !select client name field
            CYCLE                        !and start over
        END
    END
OF ?Cancel
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted !on Cancel button
        Access:Client.CancelAutoInc !restore Client to pre-PrimeRecord
        POST(Event:CloseWindow)    !close down
    END
END
END

Access:Client.Close         !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill          !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill           !shut down the GlobalErrors object
RETURN

Access:Client.PrimeAutoInc PROCEDURE
CODE
!your custom code here
PARENT.PrimeAutoInc         !call the base class method
!your custom code here

```

See Also: PrimeAutoInc, CancelAutoInc

RestoreBuffer (restore a previously saved record buffer)

RestoreBuffer(*buffer id* [, *restore*])

RestoreBuffer Restores previously saved record buffer contents.

buffer id An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the buffer contents to restore--this is a value returned by the SaveBuffer method.

restore An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to restore the managed file's buffer contents, or simply DISPOSE of the specified buffer. A value of one (1 or True) updates the file's Buffer; a value of zero (0 or False) does not update the file's Buffer. If omitted, *restore* defaults to True.

The **RestoreBuffer** method restores record buffer contents to the managed file's record buffer (the Buffer property). RestoreBuffer restores values previously saved by the SaveBuffer method, including MEMO fields.

Implementation: The RestoreBuffer method releases memory allocated by the SaveBuffer method. Therefore, to prevent a memory leak, each call to SaveBuffer should be paired with a corresponding call to RestoreBuffer. The RestoreBuffer method retrieves and DISPOSEs the specified contents from the Buffers property.

Example:

```
FileManager.RestoreFile PROCEDURE(*USHORT Id)
    CODE
    IF ~SELF.UseFile()
        SELF.Saved.Id = Id
        GET(SELF.Saved,SELF.Saved.Id)
        ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
        IF SELF.Saved.Key &= NULL
            RESET(SELF.File,SELF.Saved.Pos)
        ELSE
            RESET(SELF.Saved.Key,SELF.Saved.Pos)
        END
        IF SELF.Saved.WHeld
            HOLD(SELF.File)
        END
        IF SELF.Saved.WWatch
            WATCH(SELF.File)
        END
        NEXT(SELF.File)
        SELF.RestoreBuffer(SELF.Saved.Buffer)
        DELETE(SELF.Saved)
        Id = 0
    END
```

See Also: Buffer, Buffers, SaveBuffer

RestoreFile (restore a previously saved file state)**RestoreFile**(*filestateid*,*dorestore*)

RestoreFile Restores a previously saved file state.*filestateid* A USHORT returned by the SaveFile method that identifies the file state to restore.*dorestore* An boolean integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression to indicate whether or not to perform the restoration. If omitted, the default of TRUE (1) is implied.

The **RestoreFile** method restores the specified file state for the managed file. RestoreFile restores from states previously saved by the SaveFile method.

Implementation: The RestoreFile method restores file position, as well as any active HOLD or WATCH. RestoreFile calls the RestoreBuffer method to restore the managed file's record buffer contents.

Example:

```

SaveState USHORT                                !must be a USHORT
CODE
SaveState = Access:MyFile.SaveFile()           !save the file state
SET(MyKey,MyKey)                               !access the file (change the file state)
LOOP UNTIL Access:MyFile.Next()
    !Check range limits here
    !Process the record here
END
Access:MyFile.RestoreFile(SaveState)           !restore the previously saved file state

```

See Also: SaveFile, RestoreBuffer

SaveBuffer (save a copy of the record buffer)

SaveBuffer

The **SaveBuffer** method saves a copy of the managed file's record buffer contents (the Buffer property) and returns a number that uniquely identifies the saved record. SaveBuffer stores buffer contents for subsequent retrieval by the RestoreBuffer method.

Implementation: SaveBuffer saves MEMO contents as well as other fields.

SaveBuffer allocates memory which is subsequently released by the RestoreBuffer method. Therefore, to prevent a memory leak, each call to SaveBuffer should be paired with a corresponding call to RestoreBuffer.

Return Data Type: USHORT

Example:

```
FileManager.SaveFile PROCEDURE
Id LONG,AUTO
I SHORT,AUTO
CODE
  Id = RECORDS(SELF.Saved)
  IF Id
    GET(SELF.Saved,Id)
    ASSERT(~ERRORCODE())
    Id = SELF.Saved.Id + 1
  ELSE
    Id = 1
  END
  SELF.Saved.Id = Id
  SELF.Saved.Buffer = SELF.SaveBuffer()
  SELF.Saved.Key &= SELF.File{PROP:CurrentKey}
  SELF.Saved.WHeld = SELF.File{PROP:Held}
  SELF.Saved.WWatch = SELF.File{PROP:Watched}
  IF SELF.Saved.Key &= NULL
    SELF.Saved.Pos = POSITION(SELF.File)
  ELSE
    SELF.Saved.Pos = POSITION(SELF.Saved.Key)
  END
  ADD(SELF.Saved)
  RETURN Id
```

See Also: Buffer, Buffers, RestoreBuffer

SaveFile (save the current file state)

SaveFile

The **SaveFile** method saves the managed file's current state and returns a number that uniquely identifies the saved state. SaveFile saves the managed file's state for subsequent restoration by the RestoreFile method.

Implementation: The SaveFile method saves file position, as well as any active HOLD or WATCH. SaveFile calls the SaveBuffer method to save a copy of the managed file's record buffer contents.

Return Data Type: USHORT

Example:

```
SaveState USHORT                             !must be a USHORT
CODE
SaveState = Access:MyFile.SaveFile()   !save the file state
SET(MyKey,MyKey)                         !access the file (change the file state)
LOOP UNTIL Access:MyFile.Next()
    !Check range limits here
    !Process the record here
END
Access:MyFile.RestoreFile(SaveState)   !restore the previously saved file state
```

See Also: RestoreFile, SaveBuffer

SetError (save the specified error and underlying error state)**SetError**(*error id*)

SetError Saves the specified error and the underlying error state for use by the Throw method, etc.

error id A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the error. See *Error Class* for more information on error id.

The **SetError** method saves the specified error and underlying error state for use by the Throw method, etc.

Example:

```
Access:Client.Next FUNCTION(BYTE HandleError) !Next function
CODE                                     !with alternative error handling
LOOP
  NEXT( SELF.File )                     !get the next record
  CASE ERRORCODE()                      !check for error conditions
    OF BadRecErr OROF NoError
      RETURN Level:Benign
    OF IsHeldErr                         !if record is HELD by another
      SELF.SetError(Msg:RecordHeld)      !make RecordHeld the current error
      IF HandleError                     !if interactive error handling
        RETURN SELF.Throw()              !pass current error to error handler
      ELSE                               !otherwise (silent error handling)
        RETURN Level:Notify              !return error code to caller
      END
    END
  END
END
```

See Also: Throw

SetErrors (set the error class used)**SetErrors(*ErrorClass*)****SetErrors** Sets the Error Class that the file manager uses.*ErrorClass* The label of the ErrorClass object.

The new SetErrors() method of the file manager allows you to set the error class that the file manager uses after it has been initialized.

Example:

```
DLLInitializer.Construct PROCEDURE
```

```
CODE
```

```
!Initialize the local INI manager to use windows INI file
LocalINIMgr.Init('allfiles.INI', NVD_INI)
```

```
INIMgr &= LocalINIMgr
```

```
FuzzyMatcher.Init                                    ! Init the browse 'fuzzy matcher'
FuzzyMatcher.SetOption(MatchOption:NoCase, 1)    ! Configure case matching
FuzzyMatcher.SetOption(MatchOption:WordOnly, 0)! Configure 'word only' matching
```

```
!These procedures are used to initialize the DLL.
```

```
!It must be called by the main executable when it starts up
```

```
allfiles:Init PROCEDURE(<ErrorClass curGlobalErrors>, <INIClass curINIMgr>)
```

```
CODE
```

```
IF ~curGlobalErrors &= NULL
  GlobalErrors &= curGlobalErrors
```

```
END
```

```
IF ~curINIMgr &= NULL
```

```
  INIMgr &= curINIMgr
```

```
END
```

```
Access:Customer.SetErrors(GlobalErrors)
```

```
Access:Orders.SetErrors(GlobalErrors)
```

```
Access:Detail.SetErrors(GlobalErrors)
```

```
Access:Products.SetErrors(GlobalErrors)
```

```
Access:Phones.SetErrors(GlobalErrors)
```

SetKey (set current key)**SetKey(*key*), PROTECTED**

SetKey Makes the specified key current for use by other FileManager methods.*key* The label of the KEY.

The **SetKey** method makes the specified key the current one for use by other FileManager methods.

Example:

```
FileManager.GetComponents FUNCTION(KEY K) !returns the number of key components
CODE
SELF.SetKey(K)                                !locate the specified key
RETURN RECORDS( SELF.Keys.Fields )        !count the components
```


SetName (set current filename)**SetName**(*filename*)

SetName	Sets the variable filename of the managed file.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the filename of the managed file.

The **SetName** method sets the variable filename (NAME attribute) of the managed file. This value determines which file is actually opened and processed by the FileManager object. The filename is also displayed in error messages, etc.

The GetName method returns the name of the managed file.

Implementation: SetName assumes the FileName property is a reference to the file's NAME attribute variable.

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP .                             !program map
  ClientFile STRING(8)              !client filename variable
  GlobalErrors ErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
  Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
  Init PROCEDURE                   !initialize Access:File object
    END

Client  FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),THREAD,NAME(ClientFile)
IDKey   KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record  RECORD,PE()
ID       LONG
Name     STRING(20)
StateCode STRING(2)
        END
        END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init           !initialize the GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init         !initialize the Access:Client object
LOOP I# = 1 TO 12           !step through 12 monthly files
  Access:Client.SetName('Client'&I#) !set the filename variable
  Access:Client.Open         !open the monthly file
  !process the file
  Access:Client.Close        !close the monthly file
END

```

Access:Client.Init PROCEDURE

CODE

```
PARENT.Init(GlobalErrors)    !call the base class Init method
SELF.File &= Client           !point Access:Client to Client file
SELF.Buffer &= CLI:Record     !point Access:Client to Client buffer
SELF.FileName &= ClientFile   !point Access:Client to the filename variable
```

See Also: FileName, FileNameValue, GetName

Throw (pass an error to the error handler for processing)

Throw([*error id*]), VIRTUAL, PROC

Throw Passes the specified error to the error handler object for processing.

error id A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the error to process. If omitted, Throw processes the current error--that is, the error identified by the previous call to SetError or Throw.

The **Throw** method passes the current (last encountered) error to the nominated error handler for processing, including FILEERROR() and FILEERRORCODE() values, then returns the severity level of the error.

Implementation: The SetError method saves the specified error and underlying error state for use by the Throw method. See *Error Class* for more information on error ids and severity levels.

The Init method receives and sets the error handler object.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
Access:Client.Next FUNCTION(BYTE HandleError)!Next function
CODE                                     !with alternative error handling
LOOP
  NEXT( SELF.File )                     !get the next record
  CASE ERRORCOD()                       !check for error conditions
    OF BadRecErr OROF NoError
      RETURN Level:Benign
    OF IsHeldErr                         !if record is HELD by another
      SELF.SetError(Msg:RecordHeld)      !make RecordHeld the current error
      IF HandleError                     !if interactive error handling
        RETURN SELF.Throw()              !pass current error to error handler
      ELSE                               !otherwise (silent error handling)
        RETURN Level:Notify              !return error code to caller
      END
    END
  END
END
```

See Also: Init, SetError

ThrowMessage (pass an error and text to the error handler)**ThrowMessage(*error id*, *text*), VIRTUAL, PROC****ThrowMessage**

Passes the specified error and text to the error handler object for processing.

error id A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the error to process.*text* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression to include in the error message.

The **ThrowMessage** method passes the specified error, including FILEERROR() and FILEERRORCODE() values, and text to the error handler object for processing, then returns the severity level of the error. See *Error Class* for more about error ids and severity levels.

Implementation: The Init method receives and sets the error handler. The incorporation of the *text* into the error message depends on the error handler. See *Error Class*.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
GlobalErrors ErrorClass                                !declare GlobalErrors object

Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)                      !derive Access:Client object
ValidateField FUNCTION(UNSIGNED Id),BYTE,VIRTUAL !prototype Access:File validation
END

Client      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),THREAD
IDKey       KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE()
ID          LONG
Name        STRING(20)
StateCode   STRING(2)
            END
            END
```

```
CODE
!program code

Access:Client.ValidateField FUNCTION(UNSIGNED Id)
CODE
IF ID = 3                !validate statecode (3rd) field
  IF ~CLI:StateCode      !if no statecode,
    !pass error & text to error handler
    RETURN Access:Client.ThrowMessage(Msg:RequiredField,'StateCode')
  END
END
RETURN(LEVEL:Notify)
```

See Also: Init

TryFetch (try to get a specific record by key value)

TryFetch(*key*), VIRTUAL, PROC

TryFetch Gets a specific record by its key value.

key The label of the primed KEY.

The **TryFetch** method gets a specific record by its key value. You must prime the key before calling TryFetch. If the key is not unique, TryFetch gets the first record with the specified key value.

The Fetch method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for fetching specific records.

Implementation: Fetch tries to get the specified record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign. If it fails, it returns Level:Notify and does not clear the record buffer. See *Error Class* for more information on Level:Benign and Level:Notify.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                               !program map
  END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass             !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:States CLASS(FileManager)    !declare Access:States object
  END

States      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE( ST ),CREATE,BINDABLE,TREAD
StateCodeKey KEY( ST:StateCode ),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE( )
StateCode    STRING( 2 )
State        STRING( 20 )
  END
  END

CODE
!program code
!get the state record for Florida
ST:StateCode = 'FL'                 !prime the state key for the fetch
IF Access:States.TryFetch(ST:StateCodeKey)!fetch the record
  GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:FieldNotInFile) !handle any errors yourself
END

```

See Also: Fetch

TryInsert (try to add a new record)**TryInsert, PROC**

The **TryInsert** method adds a new record to the file, making sure the record is valid, and automatically incrementing key values as required. The TryInsert method does not attempt to handle errors.

The Insert method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for adding records.

Implementation: TryInsert tries to add the record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to add the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')           !declare FileManager class
  MAP .                            !program map
  GlobalErrors ErrorClass         !declare GlobalErrors object
  Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
  END
InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
  PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
  ENTRY(@s0),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
  PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)
  ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
  BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
  END
CODE
!program code
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
  IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted      !on OK button
    IF Access:Client.TryInsert() = Level:Benign !add the new Client record
      POST(Event:CloseWindow)        !if add succeeds, close down
    ELSE                             !if add fails
      Access:Client.Throw(Msg:InsertFailed) !handle the error
      Access:Client.CancelPrimeAutoInc !restore the file
    CYCLE                           !and start over
  END
END
!more code

```

See Also: Insert, PrimeRecord

TryNext (try to get next record in sequence)**TryNext, PROC**

The **TryNext** method gets the next record in sequence. The TryNext method does not attempt to handle errors that occur while getting the next record.

The Next method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for getting records in sequence.

Implementation: TryNext tries to get the next record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to get the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM BatchReport                                !batch process--don't display errors
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')                            !declare FileManager class
  MAP                                                !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass                            !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)                  !derive Access:Client object
  END

CODE
!program code
LOOP                                           !loop through client file
  CASE Access:Client.TryNext()                 !get next record in sequence
  OF Level:Notify OROF Level:Fatal             !if error occurred
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)                   !shut down
    BREAK
  ELSE                                         !otherwise
    PRINT(Rpt:Detail)                          !print the record
  END
END

```

See Also: Next

TryOpen (try to open the file)**TryOpen, PROC**

The **TryOpen** method tells the FileManager the calling procedure is using the file, then OPENS the file if it is not already open. The TryOpen method does not attempt to handle errors that occur while opening the file.

The Open method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for opening files.

Implementation: TryOpen tries to open the file. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to open the file. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
  MAP                                !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass              !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager)    !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE                  !prototype Access:File init
      END

Client      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
      END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                    !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init                   !initialize Access:Client object
IF Access:Client.TryOpen              !try to open the Client file
  MESSAGE('Could not open the Client file')  !handle the error yourself
  RETURN
END

!program code

Access:Client.Close                  !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill                   !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill                    !shut down the GlobalErrors object
```

See Also: Open

TryPrevious (try to get previous record in sequence)**TryPrevious, PROC**

The **TryPrevious** method gets the previous record in sequence. The TryPrevious method does not attempt to handle errors that occur while getting the previous record.

The Previous method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for getting records in sequence.

Implementation: TryPrevious tries to get the previous record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to get the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

PROGRAM BatchReport                                !batch report--don't display errors
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')                            !declare FileManager class
  MAP                                              !program map
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass                            !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
  END

CODE
!program code
LOOP                                !loop through client file
  CASE Access:Client.TryPrevious() !get previous record in sequence
  OF Level:Notify OROF Level:Fatal !if error occurred
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)        !shut down
    BREAK
  ELSE                             !otherwise
    PRINT(Rpt:Detail)              !print the record
  END
END
END

```

See Also: Previous

TryPrimeAutoInc (try to prepare an autoincremented record for adding)**TryPrimeAutoInc, VIRTUAL, PROC**

When a record is Inserted, the **TryPrimeAutoInc** method prepares an autoincremented record for adding to the managed file. The TryPrimeAutoInc method does not handle any errors it encounters.

The PrimeAutoInc method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for preparing autoincremented records.

The CancelAutoInc method restores the managed file to its pre-TryPrimeAutoInc state.

Implementation: TryPrimeAutoInc tries to prime the record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to prime the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

PROGRAM
INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )           !declare FileManager class
MAP                               !program map
END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass           !declare GlobalErrors object
Access:Client CLASS(FileManager) !derive Access:Client object
Init      PROCEDURE               !initialize Access:File object
PrimeAutoInc PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL    !prepare new record for adding
      END

Client      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CLI),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
IDKey       KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE()
ID          LONG
Name        STRING(20)
StateCode   STRING(2)
      END
      END

InsertWindow WINDOW('Add a new Client'),AT(,,159,73),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
      PROMPT('&Name:'),AT(8,20),USE(?CLI:Name:Prompt)
      ENTRY(@s20),AT(61,20,84,10),USE(CLI:Name),MSG('Client Name'),REQ
      PROMPT('State Code:'),AT(8,34),USE(?CLI:StateCode:Prompt)

```

```

        ENTRY(@s2),AT(61,34,40,10),USE(CLI:StateCode),MSG('State Code')
        BUTTON('OK'),AT(12,53,45,14),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
        BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(82,53,45,14),USE(?Cancel)
    END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                !initialize GlobalErrors object
Access:Client.Init               !initialize Access:Client object
Access:Client.Open               !open the Client file
IF Access:Client.TryPrimeAutoInc() !prime Client record
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)       !if prime fails, close down
END

OPEN(InsertWindow)
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?OK
    IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted    !on OK button
        IF Access:Client.Insert() = Level:Benign
            !finish adding the new Client record
            POST(Event:CloseWindow) !if add succeeds, close down
        ELSE
            !if add fails
            SELECT(?CLI:Name:Prompt) !select client name field
            CYCLE                     !and start over
        END
    END
OF ?Cancel
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted    !on Cancel button
        Access:Client.CancelAutoInc !restore Client to pre-PrimeRecord
        POST(Event:CloseWindow)     !close down
    END
END
END

Access:Client.Close              !close the Client file
Access:Client.Kill               !shut down the Access:Client object
GlobalErrors.Kill                !shut down the GlobalErrors object
RETURN

Access:Client.PrimeAutoInc PROCEDURE
CODE
    !your custom code here
    PARENT.PrimeAutoInc           !call the base class method
    !your custom code here

```

See Also: CancelAutoInc, PrimeAutoInc

TryReget (try to get a specific record by position)

TryReget(*position*), PROC

TryReget	Gets a specific record by position.
<i>position</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the position of the record to retrieve--typically the value returned by the Position method.

The **TryReget** method retrieves a specific record based its position and returns a success or failure indicator.

Implementation: The TryReget method tries to retrieve the specified record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign; otherwise it returns the severity level of the last error encountered. See Error Class for more information on severity levels.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: Position

TryUpdate (try to change the current record)

TryUpdate, PROC

The **TryUpdate** method changes (rewrites) the current record. The TryUpdate method does not attempt to handle errors that occur while changing the record.

The Update method provides a slightly different (automatic) alternative for changing records.

Implementation: TryUpdate tries to change the record. If it succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns the severity level of the error it encountered while trying to change the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Note: This method does not handle referential integrity (RI) between related files. The **RelationManager** class enforces RI between related files.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: Update

TryValidateField(validate field contents)**TryValidateField(*fieldid*), PROC, VIRTUAL**

TryValidateField Validates the current record buffer value of the specified field and returns a success or failure indicator.

fieldid A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the field to validate. The field is identified by its position in the FILE declaration. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc.

The **TryValidateField** method initiates the validation of the field's buffer and requests that no errors be reported to the user. Level:Benign is returned if no errors occur.

Implementation: The TryValidateField method calls the ValidateFieldServer method to validate the field's contents.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: FileManager.ValidateFieldServer, FileManager.ValidateField

Update (change the current record)

Update, PROC

The **Update** method changes (rewrites) the current record. The Update method handles any errors that occur while changing the record.

The TryUpdate method provides a slightly different (manual) alternative for changing records.

Implementation: If Update succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it ultimately fails, it returns the severity level of the last error it encountered while trying to change the record. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Note: This method does not handle referential integrity (RI) between related files. The RelationManager class enforces RI between related files.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: TryUpdate

UseFile (use LazyOpen file)**UseFile, PROC**

UseFile	The UseFile method notifies ABC Library objects that the managed file whose opening was delayed by the LazyOpen property is about to be used. UseFile returns a value indicating whether the file is ready for use. A return value of Level:Benign indicates the file is ready; any other return value indicates a problem.
<i>usetype</i>	<p>A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines how UseFile handles the file buffer.</p> <p>A value of UseType:Corrupts changes the value in the file buffer but does not rely on the new value.</p> <p>A value of UseType:Uses changes the value of the file buffer and then uses that value.</p> <p>A value of UseType>Returns holds a value from the file buffer to return it to the parent. This mode is useful if you have a form record split between two windows and need to preserve the values from one to the next.</p> <p>A value of UseType:Benign indicates that no special file buffer handling is requested.</p>

Implementation:

UseFile return values are declared in ABERROR.INC. See Error Class for more information on these severity levels. The UseType EQUATEs are declared in ABFILE.INC as follows:

```

UseType  ITEMIZE(1),PRE
Corrupts EQUATE
Uses     EQUATE
Returns  EQUATE
Benign   EQUATE
        END

```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
FileManager.TryFetch PROCEDURE(KEY Key)
CODE
  IF SELF.UseFile() THEN RETURN Level:Fatal. !really open the file
  GET(SELF.File,Key)
  IF ERRORCODE()
    RETURN Level:Notify
  ELSE
    RETURN Level:Benign
  END
```

See Also: LazyOpen

ValidateField (validate a field)**ValidateField**(*field id*), VIRTUAL, PROC

ValidateField Validates the current record buffer value of the specified field and returns a success or failure indicator.

field id A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the field to validate. The field is identified by its position in the FILE declaration. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc.

The **ValidateField** method initiates the validation of the field's buffer and requests that any errors be reported to the user. Level:Benign is returned if no errors occur.

Implementation: The ValidateField method calls the ValidateFieldServer method to validate the field's contents.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

MyFile  FILE,DIVER('TOPSPEED'),THREAD
Record  RECORD,PRE()
TGroup  GROUP                                !field id 1
Name     STRING(20)                          !field id 2
Name2    STRING(20)                          !field id 3
FirstName STRING(10),OVER(Name2)             !field id 4
        END
Another  STRING(10)                          !field id 5
        END
        END
CODE
!program code
Access:MyFile.ValidateField(4)               !validate FirstName

```

See Also: ValidateFields, ValidateFieldServer

ValidateFields (validate a range of fields)

ValidateFields(*firstfield*, *lastfield* [,*failed*]), **VIRTUAL**, **PROTECTED**, **PROC**

ValidateField	Validates the specified range of fields in the current record buffer and returns a success or failure indicator.
<i>firstfield</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the first field to validate by its position in the FILE declaration. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc.
<i>lastfield</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the last field to validate by its position in the FILE declaration. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc.
<i>failed</i>	A signed numeric variable that receives the identifier of the field that failed the validation process. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc. If omitted, the calling procedure gets no indication of which field failed the validation process.

The **ValidateField** method validates the specified range of fields in the current record buffer and returns a success or failure indicator, and optionally identifies the field that failed the validation process.

Implementation: The **ValidateFields** method invokes the **ValidateField** method for each field in the range *firstfield* to *lastfield*.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

See Also: **ValidateField**

ValidateFieldServer(validate field contents)

ValidateFieldServer(*field id*, *handle errors*), PROC, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

ValidateFieldServer

Validates the current record buffer value of the specified field and returns a success or failure indicator.

field id A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the field to validate. The field is identified by its position in the FILE declaration. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc.

handle errors An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates an error has occurred when validating the field id.

The **ValidateFieldServer** method validates the specified field in the current record buffer and returns a success or failure indicator. If an error occurs when the field's buffer is validated an error message (Msg:FieldNotInFile) is indicated to the user.

Implementation: The ValidateFieldServer method simply returns a zero (0). By convention a return value of zero (0) indicates a valid field and any other value indicates a problem. The ABC Templates derive a file-specific ValidateFieldServer method for each file that implements Validity Checks specified in the Clarion data dictionary.

The ValidateField and TryValidateField methods both call ValidateFieldServer to do their work, any global editing functions added by deriving the FileManager Class should be placed in the ValidateFieldServer method to assure that they will be executed by both the Validate and TryValidate methods.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: FileManager.TryValidateField, FileManager.ValidateField

ValidateRecord (validate all fields)**ValidateRecord([*failed*]), VIRTUAL****ValidateRecord**

Validates all the fields in the current record buffer and returns a success or failure indicator.

failed A signed numeric variable that receives the identifier of the field that failed the validation process. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc. If omitted, the calling procedure gets no indication of which field failed the validation process.

The **ValidateRecord** method validates all the fields in the current record buffer and returns a success or failure indicator, and optionally identifies the field that failed the validation process.

Implementation: The ValidateRecord method invokes the ValidateField method for each field in the record.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

See Also: **FileManager.ValidateField**

FilterLocatorClass

FilterLocatorClass Overview

The FilterLocatorClass is an IncrementalLocatorClass that filters or limits the result set of the BrowseClass object's underlying view. That is, it not only locates matching items in the result set, but it limits the result set to only those items.

Use a Filter Locator when you want a multi-character search on alphanumeric keys and you want to *minimize network traffic*.

FilterLocatorClass Concepts

A Filter Locator is a multi-character locator, with no locator control required (but strongly recommended). The FilterLocatorClass lets you specify a locator control and a field on which to search for a BrowseClass object. The locator control accepts a search value which the FilterLocatorClass applies to the search field. The search can match the search value beginning with the first position of the search field ("begins with" search), or it can match the search value anywhere within the search field ("contains" search).

When the end user places one or more characters in the locator control, then *accepts* the control by pressing TAB, pressing a locator button, or selecting another control on the screen, the FilterLocatorClass creates a filter expression based on the input search value and applies the filter. Each additional (incremental) search character supplied results in a smaller, more refined result set. For example, a search value of 'A' returns all records from 'AA' to 'Az'; a search value of 'AB' returns all records from 'ABA' to 'ABz', and so on.

The Filter Locator determines the boundaries for the search based on the user specified search value. The implementation of the boundaries depends on the database--for SQL databases, the Filter Locator uses a LIKE; for ISAM databases it supplies upper and lower bounds.

Tip: The Filter Locator performs very well on SQL databases and on high order key component fields; however, performance may suffer if applied to non-key fields or low order key fields of non-SQL databases.

FilterLocatorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass optionally uses the FilterLocatorClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass objects use a FilterLocator, then your program must instantiate the FilterLocatorClass for each use. Once you register the FilterLocatorClass object with the BrowseClass object (see BrowseClass.AddLocator), the BrowseClass object uses the FilterLocatorClass object as needed, with no other code required. See the Conceptual Example.

FilterLocatorClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC BrowseBox template generates code to instantiate the FilterLocatorClass for your BrowseBoxes. The FilterLocatorClass objects are called BRW*n*::Sort#:Locator, where *n* is the template instance number and # is the sort sequence (id) number. As this implies, you can have a different locator for each BrowseClass object sort order.

You can use the BrowseBox's **Locator Behavior** dialog (the **Locator Class** button) to derive from the EntryLocatorClass. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the locator's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

FilterLocatorClass Source Files

The FilterLocatorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific FilterLocatorClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	FilterLocatorClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	FilterLocatorClass method definitions

FilterLocatorClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a BrowseClass object and related objects, including a Locator object. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including scrolling, updating, and locating records.

Note that the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the locator.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )           !declare WindowManager class
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )           !declare BrowseClass and Locator
  MAP
  END

State      FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ST ), THREAD
StateCodeKey KEY( ST:STATECODE ), NOCASE, OPT
Record     RECORD, PRE( )
STATECODE  STRING( 2 )
STATENAME  STRING( 20 )
          END
          END
StView     VIEW( State )               !declare VIEW to process
          END
StateQ     QUEUE                       !declare Q for LIST
ST:STATECODE LIKE( ST:STATECODE )

```



```

ST:STATENAME LIKE(ST:STATENAME)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
    END

Access:State CLASS(FileManager)      !declare Access:State object
Init          PROCEDURE
    END
Relate:State CLASS(RelationManager) !declare Relate:State object
Init          PROCEDURE
    END
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD

StWindow WINDOW('Browse States'),AT(,,123,152),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('Find:'),AT(9,6)
    ENTRY(@s2),AT(29,4),USE(ST:STATECODE)
    LIST,AT(8,5,108,124),USE(?StList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(StateQ),|
    FORMAT('27L(2)|M~CODE~@s2@80L(2)|M~STATENAME~@s20@')
    END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)      !declare ThisWindow object
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
    END
BrowseSt CLASS(BrowseClass)          !declare BrowseSt object
Q          &StateQ
    END

StLocator FilterLocatorClass          !declare StLocator object
StStep StepStringClass                !declare StStep object

CODE
    ThisWindow.Run()                  !run the window procedure

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()           !initialize things
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()        !call base class init
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    Relate:State.Init                  !initialize Relate:State object
    SELF.FirstField = ?ST:STATECODE    !set FirstField for ThisWindow
    SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest      !VCRRequest not used
    Relate:State.Open                  !open State and related files
    !Init BrowseSt object by naming its LIST,VIEW,Q,RelationManager & WindowManager
    BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
    OPEN(StWindow)
    SELF.Opened=True
    BrowseSt.Q &= StateQ               !reference the browse QUEUE
    StStep.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime) !initialize the StStep object

```

```

BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(StStep,ST:StateCodeKey)      !set the browse sort order
BrowseSt.AddLocator(StLocator)                    !plug in the browse locator
StLocator.Init(?ST:STATECODE,ST:STATECODE,1,BrowseSt) !initialize the locator object
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATECODE,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATECODE) !set a column to browse
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATENAME,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATENAME) !set a column to browse
SELF.SetAlerts()                                  !alert any keys for ThisWindow
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()                      !shut down things
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()                        !call base class shut down
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Close                                !close State and related files
Relate:State.Kill                                  !shut down Relate:State object
GlobalErrors.Kill                                  !shut down GlobalErrors object
RETURN ReturnValue

```

FilterLocatorClass Properties

FilterLocatorClass Properties

The FilterLocatorClass inherits all the properties of the IncrementalLocatorClass from which it is derived. See *IncrementalLocatorClass Properties* and *LocatorClass Concepts* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the FilterLocatorClass also contains the following property:

FloatRight ("contains" or "begins with" flag)

FloatRight **BYTE**

The **FloatRight** property determines whether the FilterLocator applies the search value to the entire field (field *contains* search value) or only to the leftmost field positions (field *begins with* search value). A value of one (1 or True) applies the "contains" test; a value of zero (0 or False) applies the "begins with" test.

The FilterLocatorClass does not initialize the FloatRight property, therefore FloatRight defaults to zero.

Implementation: The UpdateWindow method implements the action specified by the FloatRight property.

Example: A FilterLocator searching for "ba" returns:

FloatRight=False	FloatRight=True
Bain	Bain
Barber	Barber
Bayert	Bayert
	Dunbar
	Suba

See Also: UpdateWindow

FilterLocatorClass Methods

FilterLocatorClass Methods

The FilterLocatorClass inherits all the methods of the IncrementalLocatorClass from which it is derived. See *IncrementalLocatorClass Methods* and *LocatorClass Concepts* for more information.

TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value:FilterLocatorClass)

TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL

The **TakeAccepted** method processes the accepted locator value and returns a value indicating whether the BrowseClass list display should be updated. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates the list should be refreshed; a return value of zero (0 or False) indicates no refresh is needed.

This method is only appropriate for LocatorClass objects with locator controls that accept user input; for example, entry controls, combo controls, or spin controls.

A locator value is accepted when the end user changes the locator value, then TABS off the locator control or otherwise switches focus to another control on the same window.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method primes the FreeElement property with the appropriate search value. If there is a search value, TakeAccepted calls the UpdateWindow method to apply the search value.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator PROCEDURE !process an accepted locator entry
CODE
IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL AND ACCEPTED() = SELF.Sort.Locator.Control
  IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeAccepted() !call locator take accepted method
    SELF.Reset(1) !if search needed, reset the view
    SELECT(SELF.ListControl) !focus on the browse list control
    SELF.ResetQueue( Reset:Done ) !reload the browse queue
    IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL !if locator is present
      SELF.Sort.Locator.Reset ! match search value to actual record
    END
  END
END
```

See Also: FreeElement

UpdateWindow (apply the search criteria)

UpdateWindow, VIRTUAL

The **UpdateWindow** method applies the search criteria and redraws the locator control with its current value.

Implementation: The UpdateWindow method refilters the underlying view, primes the FreeElement property with the current search value (the Shadow property), then redraws the locator control.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.UpdateWindow PROCEDURE          !update browse related controls
CODE
  IF ~(SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL)            !if locator is present
    SELF.Sort.Locator.UpdateWindow            ! redraw locator control
  END
```


FuzzyClass

FuzzyClass Overview

The FuzzyClass supports the BrowseFuzzyMatching control template. These classes provide the searching and weighting algorithms.

FuzzyMatching provides a way to search for a value and get all records that have that value somewhere in the record's columns. The data returned is weighted based on where in the record the value exists.

Lets see this in an example. Using a database of Books, we might have some fields such as Title, Author, and ISBN. If we choose to search for the value of 'Potter', we will get all records which have 'Potter' in the Title (Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire) or in the Author (Beatrix Potter).

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The FuzzyClass is completely independent of other Application Builder Classes.

FuzzyClass ABC Template Implementation

The FuzzyClass is instantiated globally in any application that has the global 'Enable Fuzzy Matching' box turned on. The global settings also have two options, Ignore Case and Word Only that can optionally be set for Fuzzy Matching.

To use FuzzyMatching within a procedure, add the control template to the window. This will add a GROUP control that contains an ENTRY control and 2 BUTTON controls.

FuzzyClass Source Files

The FuzzyClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific FuzzyClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABFUZZY.INC	FuzzyClass declarations
ABFUZZY.CLW	FuzzyClass method definitions

FuzzyClass Properties

The FuzzyClass contains no public properties.

FuzzyClass Methods

Construct (initialize FuzzyClass object)

Construct

The **Construct** method performs the necessary code to initialize the FuzzyClass object.

Implementation: The Construct method is automatically called when the object is instantiated.

Init (initialize FuzzyClass object)

Init

The **Init** method performs the necessary code to initialize the FuzzyClass object and its default settings.

Implementation: The Init method is called globally in the start of an application.

Kill (shutdown FuzzyClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method performs the necessary code to initialize the FuzzyClass object and its default settings.

Implementation: The Kill method is called globally at the end of the application.

Match (find query matches)**Match**(*document*, *query*)

Match	Finds matching records based on the query.
<i>document</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE or expression that is compared against when matching records.
<i>query</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the value to search on.

The **Match** method returns a value based on where an instance of the query is found within the *document*.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

SetOption (set fuzzymatch options)**SetOption**(*whichoption*, *value*)

SetOption	Set the Ignore Case and Word Only options.
<i>whichoption</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies which option to set. The equates for these options are located in ABFUZZY.INC. MatchOption:NoCase sets the Ignore Case option. MatchOption:WordOnly sets the Word Only option.
<i>value</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value for the option. A value of one (1 or True) will set the option on; a value of zero (0 or False) will turn the option off. The default value is True.

The **SetOption** method logically sets one of the two options available for FuzzyMatching. These are *Ignore Case* and *Word Only*. When *Ignore Case* is set the query is case insensitive. *Word Only* finds the query value only if it is a separate word (denoted by a space directly before and directly after the text).

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
FuzzyMatcher.SetOption(MatchOption:NoCase, 1)      !set for case insensitive search
FuzzyMatcher.SetOption(MatchOption:WordOnly, 0)    !turn off word only search
```

FormVCRClass

FormVCRClass Overview

The FormVCRClass is a special class that uses a group control populated with scrolling and update buttons. It is designed as an accessory to a Form procedure that is designed to function independently from a standard Browse procedure.

Use the FormVCRClass template when you want to call a form directly from a menu item or button and use the FormVCRClass to navigate through a primary file and perform standard update actions.

FormVCRClass Concepts

The FormVCRClass lets you specify a group control with navigation and standard update buttons.

As the form is first opened, internal properties are set that control what buttons are disabled and what database operations are allowed.

FormVCRClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The FormVCRClass is closely integrated with several other ABC Library objects--in particular the WindowManager and ToolbarClass objects. These objects register their presence with each other, set each other's properties, and call each other's methods as needed to accomplish their respective tasks.

The FormVCRClass is derived from the ViewManager, plus it relies on many of the other Application Builder Classes (RelationManager, ToolbarClass, etc.) to accomplish its tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the FormVCRClass, it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the FormVCRClass header (ABVCRFRM.INC) in your program's data section.

FormVCRClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local FormVCR class *and* object for each instance of the FormVCRControl template. The ABC Templates automatically include all the classes necessary to support the functionality specified in the FormVCRControl template.

The FormVCR Control Template requires the use of the SaveButton Control Template, which is the framework of the Form template.

FormVCRClass Source Files

The FormVCRClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific FormVCRClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABVCRFRM.INC	FormVCRClass declarations
ABVCRFRM.CLW	FormVCRClass method definitions

FormVCRClass Properties

QuickScan (buffered reads flag)

QuickScan **BYTE**

The **QuickScan** property contains a value that tells the FormVCRClass whether or not to quickscan when paging up or down within the form. Quick scanning only affects file systems that use multi-record buffers. See *Database Drivers* for more information.

A value of zero (0) disables quick scanning; a non-zero value enables quick scanning. Quick scanning is the normal way to read records for browsing. However, rereading the buffer may provide slightly improved data integrity in some multi-user circumstances at the cost of substantially slower reads.

Implementation: The **QuickScan** property sets SetQuickScan method, which SENDs the QUICKSCAN driver string to the file driver for each specified file. The QUICKSCAN driver string is supported by the ASCII, BASIC, and DOS drivers.

Toolbar (FormVCR Toolbar object)

Toolbar &ToolbarClass

The **Toolbar** property is a reference to the ToolbarClass for this FormVCRClass object. The ToolbarClass object collects toolbar events and passes them on to the active ToolbarTarget object for processing.

The AddToolbarTarget method registers a ToolbarTarget, such as a ToolbarListBoxClass object, as a potential target of a ToolbarClass object.

The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active target for a ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass object for FormVCR controls is the object that detects toolbar events, such as scroll down or page down, and passes them on to the *active* ToolbarListBoxClass (ToolbarTarget) object. In the standard template implementation, there is a single global toolbar, and a ToolbarClass object per procedure that may drive several different browses and forms, each of which is a ToolbarTarget. Only one ToolbarTarget is active at a time.

ToolbarItem (FormVCR ToolbarTarget object)

ToolbarItem &ToolbarListBoxClass

The **ToolbarItem** property is a reference to the ToolbarListBoxClass for this FormVCRClass object. The ToolbarListBoxClass (ToolbarTarget) object receives toolbar events (from a ToolbarClass object) and processes them.

The AddToolbarTarget method registers a ToolbarTarget, such as a ToolbarListBoxClass object, as a potential target of a ToolbarClass object.

The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active target for a ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass object for the Form VCR controls is the object that detects toolbar events, such as scroll down or page down, and passes them on to the *active* ToolbarListBoxClass (ToolbarTarget) object. In the standard template implementation, there is a single global toolbar, and a ToolbarClass object per procedure that may drive several different browses and forms, each of which is a ToolbarTarget. Only one ToolbarTarget is active at a time.

See Also: Toolbar, AddToolbarTarget, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

ViewPosition (store the current record position)**ViewPosition** **STRING(1024)**

The **ViewPosition** property stores the unique position of the current record.

Implementation: Position returns the POSITION of the primary key if there is one; otherwise it returns the file POSITION. See the *Language Reference* for more information on POSITION.

Example:

```

FormVCRClass.TakeEvent                    PROCEDURE
VSP BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  SELF.Window.Update()
  IF EVENT()=EVENT:Accepted THEN
    CASE ACCEPTED()
      OF SELF.Window.OkControl
      OROF SELF.Window.SaveControl
        SELF.ViewPosition=POSITION(SELF.View)
        SELF.SaveRequired = True
        IF SELF.OnFirstRecord THEN
          SELF.MoveDirection = Event.ScrollDown
        END
      ELSE
        IF NOT 0{PROP:AcceptAll} THEN
          SELF.TakeAcceptedLocator()
        END
      END
    END
  END
END

```

FormVCRClass Methods:

AddToolBarTarget (set the FormVCR toolbar)

AddToolBarTarget(*toolbar*)

AddToolBarTarget Registers the FormVCR object as a potential target of the specified *toolbar*.

toolbar The label of the ToolbarClass object that directs toolbar events to this FormVCRClass object.

The **AddToolBarTarget** method registers the FormVCRClass object as a potential target of the specified *toolbar*. The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active target for a ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The Toolbar object for a FormVCR is the object that detects toolbar events, such as scroll down or page down, and passes them on to the *active* ToolbarTarget object. In the standard template implementation, there is a single global toolbar, and a Toolbar object per procedure that may drive several different browses and forms, each of which is a ToolbarTarget. Only one ToolbarTarget is active at a time.

Example:

```

OPEN(QuickWindow)                                ! Open window
SELF.Opened=True
FormVCR6.Init|
  (?FormVCRControls,10,FormVCR6::View,Relate:people,SELF) ! Init FormVCR manager
  FormVCR6.InsertWhenNoRecords = True
  FormVCR6.SetVCRControls|
  (?FormVCR:Top,?FormVCR:PageUp,?FormVCR:Up,?FormVCR:Down,?FormVCR:PageDown,|
  ?FormVCR:Bottom)
  FormVCR6.SetRequestControl|
  (?FormVCR:Request,?FormVCR:Request:View,?FormVCR:Request:Insert,?FormVCR:Request:Change,|
  ?FormVCR:Request:Delete)
  Do DefineListboxStyle
  FormVCR6.AddSortOrder()                          !Add the sort order for sort order 1
! Controls like list boxes will resize, whilst controls like buttons will move
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface,Resize:SetMinSize)
SELF.AddItem(Resizer)                              ! Add resizer to window manager
SELF.AddItem(ToolBarForm)
FormVCR6.AddToolBarTarget(ToolBar)                 ! Browse accepts toolbar control
FormVCR6.Reset
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

```

See Also: Toolbar, ToolbarItem, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

Init (initialize the FormVCR object)

Init (*listcontrol*, *pagesize*, *view*, *relationmanager*, *windowmanager*)

Init	Initializes the FormVCR object.
<i>listcontrol</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the FormVCR GROUP control.
<i>pagesize</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the number of records to page in the FormVCR object.
<i>view</i>	The label of the FormVCR's underlying VIEW.
<i>relationmanager</i>	The label of the FormVCR primary file RelationManager object. See <i>Relation Manager</i> for more information.
<i>windowmanager</i>	The label of the FormVCR WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the FormVCR object.

Implementation: In addition to other things (like initialization of properties), the Init method calls the PARENT.Init method to initialize the FormVCR ViewManager object.

Example:

```

OPEN(QuickWindow)                ! Open window
    SELF.Opened=True
! Initialize the FormVCR manager
FormVCR6.Init(?FormVCRControls,10,FormVCR6::View,Relate:people,SELF)
```

InitSort (initialize locator values)

InitSort (*neworder*), **VIRTUAL**

The **InitSort** method initializes locator values when a new sort order is applied to a browse list.

See Also: **SetSort**

Kill (shut down the FormVCR object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method shuts down the FormVCR object.

Implementation: Among other things, the ForVCR.Kill method calls the PARENT.Kill (ViewManager.Kill) method to shut down the browse's ViewManager object. See *View Manager* for more information.

CheckBorders (check for existence of records)

CheckBorders(), VIRTUAL

CheckBorders Checks for the existence of records.

The **CheckBorders** method is a virtual method used to check for the existence of records after the FormVCR class has completed an update.

Implementation: The CheckBorders method is called from the UpdateWindow, ResetSort, TakeRequestChanged methods, and set a number of private properties used to control the display state of the FormVCR controls.

Example:

```
FormVCRClass.UpdateWindow PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF ~(SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL)
    SELF.Sort.Locator.UpdateWindow
  END
  SELF.CheckBorders
  SELF.UpdateButtons
  IF ~SELF.Toolbar &= NULL
    SELF.Toolbar.DisplayButtons
  END
```

GetAction (return FormVCR action)**GetAction(), BYTE, VIRTUAL****GetAction** Detect that an action has taken place.

The **GetAction** method is a virtual method used by the ToolBarClass to detect and process actions posted by the FormVCR class.

Implementation: The GetAction method is called from the ToolbarFormVCRClass to detect an action and enable/disable buttons where appropriate.

Example:

```

ToolbarFormVCRClass.DisplayButtons PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF SELF.FormVCR.GetAction( )=InsertRecord THEN
    ENABLE(Toolbar:History)
  ELSE
    DISABLE(Toolbar:History)
  END
  Toolbar:Bottom{PROP:DISABLE} =|
  CHOOSE(SELF.FormVCR.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:ScrollBottom,0),False,True)
  Toolbar:Top{PROP:DISABLE} =|
  CHOOSE(SELF.FormVCR.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:ScrollTop,0),False,True)
  Toolbar:PageDown{PROP:DISABLE} =|
  CHOOSE(SELF.FormVCR.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:PageDown,0),False,True)
  Toolbar:PageUp{PROP:DISABLE} =|
  CHOOSE(SELF.FormVCR.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:PageUp,0),False,True)
  Toolbar:Down{PROP:DISABLE} =|
  CHOOSE(SELF.FormVCR.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:ScrollDown,0),False,True)
  Toolbar:Up{PROP:DISABLE} =|
  CHOOSE(SELF.FormVCR.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:ScrollUp,0),False,True)

  DISABLE(Toolbar:Locate)
  PARENT.DisplayButtons

```

GetActionAllowed (validate a requested FormVCR action)

GetActionAllowed(*event, action*), VIRTUAL

GetActionAllowed Checks for a valid FormVCR action.

The **GetActionAllowed** method is a virtual method used to validate a FormVCR action.

Implementation: The GetActionAllowed method is called by the TakeEvent method and is used to synchronize toolbar buttons with the appropriate FormVCR action..

Example:

```

CASE ACCEPTED()
OF SELF.VCRRequest
  IF SELF.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:Accepted,SELF.Window.Request) THEN
    CHANGE(SELF.VCRRequest,SELF.Window.Request)
    SELF.Window.OriginalRequest = SELF.Window.Request
    SELF.TakeRequestChanged(SELF.VCRPrevRequest,SELF.Window.Request)
    SELF.VCRPrevRequest = SELF.Window.Request
  ELSE
    IF SELF.NoRecords THEN
      SELF.NoRecords = RECORDS(SELF.View)
      IF NOT SELF.GetActionAllowed(EVENT:Accepted,SELF.Window.Request) THEN
        SELF.Window.Request = SELF.VCRPrevRequest
        CHANGE(SELF.VCRRequest,SELF.Window.Request)
        SELF.UpdateWindow
      ELSE
        CHANGE(SELF.VCRRequest,SELF.Window.Request)
        SELF.Window.OriginalRequest = SELF.Window.Request
        SELF.TakeRequestChanged(SELF.VCRPrevRequest,SELF.Window.Request)
        SELF.VCRPrevRequest = SELF.Window.Request
      END
    END
  END
END

```

Next (get the next FormVCR item)**Next(), BYTE, VIRTUAL**

The **Next** method gets the next record from the FormVCR view and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Next returns Level:Benign if successful, Level:Notify if it reached the end of the file, and Level:Fatal if it encountered a fatal error.

Implementation: Corresponding return value EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC. See *Error Class* for more information on these severity level EQUATES.

Level:Benign	EQUATE(0)
Level:User	EQUATE(1)
Level:Program	EQUATE(2)
Level:Fatal	EQUATE(3)
Level:Cancel	EQUATE(4)
Level:Notify	EQUATE(5)

The Next method is called by the Fetch method. Among other things, Next calls the PARENT.Next (ViewManager.Next) method. See *ViewManager* for more information.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

Previous (get the previous FormVCR item)**Previous, VIRTUAL**

The **Previous** method gets the previous record from the FormVCR view and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: Returns Level:Benign if successful, Level:Notify if it reached the end of the file, and Level:Fatal if it encountered a fatal error. Corresponding severity level EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC. See *Error Class* for more information on error severity levels.

Level:Benign	EQUATE(0)
Level:User	EQUATE(1)
Level:Program	EQUATE(2)
Level:Fatal	EQUATE(3)
Level:Cancel	EQUATE(4)
Level:Notify	EQUATE(5)

The Previous method is called by the Fetch method. Among other things, Previous calls the PARENT.Previous (ViewManager.Previous) method. See *ViewManager* for more information.

Return Data Type: BYTE

ResetSort (apply sort order to FormVCR)**ResetSort(*force*), VIRTUAL, PROC**

ResetSort Reapplies the active sort order to the FormVCR controls.

force A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to reset the FormVCR object conditionally or unconditionally. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets the FormVCR; a value of zero (0 or False) only resets the FormVCR as circumstances require (sort order changed, reset fields changed, first loading, etc.).

The **ResetSort** method reapplies the active sort order to the FormVCR object and returns one (1) if the sort order changed; it returns zero (0) if the order did not change. Any range limits, locators, or reset fields associated with the sort order are enabled.

Implementation: The ResetSort method calls the SetSort method to apply the current sort order.

Return Data Type: BYTE

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for FormVCR controls)

SetAlerts, VIRTUAL

The **SetAlerts** method alerts standard keystrokes for the FormVCR controls.

The FormVCR.TakeEvent method processes the alerted keystrokes.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.SetAlerts method alerts the INSERT, DELETE and CTRL+ENTER keys for the browse's list control and calls the LocatorClass.SetAlerts method for each associated locator control. Corresponding keycode EQUATES are declared in KEYCODES.CLW.

SetRequestControl (assign field equates to FormVCR actions)

SetRequestControl

(pVCRRequest, pVCRViewRecord, pVCRInsertRecord, pVCRChangeRecord, pVCRDeleteRecord)

The **SetRequestControl** method assigns the related field equate of a control to a particular FormVCR function. Each parameter specified is a SIGNED integer.

Implementation:

The SetRequestControl method is used to map an appropriate control to a particular database action. If the parameter is not set by the SetRequestControl method, than the action is not supported.

Example:

```
OPEN(QuickWindow)                                ! Open window
    SELF.Opened=True
! Initialize the FormVCR manager
FormVCR6.Init(?FormVCRControls,10,FormVCR6::View,Relate:people,SELF)
FormVCR6.InsertWhenNoRecords = True
FormVCR6.SetVCRControls|
    (?FormVCR:Top,?FormVCR:PageUp,?FormVCR:Up,?FormVCR:Down,|
    ?FormVCR:PageDown,?FormVCR:Bottom)
    FormVCR6.SetRequestControl|
    (?FormVCR:Request,?FormVCR:Request:View,?FormVCR:Request:Insert,|
    ?FormVCR:Request:Change,?FormVCR:Request>Delete)
```

SetVCRControls (assign field equates to FormVCR scrolling)**SetVCRControls**

(pVCRTop, pVCRUp, pVCRPageUp, pVCRPageDown, pVCRDown, pVCRBottom, pVCRNewRecord=0)

The **SetVCRControls** method assigns the related field equate of a control to a particular FormVCR scrolling function. Each parameter specified is a SIGNED integer.

Implementation:

The SetVCRControls method is used to map an appropriate control to a particular scrolling action. If the parameter is not set by the SetVCRControls method, than the action is not supported.

Example:

```

OPEN(QuickWindow)                                ! Open window
    SELF.Opened=True
! Initialize the FormVCR manager
FormVCR6.Init(?FormVCRControls,10,FormVCR6::View,Relate:people,SELF)
FormVCR6.InsertWhenNoRecords = True
FormVCR6.SetVCRControls |
(?FormVCR:Top,?FormVCR:PageUp,?FormVCR:Up,?FormVCR:Down, |
?FormVCR:PageDown,?FormVCR:Bottom)
FormVCR6.SetRequestControl |
(?FormVCR:Request,?FormVCR:Request:View,?FormVCR:Request:Insert, |
?FormVCR:Request:Change,?FormVCR:Request:Delete)

```

SetSort (apply a sort order to the FormVCR group)**SetSort**(*order*, *force reset*), VIRTUAL, PROC

SetSort	Applies a specified sort order to the FormVCR group.
<i>order</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the sort order to apply.
<i>force reset</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that tells the method whether to reset the FormVCR conditionally or unconditionally. A value of zero (0 or False) resets the FormVCR only if circumstances require (sort order changed, reset fields changed, first time loading); a value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets the FormVCR.

The **SetSort** method applies the specified sort *order* to the FormVCR group and returns one (1) if the sort order changed; it returns zero (0) if the sort order did not change. Any range limits, locators, and reset fields associated with the sort order are enabled and applied.

The *order* value is typically a value returned by the ViewManager's AddSortOrder method which identifies the particular sort order. Since AddSortOrder returns sequence numbers, a value of one (1) applies the sort order specified by the first call to AddSortOrder; two (2) applies the sort order specified by the next call to AddSortOrder; etc. A value of zero (0) applies the default sort order.

Implementation: The ResetSort method calls the SetSort method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

TakeAcceptedLocator (apply an accepted FormVCR locator value)

TakeAcceptedLocator, VIRTUAL

The **TakeAcceptedLocator** method applies an accepted locator value to the FormVCR group--the FormVCR object loads the requested item.

Locators with entry controls are the only locators whose values are accepted. Other types of locators are invoked in other ways, for example, with alerted keys. Locator values are accepted when the end user TABS off or otherwise switches focus away from the locator's entry control.

The AddLocator method establishes locators for the browse.

Implementation: The TakeAcceptedLocator method calls the appropriate LocatorClass.TakeAccepted method.

TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event)

TakeEvent, VIRTUAL

The **TakeEvent** method processes the current ACCEPT loop event for the FormVCR object. The TakeEvent method handles all events associated with the FormVCR group.

Implementation: The WindowManager.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeScroll or TakeKey method as appropriate.

TakeLocate (a FormVCR virtual to process each sort)

TakeLocate, VIRTUAL

The **TakeLocate** method is a virtual method that sets the active sort and filter criteria, and enables any necessary toolbar activity.

Implementation: The FormVCR.TakeEvent method calls the TakeLocate method for each Locate event.

TakeScroll (process a FormVCR scroll event)

TakeScroll([*scrollevent*]), VIRTUAL

TakeScroll Processes a scroll event for the FormVCR group.

scrollevent An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the scroll event. Valid scroll events are back one item, forward one item, forward one page, back one page, back to the first item, and ahead to the last item. If omitted, no scrolling occurs.

The **TakeScroll** method processes a scroll event for the FormVCR group.

Implementation: A *scrollevent* value of EVENT:ScrollUp scrolls back one item; EVENT:ScrollDown scrolls ahead one item; EVENT:PageUp scrolls ahead one page; EVENT:PageDown scrolls back one page; EVENT:ScrollTop scrolls to the first item; EVENT:ScrollBottom scrolls to the last item. Corresponding *scrollevent* EQUATES are declared in EQUATES.CLW.

```
EVENT:ScrollUp      EQUATE (03H)
EVENT:ScrollDown    EQUATE (04H)
EVENT:PageUp        EQUATE (05H)
EVENT:PageDown      EQUATE (06H)
EVENT:ScrollTop     EQUATE (07H)
EVENT:ScrollBottom  EQUATE (08H)
```

The TakeScroll method calls the ScrollEnd, ScrollOne, or ScrollPage method as needed.

UpdateWindow (update display variables to match FormVCR action)**UpdateWindow, VIRTUAL**

The **UpdateWindow** method updates display variables to match the current state of the FormVCR group.

Implementation: The FormVCRClass.UpdateWindow method calls the appropriate LocatorClass.UpdateWindow method, which ensures the locator field contains the current search value.

GraphClass

GraphClass Overview

The GraphClass is used to manage and control the SVgraph group control available on windows and reports. This control is created and initialize by the SVGraph control template. At runtime, the group control reads from initial settings of the GraphClass, and arranges the data points into a default graph type format. The data included in this graph includes grouping of data, legends, labels, popup menus, and default print capabilities.

The SVGraph template is most useful for displaying graphical representation of data for nearly every type of business application.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The GraphClass is derived from the GraphAxisClass . It also is affected by a number of other Graph Classes.

The GraphClass is the only class that will be visible to the developer. All other classes are used internally by the Graph Class and are not documented.

GraphClass ABC Template Implementation

The SVGraph template generates code to instantiate the GraphClass for your graph control. The GraphClass objects are called, by default, "GRPn", where *n* is the template instance number. Multiple graph controls may be used in a single procedure.

GraphClass Source Files

The GraphClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific GraphClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

SVGRAPH.INC	GraphClass declarations
SVGRAPH.CLW	GraphClass method definitions
SVGRAPH.EQU	Graph Property Equates and Events

GraphClass Properties

eShowSBonFirstThread (display on base status bar)

eShowSBonFirstThread **BOOL**

eShowSBonFirstThread is a Boolean value that determines if status bar information from the graph object needs to be redirected to the application's first thread.

If the current WINDOW that populated the graph control does not have a Status bar attribute, then **eShowSBonFirstThread** set to TRUE will show graph control information in the status bar of the APPLICATION (first thread). Set this property to FALSE to suppress (hide) this information.

See Also: ShowOnStatusBar

eSumYMax (calculated maximum node value)

eSumYMax **REAL**

eSumYMax is a property that is used to calculate the maximum sum of node values for the accumulation graph types (Bar and Column). This property is used for drawing the diagram (e.g., It is necessary for calculating the height of the highest column).

See Also: CalcGraph

gShowDiagramName (show diagram name on target)**gShowDiagramName****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowDiagramName is used to determine where the diagram name information will be displayed in the graph control. Diagram name (series name) is the label of each set of data points that you have defined for the graph control, with an added 'Diagram:' prompt.

gShowDiagramName uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also: DiagramText, ShowOnField

gShowDiagramNameV (show diagram value on target)**gShowDiagramNameV****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowDiagramNameV is used to determine where the diagram name text information will be displayed in the graph control. Diagram name text (series name) is the label of each set of data points that you have defined for the graph control, without an added 'Diagram:' prompt.

gShowDiagramNameV uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:

DiagramNameText, ShowOnField

gShowMouse (show mouse coordinates on target)

gShowMouse **LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowMouse is used to determine where mouse X and Y coordinates will be displayed in the graph control.

gShowMouse uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
ToShowValues, ToolTip

gShowMouseX (show mouse X coordinate on target)**gShowMouseX****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowMouseX is used to determine where mouse X coordinate information will be displayed in the graph control.

gShowMouseX uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
ToShowValues, ToolTip

gShowMouseY (show mouse Y coordinate on target)**gShowMouseY****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowMouseY is used to determine where mouse Y coordinate information will be displayed in the graph control.

gShowMouseY uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
ToShowValues, ToolTip

gShowNodeName (show node name on target)**gShowNodeName****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowNodeName is used to determine if and where the node name information will be displayed in the graph control. Node name is the full text of the active X and Y Node name, less the "Node:" prompt and values. The text is formed by the NodeText method. Node Text is returned as the full form as follows:

"Node: **name** (X, Y)"

gShowNodeName determines if and where the *name* part of the above node text will be displayed.

gShowNodeName uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
NodeText

gShowNodeNameV (show node name value on target)**gShowNodeNameV****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowNodeNameV is used to determine where the node name value information will be displayed in the graph control. Node name value is the actual node *Name* identifier.

gShowNodeNameV uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
NodeNameText

gShowNodeValue (show node axis values on target)**gShowNodeValue****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowNodeValue is used to determine where the node value information will be displayed in the graph control. Node name value is part of the full text of the active X and Y Node name and values the label of each set of data points that you have defined for the graph control, without an added 'Node:' prompt. The text is formed by the NodeText method. Node Text is returned as the full form as follows:

"Node: name (X, Y)"

gShowNodeValue determines if and where the (X, Y) part of the above node text will be displayed

gShowNodeValue uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
NodeValueText

gShowNodeValueX (show node x-axis value on target)**gShowNodeValueX****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowNodeValueX is used to determine where the node X value information will be displayed in the graph control. The Node X value is the full text of the active X Node.

gShowNodeValueX uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
NodeXText

gShowNodeValueY (show node y-axis value on target)**gShowNodeValueY****LIKE(gShowToType)**

gShowNodeValueY is used to determine where the node Y value information will be displayed in the graph control. The Node Y value is the full text of the active Y Node.

gShowNodeValueY uses the gShowToType GROUP. Each group element is defined as follows:

eOnT	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows information on graph object's ToolTip
eOnW	A BYTE value, when set to TRUE, shows target information on the WINDOW title
eOnF	A LONG integer that identifies the field equate to show the target information. The target field can be any field capable of displaying the designated information.
eOnS	A LONG integer Number of a zone of a status bar of a condition to show the text.

See Also:
NodeYText

GraphClass Methods

AllText (return full graph text information)

AllText

AllText Process and return full graph text to tool tip.

The **AllText** method reads Mouse, Diagram and Node text information from the MouseText, DiagramText and NodeText methods respectively, and returns a formatted string to use in the graph object's tool tip.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Implementation: The AllText method can be called to query the graph object's tool tip text as needed.

See Also: MouseText, DiagramText
 NodeText

BeginRefresh (prepare drawing of graph class object)

BeginRefresh

BeginRefresh Force a redraw of graph object

The **BeginRefresh** method carries out the role of a callback function. This method is called at the beginning of the Refresh method, and used for the purpose of preparing the diagram list and their respective nodes to draw.

The default return value is FALSE. If the method returns TRUE, the graph object is not redrawn.

Return Data Type: **BOOL**

Implementation: The BeginRefresh method is called from the graph object's Refresh method

See Also: Refresh

CalcBestPositionNodeText (calculate graph text best fit position)

CalcBestPositionNodeText

CalcBestPositionNodeText

Calculates the best position of the text used to describe the selected node.

The **CalcBestPositionNodeText** method sets the best position of the node text to be displayed.

Implementation: The method is called if the eBestPositionNodeText property is set to TRUE. This property is set by graph control's procedure template interface. Internally, each node in the graph stores the X and Y position in a local queue.

See Also: CalcGraph

CalcCurrentGraph (calculates values for current graph type)

CalcCurrentGraph

CalcCurrentGraph Calculates the new parameters for a designated graph type.

The **CalcCurrentGraph** method is used to set the parameters for a designated graph type. In the Graph Control template, a user can dynamically switch graph types at runtime. This method determines which graph type was specified and instantiates a new object used to set parameters specific to that graph type.

Implementation: The method is called from the CalcGraph method each time a graph type changes or the window is initially loaded.

See Also: CalcGraph

CalcCurrentNode (calculates values of current node)**CalcCurrentNode**

CalcCurrentNode Calculates all pertinent values for a selected node.

The **CalcCurrentNode** method calculates all attributes of a current node, including fill color, shape, hide property, value, background, min/max values, radius, etc.

Implementation: The method is called from the CalcGraph method., for each node in the current graph type.

See Also: CalcGraph

CalcGraph (calculates all graph object values)**CalcGraph**

CalcGraph Calculates all positions, node values and cosmetic settings for a graph control.

The **CalcGraph** method is used to calculate positions and values for a graph's title, legend, axis, and nodes for a specified graph control.

Implementation: The CalcGraph method is called prior to the DrawGraph method.

See Also: CalcCurrentGraph
CalcCurrentNode
CalcBestPositionNodeText

CalcPopup (create popup menu for graph object)**CalcPopup (PopupClass PopupMgr)**

CalcPopup Creates a popup menu control for a selected graph object.

PopupMgr The reference to an object of a PopupClass type.

The **CalcPopup** method creates a popup menu for specific use with the Graph Class object. It also creates standard popup menu items that are used with all graph types (i.e., Zoom settings).

Implementation: The **CalcPopup** method is called from the GraphClass Popup method, initializing standard menu items for use with all graph types.

See Also: Popup CalcPopupAdd2

CalcPopupAdd2 (create popup menu item text for graph object)**CalcPopupAdd2**(*PopupMgr*, *Text*, *Name*, *Items*, *ItemMask*, *Check*, *CheckValue*)

CalcPopupAdd2	Create popup menu items specific to a selected graph type
<i>PopupMgr</i>	The reference to an object of a <i>PopupClass</i> type.
<i>Text</i>	A string constant, variable, <i>EQUATE</i> , or expression containing the text of the menu item. A single hyphen (-) creates a non-selectable separator (a 3D horizontal bar) on the menu. An ampersand (&) designates the next character as the menu item's hot key.
<i>Name</i>	A string constant, variable, <i>EQUATE</i> , or expression containing the menu item name. Other methods refer to the menu item by its <i>name</i> , not by its <i>text</i> . This lets you apply runtime translation or dynamic reordering of menus without changing your code.
<i>Items</i>	A <i>LONG</i> integer that is bit-mapped and used with <i>ItemMask</i> to determine the availability of a popup menu item based on graph type and area.
<i>ItemMask</i>	A <i>LONG</i> integer that is used with <i>Items</i> to determine a popup items visibility.
<i>Check</i>	A <i>LONG</i> integer compared with <i>CheckValue</i> to determine a popup items initial state (checked/unchecked, enabled/disabled)
<i>CheckValue</i>	A <i>LONG</i> integer that is used with <i>Check</i> to determine a popup items current state.

The **CalcPopupAdd2** method adds conditional popup menu items to the graph control popup based on graph type and other factors. If an item has been added correctly, a non-zero value is returned by the method.

Return Data Type: **LONG**

Implementation: The **CalcPopupAdd2** method is called from the *CalcPopup* method. A set of properties and equates (see *GRAPH.EQU* in the \LIBSRC folder) determine the availability of menu items and their initial state.

See Also: **CalcPopup**

DiagramNameText (create diagram name text)

DiagramNameText(*showtext*)

DiagramNameText

Forms the text of diagram's name

showtext

Enable or suppress text to be returned. Default is TRUE.

The **DiagramNameText** method forms the text of a diagram's name. A diagram name is the text name assigned to a given set of the graph control's data points.

The *showtext* parameter defaults to returning the diagram name text. If the *showtext* Boolean value is set to FALSE, an empty string value is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **DiagramNameText** method is called from any method that needs to update or refresh a graph control's textual elements.

See Also: ToShowValues, AllText

DiagramText (create diagram name text with prompts)

DiagramText(*showtext*)

DiagramText

Forms the full text of a diagram's name

showtext

Enable or suppress text to be returned. Default is TRUE.

The **DiagramText** method forms the full text of a diagram's name. This includes any special prompt information attached to the diagram name. A diagram name is the text name assigned to a given set of the graph control's data points.

The *showtext* parameter defaults to returning the diagram name text. If the *showtext* Boolean value is set to FALSE, an empty string value is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **DiagramText** method is called from any method that needs to update or refresh a graph control's textual elements.

See Also: ToShowValues, AllText
 DiagramNameText

DiagramNameText (create diagram name text)

DiagramNameText(*showtext*)

DiagramNameText Forms the text of diagram's name

showtext Enable or suppress text to be returned. Default is TRUE.

The **DiagramNameText** method forms the text of a diagram's name. A diagram name is the text name assigned to a given set of the graph control's data points.

The *showtext* parameter defaults to returning the diagram name text. If the *showtext* Boolean value is set to FALSE, an empty string value is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **DiagramNameText** method is called from any method that needs to update or refresh a graph control's textual elements.

See Also: ToShowValues, AllText

DiagramText (create diagram name text with prompts)

DiagramText(*showtext*)

DiagramText Forms the full text of a diagram's name

showtext Enable or suppress text to be returned. Default is TRUE.

The **DiagramText** method forms the full text of a diagram's name. This includes any special prompt information attached to the diagram name. A diagram name is the text name assigned to a given set of the graph control's data points.

The *showtext* parameter defaults to returning the diagram name text. If the *showtext* Boolean value is set to FALSE, an empty string value is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **DiagramText** method is called from any method that needs to update or refresh a graph control's textual elements.

See Also: ToShowValues, AllText
DiagramNameText

Draw (calculate and draw GraphClass object)

Draw

Draw Calculates and draws the graph object

The **Draw** method calculates and draws the graph object. It is a parent method that calls other processing methods and divides the individual drawing tasks.

Implementation: The **Draw** method is called from the Resize method which is called from the Refresh method

See Also: Resize

Refresh

CalcGraph

DrawGraph

DrawGraph (draws calculated values)

DrawGraph

DrawGraph Draws the graph object

The **DrawGraph** method draws the graph object, based on calculated values. Its primary purpose is to determine which parts of the graph need to be drawn based on graph type and values.

Implementation: The **DrawGraph** method is called after the CalcGraph method has set the appropriate graph control's values.

See Also: Draw CalcGraph

DrawReport (draw graph object on report)

DrawReport (*parReport*, *parBand*, *parQueue* , [*parBestFit*])

DrawReport	Draws a copy of the graph object into a REPORT structure
<i>parReport</i>	A reference to the target REPORT structure
<i>parBand</i>	A LONG that references the FEQ of the target detail band.
<i>parQueue</i>	The label of the report's print preview queue.
<i>parBestFit</i>	A BYTE value that calculates a best fit when TRUE (Default is FALSE)

The **DrawReport** method draws a copy of the graph object into a REPORT structure and prepares WMF-files for subsequent viewing and printing.

Implementation: The **DrawReport** method is called from the PrintGraph method, prior to the Previewer object is initialized.

See Also: PrintGraph

DrawWallpaper (draw background wallpaper for graph object)

DrawWallpaper

DrawWallpaper Draws the graph object background wallpaper

The **DrawWallpaper** method draws the graph object background wallpaper. The name of the image file should be set in the *eWallpaperFile* property.

Implementation: The **DrawWallpaper** method is called from the DrawGraph method.

See Also: DrawGraph

DrillDown (transfer control to new graph object)

Drilldown (| *parGraphNpp*, *graphName*, *NodeID*, *NodeName*, *Xnode*, *Ynode* |)

Drilldown	Unhides, calculates and draws the target graph object
<i>parGraphNpp</i>	A LONG integer that identifies the GraphID FEQ to process
<i>graphName</i>	String text that identifies the graph name.
<i>NodeID</i>	The positional node value of the active graph control that is passed to the drilldown graph control.
<i>NodeName</i>	The positional node name of the active graph control that is passed to the drilldown graph control.
<i>Xnode</i>	The positional X Node coordinate (in Physical Units) of the active graph control that is passed to the drilldown graph control.
<i>Ynode</i>	The positional Y Node coordinate (in Physical Units) of the active graph control that is passed to the drilldown graph control.

The **Drilldown** method hides the current active graph control, and unhides the target (drilldown) graph control. The target graph object's data points are calculated and drawn.

Optional parameters can be processed by the target drilldown graph control. This allows the target control to be related to the original graph object.

Implementation: The **Drilldown** method is called from the TakeEventOfParent method, when a Drilldown event is posted.

See Also: TakeEventOfParent

ReturnFromDrillDown

FindNearbyNodes (locate nodes based on mouse position)**FindNearbyNodes**(*Xpos*, *Ypos*)**FindNearbyNodes** Finds the closest node based on X and Y Mouse coordinates*Xpos* The current X mouse coordinate position*Ypos* The current Y mouse coordinate position

The **FindNearbyNodes** method returns the closest node id based on the x and y mouse coordinates.

Return Data Type: LONG

Implementation: The **FindNearbyNodes** method is called from the Interactivity method. It is also called in the Drilldown method to accurately return the proper node id when the mouse is clicked.

See Also: Drilldown, Interactivity

GetMouse (get mouse coordinates in all formats)**GetMouse**

The GetMouse method is used to retrieve mouse coordinates each time a mouse event has occurred on the graph control.

Implementation: The **GetMouse** method is called from the TakeEventOfParent method, and sets the following properties:

! Coordinates of the mouse in DC units

self.eMouseX (see mousex())

self.eMouseY (see mousey())

! Coordinates of the mouse in logic (independent) units

self.eMouseXl

self.eMouseYl

! Coordinates of the mouse in physical (node)units

self.eMouseXa

self.eMouseYa

See Also: TakeEventOfParent

GetValueFromField (get contents of specified field)**GetValueFromField** (*fieldeq*)**GetValueFromField**

Retrieve text from a specified control.

fieldeq

An LONG integer that indicates the field equate label of the control the text is to be retrieved.

The **GetValueFromField** method is used to return the contents of a specified field for use in other areas of the graph control (i.e., tool tips).

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **GetValueFromField** method is called from the ToShowValues method.

See Also: AllText, ToShowValues

GetValueFromStatusBar (return status bar zone contents)**GetValueFromStatusBar**(*statuszone*)**GetValueFromStatusBar**

Retrieve text from a window status bar.

statuszone

An LONG integer that indicates which status bar section the text is to be retrieved from.

The **GetValueFromStatusBar** method is used to return the contents of a selected window's status bar zone for use in other areas of the graph control (i.e., tool tips).

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **GetValueFromStatusBar** method is called from the ToShowValues method.

See Also: AllText, ToShowValues

ImageToWMF (Save object and return WMF file name)

ImagetoWMF

The **ImagetoWMF** method is used to transfer a graph object's current state to a WMF file. This file can be used later for printing or additional processing. **ImagetoWMF** returns the name of the WMF file that the graph image is transferred to.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **ImagetoWMF** method is called from the SaveGraph method.

See Also: SaveGraph

Init (Initialize the graph object)

Init (*parWin*, *parFParent*, *parL=0*, *parT=0*, *parR=0*, *parB=0*)

Init Initializes the GraphClass object

parWin The reference to a window where the object is located.

parFParent A LONG identifying the parent id of the graph object.

parL, *parT*, *parR*, *parB*

 Indents from borders of the parent for drawing object.

The **Init** method is used to initialize the graph object prior to display. It calls all of the necessary methods used to set default values and position the graph object.

Implementation: Typically, the **Init** method is paired with the Kill method, performing the converse of the Kill method tasks.

See Also: Kill

Interactivity (process mouse location data to tool tip or control)

Interactivity

The **Interactivity** method processes the mouse coordinates of a graph control, and finds corresponding nodes of diagrams and displays it on a ToolTip or other appropriate target. It is used to keep the mouse and node data in sync.

Implementation: The **Interactivity** method calls several methods (FindNearbyNodes, SetSelectedNode and ToShowValues) to gather node data. It is called during a MouseMove event.

See Also: TakeEventOfParent

IsOverNode (is mouse over node location)

IsOverNode()

The **IsOverNode** method is used to detect a node location to pass to the drilldown procedure. A drilldown graph control is normally selected by doubleclicking on a selected node, but the **IsOverNode** method allows node data to be passed when selecting a drilldown graph from the popup menu.

IsOverNode returns TRUE when a valid node was in range when the mouse right-click was pressed. If the user right-clicks over an area where no node is present, the "Drilldown" or "Return from DrillDown" menu options will be disabled.

Return Data Type: BOOL

Implementation: The **IsOverNode** method is called from the CalcPopup method.

See Also: CalcPopup

Kill (shut down the GraphClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the GraphClass object and performs any other required termination code.

MouseText (creates text and mouse coordinate information)

MouseText(*parShow*)

MouseText Returns text of the active X and Y mouse coordinates.

parShow Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **MouseText** method returns the text of the active X and Y mouse coordinates. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **MouseText** method is called from the ToShowValues and AllText method. It is also used to form the text for the ToolTip method.

See Also: AllText, ToShowValues

MouseXText (generate X coordinate text only)

MouseXText(*parShow*)

MouseXText Returns text of the active X mouse coordinate.

parShow Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **MouseXText** method returns the text of the active X mouse coordinate. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **MouseXText** method is called from the MouseText method.

See Also: AllText, MouseText

MouseYText (generate Y coordinate text only)**MouseYText**(*parShow*)**MouseYText**

Returns text of the active Y mouse coordinate.

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **MouseYText** method returns the text of the active Y mouse coordinate. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **MouseYText** method is called from the MouseText method.

See Also: AllText, MouseText

NodeNameText (generate current node name identifier)**NodeNameText**(*parShow*)**NodeNameText**

Returns text of the active X and Y Node names.

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **NodeNameText** method returns the text of the active X and Y Node names. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **NodeNameText** method is called from the NodeText method.

See Also: AllText, NodeText

NodeText (generate label, name, and node value)**NodeText**(*parShow*)**NodeText**
values.

Returns text of the active X and Y Node name and

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **NodeText** method returns the full text of the active X and Y Node name and values. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **NodeText** method is called from the ToShowValues and AllText methods.

See Also: AllText

NodeTipText (generate node information for tool tip)**NodeTipText**(*parShow*)**NodeTipText**

Returns text of the active node for the tool tip.

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **NodeTipText** method returns the tool tip text of the active X and Y Node values. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the return text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **NodeTipText** method is called from the graph object's ToolTip method.

See Also: AllText, ToolTip

NodeValueText (generate current node value text)**NodeValueText**(*parShow*)**NodeValueText**

Returns text of the active X and Y Node values.

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **NodeValueText** method returns the text of the active X and Y Node values. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **NodeValueText** method is called from the method.

See Also: AllText

NodeXText (generate X node text value)**NodeXText**(*parShow*)**NodeXText**

Returns text of the active X Node value.

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **NodeXText** method returns the text of the active X Node value. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **NodeXText** method is called from the NodeValueText method.

See Also: AllText, NodeValueText

NodeYText (generate Y node text value)

NodeYText(*parShow*)

NodeYText

Returns text of the active Y Node value.

parShow

Flag to conditionally suppress return value.

The **NodeYText** method returns the text of the active Y Node value. If *parShow* is set to FALSE, the node text is suppressed, and an empty string is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Implementation: The **NodeYText** method is called from the NodeValueText method.

See Also: AllText, NodeValueText

Popup (GraphClass object popup menu manager)

Popup

Popup

Creates, displays, and processes the graph object popup menu

The **Popup** method is used to create, display and process the graph object's popup menu (when enabled).

Implementation: The **Popup** method is called if the user right-clicks on a graph control, and the *self.ePopUp* property is set to TRUE.

See Also: CalcPopup

PopupAsk (Display popup menu for graph object)**PopupAsk**(*PopupMgr*)**PopupAsk**

Returns the selected popup menu item name

PopupMgr

The reference to an object of a PopupClass type.

The **PopupAsk** method is used to display and return the graph object popup menu item selected.

Implementation: The **PopupAsk** method is called from the Popup method, and invokes the Ask method references by the Popup Class.

See Also: `PopupMgr.Ask`

PostEvent (send an event to the GraphClass object)**PostEvent** (*eventnumber*)**PostEvent**

Post event to graph object

eventnumber

A LONG value that passes the event number to the graph object

The **PostEvent** method posts an event to the graph object. The graph object event is processed by the appropriate TakeEvent method.

Graph Events are template-defined events, and listed in the SVGRAPH.EQU source file:

```

itemize(3000) ! Events numbered from 3000
event:TitleON      equate ! To show title
event:TitleOFF     equate ! To not show title
event:WallpaperON  equate ! To show Wallpaper
event:WallpaperOFF equate ! To not show Wallpaper
event:3DON         equate ! To draw in 3D mode (if accessible)
event:3DOFF        equate ! To switch off 3D a mode (if accessible)
event:GridON       equate ! To draw a grid (if accessible)
event:GridOFF      equate ! To hide a grid (if accessible)
event:GridXON      equate
event:GridXOFF     equate
event:GridYON      equate
event:GridYOFF     equate
event:AxisScaleMinMaxON  equate
event:AxisScaleMinMaxOFF equate
event:AxisNameON      equate ! To show the names of Axis
event:AxisNameOFF     equate ! To not show the names of Axis
event:GradientON      equate
event:GradientOFF     equate
event:NodeMinMaxON    equate ! To show units of a minimum/maximum
event:NodeMinMaxOFF   equate ! To not show units of a minimum/maximum
event:NodeLabelON     equate ! To show the names of nodes
event:NodeLabelOFF    equate ! To not show the names of nodes
event:NodeValueON     equate ! To show the values of nodes
event:NodeValueOFF    equate ! To not show the values of nodes
event:NodeBgrON       equate
event:NodeBgrOFF      equate
event:LegendBoxON     equate
event:LegendBoxOFF    equate
event:ToolTipON       equate
event:ToolTipOFF      equate
event:Zoom            equate
event:Zoom500         equate
event:Zoom300         equate
event:Zoom200         equate

```

```

event:Zoom100           equate
event:Zoom50            equate
event:Zoom25            equate
event:GraphTypeLine     equate
event:GraphTypeScatterGraph equate
event:GraphTypeAreaGraph equate
event:GraphTypeFloatingArea equate
event:GraphTypeColumnChart equate
event:GraphTypeColumnWithAccumulation equate
event:GraphTypeBarChart equate
event:GraphTypeBarWithAccumulation equate
event:GraphTypeFloatingColumn equate
event:GraphTypeFloatingBar equate
event:GraphTypePieChart equate
event:GraphSubTypeSimple equate
event:GraphSubTypeNormalized equate
event:FigureTypeBar      equate
event:FigureTypeCylinder equate
event:LegendPosition:None equate      ! To not show legend
event:LegendPosition:Left equate
event:LegendPosition:Right equate
event:LegendPosition:Top equate
event:LegendPosition:Bottom equate
event:AxisStyle:None     equate      ! To not show Axis
event:AxisStyle:Standard equate
event:AxisStyle:Long     equate
event:AxisScale          equate
event:AxisScale:Linear   equate
event:AxisScale:AsMSWord equate
event:NodeType:None      equate      ! To not show nodes
event:NodeType:Square    equate      ! To set a type of node as a square
event:NodeType:Triangle  equate      ! To set a type of node as a triangle
event:NodeType:Circle    equate      ! To set a type of node as a circle
event:Refresh            equate      ! To refresh object
event:Draw                equate      ! To draw object
event:Hide                equate      ! To hide object
event:UnHide              equate      ! To unhide object
event:Print               equate      ! To print diagram
event:PrintBestFit        equate
event:Save                 equate      ! To save diagram
event:SaveAs               equate      ! To save the diagram under a new name
event:DrillDown            equate
event:ReturnFromDrillDown equate
end

```

See Also: TakeEvent

PrintGraph (send graph object to printer)**PrintGraph**(*bestfit*)**PrintGraph**

Pre-processes and draws graph object

bestfit

A Boolean value that determines best fit or relative printing

The method allows to choose the printer, draw the graph object (using the DrawReport method), Preview the report, and send pages to the printer.

If the *bestfit* flag is set to FALSE (default), the graph object will print "as is", anchoring the object at the top left corner of the paper.

If the *bestfit* flag is set to TRUE, the graph object will resize to a best fit within the band that it is populated.

Implementation: The **PrintGraph** method is called when graph events Event:Print, or Event:PrintBestFit are posted.

See Also: DrawReport
 TakeEventOfParent

Refresh (refresh drawing of GraphClass object)

Refresh(*parRefresh*)

Refresh

Pre-processes and draws graph object

parRefresh

A Boolean value that determines refresh is active

The **Refresh** method is used to redraw and resize the graph object. This method is called throughout the graph control template when any element of the graph has changed. You can also use the **Refresh** method when data has changed, or initialization of a drilldown graph object is needed.

If the *parRefresh* flag is FALSE (default), the graph object will not be refresh. The **BeginRefresh** method is used to pre-process the **Refresh** method, and set the *parRefresh* flag to TRUE if a refresh is ready to execute.

Implementation: The **Refresh** method is called when a graph event (Event:Refresh) is posted.

See Also: **BeginRefresh**

Resize

Resize (conditional refresh when size changed)

Resize(*redraw*)

Resize

Redraws graph object

redraw

A Boolean value that determines conditional redraw

The **Resize** method is used to reposition and redraw the graph object.

If the *redraw* flag is FALSE (default), the graph object will only redraw if the size of the parent field has changed. If the redraw flag is set to TRUE, a redraw is always executed.

Implementation: The **Resize** method is called from the **Refresh** method when the *parRefresh* property is set to TRUE.

See Also: **Refresh**

Draw

ReturnFromDrillDown (transfer control to graph object after drilldown)**ReturnFromDrillDown**

(| *parGraphNpp* ,*graphName* ,*NodeID* ,*NodeName* ,*Xnode* ,*Ynode* |)

ReturnFromDrilldown

Unhides, calculates and draws the original graph object

<i>parGraphNpp</i>	A LONG integer that identifies the GraphID FEQ to process
<i>graphName</i>	String text that identifies the original graph name.
<i>NodeID</i>	The positional node value of the drilldown graph control that is passed to the active graph control.
<i>NodeName</i>	The positional node name of the drilldown graph control that is passed to the active graph control.
<i>Xnode</i>	The positional X Node coordinate of the drilldown graph control that is passed to the active graph control.
<i>Ynode</i>	The positional Y Node coordinate of the drilldown graph control that is passed to the active graph control.

The **ReturnFromDrilldown** method is used to "drill back" to the original graph object. It is designed to restore the original graph object's state prior to calling the Drilldown method.

Optional parameters can be processed by the target "drill back" graph control. This allows the target control to be related to the drilldown graph object.

Implementation: The **ReturnFromDrilldown** method is called from the TakeEventOfParent method when the graph event Event:ReturnFromDrillDown is posted. This event is triggered when the user double-clicks on a valid graph node, or selects the "Return from DrillDown" popup menu item.

See Also: DrillDown
TakeEventOfParent

SaveAsGraph (save graph to WMF file selected)**SaveAsGraph**

SaveAsGraph Save graph to WMF file.

The **SaveAsGraph** method writes the current state of the graph object to a WMF file. The user is prompted to enter a valid WMF file name.

Implementation: The **SaveAsGraph** method calls the SaveGraph method, forcing the *askSave* property to TRUE. The SaveAsGraph method is called when a graph event (Event:SaveAs) is posted.

See Also: SaveGraph

SaveGraph (auto-save graph to WMF file)**SaveGraph(*askSave*)**

SaveGraph Save graph to WMF file.

askSave A Boolean value that determines whether or not to prompt the user to save. The default value is FALSE (save without asking)

The **SaveGraph** method writes the current state of the graph object to a WMF file. If the *askSave* parameter is set to TRUE, the user is first prompted to enter a valid WMF file name.

Implementation: The **SaveGraph** method is called when a graph event (Event:Save) is posted.

See Also: ImageToWMF

SetDefault (initialize selected graph properties)

SetDefault

SetDefault Set initial values on the graph control.

The **SetDefault** method initializes critical properties of the graph object prior to its data point calculations and display. Most of these properties are found in the Initial Settings section of the Graph Control template.

Implementation: The **SetDefault** method is called from the graph object's Init method.

See Also: Init

ShowOnField (show text contents to specified field)

ShowOnField(*text*, *fieldequ*)

ShowOnField Show text on a selected control.

text A string constant or variable that contains the text to display on the control.

fieldequ An LONG integer that indicates the field equate label of the control the text is to be displayed.

The **ShowOnField** method displays a *text* value into a given control, specified by its field equate (*fieldequ*). The control must be a valid target (string, entry, text, or combo). Other types of controls are assigned the text value using the PROP:Text property.

Implementation: The **ShowOnField** method is called from the ToShowValues method.

See Also: ToShowValues

ShowOnStatusBar (show text to status bar zone)

ShowOnStatusBar(*text*, *zone*)

ShowOnStatusBar Show text on the window status bar.

<i>text</i>	A string constant or variable that contains the text to display on the status bar.
<i>zone</i>	An LONG integer that indicates which status bar section the text is to be displayed.

The **ShowOnStatusBar** method displays a *text* value into a given status bar zone, specified by *zone*.

Implementation: The **ShowOnStatusBar** method is called from the ToShowValues method. If a window has a separate status bar defined, the *eShowSBonFirstThread* property determines the target.

See Also: ToShowValues
eShowSBonFirstThread

TakeEvent (process graph control events)

TakeEvent

TakeEvent Processes the events of the graph object.

The **TakeEvent** method is used to process events returned by the graph object. These events are returned by the parent control of the graph object (by default, a GROUP) and to other support controls of the object. In general, all events should be posted to the parent field of the graph object.

Implementation: The **TakeEvent** method is called within the graph object procedure's ACCEPT event handler. It provides a virtual method in which the developer can use to trap and process all graph control events.

See Also: TakeEventOfParent

TakeEventofParent (process all graph events)**TakeEventOfParent**

TakeEventOfParent Processes the events of the graph object's parent control.

By default, all graph events are processed by the graph object's parent control (by default, a GROUP). This method is the control center from which other methods are executed and properties are set.

Implementation: The **TakeEventOfParent** method is called from the TakeEvent method.

See Also: TakeEvent

ToolTip (show all text to tool tips)**ToolTip**

ToolTip Show tool tip text.

The **ToolTip** method displays all text that is directed to the graph object's tool tip box.

Implementation: The **ToolTip** method is called from the Interactivity method.

See Also: ToShowValues

AllText

Interactivity

ToShowValues (show all composite text to all graph targets)**ToShowValues****ToShowValues**

Control what text is shown where.

The **ToShowValues** method checks a variety of properties that are set by the graph control template and popup menu, and filter what specific text should be displayed on which target. For example, you may have omitted mouse text from the graph control's tool tip, or limit a control to only displaying the X node values.

Implementation: The **ToShowValues** method is called from the Interactivity method.

See Also: Interactivity

GridClass

GridClass Overview

The GridClass is used to manage and control BrowseGrid controls. These combined controls make up the BrowseGrid control template. At runtime, the BrowseGrid replaces the underlying BrowseBox and arranges the data in as groupds within a matrix format. The data included in this matrix includes all controls populated within the BrowseGrid GROUP control.

The BrowseGrid template is most useful for displaying product lists on a web page, but it may be used on desktop applications as well.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The GridClass is derived from the BrowseClass. It also implements the IListControl interface which defines the set of behaviors that relate to a LIST control.

GridClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC BrowseGrid template generates code to instantiate the GridClas for your BrowseBoxes. The GridClass objects are called BRW n , where n is the template instance number. Multiple grids may be used in a single procedure.

GridClass Source Files

The GridClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific GridClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABGRID.INC	GridClass declarations
ABGRID.CLW	GridClass method definitions

GridClass Properties

GridClass Properties

The GridClass inherits all the properties of the BrowseClass from which it is derived.

Children (reference to child group controls)

Children **&ChildQueue, PROTECTED**

The **Children** property is a reference to a structure containing a list of child controls of the basic GROUP grid control. This queue also contains the position of each of the child controls.

Implementation: This property is initialized in the GridClass.Init method. The QUEUE is loaded with data in **GridClass.CheckChildren** which is a **PRIVATE** method.

The Children property refers to a QUEUE declared in ABGRID.INC.

```
ChildQueue QUEUE,TYPE
Feq          SIGNED
XD           SIGNED
YD           SIGNED
HE           SIGNED
WI           SIGNED
Use          ANY
END
```

See Also: GridClass.Init

Chosen (current browse queue element)

Chosen **SIGNED, PROTECTED**

The **Chosen** property contains the current browse queue element number.

See Also: GridClass.TakeEvent

ClickPress (forward control)

ClickPress **SIGNED, PROTECTED**

The **ClickPress** property specifies a control number in which an EVENT:Accepted will be posted to when a mouse click occurs. In a Windows application the mouse click is a DOUBLE-CLICK. An application running in an internet browser will accept the ClickPress control on a single click.

Implementation: The BrowseGrid template assigns the ClickPress control based on the control supplied to the template. The ClickPress action occurs in the GridClass.TakeEvent method.

See Also: GridClass.TakeEvent

ControlBase (base control number)

ControlBase **SIGNED, PROTECTED**

The **ControlBase** property specifies a base control number that other child control feq values are based on.

Implementation: This property is initialized to 1000 in the GridClass.CheckChildren method.

See Also: GridClass.CheckChildren

ControlNumber (number of controls)

ControlNumber **SIGNED, PROTECTED**

The **ControlNumber** property specifies the number of controls used per grid element.

Implementation: This property is calculated in the GridClass.CheckChildren method.

See Also: GridClass.CheckChildren

GroupColor (background color of group fields)

GroupColor **LONG, PROTECTED**

The **GroupColor** property specifies the background color of the GROUP control. This is used as the background color for all fields displayed in the GROUP as well as for the Group Title. The GROUP text color is also used for these fields.

GroupControl (GROUP control number)

GroupControl **SIGNED, PROTECTED**

The **GroupControl** property specifies the control number for the GROUP control used by the BrowseGrid. The GROUP control is automatically populated when the BrowseGrid control template is used.

Implementation: The ABC Templates automatically assigns this property its value. If the template is not being used this value should be initializes in the Init method.

GroupTitle (title of group element)

GroupTitle **ASTRING, PROTECTED**

The **GroupTitle** property contains a string to use as the title for the group box that outlines each entry in the grid.

Implementation: The ABC Templates automatically assigns this property its value. If the template is not being used this value should be initializes in the Init method.

SelColor (color of selected element)

SelColor **LONG, PROTECTED**

The **SelColor** property specifies the color of the currently selected element of the grid.

Implementation: The ABC Templates automatically assigns this property its value. If the template is not being used this value should be initializes in the Init method.

Selectable (element selectable flag)

Selectable **BYTE**

The Selectable property indicates that an element (group) in the grid is selectable. Clicking on any elemen in the group will make it the currently selected element of the queue.

Implementation: The ABC Templates automatically assigns this property its value. If the template is not being used this value should be initializes in the Init method.

UpdateControl (file update trigger)

UpdateControl **SIGNED**

The **UpdateControl** property specifies a contol that when accepted will trigger a file update.

Implementation: The ABC Templates automatically assigns this property its value. If the template is not being used this value should be initializes in the Init method.

UpdateControlEvents

UpdateControlEvents **SIGNED**

The **UpdateControlEvents** property is not currently implemented.

GridClass Methods

The GridClass inherits all the methods of the BrowseClass from which it is derived.

AddLocator (specify a locator)

AddLocator(*locator*)

AddLocator	Specifies a locator object for a specific sort order.
<i>locator</i>	The label of the locator object.

The **AddLocator** method specifies a locator object for the sort order defined by the preceeding call to the AddSortOrder or SetSort method.

Implementation: The specified *locator* is sort order specific. It is enabled only when the associated sort order is active.

See Also: BrowseClass.AddSortOrder, BrowseClass.AddLocator

FetchRecord (retrieve selected record)

FetchRecord(*record*)

FetchRecord	Retrieve selected record.
<i>record</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which entry number in the LIST to read.

The **FetchRecord** method is used in conjunction with the WebBuilder WebGridExtension. This method is used to read the currently selected record into memory.

Implementation: This method is called by the WbGridHTMLProperties.SetProperty method.

GetAcross (number of horizontal grids)

GetAcross

The **GetAcross** method returns the number of GROUPs that fit into the designed listbox.

Implementation: The GetAcross method returns a value that is determined in the GridClass.GetDimensions PRIVATE method.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

GetClickPress (forward click control)

GetClickPress

The **GetClickPress** method returns the control number of the control to be accepted. This control is specified in the BrowseGrid template by the *Forward other control clicks to:* prompt.

Implementation: The GridClass.TakeEvent method executes code that will post an EVENT:Accepted to SELF.ClickPress, which is the value that this method returns.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

See Also: GridClass.TakeEvent

GetDown (number of vertical grids)

GetDown()

The **GetDown** method returns the number of GROUPs that fit into the designed listbox.

Implementation: The GetDown method returns a value that is determined in the GridClass.GetDimensions PRIVATE method.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

GetPosition (retrieve group control position)**GetPosition**(*instance*, *XPos*, *Ypos*), **VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

GetPosition	Sets the XPosition and YPosition for the control <i>instance</i> .
<i>instance</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number.
<i>XPos</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the X position of the specific GROUP control instance.
<i>YPos</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the Yposition of the specific GROUP control instance.

Implementation: The GetPosition method is called to set the X and Y positions of the GROUP control is created to simulated the grid appearance. This control is created in the GridClass.CreateControls PRIVATE method.

IfGroupField (determine if current control is a GROUP)**IfGroupField**(*field*)

IfGroupField	Determines if the control in focus is a GROUP control.
<i>field</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control that currently has focus.

The **IfGroupField** method determines if the control currently in focus is a GROUP control. A one (1 or True) is returned if the control is GROUP control, otherwise a zero (0 or False) is returned.

Implementation: This method is called by the GridClass.TakeEvent method when an event occurs on any control defined as part of the BrowseGrid.

See Also: GridClass.TakeEvent

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Init (initialize the GridClass object)

Init(listcontrol, viewposit, view listqueue, relationmanager, windowmanager)

Init	Initializes the GridClass object.
<i>listcontrol</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the LIST control.
<i>viewposition</i>	The label of a string field withing the <i>listqueue</i> containing the POSITION of the view.
<i>view</i>	The label of the browse's underlying VIEW.
<i>listqueue</i>	The label of the <i>listcontrol</i> 's data source QUEUE.
<i>relationmanager</i>	The label of the browse's primary file RelationManager object. See <i>Relation Manager</i> for more information.
<i>windowmanager</i>	The label of the browse'WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the GridClass object.

Implementation: In addition to other things, the Init method calls the PARENT.Init method to initialize the browse's ViewManager object.

See Also: BrowseClass.Init

IsSkelActive

IsSkelActive, VIRTUAL

The **IsSkelActive** method is not implemented at this time.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Kill (shutdown the GridClass object)

Kill, DERIVED

The **Kill** method shuts down the GridClass object. It frees any memory allocated during the life of the objects and performs any other necessary cleanup code.

SetAlerts (initialize and create child controls)

SetAlerts, DERIVED

The **SetAlerts** method initiates the managing and storage of child controls to the BrowseGrid.

SyncGroup (initialize GROUP field properties)

SyncGroup(*record*)

SyncGroup	Initialize the GROUP field properties.
<i>record</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which entry number in the LIST to read.

The **SyncGroup** method is used in conjunction with the WebBuilder WebGridExtension. This method is used to initialize the GROUP control properties such as Group Title, Group Box, and Group color.

Implementation: This method is called by the WbGridHTMLProperties.SetProperty method.

TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event)

TakeEvent, DERIVED

The **TakeEvent** method processes the current ACCEPT loop for the GridClass object. The method handles all events associated with the Grid controls including the parent GROUP control and all of its children.

Implementation: When this method completes its PARENT method is called.

See Also: BrowseClass.TakeEvent

UpdateRecord (refresh BrowseGrid)

UpdateRecord (*record*), VIRTUAL

UpdateRecord	Refresh the data in the BrowseGrid.
<i>record</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which entry number in the LIST to update.

The **UpdateRecord** method refreshes the data shown in the BrowseGrid by calling the FileManager to post data updates. The BrowseClass.ResetFromBuffer is then called to update the queue that is used for the LIST and then the BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord to update the VIEW.

Implementation: This method is called by the GridClass.TakeEvent method.

See Also: GridClass.TakeEvent, FileManager.Update, BrowseClass.ResetFromBuffer, BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord

UpdateWindow (refresh window display)

UpdateWindow, DERIVED

The **UpdateWindow** method calls the PARENT UpdateWindow method to update all display variables and refreshes the BrowseGrid control values and properties.

Implementation: The UpdateWindow method is called by the GridClass.TakeEvent method.

See Also: BrowseClass.UpdateWindow. GridClass.TakeEvent

HistHandlerClass

HistHandlerClass Source Files

The HistHandlerClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC. The specific ErrorClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABERROR.INC	HistHandlerClass declarations
ABERROR.CLW	HistHandlerClass method definitions
ABERROR.TRN	HistHandlerClass default error definitions

HistHandlerClass Properties

The HistHandlerClass contains the following properties:

Err (errorclass object)

Err **&ErrorClass, PROTECTED**

The **Err** property is a reference to the ErrorClass object that handles any runtime errors.

History (error history structure)

History **&ErrorHistoryList, PROTECTED**

The **History** property is a reference to the ErrorHistoryList structure that holds the history for errors that have previously occurred. The error History is determined based on the HistoryThreshold and HistoryResetOnView properties.

LBColumns (number of listbox columns)

LBColumns **SHORT, PROTECTED**

The **LBColumns** property represents the number of columns in the list box on the MsgBox window.

Win (reference to window)

Win **&Window, PROTECTED**

The **Win** property is a reference to the message box window, which the HistHandler uses.

HistHandlerClass Methods

The HistHandlerClass contains the following methods:

Init (initialize the HistHandlerClass object)

Init(*win, err, history*)

Init	Initialize the HistHandlerClass object.
<i>win</i>	A reference to the message box window which the HistHandler uses.
<i>err</i>	The label of the ErrorClass object.
<i>history</i>	A reference to the ErrorHistoryList structure that holds the history for errors that have previously occurred.

The **Init** method initializes the HistHandlerClass object. This object is initialized from the ErrorClass.HistoryMsg method.

See Also: ErrorClass.HistoryMsg

TakeEvent (process window events)

TakeEvent, VIRTUAL

The **TakeEvent** method processes the MsgBox window events. In particular the OpenWindow event is processed. Upon the EVENT:OpenWindow, the LIST control is interrogated. A Level:Benign is returned.

Return Data Type: BYTE

VLBProc (retrieve LIST and error history information.)**VLBProc**(*rowindex*, *colindex*), VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

VLBProc	Retrieve LIST and error history information.
<i>rowindex</i>	An index used to determine information regarding the listbox and associated history data.
<i>colindex</i>	An index used to determine information regarding an actual error history record.

The **VLBProc** method returns various information regarding the LIST control and its data.

Implementation: If passed a *rowindex* of -1, the VLBProc returns the number of history error records that are contained in the error history queue. If passed a *rowindex* of -2, the method returns the number of listbox columns.

Any positive integer passed as the *rowindex* will cause the VLBProc to lookup the error history record at the relative *rowindex* position. The *colindex* parameter is used in association with a positive integer *rowindex*. A *colindex* value of 1 will return the error text. A *colindex* of 2 will return the error category.

Return Data Type: STRING

IdbChangeAudit Interface

IdbChangeAudit Concepts

The IdbChangeAudit interface defines a set of common methods the DbAuditManager object must implement in order for the object to handle additions, updates and deletions to the audit files.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The DbAuditManager implements the IdbChangeAudit interface.

IdbChangeAudit Source Files

The IdbChangeAudit source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific IdbChangeAudit source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABFILE.INC	IdbChangeAudit interface declaration
ABFILE.CLW	DbAuditManager.IdbChangeAudit method definitions

IdbChangeAudit Methods

The IdbChangeAudit interface defines the following methods.

BeforeChange (update audit log file before file change)

BeforeChange(*filename*, *BFP*), VIRTUAL

BeforeChange

filename A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.

BFP The label of aBufferedPairsClass object. See *BufferedPairsClass* for more information.

Implementation: BeforeChange is a VIRTUAL method that lets you easily implement your own custom version of this method. This method can be called to process code before the record buffer is saved. This method calls the DbAuditManager.BeforeChange method.

See Also: DbAuditManager.BeforeChange

ChangeField (virtual method for managing field changes)

ChangeField(*left*, *right*, *fieldname*, *filename*), **VIRTUAL**

ChangeField	Manage field changes.
<i>left</i>	The label of the "left" field of the pair that contains the original value of the field being updated. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.
<i>right</i>	The label of the "right" field of the pair that contains the new value of the field being updated. The field may be any data type, but may not be an array.
<i>fieldname</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the field that is to be audited.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is audited.

The **ChangeField** method is called for each field in the record that has changed. The before and after values are passed to this method. This method calls DbAuditManager.OnFieldChange.

Implementation: **ChangeField** is a VIRTUAL method so that other base class methods can directly call the OnFieldChange virtual method in a derived class. This lets you easily implement your own custom version of this method.

See Also: DbAuditManager.OnFieldChange

OnChange (update audit log file after a record change)**OnChange**(*filename*, *file*), VIRTUAL

OnChange	Initiates an update to the audit log file after a Change to the file.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the file that is to be audited.
<i>file</i>	The label of the FILE being audited.

The **OnChange** method initiates the update to the audit log file after a Change action.

Implementation: The OnChange method is a VIRTUAL method so that other base class methods can directly call the OnChange virtual method in a derived class. This lets you easily implement your own custom version of this method.

See Also: DbAuditManager.OnChange

IListControl Interface

IListControl Concepts

The IListControl interface is a defined set of behaviors that relate to a LIST control.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The StandardBehavior class implements the IListControl interface.

IListControl Source Files

The IListControl source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific IListControl source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	IListControl interface declaration
ABBROWSE.CLW	IListControl method definitions

IListControl Methods

The IListControl interface defines the following methods.

Choice(returns current selection number)

Choice

The **Choice** method returns the entry number of the highlighted record in a LIST control.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

Example:

```
Self.CurrentChoice = SELF.ILC.Choice()  
!Returns 2 if second record in LIST is highlighted
```

GetControl(returns control number)**GetControl**

The **GetControl** method returns the control number (field equate) for a LIST control.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

Example:

```
SELF.ListControl = Li.GetControl()
```

GetItems(returns number of entries)**GetItems**

The **GetItems** method returns the number of entries visible in a LIST control.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

Example:

```
LI = SELF.ILC.GetItems()
```

GetVisible(returns visibility of control)**GetVisible**

The **GetVisible** method returns a value indicating whether the control is currently visible on the window. An empty string is returned if the control is not showing.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF ~SELF.ILC.GetVisible()            !If control is not visible  
    MESSAGE('Control is not visible')  
END
```

SetChoice(change selected entry)**SetChoice**(*newchoice*)**SetChoice**

Changes the selected entry in a LIST control.

newchoice

An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the new entry to select in a LIST control.

The **SetChoice** method changes the selected entry in a LIST control.

Example:

```
SELF.ILC.SetChoice(SELF.CurrentChoice) !Set new selected entry to  
Self.CurrentChoice
```

SetControl(change selected entry)**SetControl**(*newcontrol*)**SetControl**

Changes the selected control.

newcontrol

An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the new control to select.

The **SetControl** method changes the selected control.

IncrementalLocatorClass

IncrementalLocatorClass Overview

The IncrementalLocatorClass is an EntryLocatorClass that activates on each additional search character added to the search value (not when the locator control is accepted).

Use an Incremental locator when you want a multi-character search on numeric or alphanumeric keys and you want the search to take place immediately upon the end user's keystroke.

IncrementalLocatorClass Concepts

An IncrementalLocator is a multi-character locator, with no locator control required (but strongly recommended).

The locator control may be a STRING, ENTRY, COMBO, or SPIN, however, any control other than a STRING causes the Incremental locator to behave like an Entry locator--the search is delayed until the control is accepted.

With a STRING control (or no control), when the BrowseClass LIST has focus, keyboard input characters are automatically added to the locator's search value string for each keystroke, and the BrowseClass *immediately* advances to the nearest matching record. The Backspace key removes characters from the locator's search value string.

We strongly recommend using a STRING control as the Incremental Locator control for the following reasons:

- So the search occurs *immediately* with each keystroke, and

- So the user can see the value for which the BrowseClass object is searching.

IncrementalLocatorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass uses the IncrementalLocatorClass to locate and scroll to the nearest matching item. Therefore, if your program's BrowseClass objects use an Incremental Locator, your program must instantiate the IncrementalLocatorClass for each use. Once you register the IncrementalLocatorClass object with the BrowseClass object (see BrowseClass.AddLocator), the BrowseClass object uses the IncrementalLocatorClass object as needed, with no other code required. See the Conceptual Example.

IncrementalLocatorClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC BrowseBox template generates code to instantiate the IncrementalLocatorClass for your BrowseBoxes. The IncrementalLocatorClass objects are called `BRWn::Sort#:Locator`, where *n* is the template instance number and # is the sort sequence (id) number. As this implies, you can have a different locator for each BrowseClass object sort order.

You can use the BrowseBox's **Locator Behavior** dialog (the **Locator Class** button) to derive from the EntryLocatorClass. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the locator's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

IncrementalLocatorClass Source Files

The IncrementalLocatorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The IncrementalLocatorClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	IncrementalLocatorClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	IncrementalLocatorClass method definitions

IncrementalLocatorClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a BrowseClass object and related objects, including a IncrementalLocatorClass object. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including scrolling, updating, and locating records.

Note that the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the locator.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')           !declare WindowManager class
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')           !declare BrowseClass and Locator
  MAP
  END

State      FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(ST), THREAD
StateCodeKey  KEY(ST:STATECODE), NOCASE, OPT
Record      RECORD, PRE()
STATECODE   STRING(2)
STATENAME   STRING(20)
            END
            END

```

```

StView    VIEW(State)                !declare VIEW to process
        END
StateQ     QUEUE                      !declare Q for LIST
ST:STATECODE LIKE(ST:STATECODE)
ST:STATENAME LIKE(ST:STATENAME)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
        END

Access:State CLASS(FileManager)      !declare Access:State object
Init        PROCEDURE
        END
Relate:State CLASS(RelationManager)  !declare Relate:State object
Init        PROCEDURE
        END
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD

StWindow WINDOW('Browse States'),AT(,,123,152),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
        PROMPT('Find:'),AT(9,6)
        STRING(@s2),AT(29,4),USE(ST:STATECODE) !locator control
        LIST,AT(8,5,108,124),USE(?StList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(StateQ),|
        FORMAT(' 27L(2)|M~CODE~@s2@80L(2)|M~STATENAME~@s20@')
        END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)      !declare ThisWindow object
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
        END
BrowseSt    CLASS(BrowseClass)        !declare BrowseSt object
Q           &StateQ
        END

StLocator   IncrementalLocatorClass   !declare StLocator object
StStep      StepStringClass           !declare StStep object

CODE
        ThisWindow.Run()              !run the window procedure

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()           !initialize things
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
        ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()    !call base class init
        IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
        Relate:State.Init              !initialize Relate:State object
        SELF.FirstField = ?StList      !set FirstField for ThisWindow
        SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest !VCRRequest not used
        Relate:State.Open              !open State and related files

```

```

!Init BrowseSt object by naming its LIST,VIEW,Q,RelationManager & WindowManager
BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
OPEN(StWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BrowseSt.Q &= StateQ                !reference the browse QUEUE
StStep.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime)  !initialize the StStep object
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(StStep,ST:StateCodeKey)!set the browse sort order
BrowseSt.AddLocator(StLocator)       !plug in the browse locator
StLocator.Init(?ST:STATECODE,ST:STATECODE,1,BrowseSt) !initialize the locator object
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATECODE,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATECODE)!set a column to browse
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATENAME,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATENAME)!set a column to browse
SELF.SetAlerts()                    !alert any keys for ThisWindow
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()          !shut down things
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()           !call base class shut down
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Close                   !close State and related files
Relate:State.Kill                    !shut down Relate:State object
GlobalErrors.Kill                    !shut down GlobalErrors object
RETURN ReturnValue

```

IncrementalLocatorClass Properties

IncrementalLocatorClass Properties

The IncrementalLocatorClass inherits all the properties of the EntryLocatorClass from which it is derived. See *EntryLocatorClass Properties* and *LocatorClass Properties* for more information.

IncrementalLocatorClass Methods

IncrementalLocatorClass Methods

The IncrementalLocatorClass inherits all the methods of the EntryLocatorClass from which it is derived. See *EntryLocatorClass Methods* and *LocatorClass Methods* for more information.

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the LIST control:IncrementalLocatorClass)

SetAlerts(*control*), VIRTUAL

SetAlerts Alerts appropriate keystrokes for the specified LIST control.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that resolves to the control number of the LIST or COMBO control displaying the data to be searched.

The **SetAlerts** method alerts appropriate keystrokes for the specified LIST control.

Implementation: The SetAlerts method alerts the backspace key and the space key.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.SetAlerts PROCEDURE                !alert keys for browse object
I BYTE,AUTO
CODE
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS( SELF.Sort )                !for each sort order
  GET( SELF.Sort, I )
  IF ~ ( SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL )                !if locator is present
    SELF.Sort.Locator.SetAlerts( SELF.ListControl )! call Locator.SetAlerts method
  END
END
```

TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:IncrementalLocatorClass)**TakeKey, VIRTUAL**

The **TakeKey** method processes an alerted locator keystroke for the LIST control that displays the data to be searched, and returns a value indicating whether the browse display should change.

Tip: By default, all alphanumeric keys are alerted for LIST controls.

Implementation: The TakeKey method adds to or subtracts from the search value (the Shadow property) based on the end user's keystrokes, then returns one (1) if a new search is required or returns zero (0) if no new search is required. A search is required only if the keystroke is a valid search character.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CheckLocator ROUTINE
  IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeKey()           !handle locator alerted keys
    SELF.Reset(1)                          !if search needed, reset view
    SELF.ResetQueue(Reset:Done)            ! and relead queue
  ELSE                                       !if no search needed
    SELF.ListControl{PROP:Selected}=SELF.CurrentChoice !highlight selected list item
  END
```

See Also: EntryLocatorClass.Shadow

INIClass

INIClass Overview

The INIClass provides a simple interface to different methods of non-volatile storage (e.g., storage that is persistent beyond the life cycle of your programs). By default, the INIClass object centrally handles reads and writes for a given configuration (.INI) file. It also supports other methods of non-volatile storage by allowing read and write access to the Windows system registry or a local table. The INIClass Init method controls which access method is used.

INIClass Concepts

By convention an INI file is an ASCII text file that stores information between computing sessions and contains entries of the form:

```
[SECTION1]
ENTRY1=value
ENTRYn=value
[SECTIONn]
ENTRY1=value
ENTRYn=value
```

The INIClass automatically creates INI files and the sections and entries within them. The INI class also updates and deletes sections and entries. In particular, the INIClass makes it very easy to save and restore Window sizes and positions between sessions; plus it provides a single repository for INI file code, so you only need to specify the INI file name in one place.

INIClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The PopupClass and the PrintPreviewClass optionally use the INIClass; otherwise, it is completely independent of other Application Builder Classes.

INIClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates generate code to instantiate a global INIClass object called INIMgr. If you request to **Use INI file to save and restore program settings** in the **Global Properties** dialog, then each procedure based on the Window procedure template (Frame, Browse, and Form) calls the INIMgr to save and restore its WINDOW's position and size.

INIClass Source Files

The INIClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The INIClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABUTIL.INC	INIClass declarations
ABUTIL.CLW	INIClass method definitions

INIClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate an INIClass object.

```

PROGRAM

    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')                !declare INIClass class
    MAP
    END

INIMgr  INIClass                        !declare INIMgr object
Sound   STRING('ON ')                  !user's sound preference
Volume  BYTE(3)                         !user's volume preference

PWindow WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),MAX,RESIZE
    CHECK('&Sound'),AT(8,6),USE(Sound),VALUE('ON','OFF')
    PROMPT('&Volume'),AT(31,19),USE(?VolumePrompt)
    SPIN(@s20),AT(8,20,21,7),USE(Volume),HVSCROLL,RANGE(0,9),STEP(1)
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
    END

CODE
INIMgr.Init('.\MyApp.INI')              !initialize the INIMgr object
INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences','Sound',Sound) !get sound, default 'ON'
Volume=INIMgr.TryFetch('Preferences','Volume') !get volume, no default
IF Volume
    Sound=INIMgr.FetchField('Preferences','Sound&Vol',1) !get comma delimited sound
    Volume=INIMgr.FetchField('Preferences','Sound&Vol',2) !get comma delimited volume
END
OPEN(PWindow)
INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences',PWindow)      !restore window size & pos
ACCEPT
    IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
        IF FIELD() = ?OK
            INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Sound',Sound) !store sound
            INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Volume',Volume) !store volume
            INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Sound&Vol',| !store comma delimited values
            CLIP(Sound)&','&Volume) !e.g., Sound&Vol=ON,3
            POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
        END
    END
END
INIMgr.Update('Preferences',PWindow)      !store window size & pos

```

INIClass Properties

INIClass Properties

The INIClass contains the following properties.

FileName

FileName **CSTRING(File:MaxFilePath)**

The **FileName** property contains the name of the managed storage medium (INI file or system registry key). The INIClass methods use the FileName property to identify the storage medium.

If a full path is specified, and the INIClass Init Method has specified INI file storage, the INIClass looks for the file in the specified path. If no path is specified, the INIClass looks for the file in the Windows directory. If no name is specified ("), the INIClass uses the WIN.INI file. For example:

FileName Property

' '
'invoice.cfg'
'.\invoice.cfg'
'c:\invoice\invoice.cfg'

Resulting INI File

c:\Windows\WIN.INI
c:\Windows\invoice.cfg
current directory\invoice.cfg
c:\invoice\invoice.cfg

If the INIClass Init Method has specified system registry storage, the INIClass looks for the specified registry key.

The Init method sets the contents of the FileName property.

Implementation: The INIClass methods use the FileName property as the file parameter in GETINI and PUTINI statements. See the *Language Reference* for more information.

See Also: Init

INIClass Methods

The INIClass contains the following methods.

Fetch (get INI file entries)

Fetch(*section*, | *entry*, *value*, *filename* | **),VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**
| *entry* [, *value*] |
| *window* |

Fetch	Gets or returns values from the INI file.
<i>section</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file section name.
<i>entry</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file entry name.
<i>value</i>	The label of a variable that contains the default fetched value and receives the actual fetched value. If omitted, there must be a matching <i>section</i> and <i>entry</i> in the INI file for the Fetch method to return.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file name. If <i>filename</i> specifies a full path, the Fetch method looks for the file in the specified path. If no path is specified, the Fetch method looks for the file in the Windows directory. If <i>filename</i> is specified as null ("), the Fetch method uses the WIN.INI file.
<i>window</i>	The label of the WINDOW or APPLICATION to restore to its previously stored position and size. If this parameter is present, Fetch does not return a value, but restores the <i>window</i> 's position and size.

The **Fetch** method gets or returns values from the INI file.

Fetch(*section,entry[,value]*)

Retrieves a single value specified by *section* and *entry* from the INI file specified in the INIClass.FileName property. If a *value* parameter is present, the Fetch method updates it with the requested value and returns nothing. If no *value* parameter is present the Fetch method returns the requested value.

Fetch(*section,entry,value,filename*)

Retrieves a single value specified by *section* and *entry* from the INI file specified by *filename*. The *value* parameter is updated with the requested value. If the *entry* or *filename* does not exist in the INI file, the Fetch method returns an empty string.

Fetch(*section>window*)

Retrieves and restores several WINDOW attributes saved by a prior corresponding call to Update(*section>window*) from the INI file specified in the INIClass.FileName property. Restoring the values returns the specified WINDOW to its saved position and size.

Implementation: If a *window* is present, the Fetch method gets five entries from the specified INI file *section*: Maximize, XPos, YPos, Height, and Width. Then it applies the retrieved values to the specified WINDOW or APPLICATION.

Return Data Type: STRING where prototype is Fetch(*section, name, value, filename*)
 STRING where prototype is Fetch(*section, name*)

Example:

```
Sound    STRING('ON ')
PWindow  WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),IMM,MAX,RESIZE
         CHECK('&Sound'),AT(8,6),USE(Sound),VALUE('ON','OFF')
         BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
         END
CODE
INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences','Sound',Sound)           !get 'Sound', default ON
Sound=INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences','Sound')           !return 'Sound', no default
Sound=INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences','Sound',Sound,'MYAPP.INI')
!get 'Sound', from MYAPP.INI
OPEN(PWindow)
INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences',PWindow)                !restore PWindow size & position
```

See Also: Update

FetchField (return comma delimited INI file value)**FetchField**(*section*, *entry*, *field*)

FetchField	Returns a comma delimited value from the INI file.
<i>section</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file section name.
<i>entry</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file entry name.
<i>field</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the comma delimited value to return.

The **FetchField** method returns one of several comma delimited values from the INI file. FetchField assumes the value for the *entry* is one of several comma delimited values of the form V1,V2,...,Vn. For example:

```
[MySection]
MyEntry=M,35,Blue,Brown,160
```

A *field* value of one (1) returns the value prior to the first comma in the string; a value of two (2) returns the value between the first and second commas; a three (3) returns the value between the second and third commas, etc.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Example:

```
Sound     STRING('ON ')
Volume    BYTE(3)
CODE
INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Sound&Volume', |                   !create INI entry like
CLIP(Sound)&','&Volume)                   !Sound&Volume=ON,3
!program code
Sound=INIMgr.FetchField('Preferences','Sound&Volume',1)   !get 1st value - 'ON'
Volume=INIMgr.FetchField('Preferences','Sound&Volume',2)   !get 2nd value - 3
```

FetchQueue (get INI file queue entries)

FetchQueue(*section*, *entry*, *queue*, *field* [,*field*] [,*field*])

FetchQueue	Adds a series of values from the INI file to a QUEUE.
<i>section</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file section name.
<i>entry</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file entry name.
<i>queue</i>	The label of the QUEUE to receive the values.
<i>field</i>	The label of the field in the QUEUE to receive the value. You must specify at least one field, and you may specify up to three fields.

The **FetchQueue** method adds a series of values from the INI file into the specified *fields* in the specified *queue*.

Implementation: FetchQueue assumes multiple *entry* values of the form:

```
[section]
entry=ItemsInQueue
entry_n=value,optionalvalue,optionalvalue
```

for example:

```
[Users]
User=3
User_1=Fred,1
User_2=Barney,0
User_3=Wilma,1
```

Example:

```
UserQ    QUEUE
Name      STRING(20)
Auth      BYTE
          END

CODE
INIMgr.FetchQueue('Users','User',UserQ,UserQ.Name,UserQ.Auth)!get UserQ
!program code
INIMgr.Update('Users','User',RECORDS(UserQ))                !put UserQ count
LOOP i# = 1 TO RECORDS(UserQ)                                !put UserQ entries
  GET(UserQ,i#)
  INIMgr.Update('Users','User_'&i#,CLIP(UserQ.Name)&','&UserQ.Auth)
END
```


Init (initialize the INIClass object)

Init (<i>FileName</i> , [<i>NvType</i>], [<i>ExtraData</i>])	
Init	Initializes the INIClass object.
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file name. If <i>filename</i> specifies a full path, the INIClass looks for the file in the specified path. If no path is specified, the INIClass looks for the file in the Windows directory. If <i>filename</i> is specified as null ("), the INIClass uses the WIN.INI file.
<i>NvType</i>	An UNSIGNED integer that conforms to the following equates: NVD_INI use named INI file. NVD_Registry use the system registry (ignores the filename parameter) NVD_Table use a local table – NOT SUPPORTED YET
<i>ExtraData</i>	A LONG integer. When the registry is used in the second parameter, <i>ExtraData</i> is used to specify the part of the registry to use as the root of all entries. Valid values are: REG_CLASSES_ROOT REG_CURRENT_USER REG_LOCAL_MACHINE REG_USERS REG_PERFORMANCE_DATA REG_CURRENT_CONFIG REG_DYN_DATA

The **Init** method initializes the INIClass object.

Implementation: The Init method assigns *filename* to the FileName property.

Example:

```
    INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')
INIMgr      INIClass
CODE
INIMgr.Init('c:\MyApp\MyApp.INI')    !read & write from c:\MyApp\MyApp.INI
INIMgr.Init('.\MyApp.INI')          !read & write from currentdirectory\MyApp.INI
INIMgr.Init('')                     !read & write from c:\Windows\WIN.INI
INIMgr.Init('MyApp.INI')            !read & write from c:\Windows\MyApp.INI

INIMgr.Init('', NVD_Registry, REG_LOCAL_MACHINE)
!read & write from Windows system registry, using LOCAL_MACHINE as the root

INIMgr.Init('CONFIG.TPS',NVD_Table)
!read & write from a local table
```

See Also: FileName

TryFetch (get a value from the INI file)

TryFetch(*section*, *entry*)

TryFetch	Returns a value from the INI file.
<i>section</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file section name.
<i>entry</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file entry name.

The **TryFetch** method returns a value from the INI file. If the specified section and entry do not exist, TryFetch returns an empty string. This allows you to check the return value and take appropriate action when the INI file entry is missing.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
Color       BYTE
DefaultColor EQUATE(5)
CODE
Color=INIMgr.TryFetch('Preferences','Color')       !return 'Color', no default
IF NOT Color
  Color=DefaultColor
END
```

TryFetchField (return comma delimited INI file value)**TryFetchField**(*section*, *entry*, *field*)**TryFetchField** Returns a comma delimited value from the INI file.

section A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file section name.

entry A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file entry name.

field An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the comma delimited value to return.

The **TryFetchField** method returns one of several comma delimited values from the INI file. If the specified section and entry do not exist, TryFetchField returns an empty string. This allows you to check the return value and take appropriate action when the INI file entry is missing.

TryFetchField assumes the *entry* value is a comma delimited string of the form V1,V2,...,Vn. A *field* value of one (1) returns the value prior to the first comma in the string; a value of two (2) returns the value between the first and second commas; a three (3) returns the value between the second and third commas, etc.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Example:

```

Sound    STRING(3)
Volume   BYTE
CODE
Sound=INIMgr.TryFetchField('Preferences','Sound&Volume',1)
!get Sound value
IF NOT Sound                      !if not present
Sound='ON'                        !default to on
END
Volume=INIMgr.TryFetchField('Preferences','Sound&Volume',2)
!get Volume value
IF NOT Volume                    !if not present
Volume=3                         !default to 3
END
!program code
INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Sound&Volume', | !create INI entry like
CLIP(Sound)&','&Volume)                    !Sound&Volume=ON,3

```

Update (write INI file entries)

<div>Update(<i>section</i>, <i>entry</i>, <i>value</i>), VIRTUAL</div> <div> <i>entry</i>, <i>value</i>, <i>filename</i> </div> <div> <i>window</i> </div> <div> <i>entry</i>, <i>queue</i>, <i>field</i>, [<i>field</i>], [<i>field</i>] </div>	
Update	Writes entries to the INI file.
<i>section</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file section name.
<i>entry</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file entry name.
<i>value</i>	A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the value to store for the <i>section</i> and <i>entry</i> .
<i>filename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the INI file name. If <i>filename</i> specifies a full path, the Update method looks for the file in the specified path. If no path is specified, the Update method looks for the file in the Windows directory. If <i>filename</i> is specified as null (""), the Fetch method uses the WIN.INI file.
<i>window</i>	The label of a WINDOW or APPLICATION whose position and size parameters the Update method stores.
<i>queue</i>	The label of a QUEUE.
<i>field</i>	The label of a FIELD within the QUEUE.

The **Update** method writes entries to the INI file. If the specified value is null (""), the existing entry is deleted.

Update(*section,entry,value*)

Writes a single value specified by *section* and *entry* to the INI file specified in the INIClass.FileName property.

Update(*section,entry,value,filename*)

Writes a single value specified by *section* and *entry* to the INI file specified by *filename*.

Update(*section>window*)

Writes several WINDOW position and size attributes to the INI file specified in the INIClass.FileName property, for retrieval by a subsequent corresponding call to Fetch(*section>window*). Restoring the values returns the specified WINDOW to its saved position and size.

Update(*queue,field,[field],[field]*)

Writes the records of a QUEUE with a maximum of three fields to the INI file specified in the INIClass.FileName property.

Implementation: If a *window* is present, the Update method writes five entries to the specified INI file *section*: Maximize, XPos, YPos, Height, and Width. These entries are retrieved and applied by the Fetch method to restore the window's position and size.

Example:

```
Sound    STRING('ON ')
PWindow  WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),IMM,MAX,RESIZE
        CHECK('&Sound'),AT(8,6),USE(Sound),VALUE('ON','OFF')
        BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
        END

CODE
OPEN(PWindow)
INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences',PWindow)           !restore PWindow size & position
INIMgr.Fetch('Preferences','Sound',Sound)      !get 'Sound' entry
!program code
INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Sound',Sound)     !save 'Sound' entry
INIMgr.Update('Preferences','Sound',Sound,'MYAPP.INI') !save 'Sound' entry to INI
INIMgr.Update('Preferences',PWindow)           !save PWindow size & position
```

See Also: Fetch

IReportGenerator Interface

IReportGenerator Interface

IReportGenerator Concepts

The IReportGenerator interface is a defined set of commands that are implemented by various report output generators. This interface is not intended to be called by any code other than the WMFParser.

IReportGenerator Methods

AskProperties (pop up window to set properties)

AskProperties(), BYTE

AskProperties	Allow the user to set properties before printing.
----------------------	---

The **AskProperties** method is used to pop up a window that allows a user to set properties defining how the output is to be generated. The **AskProperties** method returns one (1) if the OK button is pressed and printing will proceed. If the Cancel button is pressed, the **AskProperties** method returns zero (0) and printing will not proceed.

Return Data Type: BYTE

CloseDocument (end document printing)**CloseDocument(), BYTE**

CloseDocument Called after the document is printed, and returns an appropriate error level.

The **CloseDocument** method is used to detect any error level state that may exist after the document has been printed. **CloseDocument** returns Level:Benign if the document printed normally.

Implementation: Called immediately after the document has been printed.

Return Data Type: BYTE

ClosePage (end a page print)**ClosePage(), BYTE**

ClosePage Called after each page is printed to detect a possible error condition.

The **ClosePage** method is used to detect any error state that may exist after each page (WMF file) has been printed. **ClosePage** returns Level:Benign if the page printed successfully.

Implementation: Called immediately after each WMF page has been printed.

Return Data Type: BYTE

GetProperty (get a property value)**GetProperty (*property*), **STRING****

GetProperty Returns the value of a specified property.

property A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a valid document property name.

The **GetProperty** method returns a value of the current document property. These properties are defined in the documentation for each ReportGenerator object (i.e., the HTML report generator contains a list of supported properties).

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Init (initialize error class before printing)**Init(ErrorClass EC)**

Init Initializes the ErrorClass object used to detect document errors..

EC The name of the ErrorClass object used to report any errors encountered during report generation.

The **Init** method is used to initialize the ErrorClass object that is used with the ReportGenerator Class.

OpenDocument (begin document printing)

OpenDocument(), BYTE

OpenDocument Called before the document is printed, and posts any error level code that may have occurred during initialization.

The **OpenDocument** method is used to detect any error state that may exist before the document has been printed. If the document is ready to print, **OpenDocument** returns a Level:Benign

Implementation: Called immediately before the document begins to print.

Return Data Type: BYTE

OpenPage (begin a page print)

OpenPage(), BYTE

OpenPage Called before each page is printed to detect if an error has occurred.

The **OpenPage** method is used to detect an error level state that may exist before each page (WMF file) has been printed. If the page is ready to be printed, **OpenPage** returns Level:Benign.

Implementation: Called immediately before each WMF page is printed.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Opened (file opened flag)

Opened BYTE

The **Opened** property indicates whether the DbLogFileManager's FILE (the log file) has been opened. A value of one (1 or True) indicates the FILE is open; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates the FILE is not opened.

ProcessArc (print an arc)

ProcessArc(*ArcFormatGrp *arc*, *comment*)

ProcessArc Prints an ARC of an ellipse to a target output document.

arc A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target arc graphic.

comment A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the arc of an ellipse to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessArc** method prints an arc of an ellipse to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *arc* group contains the position and style of the arc from the contents of the passed *ArcFormatGrp*.

See Also: ARC

ProcessBand (begin/end report band processing)**ProcessBand** (*bandtype*, *position*)**ProcessBand** Processes each report band

bandtype A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the type of band to process. Valid band types are HEADER, FOOTER, DETAIL, BREAK and FORM.

position A BYTE, variable, EQUATE, or expression that identifies the start or end of the band.

The **ProcessBand** method is used to process all report bands and redirect to an alternative document where appropriate. If the position attribute is TRUE (1), the start of each band is processed. If the position attribute is FALSE (0), the start of each band is processed.

ProcessCheck (print a checkbox)**ProcessCheck**(*CheckFormatGrp *check*, *text*, *comment*)**ProcessCheck** Prints a CHECK control to the output document.

check A TYPEd GROUP that holds all of the properties of the target check box.

text A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the check box prompt contents.

comment A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the check box to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessCheck** method prints a check box to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *check* group contains the position, style, text, and check box state from the contents of the passed CheckFormatGrp.

ProcessChord (print a section of an ellipse)

ProcessChord(*ChordFormatGrp *chord*, *comment*)

ProcessChord Prints a section of an ellipse to a target output document.

<i>chord</i>	A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target chord graphic.
<i>comment</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the section of an ellipse to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessChord** method prints a section of an ellipse to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *chord* group contains the position and style of the chord from the contents of the passed *ChordFormatGrp*.

See Also: CHORD

ProcessEllipse (print an ellipse)

ProcessEllipse(*EllipseFormatGrp *ellipse*, *comment*)

ProcessEllipse	Prints an ELLIPSE control to a target output document.
<i>ellipse</i>	A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target ellipse control.
<i>comment</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the ellipse to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessEllipse** method prints an ellipse control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *ellipse* group contains the position and style of the ellipse control from the contents of the passed *EllipseFormatGrp*.

ProcessImage (print an image)

ProcessImage (*ImageFormatGrp *image*, *iName*, *comment*)

ProcessImage	Prints an IMAGE control to a target output document.
<i>image</i>	A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target image control.
<i>iname</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the file name containing the image to be printed.
<i>comment</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the image to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessImage** method prints an image control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *image* group contains the position and stretch mode (centered, tiled, stretched) of the image control from the contents of the passed *ImageFormatGrp*.

ProcessLine (print a line)

ProcessLine (*LineFormatGrp *line*, *comment*)

ProcessLine Prints a LINE control to a target output document.

line A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target LINE control.

comment A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the LINE to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessLine** method prints a LINE control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

ProcessOption (print an option control)

ProcessOption (*OptionFormatGrp *option*, *text*, *comment*)

ProcessOption Prints an OPTION control to a target output document.

option A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target OPTION control.

text A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the OPTION text contents.

comment A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the OPTION to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessOption** method prints an option control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *option* group contains the position and other attributes of the option control from the contents of the passed *OptionFormatGrp*.

ProcessRadio (print a radio button)

ProcessRadio (*RadioFormatGrp *radio*, *text*, *comment*)

ProcessRadio Prints a RADIO control to a target output document.

radio A TYPEd GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target RADIO control.

text A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the RADIO text contents.

comment A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the RADIO to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessRadio** method prints a RADIO control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *radio* group contains the contents, position (outer, inner) and radio state of the radio control from the contents of the passed *RadioFormatGrp*.

ProcessRectangle (print a box control)

ProcessRectangle (*RectFormatGrp *rect*, *comment*)

ProcessRectangle Prints a BOX control to a target output document.

rect A TYPEd GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target BOX control.

comment A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the BOX to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessRectangle** method prints a BOX control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *rect* group contains the position, style, and other attributes of the BOX control from the contents of the passed *RectFormatGrp*.

ProcessText (print a string or text control)

ProcessText (*TextFormatGrp *txtgrp*, *text*, *comment*)

ProcessText	Prints a TEXT or STRING control to a target output document.
<i>txtgrp</i>	A TYPED GROUP structure that holds all of the properties of the target TEXT or STRING control.
<i>text</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the TEXT or STRING contents.
<i>comment</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing information necessary for the TEXT or STRING control to be properly rendered to the target document.

The **ProcessText** method prints a TEXT or STRING control to the appropriate document format. The *comment* parameter is used to send the appropriate formatting information to the target document type, and is limited to 2056 characters. (See COMMENT)

Implementation: The *txtgrp* group contains the position, alignment, styles, and other attributes of a TEXT or STRING control from the contents of the passed *TextFormatGrp*.

SetProperty (set a property value)**SetProperty (*property* , *value*), STRING**

SetProperty Sets the value of a specified property.*property* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a valid document property name.*value* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a value for the specified property name.

The **SetProperty** method sets a value of the named document *property*. These properties are defined in the documentation for each ReportGenerator object (i.e., the HTML report generator contains a list of supported properties).

WhoAml (identify the report generator type)**WhoAml (), STRING**

WhoAml Identifies the type of report generator.

The **WhoAml** method returns a string used to identify the type of report generator. For example, the HTML report generator returns 'HTML'.

Implementation: Returns the value of the *IAm* property initialized in the ReportGenerator object's constructor.

Return Data Type: STRING

LocatorClass

LocatorClass Overview

The LocatorClass is an abstract class--it is not useful by itself. However, other useful classes are derived from it and other structures (such as the BrowseClass) use it to reference its derived classes.

LocatorClass Concepts

The classes derived from LocatorClass let you specify a locator control and a sort field on which to search for each sort order of a BrowseClass object. These LocatorClass objects help the BrowseClass locate and scroll to the requested items.

LocatorClass objects implement some of the common variations in locator controls (none, STRING, ENTRY), locator invocation (keystroke, ENTER key, TAB key), and search methods (single character search starting from current item, incremental character, exclusive search) that occur in the browse context.

LocatorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass optionally uses the classes derived from the LocatorClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass objects use a locator, then your program must instantiate a LocatorClass for each use.

The StepLocatorClass, EntryLocatorClass, IncrementalLocatorClass, and FilterLocatorClass are all derived (directly or indirectly) from the LocatorClass. Each of these derived classes provides slightly different search behaviors and characteristics.

Step Locator

Use a Step Locator when the search field is a STRING, CSTRING, or PSTRING, a single character search is sufficient (a step locator is not appropriate when there are many key values that begin with the same character), and you want the search to take place immediately upon the end user's keystroke. Step Locators are not appropriate for numeric keys.

Entry Locator

Use an Entry Locator when you want a multi-character search (more precise) on numeric or alphanumeric keys and you want to delay the search until the user accepts the locator control. The delayed search reduces network traffic and provides a smoother search in a client-server environment.

Incremental Locator

Use an Incremental locator when you want a multi-character search (more precise) on numeric or alphanumeric keys and you want the search to take place immediately upon the end user's keystroke.

Filter Locator

Use a Filter Locator when you want a multi-character search (more precise) on alphanumeric keys and you want to *minimize network traffic*.

LocatorClass ABC Template Implementation

Because the LocatorClass is abstract, the ABC Template generated code does not directly reference the LocatorClass.

LocatorClass Source Files

The LocatorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The LocatorClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	LocatorClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	LocatorClass method definitions

LocatorClass Properties

The LocatorClass has the several properties described below. These properties are inherited by classes derived from the LocatorClass.

Control (the locator control number)

Control SIGNED

The **Control** property contains the locator control number if there is a locator control. If there is no locator control, it contains zero (0). The LocatorClass uses the Control property to refresh the control or change its properties.

The Init method sets the value of the Control property.

See Also: Init

FreeElement (the locator's first free key element)

FreeElement ANY

The **FreeElement** property contains a reference to a component of the sort sequence of the searched data set. The ABC Templates further require this to be a free component of a key. A free component is one that is not range limited to a single value. Typically this is also the USE variable of the locator control. The LocatorClass uses the FreeElement property to prime the free component with the appropriate search value.

The Init method sets the value of the FreeElement property.

See Also: Init

NoCase (case sensitivity flag)

NoCase BYTE

The **NoCase** property determines whether the LocatorClass object performs case sensitive searches or case insensitive searches.

The Init method sets the value of the NoCase property.

Implementation: If NoCase contains a non-zero value, the search is not case sensitive. That is, searches for "Tx," "tx," or "TX" all produce the same result. If NoCase contains a value of zero (0), the search is case sensitive.

See Also: Init

ViewManager (the locator's ViewManager object)

ViewManager &BrowseClass

The **ViewManager** property is a reference to the BrowseClass object that the LocatorClass object is working for. See *ViewManager* and *BrowseClass* for more information. The LocatorClass uses this property to manipulate the searched data set as well as the displayed LIST.

The Init method sets the value of the ViewManager property.

See Also: Init

LocatorClass Methods

The LocatorClass contains the following methods.

GetShadow(return shadow value)

GetShadow, VIRTUAL

GetShadow Is a virtual placeholder method for the EntryLocatorClass.SetShadow method.

The **GetShadow** method returns the value of the Shadow property found in the child CLASS. The Shadow property is set based on the users keyboard input into the entry locator field.

Implementation: The GetShadow method is a placeholder method for the EntryLocatorClass which is derived from LocatorClass.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

See Also: LocatorClass.SetShadow, EntryLocatorClass.Shadow

Init (initialize the LocatorClass object)

Init([*control*] , *freeelement*, *nocase* [,*browseclass*])

Init	Initializes the LocatorClass object.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that sets the locator control number for the LocatorClass object. If omitted, the control number defaults to zero (0) indicating there is no locator control.
<i>freeelement</i>	The fully qualified label of a component of the sort sequence of the searched data set. The ABC Templates further require this to be a free component of a key. A free component is one that is not range limited to a single value. Typically this is also the USE variable of the locator control.
<i>nocase</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether the LocatorClass object performs case sensitive searches or case insensitive searches.
<i>browseclass</i>	The label of the BrowseClass object for the locator. If omitted, the LocatorClass object has no direct access to the browse QUEUE or it's underlying VIEW.

The **Init** method initializes the LocatorClass object.

Implementation: The Init method sets the values of the Control, FreeElement, NoCase, and ViewManager properties.

A *nocase* value of zero (0 or False) produces case sensitive searches; a value of one (1 or True) produces case insensitive searches.

By default, only the StepLocatorClass and FilterLocatorClass use the *browseclass*. The other locator classes do not.

Example:

```
BRW1::Sort1:Locator.Init(,CUST:StateCode,1)           !without locator control
BRW1::Sort2:Locator.Init(?CUST:CustMo,CUST:CustNo,1)!with locator control
```

See Also: Control, FreeElement, NoCase, ViewManager

Reset (reset the locator for next search)

Reset, VIRTUAL

The **Reset** method is a virtual placeholder method to reset the locator for the next search.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator method calls the Reset method.

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator PROCEDURE      !process an accepted locator entry
CODE
IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL AND ACCEPTED() = SELF.Sort.Locator.Control
IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeAccepted()           !call locator take accepted method
    SELF.Reset(1)                             !if search needed, reset the view
    SELECT(SELF.ListControl)                  !focus on the browse list control
    SELF.ResetQueue( Reset:Done )             !reload the browse queue
    SELF.Sort.Locator.Reset                   !reset the locator
    SELF.UpdateWindow                         !update (redraw) the window
END
END
```

See Also: BrowseClass.TakeAcceptedLocator

Set (restart the locator:LocatorClass)

Set, VIRTUAL

The **Set** method prepares the locator for a new search.

Implementation: The Set method clears the FreeElement property.

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.TakeScroll PROCEDURE( SIGNED Event )
CODE
CASE Event
OF Event:ScrollUp OROF Event:ScrollDown
  SELF.ScrollOne( Event )
OF Event:PageUp OROF Event:PageDown
  SELF.ScrollPage( Event )
OF Event:ScrollTop OROF Event:ScrollBottom
  SELF.ScrollEnd( Event )
END                                !after a scroll event
IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL THEN !if locator is present
  SELF.Sort.Locator.Set           !set it to blank
END
```

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the LIST control:LocatorClass)

SetAlerts(*control*), VIRTUAL

SetAlerts Alerts appropriate keystrokes for the specified control.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control displaying the data to search.

The **SetAlerts** method alerts appropriate keystrokes for the specified control, typically a LIST or COMBO.

The SetAlerts method is a placeholder method for classes derived from LocatorClass--IncrementalLocatorClass, etc.

See Also: IncrementalLocatorClass.SetAlerts

SetEnabled (enable or disable the locator control)**SetEnabled**(*enabled*)**SetEnabled** Enables or disables the locator control.*enabled* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that enables or disables the locator control. A value of zero (0 or False) disables the control; a value of one (1 or True) enables the control.

The **SetEnabled** method enables or disables the locator control for this LocatorClass object. See *ENABLE* and *DISABLE* in the *Language Reference*.

Example:

MyBrowseClass.Enable PROCEDURE

CODE

```

IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL                !if locator is present
    SELF.Sort.Locator.SetEnabled(RECORDS(SELF.ListQueue)) !disable locator if 0 items
END

```

SetShadow (update shadow value)**SetShadow**(*value*),VIRTUAL**SetShadow** Is a virtual placeholder method for the EntryLocatorClass.SetShadow method.*value* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that is assigned to the Shadow property.

The **SetShadow** method places a value in the EntryLocatorClass.Shadow property.

See Also: EntryLocatorClass.SetShadow, EntryLocatorClass.Shadow

TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value:LocatorClass)

TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL

The **TakeAccepted** method processes the accepted locator value and returns a value indicating whether the browse list display must change. The TakeAccepted method is only a placeholder method for classes derived from LocatorClass--EntryLocatorClass, FilterLocatorClass, etc.

This method is only appropriate for LocatorClass objects with locator controls that accept user input; for example, entry controls, combo controls, or spin controls.

A locator value is accepted when the end user changes the locator value, then TABS off the locator control or otherwise switches focus to another control on the same window.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: EntryLocatorClass.TakeAccepted, FilterLocatorClass.TakeAccepted

TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:LocatorClass)

TakeKey, VIRTUAL

The **TakeKey** method processes an alerted keystroke for the LIST control and returns a value indicating whether the browse list display must change.

Tip: By default, all alphanumeric keys are alerted for LIST controls.

The TakeKey method is only a placeholder method for classes derived from LocatorClass--StepLocatorClass, EntryLocatorClass, IncrementalLocatorClass, etc.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: StepLocatorClass.TakeKey, EntryLocatorClass.TakeKey, IncrementalLocatorClass.TakeKey

UpdateWindow (redraw the locator control with its current value)**UpdateWindow, VIRTUAL**

The **UpdateWindow** method redraws the locator control with its current value.

The UpdateWindow method is only a placeholder method for classes derived from LocatorClass--EntryLocatorClass, FilterLocatorClass, etc.

See Also: EntryLocatorClass.UpdateWindow, FilterLocatorClass.UpdateWindow

MsgBoxClass

MsgBoxClass Overview

The MsgBoxClass provides a message window to the ErrorClass. This class manages the display of the current error.

MsgBoxClass Source Files

The MsgBoxClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC. The specific MsgBoxClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABERROR.INC	MsgBoxClass declarations
ABERROR.CLW	MsgBoxClass method definitions
ABERROR.TRN	MsgBoxClass default error definitions

MsgBoxClass Properties

The The MsgBoxClass inherits all the properties of the WindowManager class from which it is derived. In addition to the inherited properties, the MsgBoxClass contains the following properties:

ButtonTypes (standard windows buttons)

ButtonTypes **LONG, PROTECTED**

The **ButtonTypes** property is used to indicate which Windows standard buttons to place on the message box dialog. This may indicate multiple buttons.

Caption (window title)

Caption **&STRING, PROTECTED**

The **Caption** property is a string that specifies the message box window caption.

Err (errorclass object)

Err **&ErrorClass, PROTECTED**

The **Err** property is a reference to the ErrorClass object.

Icon (icon for image control)

Icon **LONG, PROTECTED**

The **Icon** property is a long value that specifies the icon to use on the message box window.

HistoryHandler (windowcomponent interface)

HistoryHandler **&WindowComponent**

The **HistoryHandler** property is a reference to the WindowComponent interface.

MsgRVal (message box return value)

MsgRVal **LONG**

The **MsgRVal** property is a long value that is the return value from the message box. The MsgBox.Init method sets this property to the Default window button.

Style (font style)

Style **LONG, PROTECTED**

The **Style** property indicates the font style to use withing the list control on the message box dialog.

Win (reference to window)

Win **&Window, PROTECTED**

The **Win** property is a reference to the message box window.

MsgBoxClass Methods

The MsgBoxClass inherits all the methods of the WindowManager from which it is derived. In addition to the inherited methods, the MsgBoxClass contains the methods listed below.

FetchFeq (retrieve button feq)

FetchFeq(*btn*), VIRTUAL

FetchFeq	Retrieve button FEQ.
<i>btn</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the button number.

The **FetchFeq** method determines the FEQ for the specified button number.

Return Data Value: SHORT

FetchStdButton (determine button pressed)

FetchStdButton(feq)

The **FetchStdButton** determines which of the windows standard buttons was pressed. The FEQ of the button is returned.

Return Data Value: BYTE

Init (initialize the MsgBoxClass object)**Init, PROC, DERIVED****Init**(*win*, *err*, [*caption*], *icon*, [*buttons*], *default button*, *style*)

Init	Initialize the MsgBoxClass object.
<i>win</i>	Reference to the MsgBox window.
<i>err</i>	Reference to the ErrorClass object.
<i>caption</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the message box window caption.
<i>icon</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the icon to display on the message box.
<i>buttons</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which Windows standard buttons to place on the message box. This may indicate multiple buttons. If omitted this is equivalent to Button:OK.
<i>default button</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the default button on the message box.
<i>style</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the font style to use with the list control on the message box dialog.

The **Init** method initializes the MsgBoClass object.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Kill (perform any necessary termination code)**Kill**

The **Kill** method disposes any memory allocated during the object's lifetime and performs any other necessary termination code.

SetupAdditionalFeqs (initialize additional control properties)

SetupAdditionalFeqs, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED

The **SetupAdditionalFeqs** method initializes additional properties for the controls on the window.

TakeAccepted (process accepted event)

TakeAccepted, PROC, DERIVED

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted events for the message box dialog's controls, and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeAccepted returns Level:Fatal to indicate a standard button on the dialog was pressed and ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Return Data Type: BYTE

PopupClass

PopupClass Overview

The PopupClass object defines and manages a full featured popup (context) menu. The PopupClass object makes it easy to add fully functional popup menus to your procedures.

PopupClass Concepts

You can set the popup menu items to mimic existing buttons on a window, so that associated menu item text matches the *button* text, is enabled only when the *button* is enabled, and, when selected, invokes the *button* action.

Alternatively, you can set the popup menu item to POST a particular event or simply return its ID so you can trap it and custom code the item's functionality.

PopupClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The PopupClass optionally uses the TranslatorClass so you can translate menu text to other languages without changing your popup menu code. The PopupClass optionally uses the INIClass to save and restore menu definitions to a configuration (.INI) file. Neither class is required by the PopupClass; however, if you use either facility, you must instantiate them in your program. See the Conceptual Example.

The ASCIIViewerClass, BrowseClass, and PrintPreviewClass all use the PopupClass to manage their popup menus. This PopupClass use is automatic when you INCLUDE the class header (ABASCII.INC, ABBROWSE.INC, or ABPRINT.INC) in your program's data section.

PopupClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local PopupClass class *and* object for each instance of the Popup code template.

The class is named PopupMgr# where # is the instance number of the Popup code template. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the Popup code template **Classes** tab to easily modify the popup menu behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

The template generated code does not reference the PopupClass objects encapsulated within the ASCIIViewerClass, BrowseClass, and PrintPreviewClass.

PopupClass Source Files

The PopupClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The PopupClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABPOPUP.INC	PopupClass declarations
ABPOPUP.CLW	PopupClass method definitions
ABPOPUP.TRN	PopupClass translation strings

PopupClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a PopupClass object.

This example displays a dialog with a right-click popup menu that mimics the dialog buttons with three different PopupClass techniques. The dialog buttons demonstrate the PopupClass' ability to save and restore menus to and from an INI file.

```

PROGRAM
MAP
END
INCLUDE('ABPOPUP.INC')           !declare PopupClass
INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')           !declare INIClass & Translator
INCLUDE('KEYCODES.C LW')        !declare right-click EQUATE

PopupString STRING(20)          !to receive menu selection
PopupMgr   PopupClass           !declare PopupMgr object
Translator TranslatorClass       !declare Translator object
INIMgr     INIClass             !declare INIMgr object
INIFile    EQUATE('..\Popup.ini') !declare INI pathname EQUATE

PopupWin WINDOW('Popup Demo'),AT(,,184,50),ALRT(MouseRight),GRAY
    BUTTON('&Save Popup'),AT(17,16),USE(?Save)
    BUTTON('&Restore Popup'),AT(74,16),USE(?Restore),DISABLE
    BUTTON('Close'),AT(140,16),USE(?Close)
END

CODE
OPEN(PopupWin)
    Translator.Init              !initialize Translator object
    INIMgr.Init(INIFile)         !initialize INIMgr object
    PopupMgr.Init(INIMgr)        !initialize PopupMgr object
    PopupMgr.AddItemMimic('Save',?Save) !Save item mimics ?Save button
    PopupMgr.AddItem('Restore Popup','Restore') !add menu item: Restore
    PopupMgr.SetItemEnable('Restore',False) !initially disable Restore item
    PopupMgr.AddItem('-', 'Separator1') !add a menu item separator
    PopupMgr.AddItem('Disable Save','Disable') !add a menu item: Disable
    PopupMgr.AddItem('-', 'Separator2') !add a menu item separator
    PopupMgr.AddItem('Close (EVENT:Accepted)','Close')!add a menu item: Close
    PopupMgr.AddItemEvent('Close',EVENT:Accepted,?Close)!Close POSTs event to a control
    PopupMgr.AddItem('Close (EVENT:CloseWindow)','Close2')!add a menu item: Close2
    PopupMgr.AddItemEvent('Close2',EVENT:CloseWindow,0) !Close2 POSTs independent event
    PopupMgr.SetTranslator(Translator) !enable popup text translation

ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:AlertKey              !trap for alerted keys
    IF KEYCODE() = MouseRight !if right-click

```

```

PopupString=PopupMgr.Ask()      !display popup menu
CASE PopupString                !check for selected item
OF 'Disable'                    !if Disable item selected
  IF PopupMgr.GetItemChecked('Disable')
    PopupMgr.SetItemCheck('Disable',False)  !toggle the menu check mark
    ENABLE(?Save)                          !toggle ?Save button state
  ELSE                                !which automatically toggles
    PopupMgr.SetItemCheck('Disable',True)   !the Save menu item, because
    DISABLE(?Save)                         !it mimics the ?Save button
  END
OF 'Restore'                    !if Restore item selected
  POST(EVENT:Accepted,?Restore)  !code your own functionality
ELSE                             !if any other item selected
  END                             !Ask automatically handled it
END
END
CASE FIELD()
OF ?Save                        !Save button mimiced by Save item
  CASE EVENT()
  OF EVENT:Accepted
    PopupMgr.Save('MyPopup')      !save menu definition to INI
    RUN('Notepad '&INIFile)       !display/edit menu definition
    ENABLE(?Restore)              !enable the Restore button
    PopupMgr.SetItemEnable('Restore',True)  !enable the Restore item
  END
OF ?Restore
  CASE EVENT()
  OF EVENT:Accepted
    PopupMgr.Restore('MyPopup')   !restore/define menu from INI
  END
OF ?Close                       !Close btn Accepted by Close item
  CASE EVENT()
  OF EVENT:Accepted
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)
    END
  END
END
END
PopupMgr.Kill

```


PopupClass Properties

The PopupClass contains the properties described below.

ClearKeycode (clear KEYCODE character)

ClearKeycode **BYTE**

The **ClearKeycode** property determines whether the PopupClass object clears the (MouseRight) value from the KEYCODE() "buffer" before invoking the selected menu item's action. A value of one (1 or True) sets the KEYCODE() "buffer" to zero; a value of zero (0 or False) leaves the KEYCODE() "buffer" intact. See *KEYCODE* and *SETKEYCODE* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

Tip: **The uncleared KEYCODE() value can cause the popup menu to reappear in some circumstances; therefore we recommend setting the ClearKeycode property to True.**

Implementation: The ABC Templates set the ClearKeycode property to True by default. The Ask method implements the action specified by the ClearKeycode property.

See Also: Ask, Init

PopupClass Methods

The PopupClass contains the methods listed below.

PopupClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the PopupClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the PopupClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the PopupClass object
AddMenu	add a menu
AddItem	add menu item
AddItemEvent	set menu item action
AddItemMimic	tie menu item to a button
AddSubMenu	add submenu
Kill	shut down the PopupClass object

Mainstream Use:

Ask	display and process the popup menu
GetItemChecked	return toggle item status
GetItemEnabled	return item status
SetItemCheck	set toggle item status
SetItemEnable	set item status

Occasional Use:

DeleteItem	remove menu item
GetLastSelection	return last selected item
SetTranslator	set run-time translator
Save	save a menu for restoration
SetLevel	set menu item hierarchy level
SetText	set menu item text
Restore	restore a saved menu

Virtual Methods

The PopupClass has no virtual methods.

AddItem (add menu item)

<code>AddItem(<i>text</i> | [,<i>name</i>] | )</code> <code>| <i>name</i>, <i>position</i>, <i>level</i> |</code>	
AddItem	Adds an item to the popup menu.
<i>text</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text of the menu item. A single hyphen (-) creates a non-selectable separator (a 3D horizontal bar) on the menu. An ampersand (&) designates the next character as the menu item's hot key.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. Other PopupClass methods refer to the menu item by its <i>name</i> , not by its <i>text</i> . This lets you apply runtime translation or dynamic reordering of menus without changing your code. If omitted, AddItem derives the <i>name</i> from the <i>text</i> .
<i>position</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the name after which to add the new menu item.
<i>level</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the nesting level or depth of the new menu item.

The **AddItem** method adds an item to the popup menu.

You set the action taken for each menu item with the AddItemMimic or AddItemEvent methods, or with your own custom code. These methods (and your code) must refer to the menu items by name (not by text).

```
AddItem(text)
    Adds a single menu item at the end of the menu. The item name
    is derived.

AddItem(text, name)
    Adds a single menu item at the end of the menu with the name
    specified.

AddItem(text, name, position, level)
    Adds a single menu item following item position, at level level,
    with name specified.
```

Implementation: The *text* and *name* parameters accept up to 1024 characters.

Each derived menu item name is the same as its *text* minus any special characters. That is, the name contains only characters 'A-Z', 'a-z', and '0-9'. If the resulting name is not unique, the PopupClass appends a sequence number to the name to make it unique.

Example:

```
PopupMgr.AddItem('Save Popup')           !add menu item named SavePopup
PopupMgr.AddItem('Save Popup','Save')     !add menu item named Save
PopupMgr.AddItem('-', 'Separator')        !add a separator
PopupMgr.AddItem('Restore Popup','Restore','Save',1)!add Restore item after Save item
```

See Also: AddItemEvent, AddItemMimic, SetText

AddItemEvent (set menu item action)

AddItemEvent(*name*, *event* [,*control*]), PROC

AddItemEvent Associates an event with a menu item.

<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the name of the menu item associated with the <i>event</i> . If the named item does not exist, AddItemEvent adds it at the bottom of the popup menu.
<i>event</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the event number to POST when the end user selects the menu item.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number to POST the <i>event</i> to when the end user selects the menu item. To post a field-independent event, use a <i>control</i> value of zero (0). If omitted, <i>control</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **AddItemEvent** method associates an *event* with a menu item and returns the name of the item. When the end user selects the menu item, the PopupClass object POSTs the *event* to the *control*.

Implementation: The Ask method traps the selected item and POSTs the *event*.

The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```

PopupMgr.AddItem('Close (control event)','Close')    !add a menu item: Close
PopupMgr.AddItemEvent('Close',EVENT:Accepted,?Close)!Close POSTs event to a control
PopupMgr.AddItem('Close (window event)','Close2')   !add a menu item: Close2
PopupMgr.AddItemEvent('Close2',EVENT:CloseWindow,0) !Close2 POSTs independent event
    
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, Ask

AddItemMimic (tie menu item to a button)

AddItemMimic(*name*, *button* [, *text*]), **PROC**

AddItemMimic Associates a menu item with a BUTTON.

<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name to associate with the <i>button</i> . If the named item does not exist, AddItemMimic adds it at the bottom of the popup menu. To add a new item, the <i>button</i> must have text, or you must supply the <i>text</i> parameter.
<i>button</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the associated BUTTON's control number. If the button has no text, you should supply the <i>text</i> parameter.
<i>text</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text of the menu item. Other PopupClass methods refer to the menu item by its <i>name</i> , not by its <i>text</i> . This lets you apply runtime translation or dynamic reordering of menus without changing your code. If omitted, AddItemMimic uses the button text as the text of the menu item.

The **AddItemMimic** method associates a menu item with a *button* and returns the name of the item. AddItemMimic can add a *new* menu item, or add an *association* to an *existing* menu item. The associated menu item text matches the *button* text, is enabled only when the *button* is enabled, and, when selected, invokes the *button* action.

Implementation: The Ask method traps the selected item and POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the *button*.

If *button* does not represent a BUTTON, AddItemMimic does nothing.

The *text* and *name* parameters accept up to 1024 characters.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Example:

```

PopupMgr.AddItem('Save Popup','Save')      !add menu item: Save
PopupMgr.AddItemMimic('Save',?Save)        !Save item mimics ?Save button
PopupMgr.AddItemMimic('Insert',?Insert)    !add Insert item & mimic ?Insert button

```

See Also: **AddItem**, **AddMenu**, **Ask**, **SetText**

AddMenu (add a menu)

AddMenu(*selections* [, *position*])

AddMenu	Adds a popup menu.
<i>selections</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text for the popup menu choices.
<i>position</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the position within the PopupClass' existing menu at which to add the <i>selections</i> . If omitted or zero (0), AddMenu clears any existing menu selections.

The **AddMenu** method adds an entire popup menu or adds additional selections to an existing menu. The AddMenu method creates a popup menu item with a unique name for each text specified by the *selections* parameter. The *selections* parameter is identical to the *selections* parameter for the POPUP command. See *POPUP* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

You set the action taken for each menu item with the AddItemMimic or AddItemEvent methods, or with your own custom code. These methods (and your code) must refer to the menu items by name (not by text).

Implementation: The AddMenu method optionally replaces any previously defined menu for this PopupClass object. The Ask method displays the popup menu and returns the selected item's name.

The Popup class object derives the menu item name from its text. Each derived item name is the same as its text minus any special characters. That is, the name contains only characters 'A-Z', 'a-z', and '0-9'. If the resulting name is not unique, the PopupClass appends a sequence number to the name to make it unique.

The *selections* parameter accepts up to 10,000 characters.

Example:

```
MenuChoices EQUATE('&Save Menu|&Restore Menu|-|&Close')!declare menu definition string
CODE
  PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)                                !add Popup menu
  PopupMgr.AddItemMimic('SaveMenu',?Save)                      !SaveMenu mimics ?Save button
  PopupMgr.AddItemEvent('Close',EVENT:Accepted,?Close)        !Close POSTs event to a control
!program code
  IF PopupMgr.Ask() = 'RestoreMenu'                             !if RestoreMenu item selected
    PopupMgr.Restore('MyMenu')                                  !code your own functionality
  ELSE                                                           !if any other item selected
    END                                                         !Ask automatically handled it
```

See Also: AddItemEvent, AddItemMimic, Ask

AddSubMenu (add submenu)

AddSubMenu([*text*] ,*selections*, *name to follow*)

AddSubMenu Adds a submenu to an existing menu.

text A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the submenu text. If omitted, the submenu text must be prepended to the *selections* parameter.

selections A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text for the submenu items. The submenu items must be preceded by a double open curly brace ({{) and followed by a single close curly brace (}).

name to follow A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu name or item name after which to insert the submenu.

The **AddSubMenu** method adds a submenu to an existing menu. The AddSubMenu method adds a submenu and its items, including a unique name for each item specified by the *selections* parameter. The *selections* parameter is identical to the submenu section of the *selections* parameter for the POPUP command. See *POPUP* in the *Language Reference* for more information. Set the action taken for each menu item with the AddItemMimic or AddItemEvent methods, or with your own custom code. These methods (and your code) must refer to the menu items by name (not by text).

Implementation: The Ask method displays the popup menu and returns the selected item's name.

The Popup class object derives the menu item name from its text. Each derived item name is the same as its text minus any special characters. That is, the name contains only characters 'A-Z', 'a-z', and '0-9'. If the resulting name is not unique, the PopupClass appends a sequence number to the name to make it unique. The *text* parameter accepts up to 1,024 characters; the *selections* parameter accepts up to 10,000 characters.

Example:

```
MenuChoices EQUATE('&Insert|&Change|&Delete')    !declare menu definition string
SubChoices EQUATE('{{by &name|by &ZIP code}}')    !declare submenu definition
CODE
  PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)                  !add Popup menu
  PopupMgr.AddSubMenu('&Print',SubChoices,'Delete')!add Print submenu after delete
  CASE PopupMgr.Ask()                            !display popup menu
    OF ('Insert')      ;DO Update(1)              !process end user choice
    OF ('Change')      ;DO Update(2)              !process end user choice
    OF ('Delete')      ;DO Update(3)              !process end user choice
    OF ('byname')      ;DO PrintByName             !process end user choice
    OF ('byZIPcode')   ;DO PrintByZIP              !process end user choice
  END
```

See Also: AddItemEvent, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, Ask

Ask (display the popup menu)

Ask([x] [,y]), PROC

Ask	Returns the selected popup menu item name.
x	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the horizontal position of the top left corner of the menu. If omitted, the menu appears at the current cursor position.
y	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the vertical position of the top left corner of the menu. If omitted, the menu appears at the current cursor position.

The **Ask** method displays the popup menu, performs any action set by AddItemEvent or AddItemMimic for the selected item, then returns the selected item's name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu method sets the item name.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
MenuChoices EQUATE('&Save Menu|&Restore Menu|-|&Close')!declare menu definition string
CODE
  PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)                                !add Popup menu
  PopupMgr.AddItemMimic('SaveMenu',?Save)                      !SaveMenu mimics ?Save button
  PopupMgr.AddItemEvent('Close',EVENT:Accepted,?Close)        !Close POSTs event to a control
!program code
  IF PopupMgr.Ask() = 'RestoreMenu'                             !if RestoreMenu item selected
    PopupMgr.Restore('MyMenu')                                  !code your own functionality
  ELSE                                                         !if any other item selected
    END                                                         !Ask automatically handled it
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu

DeleteItem (remove menu item)**DeleteItem**(*name*)**DeleteItem** Deletes a popup menu item.*name* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.The **DeleteItem** method deletes a popup menu item and any associated submenu items.Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Example:

```

PopupMgr.AddItem('&Insert','Insert')           !Insert item
PopupMgr.AddItem('&Change','Change')           !Change item
PopupMgr.AddItem('&Delete','Delete')           !Delete item
PopupMgr.AddItem('&Select','Select')           !Select item
IF No_Records_Found
    PopupMgr.DeleteItem('Change')               !remove change item
    PopupMgr.DeleteItem('Delete')               !remove delete item
    PopupMgr.DeleteItem('Select')               !remove select item
END

```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu

DeleteMenu (remove a popup submenu)

DeleteMenu(*name*)

DeleteMenu Deletes a popup submenu item, and all associated child items.

name A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the submenu item name. The AddMenu method set the item name.

The **DeleteMenu** method deletes a popup submenu item and any associated child items.

Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Example:

```

PopupMgr.AddItem('&Insert','Insert')           !Insert item
PopupMgr.AddItem('&Change','Change')           !Change item
PopupMgr.AddItem('&Delete','Delete')           !Delete item
PopupMgr.AddItem('&Select','Select')           !Select item
IF No_Records_Found
  PopupMgr.DeleteItem('Change')                 !remove change item
  PopupMgr.DeleteItem('Delete')                 !remove delete item
  PopupMgr.DeleteItem('Select')                 !remove select item
  PopupMgr.DeleteMenu('Format List')            !remove select sub menu
END

```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu

GetItemChecked (return toggle item status)**GetItemChecked**(*name*)**GetItemChecked** Returns the status of a toggle menu item.*name* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.The **GetItemChecked** method returns one (1) if the item is checked (on) and zero (0) if the item is not checked (off). The SetItemCheck method sets the state of a toggle menu item.Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

IF PopupMgr.Ask() = 'Disable'           !if Disable item selected
IF PopupMgr.GetItemChecked('Disable')    !if item is checked/on
  PopupMgr.SetItemCheck('Disable',False) ! toggle it off
  ENABLE(?Save)                         ! take appropriate action
ELSE                                     !if item is not checked/off
  PopupMgr.SetItemCheck('Disable',True)  ! toggle it on
  DISABLE(?Save)                        ! take appropriate action
END
END

```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, SetItemCheck

GetItemEnabled (return item status)

GetItemEnabled(*name*)

GetItemEnabled Returns the enabled/disabled status of a menu item.

name A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.

The **GetItemEnabled** method returns one (1) if the item is enabled and zero (0) if the item is disabled. The SetItemEnable method sets the enabled/disabled state of a menu item.

Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF PopupMgr.GetItemEnabled('Save')      !if item is enabled
  PopupMgr.SetItemEnable('Save',False) ! disable it
ELSE                                     !if item is disabled
  PopupMgr.SetItemEnable('Save',True)  ! enable it
END
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, SetItemEnable

GetItems(returns number of popup entries)**GetItems(*onlyitems*)**

The **GetItems** method returns the number of entries that exist in the current active popup menu.

The *onlyitems* parameter (DEFAULT=0) specifies that only the number of popup items is returned. If non-zero, **GetItems** also returns the depth (nested) levels of the popup menu.

Return Data Type: SHORT

Example:

```
IF Popup.GetItems() ! Only if there are previous items.  
    Popup.AddItem('-', 'Separator1', Popup.GetItems(), 1)  
END
```

GetLastNumberSelection (get last menu item number selected)**GetLastNumberSelection**

The GetLastNumberSelection method returns the numeric order of the last selected menu item. This is also the last number returned by the POPUP() function

The ExecutePopup method (a PRIVATE method) sets the menu item number.

This method is equivalent to:

```
Return SELF.LastNumberSelection
```

Return Data Type: USHORT

GetLastSelection (return selected item)

GetLastSelection

The **GetLastSelection** method returns the name of the last selected item.

The AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, or AddSubMenu method sets the item name.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
MenuChoices EQUATE('Fred|Barney|Wilma')       !declare menu definition string
CODE
  PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)               !add Popup menu
  !program code
  PopupMgr.Ask()                               !display menu
  MESSAGE('Thank you for choosing '&PopupMgr.GetLastSelection)
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, AddSubMenu

Init (initialize the PopupClass object)

Init([*INIClass*])

Init	Initializes the PopupClass object.
<i>INIClass</i>	The label of the INIClass object for this PopupClass object. The Save method uses the INIClass object to save menu definitions to an INI file; the Restore method uses it to restore the saved menu definitions. If omitted, the Save and Restore methods do nothing.

The **Init** method initializes the PopupClass object.

Example:

PopupMgr	PopupClass	!declare PopupMgr object
INIMgr	INIClass	!declare INIMgr object
CODE		
PopupMgr.Init	(INIMgr)	!initialize PopupMgr object
PopupMgr.AddItem	('Save Popup','Save')	!add menu item: Save
PopupMgr.AddItemMimic	('Save',?Save)	!Save item mimics ?Save button

See Also: Restore, Save

Kill (shut down the PopupClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the PopupClass object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

PopupMgr.Init	!initialize PopupMgr object
!program code	
PopupMgr.Kill	!shut down PopupMgr object

Restore (restore a saved menu)

Restore(*menu*)

Restore	Restores a menu saved by the PopupClass.Save method.
<i>menu</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the name of the menu to restore.

The **Restore** method restores a menu saved by the Save method. The Restore method restores all menu attributes that the PopupClass object knows about, including associated menu actions.

Implementation: The Restore method requires an INIClass object. The Init method specifies the INIClass object.

Example:

```

PopupMgr  PopupClass          !declare PopupMgr object
INIMgr    INIClass            !declare INIMgr object
MenuChoices  EQUATE('&Save Menu|&Restore Menu|-|&Close')!declare menu definition

CODE
PopupMgr.Init(INIMgr)          !initialize PopupMgr object
PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)  !add Popup menu
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?Save
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
  PopupMgr.Save('MyPopup')    !save menu definition to INI
END
OF ?Restore
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
  PopupMgr.Restore('MyPopup') !restore menu from INI
END
END
END

```

See Also: Init, Save

Save (save a menu for restoration)**Save**(*menu*)

Save	Saves a menu for restoration by the PopupClass.Restore method.
<i>menu</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the name of the menu to save.

The **Save** method saves a menu for restoration by the Restore method. The Save method saves all menu attributes that the PopupClass object knows about, including associated menu actions.

Implementation: The Save method requires an INIClass object. The Init method specifies the INIClass object.

Example:

```

PopupMgr  PopupClass          !declare PopupMgr object
INIMgr    INIClass            !declare INIMgr object
MenuChoices EQUATE('&Save Menu|&Restore Menu|-|&Close')!declare menu definition

CODE
PopupMgr.Init(INIMgr)          !initialize PopupMgr object
PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)  !add Popup menu
ACCEPT
CASE FIELD()
OF ?Save
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
  PopupMgr.Save('MyPopup')    !save menu definition to INI
END
OF ?Restore
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
  PopupMgr.Restore('MyPopup') !restore menu from INI
END
END
END

```

See Also: Init, Restore

SetIcon (set icon name for popup menu item)

SetIcon(*name*, *iconname*)

SetIcon Sets the icon name of a popup menu item.

name A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.

iconname A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the name of the icon to attach to the menu item.

The **SetIcon** method sets the icon of a popup menu item. The AddItem or AddSubItem methods adds the menu item to the popup.

Implementation: The *iconname* parameter accepts up to 255 characters.

Example:

```

LOOP sm = 1 to RECORDS(QQ)
  GET(QQ,sm)
  pID = Popup.AddItem(CLIP(QQ.Item) & ' ',Clip(QQ.Item),pID,2)
  Popup.SetIcon(pID,SELF.QkIcon)
  Popup.AddItemEvent(pID,EVENT:NewSelection,QueryControl)
  SELF.PopupList.PopupID = pID
  SELF.PopupList.QueryName = QQ:Item
  ADD(SELF.PopupList)
END

```

SetItemCheck (set toggle item status)**SetItemCheck**(*name*, *status*)**SetItemCheck** Sets the status of a toggle menu item.

name A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.

status A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the status to which to set the toggle item. A *status* value of one (1) indicates a checked (on) item; zero (0) indicates an unchecked (off) item.

The **SetItemCheck** method sets the status of a toggle menu item. The GetItemChecked method returns the status of a toggle menu item.

Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Example:

```

IF PopupMgr.Ask() = 'Disable'           !if Disable item selected
  IF PopupMgr.GetItemChecked('Disable')  !if item is checked/on
    PopupMgr.SetItemCheck('Disable',False) ! toggle it off
    ENABLE(?Save)                        ! take appropriate action
  ELSE                                  !if item is not checked/off
    PopupMgr.SetItemCheck('Disable',True) ! toggle it on
    DISABLE(?Save)                      ! take appropriate action
  END
END

```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, GetItemChecked

SetItemEnable (set item status)

SetItemEnable(*name*)

SetItemEnable Sets the enabled/disabled status of a menu item.

name A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.

status A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the status to which to set the item. A *status* value of one (1) indicates an enabled item; zero (0) indicates a disabled item.

The **SetItemEnable** method sets the enabled/disabled status of a menu item. The GetItemEnabled method returns the enabled/disabled status of a menu item.

Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Example:

```
IF PopupMgr.GetItemEnabled('Save')           !if item is enabled
  PopupMgr.SetItemEnable('Save',False)      ! disable it
ELSE                                         !if item is disabled
  PopupMgr.SetItemEnable('Save',True)       ! enable it
END
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu, GetItemEnabled

SetLevel (set menu item level)**SetLevel**(*name*, *level*)

SetLevel	Sets the menu item hierarchy level.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.
<i>level</i>	An integer constant, variable, a EQUATE, or expression containing the level of the menu item.

The **SetLevel** method sets the menu item hierarchy (nesting) level.

Implementation: The *name* parameter accepts up to 1024 characters.

Example:

```
PopupMgr.SetLevel( 'Save' , 2 )
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu

SetText (set menu item text)

SetText(*name*, *text*)

SetText	Sets the menu item text.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.
<i>text</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text of the menu item. A single hyphen creates a non-selectable separator (a 3D horizontal bar) on the menu.

The **SetText** method sets the text for a menu item.

Implementation: The *name* and *text* parameters accept up to 1024 characters.

Example:

```
PopupMgr.SetText ( 'Save' , '&Save' )
```

See Also: AddItem, AddItemMimic, AddMenu

SetToolbox (set menu item toolbox status)**SetToolbox**(*name*, *showflag*)**SetToolbox** Sets the menu item toolbox appearance status.*name* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the menu item name. The AddItem, AddItemMimic, or AddMenu methods set the item name.*showflag* A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the status to which to set the item. A *showflag* value of one (1) indicates that the item will appear on the toolbox; zero (0) indicates that the item will not appear on the toolbox.

The **SetToolbox** method sets whether or not the menu item will appear on a popup toolbox. The Toolbox method displays the popup menu in a toolbox format.

Implementation: The SetToolbox method is used with the BrowseClass SetAlerts method when the BrowseClass ToolControl property is set to TRUE.

Example:

```
IF SELF.ToolControl
  SELF.Popup.AddItem( '-' )
  SELF.Popup.SetToolbox( SELF.Popup.AddItemMimic( DefaultToolName, |
    SELF.ToolControl, '!' & DefaultToolName ), 0 )
END
```

See Also: BrowseClass.SetAlerts

Toolbox

SetTranslator (set run-time translator:PopupClass)

SetTranslator(*translator*)

SetTranslator Sets the TranslatorClass object for the PopupClass object.

translator The label of the TranslatorClass object for this PopupClass object.

The **SetTranslator** method sets the TranslatorClass object for the PopupClass object. By specifying a TranslatorClass object for the PopupClass object, you can automatically translate the popup menu text--the TranslatorClass object does not otherwise translate popup menus because they are not part of the WINDOW structure.

Implementation: The Ask method uses the TranslatorClass object to translate popup menu text before displaying it.

Example:

```

PopupMgr  PopupClass           !declare PopupMgr object
Translator TranslatorClass      !declare Translator object

!declare menu definition
MenuChoices EQUATE('&Save Menu|&Restore Menu|&Close')
CODE
Translator.Init                !initialize Translator object
PopupMgr.Init(INIMgr)          !initialize PopupMgr object
PopupMgr.AddMenu(MenuChoices)  !add Popup menu
PopupMgr.SetTranslator(Translator) !enable popup text translation
!program code
PopupMgr.Ask()                 !display translated menu

```

See Also: Ask

Toolbox (start the popup toolbox menu)

Toolbox(*name*)

Toolbox Starts (displays) the popup menu toolbox.

name A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the toolbox name. This name will appear in the title bar of the toolbox window.

The **Toolbox** method displays the toolbox popup window. All items enabled by the SetToolbox method are displayed as buttons, with the *name* parameter appearing in the toolbox window's title bar.

Implementation: The Toolbox method is called from the BrowseClass TakeEvent method when the ToolControl property is set to TRUE. It is used to support the BrowseToolbar control template.

Example:

```
BrowseClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE  
  
CASE ACCEPTED()  
  OF SELF.ToolControl  
    SELF.Popup.Toolbox('Browse Actions')  
END
```

See Also: SetToolbox
 BrowseClass.TakeEvent

ViewMenu (popup menu debugger)

ViewMenu

The **ViewMenu** method displays information about the structure of the popup menu built up by the various 'Add' methods.

Implementation: The ViewMenu method only works when the program is compiled with debug information turned on.

PrintPreviewClass

PrintPreviewClass Overview

The PrintPreviewClass is a WindowManager that implements a full-featured print preview dialog.

PrintPreviewClass Concepts

This print preview facility includes pinpoint zoom-in and zoom-out with configurable zoom magnification, random and sequential page navigation, plus thumbnail views of each report page. You can even specify how many rows and columns of thumbnails the print preview facility displays.

When you finish viewing the report, you can send it directly to the printer for immediate What You See Is What You Get (WYSIWYG) printing.

The PrintPreviewClass previews reports in the form of a Windows metafile (.WMF) per report page. The PREVIEW attribute generates reports in Windows metafile format, and the Clarion Report templates provide this capability as well. See PREVIEW in the *Language Reference* for more information, and see Procedure Templates--Report for more information on Report templates.

PrintPreviewClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The PrintPreviewClass is derived from the WindowManager class (see Window Manager Class for more information).

The PrintPreviewClass relies on the PopupClass and, optionally, the TranslatorClass to accomplish some of its tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the PrintPreviewClass, it should also instantiate the PopupClass and may need the Translator class as well. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the PrintPreviewClass header (ABREPORT.INC) in your program's data section. See the Conceptual Example.

The ASCIIPrintClass and the ReportManager use the PrintPreviewClass to provide a print preview facility.

PrintPreviewClass ABC Template Implementation

The Report and Viewer Procedure templates and the Report Wizard Utility template automatically generate all the code and include all the classes necessary to provide the print preview facility for your application's reports.

These Report templates instantiate a PrintPreviewClass object called Previewer for *each* report procedure in the application. This object supports all the functionality specified in the **Preview Options** section of the Report template's **Report Properties** dialog. See *Procedure Templates--Report* for more information.

The template generated ReportManager object (ThisWindow) "drives" the Previewer object, so generally, the only references to the Previewer object within the template generated code are to initially configure the Previewer's properties.

PrintPreviewClass Source Files

The PrintPreviewClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The PrintPreviewClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABREPORT.INC	PrintPreviewClass declarations
ABREPORT.CLW	PrintPreviewClass method definitions
ABREPORT.TRN	PrintPreviewClass user interface text

Zoom Configuration

The user interface text and the standard zoom choices the PrintPreviewClass displays at runtime are defined in the ABREPORT.TRN file. To modify or customize this text or the standard zoom choices, simply back up the ABREPORT.TRN file then edit it to suit your needs. See *ZoomIndex* for more information.

PrintPreviewClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a PrintPreviewClass object and some related objects.

This example uses the PrintPreviewClass object to preview a very simple report before printing it. The program specifies an initial position and size for the print preview window and allows custom zoom factors.

```

PROGRAM

    INCLUDE('ABREPORT.INC')           !declare ReportManager & PrintPreviewClass
    MAP
    END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD

Customer    FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUS),THREAD
BYNUMBER    KEY(CUS:CUSTNO),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE()
CUSTNO      LONG
Name        STRING(30)
State       STRING(2)
            END
            END

Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)    !declare Access:Customer object
Init           PROCEDURE
            END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager) !declare Relate:Customer object
Init           PROCEDURE
            END

CusView       VIEW(Customer)           !declare CusView VIEW
            END

PctDone       BYTE                     !track progress variable

```

```

report  REPORT,AT(1000,1542,6000,7458),PRE(RPT),FONT('Arial',10,,),THOUS
        HEADER,AT(1000,1000,6000,542),FONT(,,,FONT:bold)
        STRING('Customers'),AT(2000,20),FONT(,14,,)
        STRING('Id'),AT(52,313),TRN
        STRING('Name'),AT(2052,313),TRN
        STRING('State'),AT(4052,313),TRN
    END
detail  DETAIL,AT(,6000,281),USE(?detail)
        STRING(@n-14),AT(52,52),USE(CUS:CUSTNO)
        STRING(@s30),AT(2052,52),USE(CUS:NAME)
        STRING(@s2),AT(4052,52),USE(CUS:State)
    END
        FOOTER,AT(1000,9000,6000,219)
        STRING(@pPage <<<#p),AT(5250,31),PAGE NO,USE(?PageCount)
    END
END

ProgressWindow WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
        PROGRESS,USE(PctDone),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
        STRING(' '),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?UserString),CENTER
        STRING(' '),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?TxtDone),CENTER
        BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42),USE(?Cancel)
    END

ThisProcedure CLASS(ReportManager)          !declare ThisProcedure object
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
        END

CusReport     CLASS(ProcessClass)            !declare CusReport object
TakeRecord    PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
        END

Previewer     PrintPreviewClass              !declare Previewer object
        ! for use with ThisProcedure

        CODE
        ThisProcedure.Run()                  !run the procedure

ThisProcedure.Init PROCEDURE()               !initialize ThisProcedure
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
        CODE
        GlobalErrors.Init
        Relate:Customer.Init
        ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
        SELF.FirstField = ?PctDone
        SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
        SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
        Relate:Customer.Open

```



```

OPEN(ProgressWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
CusReport.Init(CusView,Relate:Customer,?TxtDone,PctDone,RECORDS(Customer))
CusReport.AddSortOrder(CUS:BYNUMBER)
SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled)
SELF.Init(CusReport,report,Previewer)      !register Previewer with ThisProcedure
SELF.Zoom = PageWidth
Previewer.AllowUserZoom=True              !allow custom zoom factors
Previewer.Maximize=True                    !initially maximize preview window
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisProcedure.Kill  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue        BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Customer.Close
Relate:Customer.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill
RETURN ReturnValue

CusReport.TakeRecord PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue        BYTE,AUTO
SkipDetails BYTE
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeRecord()
PRINT(RPT:detail)
RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
SELF.Create = 0
SELF.LazyOpen = False
SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER,'CUS:BYNUMBER',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)

```

PrintPreviewClass Properties

The PrintPreviewClass contains properties that primarily allow configuration of the print preview window and its features. The PrintPreviewClass properties are described below.

AllowUserZoom (allow any zoom factor)

AllowUserZoom **BYTE**

The **AllowUserZoom** property indicates whether the PrintPreviewClass object provides user zoom capability for the end user. The user zoom lets the end user apply any zoom factor. Without user zoom, the end user may only apply the standard zoom choices.

The ZoomIndex property indicates whether a user zoom factor or a standard zoom factor is applied.

Implementation: A value of one (1) enables user zoom capability; a value of zero (0) disables user zoom. The UserPercentile property contains the user zoom factor.

See Also: UserPercentile, ZoomIndex

ConfirmPages (force 'pages to print' confirmation)

ConfirmPages **BYTE**

The **ConfirmPages** property indicates whether or not the AskPrintPages method should be called before printing.

Implementation: Zero (0) is the default; a value of one (1) forces the enduser to choose the pages to print before the print job is sent to the printer.

See Also: AskPrintPages

CurrentPage (the selected report page)

CurrentPage **LONG**

The **CurrentPage** property contains the number of the selected report page. The PrintPreviewClass object uses this property to highlight the selected report page when more than one page is displayed, to navigate pages, and to display the current page number for the end user.

Maximize (number of pages displayed horizontally)

Maximize **BYTE**

The **Maximize** property indicates whether to open the preview window maximized. A value of one (1 or True) maximizes the window; a value of zero (0 or False) opens the window according to the WindowSizeSet property.

See Also: WindowSizeSet

PagesAcross (number of pages displayed horizontally)

PagesAcross **USHORT**

The **PagesAcross** property contains the number of thumbnail pages the PrintPreviewClass object displays *horizontally* within the preview window. The PrintPreviewClass object uses this property to calculate appropriate positions and sizes when displaying several pages at a time.

The PrintPreviewClass object displays the PagesAcross value at runtime and lets the end user set the value as well.

PagesDown (number of vertical thumbnails)

PagesDown **USHORT**

The **PagesDown** property contains the number of thumbnail pages the PrintPreviewClass object displays *vertically* within the preview window. The PrintPreviewClass object uses this property to calculate appropriate positions and sizes when displaying several pages at a time.

The PrintPreviewClass object displays the PagesDown value at runtime and lets the end user set the value as well.

PagesToPrint (the pages to print)

PagesToPrint **CSTRING(256), PROTECTED**

The **PagesToPrint** property contains the page range to print.

The default value is 1- n , where n is equal to the total number of pages in the report. Individual pages can be printed by separating page numbers by commas. A range of pages to print can be specified by separating the first page number to print and the last page number to print by a dash (-). Combinations of individual pages and ranges of pages are allowed.

UserPercentile (custom zoom factor)

UserPercentile **USHORT**

The **UserPercentile** property contains the user specified zoom factor. The PrintPreviewClass object solicits this factor from the end user and applies it to the selected report page when the AllowUserZoom property is True. The SetZoomPercentile method sets the UserPercentile property.

See Also: AllowUserZoom, SetZoomPercentile

WindowPosSet (use a non-default initial preview window position)

WindowPosSet BYTE

The **WindowPosSet** property contains a value indicating whether a non-default initial position is specified for the print preview window. The PrintPreviewClass object uses this property to determine the initial position of the print preview window.

Implementation: The SetPosition method sets the value of this property. A value of one (1) indicates a non-default initial position is specified and is applied; a zero (0) indicates no position is specified and the default position is applied.

See Also: SetPosition

WindowSizeSet (use a non-default initial preview window size)

WindowSizeSet BYTE

The **WindowSizeSet** property contains a value indicating whether a non-default initial size is specified for the print preview window. The PrintPreviewClass object uses this property to determine the initial size of the print preview window.

Implementation: The SetPosition method sets the value of this property. A value of one (1) indicates a non-default initial size is specified and is applied; a zero (0) indicates no size is specified and the default size is applied.

See Also: SetPosition

ZoomIndex (index to applied zoom factor)**ZoomIndex BYTE**

The **ZoomIndex** property contains a value indicating which zoom factor is applied. The **PrintPreviewClass** object uses this property to identify and apply the selected zoom factor. The **SetZoomPercentile** method sets the **ZoomIndex** property.

Implementation: The **ZoomIndex** value "points" to one of the 7 standard zoom settings or to a user zoom setting. The **PrintPreviewClass** object sets the **ZoomIndex** value when the end user selects a zoom setting from one of the zoom menus or from the zoom combo box. The standard zoom choices are defined in **ABREPORT.TRN** as follows:

No Zoom	Displays the specified number of pages (PagesAcross and PagesDown properties) in a tiled arrangement in the preview window.
Page Width	Displays a single page whose width is the same as the width of the preview window.
50%	Displays a single page at 50% of actual print size.
75%	Displays a single page at 75% of actual print size.
100%	Displays a single page at 100% of actual print size.
200%	Displays a single page at 200% of actual print size.
300%	Displays a single page at 300% of actual print size.

A **ZoomIndex** value of zero (0) indicates a nonstandard zoom factor is specified. Nonstandard zoom factors may be specified when the **AllowUserZoom** property is **True**. The **UserPercentile** property contains the nonstandard zoom factor.

See Also: **AllowUserZoom, PagesAcross, PagesDown, UserPercentile, SetZoomPercentile**

PrintPreviewClass Methods

The PrintPreviewClass contains the methods listed below.

PrintPreviewClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the PrintPreviewClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the PrintPreviewClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into two categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init _v	initialize the PrintPreviewClass object
SetPosition	set initial preview window coordinates
Display _v	preview the report
Kill _v	shut down the PrintPreviewClass object

Occasional Use:

SetINIManager	save and restore window coordinates
SetPosition	set print preview position and size
SetZoomPercentile	set user or standard zoom factor

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Display method calls them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init _v	initialize the PrintPreviewClass object
AskPage	prompt for new report page
AskThumbnails	prompt for new thumbnail configuration
Display	preview the report
Open	prepare preview window for display
TakeAccepted	process EVENT:Accepted events
TakeEvent	process all events
TakeFieldEvent	a virtual to process field events
TakeWindowEvent	process non-field events
Kill _v	shut down the PrintPreviewClass object

AskPage (prompt for new report page)**AskPage, PROC, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

The **AskPage** method prompts the end user for a specific report page to display and returns a value indicating whether a new page is selected. A return value of one (1) indicates a new page is selected and a screen redraw is required; a return value of zero (0) indicates a new page is not selected and a screen redraw is not required.

Implementation: The PrintPreviewClass.Display method calls the AskPage method. The AskPage method displays a dialog that prompts for a specific report page.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

!Virtual implementation of AskPage: a simplified version with no translator...

PrintPreviewClass.AskPage FUNCTION

JumpPage LONG,AUTO

RVal BOOL(False)

```
JumpWin WINDOW('Jump to Page'),AT(,,181,26),CENTER,GRAY,DOUBLE
    PROMPT(' &Page: '),AT(5,8),USE(?JumpPrompt)
    SPIN(@n5),AT(30,7),USE(JumpPage),RANGE(1,10),STEP(1)
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(89,7),USE(?OKButton),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(134,7),USE(?CancelButton)
END
```

CODE

JumpPage=SELF.CurrentPage

OPEN(JumpWin)

ACCEPT

CASE EVENT()

OF EVENT:OpenWindow

?JumpPage{PROP:RangeHigh}=RECORDS(SELF.ImageQueue)

OF EVENT:Accepted

CASE ACCEPTED()

OF ?OKButton

IF JumpPage NOT=SELF.CurrentPage

RVal=True !SELF.CurrentPage changed

SELF.CurrentPage=JumpPage

END

POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)

OF ?CancelButton

POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)

END

END

END

CLOSE(JumpWin); RETURN RVal

AskPrintPages (prompt for pages to print)**AskPrintPages, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED, PROC**

The **AskPrintPages** method prompts the end user for the number(s) of the pages to print from the previewed report.

Implementation: The PrintPreviewClass.TakeAccepted method calls the AskPrintPages method and returns TRUE (1) when completed or FALSE (0) if the user presses the cancel button. The AskPrintPages method displays a dialog that prompts for the page numbers to print.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
!Virtual implementation of AskPrintPages
PrintPreviewClass.AskPrintPages PROCEDURE
Preserve LIKE(PrintPreviewClass.PagesToPrint),AUTO
Window WINDOW('Pages to Print'),AT(,,260,37),CENTER,SYSTEM,GRAY
    PROMPT('&Pages to Print:'),AT(4,8),USE(?Prompt)
    ENTRY(@s255),AT(56,4,200,11),USE(SELF.PagesToPrint, , ?PagesToPrint)
    BUTTON('&Reset'),AT(116,20,45,14),USE(?Reset)
    BUTTON('&Ok'),AT(164,20,45,14),USE(?Ok),DEFAULT
    BUTTON('&Cancel'),AT(212,20,45,14),USE(?Cancel),STD(STD:Close)
END
RVal BYTE(False)
CODE
Preserve = SELF.PagesToPrint
OPEN(Window)
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF ?Cancel
SELF.PagesToPrint = Preserve
POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
OF ?Ok
RVal = True
POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
OF ?Reset
SELF.SetDefaultPages
SELECT(?PagesToPrint)
END
```

```
    OF EVENT:OpenWindow
      ! INIMgr code for FETCHing window settings
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow
      ! INIMgr code for UPDATEing window settings
    END
  END
CLOSE(Window)
RETURN Rval
```

AskThumbnails (prompt for new thumbnail configuration)**AskThumbnails, VIRTUAL, PROTECTED**

The **AskThumbnails** method prompts the end user for the number of pages to tile across and down the preview window.

Implementation: The PrintPreviewClass.Display method calls the AskThumbnails method. The AskThumbnails method displays a dialog that prompts for the number of thumbnails to display horizontally, and the number of thumbnails to display vertically.

Example:

```
!Virtual implementation of AskThumbnails
! a slightly simplified version with no translator...
PrintPreviewClass.AskThumbnails PROCEDURE

SelectWindow WINDOW('Pages Displayed'),AT(,141,64),GRAY,DOUBLE
    GROUP('Across'),AT(7,10,62,32),BOXED
        SPIN(@N2),AT(13,22,15),USE(SELF.PagesAcross,,?PagesAcross),RANGE(1,10)
    END
    GROUP('Down'),AT(72,10,62,32),BOXED
        SPIN(@N2),AT(79,22,15),USE(SELF.PagesDown,,?PagesDown),RANGE(1,10)
    END
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(98,47,40,14),KEY(EnterKey),USE(?OK)
END

CODE
OPEN(SelectWindow)
ACCEPT
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted
        CASE FIELD()
        OF ?OK
            IF SELF.PagesAcross*SELF.PagesDown>RECORDS(SELF.ImageQueue)
                SELECT(?PagesAcross)
            ELSE
                POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
            END
        END
    END
END
CLOSE(SelectWindow)
```

DeleteImageQueue (remove non-selected pages)

DeleteImageQueue(*page*), VIRTUAL, PROC

DeleteImageQueue Removes a page number from the ImageQueue.

page An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the page number to delete.

The **DeleteImageQueue** method removes records from the ImageQueue, and the associated image file, which have not been selected for printing.

Implementation: The SyncImageQueue method calls the DeleteImageQueue method. The value contained in the PagesToPrint property determines which records and images are deleted.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
PrintPreviewClass.SyncImageQueue PROCEDURE
i LONG,AUTO

CODE
LOOP i = RECORDS(SELF.ImageQueue) TO 1 BY -1
  IF ~SELF.InPageList(i)
    SELF.DeleteImageQueue(i)
  END
END
```

See Also: PagesToPrint,DeleteImageQueue

Display (preview the report)**Display**([*zoom*] [, *page*] [, *across*] [, *down*]), **VIRTUAL, PROC**

Display	Displays the report image metafiles.
<i>zoom</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the initial zoom factor for the print preview display. If omitted, the Display method uses the default zoom factor in the ABREPORT.TRN file.
<i>page</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the initial page number to display. If omitted, <i>page</i> defaults to one (1).
<i>across</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the number of horizontal thumbnails for the initial print preview display. If omitted, <i>across</i> defaults to one (1).
<i>down</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the number of vertical thumbnails for the initial print preview display. If omitted, <i>down</i> defaults to one (1).

The **Display** method displays the report image metafiles and returns a value indicating whether or not to print them. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates the end user asked to print the report; a return value of zero (0 or False) indicates the end user did not ask to print the report.

The Display method is the print preview engine. It manages the print preview, providing navigation, zoom, thumbnail configuration, plus the option to immediately print the report.

Implementation: The Display method declares the preview WINDOW, then calls the WindowManager.Ask method to display the preview WINDOW and process its events. EQUATEs for the *zoom* parameter are declared in ABREPORT.INC:

```
NoZoom           EQUATE(-2)
PageWidth        EQUATE(-1)
```

In addition to the EQUATE values, you may specify any integer zoom factor, such as 50 (50% zoom) or 200 (200% zoom).

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
IF ReportCompleted           !if report was not cancelled
  ENDPAGE(report)            !force final page overflow
  IF PrtPrev.Display()        !preview the report on-line
    report{PROP:FlushPreview} = True !and print it if user asked to
  END
END
```

See Also: WindowManager.Ask

Init (initialize the PrintPreviewClass object)

Init(*image queue*), VIRTUAL

Init	Initializes the PrintPreviewClass object.
<i>image queue</i>	The label of the QUEUE containing the filenames of the report image metafiles. See <i>PREVIEW</i> in the <i>Language Reference</i> for more information on report image metafiles.

The **Init** method initializes the PrintPreviewClass object.

Implementation: The PrintPreviewClass.Init method instantiates a PopupClass object for the PrintPreviewClass object, using the menu text defined in ABREPORT.TRN.

The image queue parameter names a QUEUE with the same structure as the PreviewQueue declared in \ABREPORT.INC as follows:

```
PreviewQueue    QUEUE,TYPE
Filename        STRING(128)
                END
```

Example:

```
PrintPreviewQueue  PreviewQueue    !declare report image queue
PrtPrev           PrintPreviewClass !declare PrtPrev object
CODE
PrtPrev.Init(PrintPreviewQueue)    !initialize PrtPrev object
!program code
PrtPrev.Kill                       !shut down PrtPrev object
```

InPageList (check page number)**InPageList(*page*)****InPageList** Evaluates page against value(s) in PagesToPrint.*page* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the page number to check.

The **InPageList** method evaluates a page number against the value(s) contained in the PagesToPrint property, and returns TRUE (1) if the page is in PagesToPrint or FALSE (0) if it is not.

Implementation: The PageManagerClass.Draw (which is PRIVATE) and SyncImageQueue methods call the InPageList method to verify report pages for inclusion in the preview window and the printed report respectively.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
PrintPreviewClass.SyncImageQueue PROCEDURE
i LONG,AUTO
CODE
LOOP i = RECORDS(SELF.ImageQueue) TO 1 BY -1
  IF ~SELF.InPageList(i)
    SELF.DeleteImageQueue(i)
  END
END
END
```

See Also: PagesToPrint

Kill (shut down the PrintPreviewClass object)**Kill, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. Kill returns a value to indicate the status of the shut down.

Implementation: The Kill method calls the WindowManager.Kill method and returns Level:Benign to indicate a normal shut down. Return value EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

<code>PrintPreviewQueue</code>	<code>PreviewQueue</code>	<code>!declare report image queue</code>
<code>PrtPrev</code>	<code>PrintPreviewClass</code>	<code>!declare PrtPrev object</code>
<code>CODE</code>		
<code>PrtPrev.Init(PrintPreviewQueue)</code>		<code>!initialize PrtPrev object</code>
<code>!program code</code>		
<code>PrtPrev.Kill</code>		<code>!shut down PrtPrev object</code>

See Also: WindowManager.Kill

Open (prepare preview window for display)

Open, VIRTUAL

The **Open** method prepares the PrintPreviewClass window for initial display. It is designed to execute on window opening events such as EVENT:OpenWindow and EVENT:GainFocus.

Implementation: The Open method sets the window's initial size and position, enables and disables controls as needed, and sets up the specified zoom configuration.

The WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent method calls the Open method.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.TakeWindowEvent PROCEDURE
CODE
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:OpenWindow
  IF ~BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
    SELF.Open
  END
OF EVENT:GainFocus
  IF BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
    SELF.Reset
  ELSE
    SELF.Open
  END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent

SetINIManager (save and restore window coordinates)

SetINIManager(*INI manager*)

SetINIManager Enables save and restore of preview window position and size between computing sessions.

INI manager The label of the INIClass object that saves and restores window coordinates. See *INI Class* for more information.

The **SetINIManager** method names an INIClass object to save and restore window coordinates between computing sessions.

Implementation: The Open method uses the *INI manager* to restore the window's initial size and position. The TakeEvent method uses the *INI manager* to save the window's size and position.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
  CODE  
  !procedure code  
  ThisWindow.Init(Process,report,Previewer)  
  Previewer.SetINIManager(INIMgr)
```

See Also: Open, TakeEvent

SetPosition (set initial preview window coordinates)

SetPosition([*x*] [*y*] [,*width*] [,*height*])

SetPosition	Sets the initial position and size of the print preview window.
<i>x</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the initial horizontal position of the print preview window. If omitted, the print preview window opens to the default Windows position.
<i>y</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the initial vertical position of the print preview window. If omitted, the print preview window opens to the default Windows position.
<i>width</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the initial width of the print preview window. If omitted, the print preview window opens to its default width.
<i>height</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the initial height of the print preview window. If omitted, the print preview window opens to its default height.

The **SetPosition** method sets the initial position and size of the print preview window.

Implementation: The SetPosition method sets the WindowPosSet and WindowSizeSet properties.

The Display method definition determines the default width and height of the print preview window.

Example:

```
PrtPrev.SetPosition(1,1,300,250)      !set initial position and size
PrtPrev.SetPosition(1,1)              !set initial position only
PrtPrev.SetPosition(,,300,250)        !set initial size only
```

See Also: WindowPosSet, WindowSizeSet

SetZoomPercentile (set user or standard zoom factor)

SetZoomPercentile(*zoom factor*)

SetZoomPercentile Sets the ZoomIndex and UserPercentile properties.

zoom factor An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the zoom factor to apply.

The **SetZoomPercentile** method sets the ZoomIndex property and the UserPercentile property.

Implementation: The SetZoomPercentile method assumes the AllowUserZoom property is True. If the *zoom factor* equals a defined ZoomIndex choice, SetZoomPercentile sets the ZoomIndex property to that choice and sets the UserPercentile property to zero. If the *zoom factor* does not equal a defined ZoomIndex choice, SetZoomPercentile sets the UserPercentile property to the *zoom factor* and sets the ZoomIndex property to zero.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
    CODE  
    !procedure code  
    ThisWindow.Init(Process,report,Previewer)  
    Previewer.SetZoomPercentile(120)
```

See Also: AllowUserZoom, UserPercentile, ZoomIndex

SetDefaultPages (set the default pages to print)

SetDefaultPages, VIRTUAL

The **SetDefaultPages** method sets the initial value of the PagesToPrint property. The initial value is 1- n , where n is equal to the total number of pages in the report.

Implementation: The Display and AskPrintPreview methods call the SetDefaultPages method.

Example:

```
!Virtual implementation of SetDefaultPages method
PrintPreviewClass.SetDefaultPages PROCEDURE
CODE
    SELF.PagesToPrint = '1-' & RECORDS(SELF.ImageQueue)
```

See Also: PagesToPrint

SyncImageQueue (sync image queue with PagesToPrint)

SyncImageQueue, VIRTUAL

The **SyncImageQueue** method synchronizes the image queue with the contents of PagesToPrint to ensure that only the specified pages are sent to the printer.

Implementation: The Display method calls the SyncImageQueue method. The value contained in the PagesToPrint property determines which pages are printed.

Example:

```
PrintPreviewClass.Display PROCEDURE
! Window declaration
! executable Display code
IF SELF.PrintOk
    SELF.SyncImageQueue
END
RETURN SELF.PrintOK
```

See Also: PagesToPrint

TakeAccepted (process EVENT:Accepted events:PrintPreviewClass)**TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted events for all the controls on the preview window, then returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeAccepted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the TakeAccepted method. The TakeAccepted method calls the WindowManager.TakeAccepted method, then processes EVENT:Accepted events for all the controls on the preview window, including zoom controls, print button, navigation controls, thumbnail configuration controls, etc.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeEvent, WindowManager.TakeEvent

TakeEvent (process all events:PrintPreviewClass)

TakeEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeEvent** method processes all preview window events and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The Ask method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method calls the WindowManager.TakeEvent method, then processes EVENT:CloseWindow, EVENT:Sized and EVENT:AlertKey events for the preview window.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.Ask PROCEDURE
CODE
IF SELF.Dead THEN RETURN .
CLEAR(SELF.LastInsertedPosition)
ACCEPT
CASE SELF.TakeEvent()
OF Level:Fatal
BREAK
OF Level:Notify
CYCLE ! Used for 'short-stopping' certain events
END
END
```

See Also: WindowManager.Ask

TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:PrintPreviewClass)

TakeFieldEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeFieldEvent** method is a virtual placeholder to process all field-specific/control-specific events for the window. It returns a value indicating whether window process is complete and should stop. TakeFieldEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the TakeFieldEvent method. The TakeFieldEvent method processes EVENT:NewSelection events for the preview window SPIN controls.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: Ask

TakeWindowEvent (process non-field events:PrintPreviewClass)**TakeWindowEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeWindowEvent** method processes all non-field events for the preview window and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeWindowEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the TakeWindowEvent method. The TakeWindowEvent method calls the WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent method for all events except EVENT:GainFocus.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeEvent

ProcessClass

ProcessClass Overview

The ProcessClass is a ViewManager with a progress window.

ProcessClass Concepts

The ProcessClass lets you "batch" process a VIEW, applying sort orders, range limits, and filters as needed to process only the specific result set in the specific sequence you require; plus the ProcessClass supplies appropriate (configurable) visual feedback to the end user on the progress of the batch process.

ProcessClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ProcessClass is derived from the ViewManager, plus it relies on many of the other Application Builder Classes to accomplish its tasks. Therefore, if your program instantiates the ProcessClass, it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the ProcessClass header (ABREPORT.INC) in your program's data section. See the Conceptual Example.

The ReportManager uses the ProcessClass to process report data and provide appropriate visual feedback to the end user on the progress of the report.

ProcessClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates automatically include all the classes necessary to support the batch processes (Process procedures and Report procedures) specified in your application.

The templates *derive* a class from the ProcessClass for *each* batch process (Process Procedures and Report Procedures) in the application. The derived classes are called ThisProcess and ThisReport. These derived ProcessClass objects support all the functionality specified in the Process or Report procedure template.

The derived ProcessClass is local to the procedure, is specific to a single process and relies on the global file-specific RelationManager and FileManager objects for the processed files.

ProcessClass Source Files

The ProcessClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC. The ProcessClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABREPORT.INC
ABREPORT.CLW

ProcessClass declarations
ProcessClass method definitions

ProcessClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ProcessClass object and related objects. This example processes selected records in a file, updates them, and displays a window with a progress bar to show the progress of the process.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')           !declare WindowManager Class
  INCLUDE('ABREPORT.INC')           !declare Process Class
  MAP
  END
Customer FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUS),THREAD !declare Customer file
BYNUMBER KEY(CUS:CUSTNO),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record RECORD,PRE()
CUSTNO LONG
Name STRING(30)
State STRING(2)
  END
  END
CusView VIEW(Customer)             !declare VIEW for process
  END
Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager) !declare Access:Customer object
Init PROCEDURE
  END
Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)!declare Relate:Customer object
Init PROCEDURE
  END
ThisWindow CLASS(ReportManager) !declare ThisWindow object
Init PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
  END
ThisProcess CLASS(ProcessClass) !declare ThisProcess object
TakeRecord PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
  END
ProgressMgr StepLongClass          !declare ProgressMgr object
GlobalErrors ErrorClass            !declare GlobalErrors object
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD
Thermometer BYTE                   !declare PROGRESS variable
ProgressWindow WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
  PROGRESS,USE(Thermometer),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
  STRING(' '),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?UserString),CENTER
  STRING(' '),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?PctText),CENTER
  BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42),USE(?Cancel)
  END
CODE
  ThisWindow.Run()                 !run the Process procedure

```

```

ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()          !initialize things
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init          !initialize GlobalErrors object
Relate:Customer.Init       !initialize Relate:Customer object
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init() !call base class init
SELF.FirstField = ?Thermometer !set FirstField for ThisWindow
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest !VCRRequest not used
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors !set errorhandler for ThisWindow
Relate:Customer.Open       !Open Customer and related files
OPEN(ProgressWindow)       !open the window
SELF.Opened=True           !set Opened flag for ThisWindow
ProgressMgr.Init(ScrollSort:AllowNumeric) !initialize ProgressMgr object
!init ThisProcess by naming its VIEW, RelationManager,ProgressMgr & progress variables
ThisProcess.Init(CusView,Relate:Customer,?PctText,Thermometer,ProgressMgr,CUS:CUSTNO)
ThisProcess.AddSortOrder(CUS:BYNUMBER) !set the process sort order
SELF.Init(ThisProcess)      !process specific initialization
SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled) !register Cancel with ThisWindow
SELF.SetAlerts()            !alert keys for ThisWindow
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()          !shut down things
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill() !call base class shut down
Relate:Customer.Close      !close Customer and related files
Relate:Customer.Kill       !shut down Relate:Customer object
GlobalErrors.Kill          !shut down GlobalErrors object
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisProcess.TakeRecord PROCEDURE()    !action for each record processed
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
IF NOT CUS:State          !if State is blank
  CUS:State = 'FL'        ! set it to 'FL'
END
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeRecord() !call base class for each record
PUT(CusView)              !write the updated record
IF ERRORCODE()            !if write failed
  ThisWindow.Response = RequestCompleted ! shut down process
  ReturnValue = Level:Fatal !Use IF Relate:Customer.Update()
END                        !to apply RI constraints to
RETURN ReturnValue        ! Customer and related files.

```

```
Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
SELF.LazyOpen = False
SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER,'CUS:BYNUMBER',0)
```

```
Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)
```

ProcessClass Properties

The ProcessClass inherits all the properties of the ViewManager class from which it is derived. See *ViewManager Properties* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the ProcessClass contains the following properties:

CaseSensitiveValue (case sensitive flag)

CaseSensitiveValue **BYTE**

The **CaseSensitiveValue** property is set to zero (0 or False) when the key for the processed FILE is a case insensitive key, i.e. the NOCASE attriute is on the key definition.

Percentile (portion of process completed)

Percentile **&BYTE, PROTECTED**

The **Percentile** property is a reference to a variable whose contents indicates how much of the process is completed. The ProcessClass periodically updates the Percentile property so it can be the USE variable for a PROGRESS control.

The Init method initializes the Percentile property. See the *Conceptual Example*.

See Also: Init

PText (progress control number)

PText SIGNED

The **PText** property contains the control number of a text based Window control such as a STRING or PROMPT. The ProcessClass uses this control to provide visual feedback to the end user.

The Init method initializes the PText property. See the *Conceptual Example*.

This property is PROTECTED, therefore, it can only be referenced by a ProcessClass method, or a method in a class derived from ProcessClass.

See Also: Init

RecordsProcessed (number of elements processed)

RecordsProcessed LONG

The **RecordsProcessed** property contains the number of elements processed so far. The ProcessClass uses this property to calculate how much of the process is completed.

RecordsToProcess (number of elements to process)

RecordsToProcess LONG

The **RecordsToProcess** property contains the total number of elements to process. The ProcessClass uses this property to calculate how much of the process is completed.

ProcessClass Methods

The ProcessClass inherits all the methods of the ViewManager class from which it is derived. See *ViewManager Properties* for more information.

ProcessClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ProcessClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ProcessClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ProcessClass object
AddRange _i	add a range limit to the active sort order
AddSortOrder _i	add a sort order
AppendOrder _i	refine the active sort order
SetProgressLimits	calibrate the StepClass progress monitor
Kill _v	shut down the ProcessClass object

Mainstream Use:

Open _i	open the view
Next _v	get the next result set element
Previous _{iv}	get the previous result set element
PrimeRecord _i	prepare a record for adding
ValidateRecord _{iv}	validate the current result set element
SetFilter _i	specify a filter for the active sort order
SetSort _{iv}	set the active sort order
ApplyFilter _i	range limit and filter the result set
ApplyOrder _i	sort the result set
ApplyRange _i	conditionally range limit and filter the result set
Close _i	close the view

Occasional Use:

GetFreeElementName _i	return the free element field name
Reset _v	reposition to the first result set element
SetOrder _{iv}	replace the active sort order

_i These methods are inherited from the ViewManager class.

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Next	get the next result set element
Previous	get the previous result set element
Reset	reposition to the first result set element
SetSort	set the active sort order
ValidateRecord	validate the current result set element
Kill	shut down the ProcessClass object

| These methods are inherited from the ViewManager class.

Init (initialize the ProcessClass object)

```
Init( view, relationmanager [, progress txt] [, progress pct] | [, total records] | )
                                     [, stepclass, free element |
```

Init	Initializes the ProcessClass object.
<i>view</i>	The label of the VIEW to process.
<i>relationmanager</i>	The label of the <i>view</i> 's primary file RelationManager object.
<i>progress txt</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the control number of a text-based Window control. The ProcessClass uses this control to provide textual feedback to the end user. If omitted, <i>progress txt</i> defaults to zero (0) and the ProcessClass provides no textual feedback.
<i>progress pct</i>	The label of a BYTE variable whose contents indicates what percent of the process is completed. The ProcessClass periodically updates <i>progress pct</i> so it can be the USE variable for a PROGRESS control. If omitted, the ProcessClass provides no numeric feedback.
<i>total records</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the estimated number of records to process. The ProcessClass uses this value to calculate how much of the process is completed. You should use this parameter when you can easily estimate the number of records to be processed, that is, when the process is not dynamically filtered. If omitted, <i>totalrecords</i> defaults to zero.
<i>stepclass</i>	The label of a StepClass object to monitor the progress of the process. The ProcessClass uses this object to determine how much of the process is completed. You should use this parameter when you cannot easily estimate the number of records to be processed, that is, when the process is dynamically filtered.
<i>free element</i>	The label of the <i>view</i> 's free element field. The <i>stepclass</i> uses this field to determine how much of the process is completed. See <i>StepClass Methods--GetPercentile</i> for more information.

The **Init** method initializes the ProcessClass object. If you supply *total records* to process, the ProcessClass object calculates the progress of the process as a function of *total records* and the number of records processed so far. Otherwise, the ProcessClass object relies on the *stepclass* to calculate the progress of the process. See *StepClass Methods--GetPercentile* for more information.

Implementation: The Init method assigns *progress txt* to the PText property, reference assigns *progress pct* to the Percentile property, and assigns *total records* to the RecordsToProcess property. The Init method calls the ViewManager Init method.

Example:

```
!initialize the ProcessClass object
Process.Init( Process:View, |      !set the VIEW
               Relate:Client, |      !set the primary file RelationManager
               ?PctText,      |      !set the Window control for text messages
               PctDone,       |      !set the PROGRESS USE variable
               ProgressMgr,    |      !set StepClass object to monitor progress
               CLII:Name)      |      !set StepClass free element to monitor
```

See Also: Percentile, PText, RecordsToProcess, ViewManager.Init

Kill (shut down the ProcessClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method shuts down the ProcessClass object by freeing any memory allocated during the life of the object and executing any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method calls the ViewManager.Kill method.

Example:

```
!initialize the ProcessClass object
Process.Init( Process:View, | !set the VIEW
    Relate:Client, | !set the primary file RelationManager
    ?PctText, | !set the Window control for text messages
    PctDone, | !set the PROGRESS USE variable
    ProgressMgr, | !set StepClass object to monitor progress
    CLII:Name) | !set StepClass free element to monitor
!procedure code
Process.Kill | !shut down the ProcessClass object
```

See Also: ViewManager.Kill

Next (get next element)**Next**([*process records*]), **VIRTUAL****Next** Gets the next element in the result set.

process records A boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that tells the ProcessClass object whether to update its progress indicators. A zero (0) value does not update the progress indicators; any other value does update the indicators. If omitted, *process records* defaults to one (1).

The **Next** method gets the next element in the result set and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: The Next method calls the ViewManager.Next method. The ProcessClass.Next method updates both the RecordsProcessed property and the Percentile property.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
OF Event:OpenWindow
  Process.Reset                !position to first record
  IF Process.Next()           !get first record
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)   !if no records, shut down
  CYCLE
END
OF Event:Timer                !process records with timer
  StartOfCycle=Process.RecordsProcessed
  LOOP WHILE Process.RecordsProcessed-StartOfCycle<RecordsPerCycle
    CASE Process.Next()       !get next record
    OF Level:Notify           !if end of file
      MESSAGE('Process Completed') ! tell end user
      POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)    ! and shut down
      BREAK
    OF Level:Fatal            !if fatal error
      POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)    ! shut down
      BREAK
    END
  END
END
END
END

```

See Also: Percentile, RecordsProcessed, ViewManager.Next

Reset (position to the first element)**Reset, VIRTUAL**

The **Reset** method positions the process to the first element in the result set and resets the progress indicators.

Implementation: The Reset method resets the RecordsProcessed property to zero (0), conditionally calls the SetProgressLimits method, then calls the ViewManager.Reset method.

Example:

```

CASE EVENT( )
OF Event:OpenWindow
  Process.Reset           !position to first record
  IF Process.Next( )      !get first record
    POST(Event:CloseWindow) !if no records, shut down
  CYCLE
END

```

See Also: SetProgressLimits, ViewManager.Reset

SetProgressLimits (calibrate the progress monitor)**SetProgressLimits**

The **SetProgressLimits** method supplies the upper and lower boundaries of the result set--considering the active sort order, range limits, and filters--to the StepClass object that monitors the progress of the process.

The Init method specifies the StepClass object.

Implementation: The SetProgressLimits method assumes a StepClass object is specified. The Reset method conditionally calls the SetProgressLimits method. The SetProgressLimits method calls the StepClass.SetLimits method.

Example:

```

MyProcessClass.Reset PROCEDURE      !prepare to process the records
CODE
  SELF.RecordsProcessed = 0           !set RecordsProcessed to 0
  SELF.SetProgressLimits              !set StepClass boundaries based
                                     ! on actual data processed
  PARENT.Reset                       !call ViewManager.Reset to
                                     !position to the first record

```

See Also: Init, Reset, StepClass.SetLimit

TakeLocate (a virtual to process each filter)

TakeLocate, VIRTUAL

The **TakeLocate** method does this.

Implementation: The ReportManager.TakeAccepted method calls the TakeLocate method for each report record.

Example:

```
ProcessClass.TakeLocate PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF ~SELF.Query&=NULL AND SELF.Query.Ask( )
    SELF.SetFilter( SELF.Query.GetFilter( ) )
  END
```

TakeRecord (a virtual to process each report record)

TakeRecord, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeRecord** method is a virtual placeholder to process each record in the result set. It returns a value indicating whether processing should continue or should stop. TakeRecord returns Level:Benign to indicate processing should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed and should stop.

Implementation: The ReportManager.TakeWindowEvent method calls the TakeRecord method for each report record. For a report, the TakeRecord method typically implements any DETAIL specific filters and PRINTs the unfiltered DETAILS for the ReportManager. For a process, the TakeRecord method typically implements any needed record action for the Process.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ThisWindow.TakeRecord PROCEDURE( )
CODE
  IF ORD:Date = TODAY( )
    PRINT(RPT:detail)
  END
  RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: ReportManager.TakeWindowEvent

QueryClass

QueryClass Overview

The QueryClass provides support for ad hoc queries against Clarion VIEWS. The query support includes a flexible user input dialog, a broad variety of search capabilities, and seamless integration with the BrowseClass. The QueryClass provides the following features:

- flexible user input dialog
- runtime setup of queryable fields
- queries against calculated fields (e.g., Qty*Price>100)
- case sensitive or insensitive searches
- "begins with" searches
- "contains anywhere" searches
- exclusive searches (not equal, greater than, less than)
- inclusive searches (equal, greater than or equal, less than or equal)
- ranged searches (greater than low value AND less than high value)
- persistent queries for stepwise refinement of queries

QueryClass Concepts

Use the AddItem method to define a standard user input dialog at runtime. Or create a custom dialog to plug into your QueryClass object. Use the Ask method to solicit end user query input or use the SetLimit method to programmatically set query search values. Finally, use the GetFilter method to build the filter expression to apply to your VIEW. You can apply the resulting filter with the ViewManager.SetFilter method, or directly with the PROP:Filter property.

QueryClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The classes derived from the QueryClass are optionally used by the BrowseClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass object uses a QueryClass object, it must instantiate the QueryClass object.

The BrowseClass automatically provides a default query dialog that solicits end user search values for each field displayed in the browse list. See the Conceptual Example.

QueryClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates do not instantiate the QueryClass object independently. The templates instantiate the derived QueryFormClass instead.

Tip: Use the BrowseQBEBUTTON control template to add a QueryFormClass object to your template generated BrowseBoxes.

QueryClass Source Files

The QueryClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific QueryClass files and their respective components are:

ABQUERY.INC	QueryClass declarations
ABQUERY.CLW	QueryClass method definitions

QueryClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a QueryClass object and related objects. The example plugs a QueryClass into a BrowseClass object. The QueryClass object simply filters on the current record.

Note that the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the query.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCEllMode_ EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABQUERY.INC' )

MAP
END

GlobalErrors      ErrorClass
Access:Customer   CLASS(FileManager)
Init              PROCEDURE
                  END

Relate:Customer   CLASS(RelationManager)
Init              PROCEDURE
Kill              PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
                  END

GlobalRequest      BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse     BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest         LONG(0),THREAD

Customer           FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CUS),CREATE,THREAD
CustomerIDKey      KEY(CUS:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
NameKey            KEY(CUS:LastName),NOCASE,OPT
Record             RECORD,PRE()
ID                 LONG
LastName           STRING(20)
FirstName          STRING(15)
City               STRING(20)
State              STRING(2)
ZIP                STRING(10)
                  END
END

```



```
BRW1.Q &= CustQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,CUS:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:LastName,BRW1.Q.CUS:LastName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:FirstName,BRW1.Q.CUS:FirstName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:ZIP,BRW1.Q.CUS:ZIP)
BRW1.QueryControl = ?Query           !register Query button w/ BRW1
BRW1.UpdateQuery(Query)              !make each BRW1 field queryable
Query.AddItem('CUS:State','')       !make State field queryable too
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:Customer.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(CUS:CustomerIDKey,'CUS:CustomerIDKey',1)
SELF.AddKey(CUS:NameKey,'CUS:NameKey',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)

Relate:Customer.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Kill
PARENT.Kill
```

QueryClass Properties

The QueryClass contains the following properties:

QKCurrentQuery (popup menu choice)

QKCurrentQuery **CSTRING(100)**

The **QKCurrentQuery** property holds the value of the popup menu item if QuickQBE support is enabled.

QKIcon (icon for popup submenu)

QKIcon **CSTRING(255)**

The **QKIcon** property holds the full pathname of the icon file to be used in the QuickQBE submenu items.

QKMenuIcon (icon for popup menu)

QKMenuIcon **CSTRING(255)**

The **QKMenuIcon** property holds the full pathname of the icon file to be in the popup menu if QuickQBE has been enabled.

QKSupport (quickqbe flag)

QKSupport **BYTE**

The **QKSupport** property indicates that QuickQBE support is enabled.

Window (browse window:QueryClass)

Window **&Window**

The **Window** property is a reference to the QBE dialog window.

QueryClass Methods

The QueryClass contains the following methods:

QueryClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the QueryClass, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the QueryClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the QueryClass object
AddItem	add a field to query
Killv	shut down the QueryClass object

Mainstream Use:

Askv	a virtual to accept query criteria
GetFilter	return filter expression

Occasional Use:

Reset	reset the QueryClass object
GetLimit	get searchvalues
SetLimit	set search values

These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--other ABC Library methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Ask	a virtual to accept query criteria
Kill	shut down the QueryClass object

AddItem (add field to query)

AddItem(*name*, *title* [,*picture*])

AddItem	Adds specific functionality to the QueryClass.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the queryable item, typically the fully qualified name of a field in the view being queried.

Tip: This may also be an expression such as **UPPER(field1)** or **field1 * field2**.

<i>title</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text to associate with the queryable item. This text appears as the prompt or header for the item in the query dialog presented to the end user.
<i>picture</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the display picture for the queryable item. If omitted, <i>picture</i> defaults to S255 (unformatted string). See <i>Picture Tokens</i> in the <i>Language Reference</i> for more information.

The **AddItem** method adds a queryable item to the QueryClass object. The QueryClass object can then accept input for the item from the end user and build a filter expression to apply to the view being queried.

Other QueryClass methods, such as GetLimit and SetLimit, refer to the queryable item by its *name*.

Tip: You may use the **BrowseClass.UpdateQuery** method in combination with the **AddItem** method to define a query interface that contains the **BrowseClass** fields plus other queryable items.

Example:

```
QueryForm QueryFormClass
QueryVis  QueryFormVisual
BRW1      CLASS(BrowseClass)
Q          &CusQ
          END
```

```
CusWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
  CODE
  !open files, views, window, etc.
  BRW1.UpdateQuery(QueryForm)           !add browse fields to query
  QueryForm.AddItem('UPPER(CUS:NAME)','Name') !add caseless name to query
  QueryForm.AddItem('CUS:ZIP_CODE','Name')   !add zip code to query
  QueryForm.AddItem('ITM:Qty+ITM:Price','Total')!add dynamic total to query
  END
  RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: [BrowseClass.UpdateQuery](#)

Ask (a virtual to accept query criteria)**Ask([*uselast*]), VIRTUAL, PROC**

Ask	A virtual to accept query criteria (search values) from the end user.
<i>uselast</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether the QueryClass object carries forward previous query criteria. A value of one (1 or True) carries forward input from the previous query; a value of zero (0 or False) discards previous input.

The **Ask** method is a virtual to display a query dialog, process its events, and return a value indicating whether to apply the query or abandon it. A return value of Level:Notify indicates the QueryClass object should apply the query criteria; a return value of Level:Benign indicates the end user cancelled the query input dialog and the QueryClass object should not apply the query criteria.

The GetFilter method generates filter expressions using the search values set by the Ask method.

Implementation: For each item that can be queried (added by the AddItem method), the Ask method collects the query values from the selected item's file buffers rather than from a query input dialog. This default behavior automatically gives you query criteria (search values) for the current item without soliciting input from the end user. This allows you to, for example, use a regular update form as a special kind of query (QBE) form.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
MyQueryForm.Ask PROCEDURE(BYTE UseLast)           !derived class Ask method
W WINDOW('Example values'),CENTER,SYSTEM,GRAY    !declare user input dialog
  BUTTON(' &OK '),USE(?Ok,1000),DEFAULT
  BUTTON(' Cancel '),USE(?Cancel,1001)
END
CODE
OPEN(W)
IF ~UseLast THEN SELF.Reset().                     !preserve or discard prior query
IF SELF.Win.Run()=RequestCancelled                 !show dialog and handle events
  RETURN Level:Benign                               !return Cancel indicator
ELSE
  RETURN Level:Notify                               !return OK indicator
END
```

See Also: AddItem, GetFilter, QueryFormClass.Ask, QueryFormClass

ClearQuery (remove loaded query)**ClearQuery, PROTECTED**

The **ClearQuery** method clears the listbox on the QueryVisual dialog that contains the currently loaded query.

Implementation: The ClearQuery method is called by the Take, Restore, and QueryVisual.TakeAccepted methods. This method is used by the QuickQBE functionality.

Note: The Clear Query method does not remove the ad hoc filter from a Browse procedure. It only affects the query dialog used for managing a Browse's queries.

Example:

```
QueryClass.Take PROCEDURE(PopupClass P)
CODE
ASSERT(~P &= NULL)
IF SELF.QkSupport
    SELF.QkCurrentQuery = P.GetLastSelection()
    SELF.PopupList.PopupID = SELF.QkCurrentQuery
    GET(SELF.PopupList,SELF.PopupList.PopupID)
    IF Errorcode()
        SELF.ClearQuery()
    ELSE
        SELF.Restore(SELF.PopupList.QueryName)
    END
    SELF.Save('tsMRU') ! Save Most recently used for Browse\Report query sharing.
    RETURN 1
END
RETURN 0
```

See Also: Save

Delete (remove saved query)**Delete (*queryname*), PROTECTED**

Delete	Remove a saved query.
<i>queryname</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE or expression containing the name of a saved query.

Implementation: The Delete method is the mechanism by which the QuickQBE queries are deleted. This method is called when the user presses the Delete button on the Query dialog.

Note: The Delete method is primarily designed for use by the QuickQBE functionality.

See Also: Save

GetFilter (return filter expression)**GetFilter**

The **GetFilter** method returns a filter expression. The GetFilter method builds the expression from values supplied by the AddItem, Ask, and SetLimit methods.

Implementation: The returned filter expression is up to 5000 characters long.

The GetFilter method generates filter expressions using the search values set by the Ask method, the SetLimit method, or both.

Tip: By default, the Ask method only sets the *equal* to value; it does not set lower and upper values.

The generated filter expression searches for values greater than *lower*, less than *upper*, and equal to *equal*. For string fields, the GetFilter method applies the following special meanings to these special search characters:

Symbol	Position	Filter Effect
^	prefix	caseless (case insensitive) search
*	prefix	contains search
*	suffix	begins with search
=	prefix	inclusive search
>	prefix	exclusive search--greater than
<	prefix	exclusive search--less than

For example:

<i>lower</i>	<i>upper</i>	<i>equal</i>	query searches for
fred			values > fred
	fred		values < fred
		fred	values = fred
=fred			values >= fred
	=fred		values <= fred
		>fred	values >= fred
fred	fred		values >= fred
fred	george	george	values <= george AND values > fred
		d*	values beginning with d (e.g., dog, david)
		*d	values containing d (e.g., dog, cod)
		^d	values d and D
		^d*	values beginning with d or D (e.g., dog, David)
		^*d	values containing d or D (e.g., dog, cod, coD)

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.TakeLocate PROCEDURE
CurSort  USHORT,AUTO
I         USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~SELF.Query&=NULL AND SELF.Query.Ask()    !get query input from end user
  CurSort = POINTER(SELF.Sort)                !save current sort order
  LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Sort)
    PARENT.SetSort(I)                        !step thru each sort order
    SELF.SetFilter(SELF.Query.GetFilter(),'9-QBE') !get filter expression from
Query
  END                                         ! and give it to Browse object
  PARENT.SetSort(CurSort)                   !restore current sort order
  SELF.ResetSort(1)                         !apply the filter expression
END
```

See Also: AddItem, Ask, SetLimit

GetLimit (get searchvalues)**GetLimit**(*name* [,*lower*] [,*upper*] [,*equal*]), **PROTECTED**

GetLimit	Gets the QueryClass object's search values.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the queryable item to set. Queryable items are established by the AddItem method.
<i>lower</i>	A CSTRING variable to receive the filter's lower boundary.
<i>upper</i>	A CSTRING variable to receive the filter's upper boundary.
<i>equal</i>	A CSTRING variable to receive the filter's exact match.

The **GetLimit** method gets the QueryClass object's search values. The Ask or SetLimit methods set the QueryClass object's search values.

Implementation: The GetFilter method generates filter expressions using the search values. The generated filter expression searches for values greater than *lower*, less than *upper*, and equal to *equal*.

Example:

```

QueryClass.Ask      PROCEDURE(BYTE UseLast=1)
I USHORT,AUTO
EV CSTRING(1000),AUTO
CODE
  SELF.Reset
  LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Fields)
    GET(SELF.Fields,I)
    EV = CLIP(EVALUATE(SELF.Fields.Name))
    IF EV
      SELF.SetLimit(SELF.Fields.Name,,,EV)
    END
  END
  RETURN Level:Notify

```

See Also: AddItem, Ask, SetLimit

Init (initialize the QueryClass object)

Init([*queryvisual*] [,*inimanager*,*family*,*errormanage*])

Init	The Init method initializes the QueryClass object.
<i>queryvisual</i>	The label of the query's QueryVisual object.
<i>inimanager</i>	The label of the query's INIManager object.
<i>family</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the name to use for storing queries. By default this is the name of the procedure.
<i>errormanage</i>	The label of the query's ErrorManager object

Implementation: The Init method allocates a new queryable items queue.

Example:

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!other initialization code
Query.Init(QueryWindow)
Query.AddItem('UPPER(CLI:LastName)','Name','s20')
Query.AddItem('CLI:ZIP+1','ZIP+1','')
RETURN ReturnValue
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!other termination code
Query.Kill
RETURN ReturnValue

```

See Also: Kill

Kill (shut down the QueryClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method deallocates the queryable items queue.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO  
CODE  
!other initialization code  
Query.Init(QueryWindow)  
Query.AddItem('UPPER(CLI:LastName)','Name','s20')  
Query.AddItem('CLI:ZIP+1','ZIP+1','')  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()  
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO  
CODE  
!other termination code  
Query.Kill  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: Init

Reset (reset the QueryClass object)**Reset**([*name*])

Reset	Resets the QueryClass object.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the queryable item to reset. Queryable items are established by the AddItem method. If omitted, the Reset method resets all the queryable items.

The **Reset** method resets the QueryClass object by clearing prior query values.

Implementation: The Reset method calls the SetLimit method to clear the search values for each queryable item.

Example:

```
MyQueryForm.Ask PROCEDURE(BYTE UseLast)           !derived class Ask method
W WINDOW('Example values'),CENTER,SYSTEM,GRAY      !declare user input dialog
  BUTTON('&OK'),USE(?Ok,1000),DEFAULT
  BUTTON('Cancel'),USE(?Cancel,1001)
END
CODE
OPEN(W)
IF ~UseLast THEN SELF.Reset().                     !preserve or discard prior query
IF SELF.Win.Run()=RequestCancelled                 !show dialog and handle events
  RETURN Level:Benign                             !return Cancel indicator
ELSE
  RETURN Level:Notify                             !return OK indicator
```

See Also: AddItem, SetLimit

Restore (retrieve saved query)**Restore (*queryname*)**

Restore The **Restore** method retrieves a saved query from the INI file.

queryname A string constant, variable, EQUATE or expression containing the name of a saved query.

Implementation: The Restore method is called by the Take, QueryVisual.TakeAccepted, and QueryVisual.TakeFieldEvent methods.

Note: The Restore method is primarily designed for use by the QuickQBE functionality.

See Also: Save

Save (save a query)**Save (*queryname*)****Save**

The **Save** method saves a query to the INI file.

queryname

A string constant, variable, EQUATE or expression containing the name of the query to save.

Implementation:

The Kill method deallocates the queryable items queue.

Note: The save method is primarily designed for use by the QuickQBE functionality.

See Also:

Restore

SetLimit (set search values)

SetLimit(*name* [,*lower*] [,*upper*] [,*equal*])

SetLimit	Sets the QueryClass object's search values.
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the queryable item to set. Queryable items are established by the AddItem method.
<i>lower</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the filter's lower boundary--the query searches for values greater than <i>lower</i> . If you prefix the lower value with the equal sign (=), the query searches for values greater than or equal to <i>lower</i> . If omitted, SetLimit leaves the lower boundary intact.
<i>upper</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the filter's upper boundary--the query searches for values less than <i>upper</i> . If you prefix the <i>upper</i> value with the equal sign (=), the query searches for values less than or equal to <i>upper</i> . If omitted, SetLimit leaves the upper boundary intact.
<i>equal</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the filter's exact match--the query searches for values equal to <i>equal</i> . If you prefix the <i>equal</i> value with the greater sign (>), the query searches for values greater than or equal to <i>equal</i> ; if you prefix the <i>equal</i> value with the less sign (<), the query searches for values less than or equal to <i>equal</i> . If omitted, SetLimit leaves the exact match intact.

The **SetLimit** method sets the QueryClass object's search values. The GetLimit method gets the QueryClass object's search values.

Implementation: The GetFilter method generates filter expressions using the search values set by the Ask method, the SetLimit method, or both.

Tip: By default, the Ask method only sets the *equal* to value; it does not set lower and upper values.

The generated filter expression searches for values greater than *lower*, less than *upper*, and equal to *equal*. For string fields, the GetFilter method applies the following special meanings to these special search characters:

Symbol	Position	Filter Effect
^	prefix	caseless (case insensitive) search
*	prefix	contains search
*	suffix	begins with search
=	prefix	inclusive search
>	prefix	exclusive search--greater than
<	prefix	exclusive search--less than

For example:

<i>lower</i>	<i>upper</i>	<i>equal</i>	query searches for
fred			values > fred
	fred		values < fred
		fred	values = fred
=fred			values >= fred
	=fred		values <= fred
		>fred	values >= fred
fred	fred		values >= fred
fred	george	george	values <= george AND values > fred
		d*	values beginning with d (e.g., dog, david)
		*d	values containing d (e.g., dog, cod)
		^d	values d and D
		^d*	values beginning with d or D (e.g., dog, David)
		^*d	values containing d or D (e.g., dog, cod, coD)

Example:

```

QueryClass.Ask      PROCEDURE(BYTE UseLast=1)
I USHORT,AUTO
EV CSTRING(1000),AUTO
CODE
  SELF.Reset
  LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Fields)
    GET(SELF.Fields,I)
    EV = CLIP(EVALUATE(SELF.Fields.Name))
    IF EV
      SELF.SetLimit(SELF.Fields.Name,,,EV)
    END
  END
RETURN Level:Notify

```

See Also: AddItem, Ask, GetFilter, GetLimit

SetQuickPopup (add QuickQBE to browse popup)

SetQuickPopup (*popup*, *query*)

SetQuickPopup	Add QuickQBE items and submenu to Browse popup.
<i>popup</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the browse PopupManager object.
<i>query</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the QueryClass object

Implementation: The SetQuickPopup method adds a submenu to the BroweClass popup object, and an item to clear the current query and an item for every saved query for the current procedure.

Note: TheSetQuickPopup method is primarily designed for use by the QuickQBE functionality.

See Also: QkIcon, QkMenuIcon, BrowseClass.Popup, Save

Take (process QuickQBE popup menu choice)

Take (*popup*)

Take	Add QuickQBE items and submenu to Browse popup.
<i>popup</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the label of the browse PopupManager object.

Implementation: The Take method is called by the BrowseClass.TakeEvent method. It returns one (1 or True) if QuickQBE support is enabled, and zero (0 or False) if QuickQBE is not enabled.

Note: The take method is primarily designed for use by the QuickQBE functionality.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: QkSupport

QueryFormClass

QueryFormClass Overview

The QueryFormClass is a QueryClass with a "form" user interface. The QueryFormClass provides support for ad hoc queries against Clarion VIEWS. The form interface includes an entry field, a prompt, and an equivalence operator (equal, not equal, greater than, etc.) button for each queryable item.

QueryFormClass Concepts

Use the AddItem method to define a user input dialog at runtime. Or create a custom dialog to plug into your QueryClass object. Use the Ask method to solicit end user query criteria (search values) or use the SetLimit method to programmatically set query search values. Finally, use the GetFilter method to build the filter expression to apply to your VIEW. Use the ViewManager.SetFilter method or the PROP:Filter property to apply the resulting filter.

QueryFormClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The QueryFormClass is derived from the QueryClass, plus it relies on the QueryFormVisual class to display its input dialog and handle the dialog events.

The BrowseClass optionally uses the QueryFormClass to filter its result set. Therefore, if your BrowseClass object uses a QueryFormClass object, it must instantiate the QueryFormClass object and the QueryFormVisual object.

The BrowseClass automatically provides a default query dialog that solicits end user search values for each field displayed in the browse list. See the Conceptual Example.

QueryFormClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local QueryFormClass class *and* object for each instance of the BrowseQBEBUTTON template. The ABC Templates automatically include all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in the BrowseQBEBUTTON template.

The templates optionally *derive* a class from the QueryFormClass for *each* BrowseQBEBUTTON control in the application. The derived class is called QBE# where # is the instance number of the BrowseQBEBUTTON template. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the BrowseQBEBUTTON template **Classes** tab to easily modify the query's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Tip: Use the BrowseQBEBUTTON control template to add a QueryFormClass object to your template generated BrowseBoxes.

QueryFormClass Source Files

The QueryFormClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific QueryFormClass files and their respective components are:

ABQUERY.INC	QueryFormClass declarations
ABQUERY.CLW	QueryFormClass method definitions

QueryFormClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a QueryFormClass object and related objects. The example plugs a QueryFormClass into a BrowseClass object. The QueryFormClass object solicits query criteria (search values) with a "form" dialog, and then generates a filter expression based on the end user input.

Note that the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the query.

```

PROGRAM

  _ABCDllMode_  EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABQUERY.INC' )

  MAP
  END

GlobalErrors  ErrorClass
Access:Customer  CLASS(FileManager)
Init           PROCEDURE
               END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
               END

GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest     LONG(0),THREAD

Customer       FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CUS),CREATE,THREAD
CustomerIDKey  KEY(CUS:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
NameKey       KEY(CUS:LastName),NOCASE,OPT
Record        RECORD,PRE( )
ID            LONG
LastName      STRING(20)
FirstName     STRING(15)
City          STRING(20)
State         STRING(2)
ZIP           STRING(10)
               END
END

```

```

CustView      VIEW(Customer)
               END

CustQ          QUEUE
CUS:LastName   LIKE(CUS:LastName)
CUS:FirstName  LIKE(CUS:FirstName)
CUS:ZIP        LIKE(CUS:ZIP)
ViewPosition   STRING(1024)
               END

CusWindow      WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(, ,210,105),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
               LIST,AT(5,5,200,80),USE(?CusList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CustQ),|
               FORMAT('80L(2)|M~Last~@s20@64L(2)|M~First~@s15@44L(2)|M~ZIP~@s10@')
               BUTTON('&Query'),AT(50,88),USE(?Query)
               BUTTON('Close'),AT(90,88),USE(?Close)
               END

ThisWindow     CLASS(WindowManager)                !declare ThisWindow object
Init           PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill           PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
               END

Query          QueryFormClass                      !declare Query object
QBEWindow      QueryFormVisual                     !declare QBEWindow object
BRW1           CLASS(BrowseClass)                  !declare BRW1 object
Q              &CustQ
               END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Customer.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()                  !ThisWindow handles all events
Relate:Customer.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?CusList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(?Close,RequestCancelled)
Relate:Customer.Open
BRW1.Init(?CusList,CustQ.ViewPosition,CustView,CustQ,Relate:Customer,ThisWindow)
OPEN(CusWindow)

```

```

    SELF.Opened=True
    Query.Init(QBEWindow)                !initialize Query object
    BRW1.Q &= CustQ
    BRW1.AddSortOrder(,CUS:NameKey)
    BRW1.AddField(CUS:LastName,BRW1.Q.CUS:LastName)
    BRW1.AddField(CUS:FirstName,BRW1.Q.CUS:FirstName)
    BRW1.AddField(CUS:ZIP,BRW1.Q.CUS:ZIP)
    BRW1.QueryControl = ?Query            !register Query button w/ BRW1
    BRW1.UpdateQuery(Query)               !make each browse item Queryable
    Query.AddItem('Cus:State','State')   !make State field Queryable too
    SELF.SetAlerts()
    RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    Relate:Customer.Close
    RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
    SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
    SELF.Create = 1
    SELF.AddKey(CUS:CustomerIDKey,'CUS:CustomerIDKey',1)
    SELF.AddKey(CUS:NameKey,'CUS:NameKey',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:Customer.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)

Relate:Customer.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:Customer.Kill
    PARENT.Kill

```

QueryFormClass Properties

The QueryFormClass inherits all the properties of the *QueryClass* from which it is derived.

QueryFormClass Methods

The QueryFormClass inherits all the methods of the QueryClass from which it is derived. See *QueryClass Methods* for more information.

QueryFormClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the QueryFormClass, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the QueryFormClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the QueryFormClass object
AddItem _i	add a field to query
Kill _v	shut down the QueryFormClass object

Mainstream Use:

Ask _v	accept query criteria
GetFilter _i	return filter expression

Occasional Use:

Reset _i	reset the QueryFormClass object
GetLimit _i	get searchvalues
SetLimit _i	set search values

_v These methods are also Virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the QueryClass.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--other ABC Library methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Ask	accept query criteria
Kill	shut down the QueryFormClass object

Ask (solicit query criteria)**Ask([*uselast*]), VIRTUAL, PROC**

Ask	Accepts query criteria (search values) from the end user.
<i>uselast</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether the QueryFormClass object carries forward previous query criteria. A value of one (1 or True) carries forward input from the previous query; a value of zero (0 or False) discards previous input.

The **Ask** method displays a query dialog, processes its events, and returns a value indicating whether to apply the query or abandon it. A return value of Level:Notify indicates the QueryFormClass object should apply the query criteria; a return value of Level:Benign indicates the end user cancelled the query input dialog and the QueryFormClass object should not apply the query criteria.

Implementation: The Ask method declares a generic (empty) dialog to accept query criteria. The Ask method calls the QueryFormClass object's WindowManager to define the dialog and process its events.

The GetFilter method generates filter expressions using the search values set by the Ask method.

The Init method sets the value of the QueryFormClass object's WindowManager.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.TakeLocate PROCEDURE
CurSort USHORT,AUTO
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~SELF.Query&=NULL AND SELF.Query.Ask()
CurSort = POINTER(SELF.Sort)
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Sort)
PARENT.SetSort(I)
SELF.SetFilter(SELF.Query.GetFilter(),'9 - QBE')
END
PARENT.SetSort(CurSort)
SELF.ResetSort(1)
END
```

See Also: GetFilter, Init, QueryFormVisual

Init (initialize the QueryFormClass object)

Init(*query window manager*, *inimanager*, *family*, *errormanager*)

Init	Initializes the QueryFormClass object.
<i>query window manager</i>	The label of the QueryFormVisual object that displays the query input dialog and processes it's events.
<i>inimanager</i>	The label of the INIManager object.
<i>family</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the procedure name of the calling procedure.
<i>errormanager</i>	The label of the Global ErrorManager object.

The **Init** method initializes the QueryFormClass object.

Implementation: The Init method sets the QFC property for the *query window manager*.

Example:

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!other initialization code
Query.Init(QueryWindow)
Query.AddItem('UPPER(CLI:LastName)','Name','s20')
Query.AddItem('CLI:ZIP+1','ZIP+1','')
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!other termination code
Query.Kill
RETURN ReturnValue

```

See Also: Kill, QueryFormVisual, QueryFormVisual.QFC

Kill (shut down the QueryFormClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO  
CODE  
!other initialization code  
Query.Init(QueryWindow)  
Query.AddItem('UPPER(CLI:LastName)','Name','s20')  
Query.AddItem('CLI:ZIP+1','ZIP+1','')  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()  
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO  
CODE  
!other termination code  
Query.Kill  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: Init

QueryFormVisual

QueryFormVisual Overview

The QueryFormVisual class is a QueryVisualClass that displays a query input dialog and handles the dialog events. The query dialog includes an entry field, a prompt, and an equivalence operator (equal, not equal, greater than, etc.) button for each queryable item.

QueryFormVisual Concepts

The QueryFormVisual provides the query window for a QueryFormClass object. The Init method defines and "programs" the query input dialog at runtime. The query input dialog contains a prompt, an entry field, and a query operator button for each queryable item. On each button press, the operator button cycles through the available operators: equal (=), greater than or equal (>=), less than or equal (<=), not equal (<>), and no filter ().

The QueryFormClass recognizes these operators and uses them to create valid filter expressions.

QueryFormVisual Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The QueryFormVisual class is derived from the QueryVisualClass.

The BrowseClass uses the QueryFormVisual to provide the user interface to its query facility. Therefore, if your BrowseClass object provides a query, it must instantiate the QueryFormVisual object (and the QueryFormClass object). See the Conceptual Example.

QueryFormVisual ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local QueryFormVisual class *and* object for each instance of the BrowseQBEBButton template. The ABC Templates automatically include all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in the BrowseQBEBButton template.

The templates optionally *derive* a class from the QueryFormVisual for *each* BrowseQBEBButton control in the application. The derived class is called QBV# where # is the instance number of the BrowseQBEBButton template. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the BrowseQBEBButton template **Classes** tab to easily modify the query's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Tip: Use the BrowseQBEBButton control template to add a QueryFormClass object to your template generated BrowseBoxes.

QueryFormVisual Source Files

The QueryFormVisual source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific QueryFormVisual files and their respective components are:

ABQUERY.INC	QueryFormVisual declarations
ABQUERY.CLW	QueryFormVisual method definitions

QueryFormVisual Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a QueryFormVisual object and related objects. The example plugs a QueryFormClass into a BrowseClass object. The QueryFormClass object uses the QueryFormVisual to solicit query criteria (search values) from the end user.

Note that the QueryVisualClass and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the query.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABQUERY.INC' )

  MAP
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
              END

GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD

Customer      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CUS),CREATE,THREAD
CustomerIDKey KEY(CUS:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
NameKey       KEY(CUS:LastName),NOCASE,OPT
Record        RECORD,PRE( )
ID            LONG
LastName      STRING(20)
FirstName     STRING(15)
City          STRING(20)
State         STRING(2)
ZIP           STRING(10)
              END
              END

```

```

CustView      VIEW(Customer)
              END

CustQ          QUEUE
CUS:LastName   LIKE(CUS:LastName)
CUS:FirstName  LIKE(CUS:FirstName)
CUS:ZIP        LIKE(CUS:ZIP)
ViewPosition   STRING(1024)
              END

CusWindow      WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(,,210,105),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
              LIST,AT(5,5,200,80),USE(?CusList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CustQ),|
              FORMAT('80L(2)|M~Last~@s20@64L(2)|M~First~@s15@44L(2)|M~ZIP~@s10@')
              BUTTON('&Query'),AT(50,88),USE(?Query)
              BUTTON('Close'),AT(90,88),USE(?Close)
              END

ThisWindow     CLASS(WindowManager)                !declare ThisWindow object
Init           PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill           PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
              END

Query          QueryFormClass                      !declare Query object
QBWindow       QueryFormVisual                     !declare QBWindow object
BRW1           CLASS(BrowseClass)                  !declare BRW1 object
Q              &CustQ
              END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Customer.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()                  !ThisWindow handles all events
Relate:Customer.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?CusList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(?Close,RequestCancelled)
Relate:Customer.Open
BRW1.Init(?CusList,CustQ.ViewPosition,CustView,CustQ,Relate:Customer,ThisWindow)
OPEN(CusWindow)

```



```

SELF.Opened=True
Query.Init(QBEWindow)           !initialize Query object
BRW1.Q &= CustQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,CUS:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:LastName,BRW1.Q.CUS:LastName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:FirstName,BRW1.Q.CUS:FirstName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:ZIP,BRW1.Q.CUS:ZIP)
BRW1.QueryControl = ?Query      !register Query button w/ BRW1
BRW1.UpdateQuery(Query)         !make each browse item Queryable
Query.AddItem('Cus:State','State') !make State field Queryable too
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:Customer.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(CUS:CustomerIDKey,'CUS:CustomerIDKey',1)
SELF.AddKey(CUS:NameKey,'CUS:NameKey',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)

Relate:Customer.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Kill
PARENT.Kill

```

QueryFormVisual Properties

The QueryFormVisual inherits all the properties of the QueryVisualClass from which it is derived. See QueryVisualClass properties for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the QueryFormVisual contains the following property:

QFC (reference to the QueryFormClass)

QFC &QueryFormClass

The **QFC** property is a reference to the QueryFormClass that uses this QueryFormVisual object to solicit query criteria (search values) from the end user.

Implementation: The QueryFormClass.Init method sets the QFC property.

See Also: QueryFormClass.Init

QueryFormVisual Methods

The QueryFormVisual inherits all the methods of the QueryVisualClass from which it is derived. See QueryVisualClass methods for more information.

QueryFormVisual Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the QueryFormVisual class, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the QueryFormVisual methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Initv program the QueryFormVisual object

MainStream Use:

none

Occasional Use:

none

v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--other ABC Library methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init	program the QueryFormVisual object
TakeCompleted	wrap up the query dialog
TakeAccepted	handle EVENT:Accepted events

GetButtonFeq(returns a field equate label)**GetButtonFeq(*index*)**

GetButtonFeq	Returns the field equate label of the starting set of QBE controls.
<i>index</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains an indexed value to the starting set of QBE controls

The **GetButtonFeq** method returns a field equate label which corresponds to the starting set of QBE controls.

Implementation: The GetButtonFeq method is used in conjunction with the Web Builder template set. This method is called only if the WebServer.IsEnabled method returns a TRUE value.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

Init (initialize the QueryFormVisual object)**Init, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Init** method initializes the QueryFormVisual object. Init returns Level:Benign to indicate normal initialization.

The Init method "programs" the QueryFormVisual object.

Implementation: The QueryFormClass.Ask method (indirectly) calls the Init method to configure the QueryFormClass WINDOW.

For each queryable item (defined by the QFC property), the Init method creates a series of window controls to accept search values. By default, each queryable item gets a prompt, an entry control, and an query operator button (equal, not equal, greater than, etc.).

The Init method sets the coordinates for the QueryFormClass WINDOW and for the individual controls.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
MyQuery.Ask PROCEDURE(BYTE UseLast)
W    WINDOW('Query values'),GRAY    !declare an "empty" window
      BUTTON('&OK'),USE(?Ok,1000),DEFAULT
      BUTTON('Cancel'),USE(?Cancel,1001)
      END
CODE
OPEN(W)
IF SELF.Win.Run()=RequestCancelled !configure, display & process query dialog
      ! Win &= QueryFormVisual
      ! Win.Run calls Init, Ask & Kill
      ! Win.Init configures the dialog
      ! Win.Ask displays dialog & handles events
      ! Win.Kill shuts down the dialog

      RETURN Level:Notify
ELSE
      RETURN Level:Benign
END
```

See Also: **QFC**

ResetFromQuery (reset the QueryFormVisual object)

ResetFromQuery, DERIVED

The **ResetFromQuery** method resets the QueryFormVisual object after a query.

Implementation: The ResetFromQuery method calls the SetText method for each field available for query.

Example:

```
QueryFormVisual.ResetFromQuery PROCEDURE
I USHORT
CODE
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.QFC.Fields)
  GET(SELF.QFC.Fields,I)
  SELF.SetText((Feq:StartControl+(I*3-1)),SELF.QFC.Fields.Middle)
END
Update()
RETURN
```

See Also: SetText

SetText (set prompt text:QueryFormVisual)**SetText (*control*, *entrytext*)**

SetText	The SetText method sets the prompt text for the QueryFormVisual object.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control to act on.
<i>entrytext</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the text to assign to the prompt.

Implementation: The ResetFromQuery method calls the SetText method for each field available for query.

Example:

```
QueryFormVisual.ResetFromQuery PROCEDURE
I USHORT
CODE
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.QFC.Fields)
  GET(SELF.QFC.Fields,I)
  SELF.SetText((Feq:StartControl+(I*3-1)),SELF.QFC.Fields.Middle)
END
Update()
RETURN
```

See Also: ResetFromQuery

TakeAccepted (handle query dialog Accepted events: QueryFormVisual)**TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted events for the query dialog's controls, and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeAccepted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: For each item that can be queried(defined by the QFC property), the TakeAccepted method implements cycling of operators for the query operator buttons. On each button press, the button cycles through the available filter operators: equal(=), greater than or equal(>=), less than or equal(<=), not equal(<>), and no filter().

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: QFC

TakeCompleted (complete the query dialog: QueryFormVisual)**TakeCompleted, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeCompleted** method processes the EVENT:Completed event for the query dialog and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop.

TakeCompleted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Based on the current state of the querydialog, the TakeCompleted method sets the search values in the QFC property. The QFC property may use these search values to create a filter expression.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: QFC

TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:QueryFormVisual)**TakeFieldEvent, DERIVED, PROC**

The **TakeFieldEvent** method is a virtual placeholder to process all field-specific/control-specific events for the window. It returns a value indicating whether window process is complete and should stop. TakeFieldEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeFieldEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
  IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
  END
CASE EVENT()
  OF EVENT:Accepted; RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
  OF EVENT:Rejected; RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
  OF EVENT:Selected; RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
  OF EVENT:NewSelection;RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
  OF EVENT:Completed; RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
  OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
  END
  IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
  IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
  END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: WindowManager.Ask

UpdateFields (process query values)

UpdateFields, DERIVED

The **UpdateFields** method processes the values entered into the query dialog for assignment to a filter statement.

Implementation: The TakeCompleted method calls the UpdateFields method.

Example:

```
QueryFormVisual.TakeCompleted   PROCEDURE  
CODE  
  SELF.SetResponse(RequestCompleted)  
  SELF.UpdateFields  
  RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: TakeCompleted

QueryListClass

QueryListClass--Overview

The QueryListClass is a QueryClass with a "list" user interface. The QueryListClass provides support for ad hoc queries against Clarion VIEWS. The list interface includes is an edit-in-place, 3-column listbox with a field column, an equivalence operator (contains, begins, equal, not equal, greater than, less than) column, and a value (to query for) column.

QueryListClass Concepts

Use the AddItem method to define a user input dialog at runtime. Or create a custom dialog to plug into your QueryClass object. Use the Ask method to solicit end user query criteria (search values) or use the SetLimit method to programmatically set query search values. Finally, use the GetFilter method to build the filter expression to apply to your VIEW. Use the ViewManager.SetFilter method or the PROP:Filter property to apply the resulting filter.

QueryListClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The QueryListClass is derived from the QueryClass, plus it relies on the QueryListVisual class to display its input dialog and handle the dialog events.

The BrowseClass optionally uses the QueryListClass to filter its result set. If your BrowseClass object uses a QueryListClass object, it must instantiate a QueryListClass object and a QueryListVisual object.

The BrowseClass automatically provides a default query dialog that solicits end user search values for each field displayed in the browse list. See the *Conceptual Example*.

QueryListClass--ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local QueryClass class *and* object for each instance of the BrowseQBEBButton template. The ABC Templates automatically include all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in the BrowseQBEBButton template.

The templates optionally derive a QueryListClass object for *each* BrowseQBEBButton control in the application. The derived class is called QBE# where # is the instance number of the BrowseQBEBButton template. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the BrowseQBEBButton template **Classes** tab to easily modify the query's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Tip: Use the BrowseQBEBButton control template to add a QueryListClass object to your template generated BrowseBoxes.

QueryListClass Source Files

The QueryListClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific QueryListClass files and their respective components are:

ABQUERY.INC	QueryListClass declarations
ABQUERY.CLW	QueryListClass method definitions

QueryListClass--Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a QueryListClass object and related objects. The example plugs a QueryListClass into a BrowseClass object. The QueryListClass object solicits query criteria (search values) with a "list" dialog, then generates a filter expression based on the end user input.

```

PROGRAM

  _ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABQUERY.INC' )

  MAP
  END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
              END

GlobalRequest BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD

Customer      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CUS),CREATE,THREAD
CustomerIDKey KEY(CUS:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
NameKey       KEY(CUS:LastName),NOCASE,OPT
Record        RECORD,PRE( )
ID            LONG
LastName      STRING(20)
FirstName     STRING(15)
City          STRING(20)
State         STRING(2)
ZIP           STRING(10)
              END
              END

```

```

CustView      VIEW(Customer)
              END
CustQ         QUEUE
CUS:LastName  LIKE(CUS:LastName)
CUS:FirstName LIKE(CUS:FirstName)
CUS:ZIP       LIKE(CUS:ZIP)
ViewPosition  STRING(1024)
              END

CusWindow WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(,,210,105),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
          LIST,AT(5,5,200,80),USE(?CusList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CustQ),|
          FORMAT('80L(2)|M~Last~@s20@64L(2)|M~First~@s15@44L(2)|M~ZIP~@s10@')
          BUTTON('&Query'),AT(50,88),USE(?Query)
          BUTTON('Close'),AT(90,88),USE(?Close)
          END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)          !declare ThisWindow object
Init       PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill       PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
          END

Query      QueryListmClass              !declare Query object
QBEWindow  QueryListVisual              !declare QBEWindow object
BRW1       CLASS(BrowseClass)           !declare BRW1 object
Q          &CustQ
          END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Customer.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()      !ThisWindow handles all events
Relate:Customer.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?CusList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(?Close,RequestCancelled)
Relate:Customer.Open
BRW1.Init(?CusList,CustQ.ViewPosition,CustView,CustQ,Relate:Customer,ThisWindow)
OPEN(CusWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
Query.Init(QBEWindow)                  !initialize Query object

```



```

BRW1.Q &= CustQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,CUS:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:LastName,BRW1.Q.CUS:LastName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:FirstName,BRW1.Q.CUS:FirstName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:ZIP,BRW1.Q.CUS:ZIP)
BRW1.QueryControl = ?Query           !register Query button w/ BRW1
BRW1.UpdateQuery(Query)              !make each browse item Queryable
Query.AddItem('Cus:State','State')  !make State field Queryable too
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    Relate:Customer.Close
    RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
    SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
    SELF.Create = 1
    SELF.AddKey(CUS:CustomerIDKey,'CUS:CustomerIDKey',1)
    SELF.AddKey(CUS:NameKey,'CUS:NameKey',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:Customer.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)

Relate:Customer.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:Customer.Kill
    PARENT.Kill

```

QueryListClass Properties

The QueryListClass inherits all the properties of the QueryClass from which it is derived. See *QueryClass Properties* for more information.

QueryListClass Methods

The QueryListClass inherits all the methods of the QueryClass from which it is derived. See *QueryClass Methods* for more information.

QueryListClass--Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the QueryListClass, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the QueryListClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into two categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the QueryListClass object
AddItem _i	add a field to query
Kill _v	shut down the QueryListClass object

Mainstream Use:

Ask _v	accept query criteria
GetFilter _i	return filter expression

Occasional Use:

Reset _i	reset the QueryListClass object
GetLimit _i	get search values
SetLimit _i	set search values

_v These methods are also Virtual.

_i These methods are inherited from the QueryClass.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--other ABC Library methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Ask	accept query criteria
Kill	shut down the QueryListClass object

Ask (solicit query criteria:QueryListClass)**Ask([*uselast*]), DERIVED, PROC**

Ask	Accepts query criteria (search values) from the end user.
<i>uselast</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether the QueryListClass object carries forward previous query criteria. A value of one (1) carries forward input from the previous query; a value of zero (0) discards previous input.

The **Ask** method displays a query dialog, processes its events, and returns a value indicating whether to apply the query or abandon it. A return value of Level:Notify indicates the QueryListClass object should apply the query criteria; a return value of Level:Benign indicates the end user cancelled the query input dialog and the QueryListClass object should not apply the query criteria.

Implementation: The Ask method declares a generic (empty) dialog to accept query criteria. The Ask method calls the QueryListClass object's WindowManager to define the dialog and process its events.

The GetFilter method generates filter expressions using the search values set by the Ask method.

The Init method sets the value of the QueryListClass object's WindowManager.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyBrowseClass.TakeLocate PROCEDURE
CurSort USHORT,AUTO
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~SELF.Query&=NULL AND SELF.Query.Ask(
CurSort = POINTER(SELF.Sort)
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Sort)
PARENT.SetSort(I)
SELF.SetFilter(SELF.Query.GetFilter(),'9 - QBE')
END
PARENT.SetSort(CurSort)
SELF.ResetSort(1)
END
```

See Also: GetFilter, Init, QueryListVisual

Init (initialize the QueryListClass object)

Init(*querywindowmanager*, *inimanager*, *family*, *errormanager*)

Init	Initializes the QueryListClass object.
<i>querywindowmanager</i>	The label of the QueryListVisual object that displays the query input dialog list and processes its events.
<i>inimanager</i>	The label of the INIManager object.
<i>family</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the procedure name of the calling procedure.
<i>errormanager</i>	The label of the Global ErrorManager object.

The **Init** method initializes the QueryListClass object.

Implementation: The Init method sets the QFC property for the *querywindowmanager*.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!other initialization code
Query.Init(QueryWindow)
Query.AddItem('UPPER(CLI:LastName)','Name','s20')
Query.AddItem('CLI:ZIP+1','ZIP+1','')
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!other termination code
Query.Kill
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: Kill, QueryListVisual, QueryListVisual.QFC

Kill (shut down the QueryListClass object)

Kill, DERIVED

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO  
CODE  
!other initialization code  
Query.Init(QueryWindow)  
Query.AddItem('UPPER(CLI:LastName)','Name','s20')  
Query.AddItem('CLI:ZIP+1','ZIP+1','')  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()  
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO  
CODE  
!other termination code  
Query.Kill  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: Init

QueryListVisual

QueryListVisual--Overview

The QueryListVisual class is a QueryVisualClass that displays a query input dialog and handles the dialog events. The query dialog includes an edit-in-place, 3-column listbox, which allows the end user to choose the fields to query, the equivalence operator, and the value to query for.

QueryListVisual Concepts

The QueryListVisual provides the query window for a QueryListClass object. The Init method defines and "programs" the query input dialog at runtime. The query interface includes an edit-in-place, 3-column listbox with a field column, an equivalence operator (contains, begins, equal, not equal, greater than, less than) column, and a value (to query for) column.

QueryListVisual--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The QueryListVisual class is derived from the QueryVisualClass.

The BrowseClass optionally uses the QueryListVisual class to provide the user an edit-in-place list interface to its query facility.

The QueryListClass requires the QueryListVisual class as a window manager.

QueryListVisual--ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates declare a local QueryListVisual class *and* object for each instance of the BrowseQBEBButton template. The ABC Templates automatically include all the code necessary to support the functionality specified in the BrowseQBEBButton template.

The templates optionally *derive* a class from the QueryListVisual for *each* BrowseQBEBButton control in the application. The derived class is called QBV# where # is the instance number of the BrowseQBEBButton template. The templates provide the derived class so you can use the BrowseQBEBButton template **Classes** tab to easily modify the query's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Tip: Use the BrowseQBEBButton control template to add a QueryListClass object to your template generated BrowseBoxes.

QueryListVisual Source Files

The QueryListVisual source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific QueryListVisual files and their respective components are:

ABQUERY.INC
ABQUERY.CLW

QueryListVisual declarations
QueryListVisual method definitions

QueryListVisual--Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a QueryListVisual object and related objects. The example plugs a QueryListClass into a BrowseClass object. The QueryListClass object uses the QueryListVisual to solicit query criteria (search values) from the end user.

Note that the QueryVisualClass and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the query.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCDllMode_ EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABQUERY.INC' )

MAP
END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init          PROCEDURE
Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
              END

GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest    LONG(0),THREAD

Customer       FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE(CUS),CREATE,THREAD
CustomerIDKey  KEY(CUS:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
NameKey       KEY(CUS:LastName),NOCASE,OPT
Record        RECORD,PRE( )
ID            LONG
LastName      STRING(20)
FirstName     STRING(15)
City          STRING(20)
State         STRING(2)
ZIP           STRING(10)
              END
              END

```

```

CustView      VIEW(Customer)
               END

CustQ          QUEUE
CUS:LastName   LIKE(CUS:LastName)
CUS:FirstName  LIKE(CUS:FirstName)
CUS:ZIP        LIKE(CUS:ZIP)
ViewPosition   STRING(1024)
               END

CusWindow WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(,,210,105),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
               LIST,AT(5,5,200,80),USE(?CusList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CustQ),|
               FORMAT('80L(2)|M~Last~@s20@64L(2)|M~First~@s15@44L(2)|M~ZIP~@s10@')
               BUTTON('&Query'),AT(50,88),USE(?Query)
               BUTTON('Close'),AT(90,88),USE(?Close)
               END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)           !declare ThisWindow object
Init       PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill       PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
               END

Query       QueryListClass                !declare Query object
QBEWindow  QueryListVisual                !declare QBEWindow object
BRW1       CLASS(BrowseClass)             !declare BRW1 object
Q          &CustQ
               END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Customer.Init
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()          !ThisWindow handles all events
Relate:Customer.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue   BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?CusList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(?Close,RequestCancelled)
Relate:Customer.Open
BRW1.Init(?CusList,CustQ.ViewPosition,CustView,CustQ,Relate:Customer,ThisWindow)
OPEN(CusWindow)

```

```
SELF.Opened=True
Query.Init(QBEWindow)           !initialize Query object
BRW1.Q &= CustQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,CUS:NameKey)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:LastName,BRW1.Q.CUS:LastName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:FirstName,BRW1.Q.CUS:FirstName)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:ZIP,BRW1.Q.CUS:ZIP)
BRW1.QueryControl = ?Query      !register Query button w/ BRW1
BRW1.UpdateQuery(Query)         !make each browse item Queryable
Query.AddItem('Cus:State','State') !make State field Queryable too
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:Customer.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
SELF.Create = 1
SELF.AddKey(CUS:CustomerIDKey,'CUS:CustomerIDKey',1)
SELF.AddKey(CUS:NameKey,'CUS:NameKey',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)

Relate:Customer.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Customer.Kill
PARENT.Kill
```

QueryListVisual Properties

The QueryListVisual inherits all the properties of the QueryVisualClass from which it is derived. See QueryVisualClass properties for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the QueryListVisual contains the following properties:

QFC (reference to the QueryListClass)

QFC &QueryListClass

The **QFC** property is a reference to the QueryListClass that uses this QueryListVisual object to solicit query criteria (search values) from the end user.

Implementation: The QueryListClass.Init method sets the QFC property.

See Also: QueryListClass.Init

OpsEIP (reference to the EditDropListClass)

OpsEIP &EditDropListClass,PROTECTED

The **OpsEIP** property is a reference to the EditDropListClass that displays the available operators in the QueryList dialog.

FldsEIP (reference to the EditDropListClass)

FldsEIP &EditDropListClass,PROTECTED

The **FldsEIP** property is a reference to the EditDropListClass that displays the available fields to query in the QueryList dialog.

ValueEIP(reference to QEditEntryClass)

ValueEIP &EditEntryClass,PROTECTED

The **ValueEIP** property is a reference to the QEditEntryClass that enables edit-in-place entry fields in the QBE window.

Implementation: The ValueEIP is initialized in the QueryListVisual.Init method and updated in the QueryListVisual.UpdateControl method.

See Also: QueryListVisual.Init, QueryListVisual.UpdateControl, QueryListVisual.Kill

QueryListVisual Methods

The QueryListVisual inherits all the methods of the QueryVisualClass from which it is derived. See QueryVisualClass methods for more information.

QueryListVisual--Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the QueryListVisual class, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the QueryListVisual methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init program the QueryListVisual object

MainStream Use:

none

Occasional Use:

none

▷ These methods are Derived.

Derived Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--other ABC Library methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are derived, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init	program the QueryListVisual object
SetAlerts	prepare the query dialog for EIP
TakeEvent	Handle events for the query dialog
TakeCompleted	wrap up the query dialog
TakeAccepted	handle EVENT:Accepted events

Init (initialize the QueryListVisual object)**Init, DERIVED PROC**

The **Init** method initializes the QueryListVisual object. Init returns Level:Benign to indicate normal initialization.

The Init method "programs" the QueryListVisual object.

Implementation: The QueryListClass.Ask method (indirectly) calls the Init method to configure the QueryListClass WINDOW.

The Init method reads each queryable item (defined by the QFC property) from a queue, then creates an edit-in-place, 3-column listbox with a field column, an equivalence operator (equal, not equal, greater than, etc.) column, and a value (to query for) column.

The Init method sets the coordinates for the QueryListClass WINDOW and for the individual controls.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```
QueryListClass.Ask      PROCEDURE(BYTE UseLast)
W WINDOW('Query'),AT(, ,300,200),FONT('MS SansSerif',8,,FONT:regular),SYSTEM,GRAY,DOUBLE
  LIST,AT(5,5,290,174),USE(?List,FEQ:ListBox),|
  FORMAT('91L|M~Field~@s20@44C|M~Operator~L@s10@120C|M~Value~L@s30@')
  BUTTON('Insert'),AT(5,183,45,14),USE(?Insert,FEQ:Insert)
  BUTTON('Change'),AT(52,183,45,14),USE(?Change,FEQ:Change)
  BUTTON('Delete'),AT(99,183,45,14),USE(?Delete,FEQ:Delete)
  BUTTON('&OK'),AT(203,183,45,14),USE(?Ok,FEQ:OK),DEFAULT
  BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(250,183,45,14),USE(?Cancel,FEQ:Cancel)
END
CODE
OPEN(W)
IF ~UseLast THEN SELF.Reset().
RETURN CHOOSE(SELF.Win.Run()=RequestCancelled,Level:Benign,Level:Notify)
```

See Also: **QFC**

Kill (shutdown the QueryListVisual object)**Kill, PROC, DERIVED**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Return Data Type: BYTE

ResetFromQuery (reset the QueryList Visual object)

ResetFromQuery, DERIVED

The **ResetFromQuery** method resets the QueryListVisual object after a query.

Implementation: The ResetFromQuery method calls the GetLimit method for each field available for query.

Example:

```
QueryListVisual.ResetFromQuery PROCEDURE
I USHORT
CaseLess  BYTE,AUTO
High      BYTE
CODE
FREE(SELF.Vals)
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.QFC.Fields)
  GET(SELF.QFC.Fields,I)
  LOOP
    High = SELF.QFC.GetLimit(SELF.Vals.Value,SELF.Vals.Ops,CaseLess,High)
    IF SELF.Vals.Value
      IF CaseLess AND SELF.Vals.Value[1] ~= '^'
        SELF.Vals.Value = '^' & SELF.Vals.Value
      END
      SELF.Vals.Field = SELF.QFC.Fields.Title
      ADD(SELF.Vals)
    END
  WHILE High
END
RETURN
```

See Also: QueryClass.GetLimit

SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control:QueryListVisual)

SetAlerts, DERIVED

The **SetAlerts** method method alerts appropriate keystrokes for the edit-in-place control.

Implementation: The Init method calls the CreateControl method to create the input control and set the FEQ property. The Init method then calls the SetAlerts method to alert specific keystrokes for the query dialog. Alerted keys are:

MouseLeft2	!edit selected record
InsertKey	!add a query field
CtrlEnter	!edit selected record
DeleteKey	!delete query field

Example:

```

EditClass.Init PROCEDURE(UNSIGNED FieldNo,UNSIGNED ListBox,*? UseVar)
CODE
SELF.ListBoxFeq = ListBox
SELF.CreateControl()
ASSERT(SELF.Feq)
SELF.UseVar &= UseVar
SELF.Feq{PROP:Text} = ListBox{PROPLIST:Picture,FieldNo}
SELF.Feq{PROP:Use} = UseVar
SELF.SetAlerts

```

See Also: Init

TakeAccepted (handle query dialog EVENT:Accepted events)**TakeAccepted, DERIVED, PROC**

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted events for the query dialog's controls, and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeAccepted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method handles the processing of the update buttons (Insert, Change, Delete) on the Query list dialog.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: QFC

TakeCompleted (complete the query dialog)

TakeCompleted, DERIVED, PROC

The **TakeCompleted** method processes the EVENT:Completed event for the query dialog and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop.

TakeCompleted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Based on the current state of the querydialog, the TakeCompleted method sets the search values in the QFC property. The QFC property may use these search values to create a filter expression.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: QFC

TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events:QueryListVisual)**TakeEvent(*event*), VIRTUAL****TakeEvent** Processes an event for the QueryListVisualClass object.*event* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the event number (see EVENT in the *Language Reference*).

The **TakeEvent** method processes an event for the QueryListVisualClass object and returns a value indicating the user requested action. Valid actions are none, insert (InsertKey), change (MouseLeft2 or CtrlEnter), or delete (DeleteKey).

Implementation: The EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method process an EVENT:AlertKey for the edit-in-place control and returns a value indicating the user requested action.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent      PROCEDURE
I UNSIGNED(1)
CODE
IF FIELD() = SELF.ListControl THEN RETURN Level:Benign .
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.EQ)+1
! Optimised to pick up subsequent events from same field
IF ~SELF.EQ.Control &= NULL AND SELF.EQ.Control.Feq = FIELD()
SELF.TakeAction(SELF.EQ.Control.TakeEvent(EVENT()))
RETURN Level:Benign
END
GET(SELF.EQ,I)
END
! Not a known field
IF ?{PROP:Type} <> CREATE:Button OR EVENT() <> EVENT:Selected
!Wait to post accepted for button
SELF.Repost = EVENT()
SELF.RepostField = FIELD()
SELF.TakeFocusLoss
END
RETURN Level:Benign

```

See Also: EIPManager.TakeFieldEvent, SetAlerts

TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:QueryListVisual)

TakeFieldEvent, DERIVED, PROC

The **TakeFieldEvent** method is a virtual placeholder to process all field-specific/control-specific events for the window. It returns a value indicating whether window process is complete and should stop. TakeFieldEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeFieldEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted; RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected; RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected; RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection;RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed; RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: WindowManager.Ask

UpdateControl(updates the edit-in-place entry control)

UpdateControl(*fieldname*)

UpdateControl Updates the value for the edit-in-place entry control.

fieldname A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the name of the edit-in-place field.

The **UpdateControl** method updates the value for the edit-in-place entry control.

Implementation: The UpdateControl method is called from the QEIPManager.TakeEvent, when the MouseRight button is clicked.

UpdateFields (process query values)

UpdateFields, DERIVED

The **UpdateFields** method processes the values entered into the query dialog for assignment to a filter statment.

Implementation: The TakeCompleted method calls the UpdateFields method.

Example:

```
QueryListVisual.TakeCompleted    PROCEDURE  
CODE  
  SELF.SetResponse(RequestCompleted)  
  SELF.UpdateFields  
  RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: TakeCompleted

QueryVisualClass

QueryVisualClass: Overview

The QueryVisualClass is a WindowManager that displays a query input dialog and handles the dialog events. The QueryVisualClass is an abstract class that handles all of the basic Window functionality for the query dialog.

QueryVisualClass Concepts

The QueryVisualClass is the parent class for the Query dialogs. It is designed to encapsulate the standard query requirements for the window manager.

QueryVisualClass:Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The QueryVisualClass is derived from the WindowManager. The classes derived from the QueryVisualClass are optionally used by the QueryClass object.

The QueryFormVisual and the QueryListVisual classes are derived QueryVisualClasses.

QueryVisualClass:ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates do not instantiate the QueryClass object independently. The templates instantiate the derived QueryFormClass or QueryListClass instead.

QueryVisualClass Source Files

The QueryVisualClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific QueryVisualClass files and their respective components are:

ABQUERY.INC	QueryVisual declarations
ABQUERY.CLW	QueryVisual method definitions

QueryVisualClass Properties

The QueryVisualClass inherits all the properties of the WindowManager from which it is derived. See WindowManager Properties for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the QueryVisualClass contains the following properties:

QC (reference to the QueryClass)

QC	&QueryClass
-----------	------------------------

The **QC** property is a reference to the QueryClass that uses this QueryVisualClass object to solicit query criteria (search values) from the end user.

Implementation: The QueryFormVisual.Init and QueryListVisual.Init methods set the QC property.

See Also: QueryFormVisual.Init, QueryListVisual.Init

Resizer (reference to the WindowResizeClass:QueryVisualClass)

Resizer	&WindowResizeClass
----------------	-------------------------------

The **Resizer** property is a reference to the WindowResizeClass that is used by this QueryVisualClass object to handle resizing of the Window controls at runtime.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Resizer property.

See Also: Init, Kill

QueryVisualClass Methods

The QueryVisualClass inherits all the methods of the WindowManager from which it is derived. See WindowManager Methods for more information.

Init (initialize the QueryVisual object)

Init, DERIVED, PROC

The **Init** method initializes the QueryVisual object. Init returns Level:Benign to indicate normal initialization. The Init method "programs" the QueryVisual object.

Implementation: The Init method is called from the Init methods of both the QueryFormVisual and the QueryListVisual as PARENT calls. Typically, the Init method is paired with the Kill method, performing the converse of the Kill method tasks.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
QueryFormVisual.Init          PROCEDURE
CODE
QFC &= SELF.QFC
CLEAR(SELF)
SELF.QFC &= QFC
SELF.QC &= QFC
RVal = PARENT.Init()          ! The call to the Init
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
! Saved query code
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: Kill

Kill (shut down the QueryVisual object)

Kill, DERIVED, PROC

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. Kill returns a value to indicate the status of the shut down.

Implementation: Kill sets the Dead property to True and returns Level:Benign to indicate a normal shut down. If the Dead property is already set to True, Kill returns Level:Notify to indicate it is taking no additional action.

Typically, the Kill method is paired with the Init method, performing the converse of the Init method tasks.

Return value EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()  
CODE  
IF PARENT.Kill() THEN RETURN Level:Notify.  
IF FilesOpened  
    Relate:Defaults.Close  
END  
IF SELF.Opened  
    INIMgr.Update('Main',AppFrame)  
END  
GlobalResponse = CHOOSE(LocalResponse=0,RequestCancelled,LocalResponse)
```

See Also: Init

Reset (reset the dialog for display:QueryVisualClass)**Reset (*forcerest*), DERIVED**

Reset	Resets the QueryVisual object.
<i>forcerest</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to conditionally or uncondition-ally reset the window. A value of one (1 or True) uncon-ditionally resets the window; a value of zero (0 or False) only resets the window if circumstances require, such as a new sort on browse object or a changed reset field on a browse object. If omitted, <i>forcerest</i> defaults to zero (0).
Implementation:	The Reset method calls the WindowMangaer.Reset and handles the logic for enabling and disabling the Load and Save buttons. The Reset is called by the TakeFieldEvent and TakeAccepted methods.

Example:

```

QueryVisual.TakeFieldEvent PROCEDURE
CODE
CASE FIELD( )
OF FEQ:QueryNameField
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:NewSelection
SELF.Reset
END
OF FEQ:SaveListBox
CASE Event( )
OF EVENT:AlertKey
IF Keycode( ) = MouseLeft2
GET( SELF.Queries, CHOICE( FEQ:SaveListBox ) )
SELF.QC.Restore( SELF.Queries.Item )
SELF.ResetFromQuery
POST( EVENT:Accepted, FEQ:Ok )
END
OF EVENT:NewSelection
GET( SELF.Queries, CHOICE( FEQ:SaveListBox ) )
FEQ:QueryNameField{Prop:ScreenText} = SELF.Queries.Item
Update( FEQ:QueryNameField )
SELF.Reset
END
END
RETURN PARENT.TakeFieldEvent( )

```

See Also: TakeFieldEvent, TakeAccepted

TakeAccepted (handle query dialog EVENT:Accepted events)**TakeAccepted, DERIVED, PROC**

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted events for the query dialog's controls, and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeAccepted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: For each queryable item (defined by the QC property), the TakeAccepted method implements cycling of operators for the query operator buttons. On each button press, the button cycles through the available filter operators: equal(=), greater than or equal(>=), less than or equal(<=), not equal(<>), and no filter().

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted; RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected; RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected; RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection;RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed; RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: QC

TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:QueryVisualClass)**TakeFieldEvent, DERIVED, PROC**

The **TakeFieldEvent** method is a virtual placeholder to process all field-specific/control-specific events for the window. It returns a value indicating whether window process is complete and should stop. TakeFieldEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC. The TakeEvent method calls the TakeFieldEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted; RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected; RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected; RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection;RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed; RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: WindowManager.Ask

TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events:QueryVisualClass)**TakeWindowEvent, DERIVED, PROC**

The **TakeWindowEvent** method processes all non-field events for the window and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeWindowEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: TakeWindowEvent implements standard handling of EVENT:OpenWindow Open method), EVENT:LoseFocus, EVENT:GainFocus (Reset method), and EVENT:Sized (WindowResizeClass.Resize method). Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeWindowEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted; RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected; RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected; RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection;RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed; RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: WindowManager.TakeEvent

RelationManager

RelationManager Overview

The RelationManager class declares a relation manager object that does the following:

- Consistently and flexibly defines relationships between files--the relationships need not be defined in a data dictionary; they may be defined directly (dynamically) to the relation manager object.
- Reliably enforces discrete specified levels of referential integrity (RI) constraints between the related files--the RI constraints need not be defined in a data dictionary; they may be defined directly (dynamically) to the relation manager object.
- Conveniently forwards appropriate file commands to related files--for example, when a relation manager object opens its primary file, it also opens any related files.

The RelationManager class provides "setup" methods that let you describe the file relationships, their linking fields, and their associated RI constraints; plus other methods to perform the cascading or constrainable database operations such as open, change, delete, and close.

Relation Manager Concepts and Conventions

Cascading Commands and Referential Constraints

You can fully describe a set of file relationships with a series of RelationManager objects--one RelationManager object for each file. Each RelationManager object defines the relationships between its primary file and any files *directly* related to the primary file. However, each RelationManager object also knows about its related files' RelationManager objects, so indirectly, it knows about those secondary relationships too.

For example, consider three related files: Customer <-> Order <-> Item, where <-> indicates a one:many relationship. The RelationManager object for the Customer file knows about the relationship between Customer and Order, but it also knows about the Order file's RelationManager object, so indirectly, it knows about the relationship between Order and Item too.

The benefit of this chain of RelationManager awareness, is that you can issue a file command such as open or close to any one of the RelationManager objects and it forwards the command up *and* down the chain of related files; and for deletes or changes, it enforces any relational integrity constraints up and down the chain of related files.

Me and Him

Some of the RelationManager methods refer to its primary file as "MyFile" or "Me" and its related files as "HisFile" or "Him." See Relation Manager Properties for more information.

Left and Right (and Buffer)

Some of the RelationManager methods refer to its primary file record buffer as "Left," the associated queue buffer as "Right" and the associated save area for the record as "Buffer." See BufferedPairsClass and FieldPairsClass for more information.

RelationManager ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates *derive* a class from the RelationManager class for *each* file the application processes. The derived classes are called Hide:Relate:*filename*, but may be referenced as Relate:*filename*. These derived classes and their methods are declared and implemented in the generated *appnaBC0.CLW* through *appnaBC9.CLW* files (depending on how many files your application uses). The derived class methods are specific to the file being managed, and they enforce the file relationships and referential integrity constraints specified in the data dictionary.

The ABC Templates generate housekeeping procedures to initialize and shut down the RelationManager objects. The procedures are DctInit and DctKill. They are generated into the *appnaBC.CLW* file.

The derived RelationManager classes are configurable with the **Global Properties** dialog. See *Template Overview--File Control Options* and *Classes Options* for more information.

RelationManager Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

FileManager and BufferedPairsClass

The RelationManager relies on both the FileManager and the BufferedPairsClass to do much of its work. Therefore, if your program instantiates the RelationManager it must also instantiate the FileManager and the BufferedPairsClass. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the RelationManager header (ABFILE.INC) in your program's data section. See the Conceptual Example and see File Manager Class and Field Pairs Classes for more information.

ViewManager

Perhaps more significantly, the RelationManager serves as the foundation or "errand boy" of the ViewManager. If your program instantiates the ViewManager it must also instantiate the RelationManager. See View Manager Class for more information.

RelationManager Source Files

The RelationManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The RelationManager source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABFILE.INC	RelationManager declarations
ABFILE.CLW	RelationManager method definitions

RelationManager Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate some RelationManager objects.

This example uses the RelationManager class to cascade new key values from parent file records to the corresponding child file records.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABFILE.INC' )
  INCLUDE( 'ABREPORT.INC' )
MAP
END

CUSTOMER  FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), NAME( 'CUSTOMER' ), PRE( CUS ), BINDABLE, CREATE, THREAD
BYNUMBER  KEY( CUS: CUSTNO ), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record    RECORD, PRE( )
CUSTNO    LONG
NAME      STRING( 30 )
ZIP       DECIMAL( 5 )
          END
        END

PHONES    FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), NAME( 'PHONES' ), PRE( PHO ), BINDABLE, CREATE, THREAD
BYCUSTOMER KEY( PHO: CUSTNO, PHO: PHONE ), DUP, NOCASE, OPT
Record    RECORD, PRE( )
CUSTNO    LONG
PHONE     STRING( 20 )
TYPE      STRING( 8 )
          END
        END

GlobalErrors  ErrorClass

Access: CUSTOMER  CLASS( FileManager )
Init           PROCEDURE
              END

Relate: CUSTOMER  CLASS( RelationManager )
Init           PROCEDURE
              END

Access: PHONES    CLASS( FileManager )
Init           PROCEDURE
              END

Relate: PHONES    CLASS( RelationManager )
Init           PROCEDURE
              END

```

```

RecordsPerCycle  LONG(25)
StartOfCycle     LONG,AUTO
PercentProgress  BYTE
ProgressMgr      StepLongClass
CustView         VIEW(CUSTOMER)
                END
Process          ProcessClass
Progress:Bar     BYTE

ProgressWindow  WINDOW('Processing...'),AT(,,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
                PROGRESS,USE(Progress:Bar),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
                STRING(' '),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?Progress:UserString),CENTER
                STRING(' '),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?Progress:Text),CENTER
                BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42,50,15),USE(?Progress:Cancel)
                END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:CUSTOMER.Init
Relate:PHONES.Init
ProgressMgr.Init(ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)
Process.Init(CustView,Relate:CUSTOMER,|
            ?Progress:Text,Progress:Bar,|
            ProgressMgr,CUS:CUSTNO)
Process.AddSortOrder( CUS:BYNUMBER )
Relate:CUSTOMER.Open
OPEN(ProgressWindow)
?Progress:Text{Prop:Text} = '0% Completed'
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
OF Event:OpenWindow
    Process.Reset
    IF Process.Next()
        POST(Event:CloseWindow)
    CYCLE
END
OF Event:Timer
    StartOfCycle=Process.RecordsProcessed
    LOOP WHILE Process.RecordsProcessed-StartOfCycle<RecordsPerCycle
        CUS:CUSTNO+=100                !change parent key value
        IF Relate:CUSTOMER.Update()    !cascade change to children
            BREAK
        END
    CASE Process.Next()
    OF Level:Notify
        ?Progress:Text{Prop:Text} = 'Process Completed'
        DISPLAY(?Progress:Text)
        POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
        BREAK

```

```

        OF Level:Fatal
        POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
        BREAK
    END
END
END
CASE FIELD()
OF ?Progress:Cancel
CASE Event()
OF Event:Accepted
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)
END
END
END
ProgressMgr.Kill
Relate:CUSTOMER.Close
Relate:CUSTOMER.Kill
Relate:PHONES.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

Access:CUSTOMER.Init  PROCEDURE
CODE
    PARENT.Init(Customer, GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'CUSTOMER'
    SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
    SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER, 'CUS:BYNUMBER',1)

Relate:CUSTOMER.Init  PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:CUSTOMER.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:CUSTOMER,1)
    SELF.AddRelation(Relate:PHONES,RI:Cascade,RI:Restrict,PHO:BYCUSTOMER)
    SELF.AddRelationLink(CUS:CUSTNO,PHO:CUSTNO)

Access:PHONES.Init  PROCEDURE
CODE
    PARENT.Init(Phones, GlobalErrors)
    SELF.FileNameValue = 'PHONES'
    SELF.Buffer &= PHO:Record
    SELF.AddKey(PHO:BYCUSTOMER, 'PHO:BYCUSTOMER')

Relate:PHONES.Init  PROCEDURE
CODE
    Access:PHONES.Init
    PARENT.Init(Access:PHONES,1)
    SELF.AddRelation( Relate:CUSTOMER )

```

RelationManager Properties

RelationManager Properties

The Relation Manager contains the following properties.

Me (the primary file's FileManager object)

Me &FileManager

The **Me** property is a reference to the FileManager object for the RelationManager's primary file. By definition, the file referenced by this FileManager object is the RelationManager's primary file. The Me property identifies the primary file's FileManager object for the various RelationManager methods.

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the Me property.

See Also: Init

UseLogout (transaction framing flag)

UseLogout BYTE

The **UseLogout** property determines whether cascaded updates or deletes are done within a transaction frame (LOGOUT/COMMIT). A value of zero (0) indicates no transaction framing; a value of one (1) indicates transaction framing.

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the UseLogout property.

The ABC Templates set the UseLogout property based on the **Enclose RI code in transaction frame** check box in the **Global Properties** dialog.

See Also: Init

RelationManager Methods

RelationManager Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the RelationManager, it is useful to organize its methods into two categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the RelationManager methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the RelationManager object
AddRelation	set a file relationship
AddRelationLink	set linking fields for a relationship
SetAlias	add/set a file alias
Kill	shut down the RelationManager object

Mainstream Use:

Open _v	open a file and any related files
Save _v	copy current and designated related records
Update _v	update current record subject to RI constraints
Delete _v	delete current record subject to RI constraints
Close _v	close a file and any related files

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Occasional Use:

ListLinkingFields	map pairs of linked fields
SetQuickScan	enable QuickScan across related files

Virtual Methods

We anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Open	open a file and any related files
CancelAutoInc	undo PrimeAutoInc actions
Save	copy current and designated related records
Update	update current record subject to RI constraints
Delete	delete current record subject to RI constraints
Close	close a file and any related files

AddRelation (set a file relationship)**AddRelation(*relationmanager* [,*updatemode* ,*deletemode* ,*relatedkey*]), PROTECTED**

AddRelation Describes a relationship between this object's primary file (see *Me*) and another file.

relationmanager The label of the related file's RelationManager object.

updatemode A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the referential integrity constraint to apply upon updates to the primary file's linking field. Valid constraints are none, clear, restrict, and cascade. If omitted, then *deletemode* and *relatedkey* must also be omitted, and the relationship is unconstrained.

deletemode A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the referential integrity constraint to apply upon deletes of the primary file's linking field. Valid constraints are none, clear, restrict, and cascade. If omitted, then *updatemode* and *relatedkey* must also be omitted, and the relationship is unconstrained.

relatedkey The label of the related file's linking KEY. If included, the call to AddRelation must be followed by a call to AddRelationLink for each linking component field of the key. If omitted, then *updatemode* and *deletemode* must also be omitted, and the relationship is unconstrained.

The **AddRelation** method, in conjunction with the AddRelationLink method, describes a relationship between this object's primary file (see *Me*) and another file so that other RelationManager methods can cascade or constrain file operations across the related files when appropriate.

Implementation: You should typically call AddRelation after the Init method is called (or within your derived Init method).

The EQUATEs for *updatemode* and *deletemode* are declared in FILE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE(0),PRE(RI)
None      EQUATE      !no action on related files
Clear     EQUATE      !clear the linking fields in related files
Restrict  EQUATE      !disallow the operation if linked records exist
Cascade   EQUATE      !update the linking fields in related files, or
END                !delete the linked records in related files
```

Example:

```
Orders      FILE,DIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ORD),CREATE
ByCustomer  KEY(ORD:CustNo,ORD:OrderNo),DUP,NOCASE,OPT
```



```
Record      RECORD,PRE( )
CustNo      LONG
OrderNo     LONG
OrderDate   LONG
Reference   STRING(24)
ShipTo      STRING(32)
Shipped     BYTE
Carrier     STRING(1)
            END
            END

Items      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ITEM),CREATE
AsEntered   KEY(ITEM:CustNo,ITEM:OrderNo,ITEM:LineNo),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record      RECORD,PRE( )
CustNo      LONG
OrderNo     LONG
LineNo      SHORT
ProdCode    SHORT
Quantity    SHORT
            END
            END

CODE
!program code

Relate:Orders.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  SELF.AddRelation( Relate:Items,0,0, ITEM:AsEntered )
  SELF.AddRelationLink( ORD:CustNo, ITEM:CustNo )
  SELF.AddRelationLink( ORD:OrderNo, ITEM:OrderNo )
  SELF.AddRelation( Relate:Customer )

See Also:    AddRelationLink, Init
```

AddRelationLink (set linking fields for a relationship)**AddRelationLink(*parentkey*, *childkey*), PROTECTED****AddRelationLink**

Identifies the linking fields for a relationship between this object's primary file (see *Me*) and another file.

parentkey The label of the primary file's linking field.

childkey The label of the related file's linking field.

The **AddRelationLink** method, in conjunction with the **AddRelation** method, describes a relationship between this object's primary file (see *Me*) and another file so that other **RelationManager** methods can cascade or constrain file operations across the related files when appropriate.

You must call **AddRelationLink** for each pair of linking fields, and the calls must be in sequence of high order linking fields to low order linking fields.

Implementation: You should typically call **AddRelationLink** after the **Init** method is called (or within your derived **Init** method).

Example:

```

Orders        FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ORD ), CREATE
ByCustomer   KEY( ORD:CustNo, ORD:OrderNo ), DUP, NOCASE, OPT
Record        RECORD, PRE( )
CustNo        LONG
OrderNo       LONG
OrderDate    LONG
Reference     STRING( 24 )
ShipTo       STRING( 32 )
Shipped      BYTE
Carrier       STRING( 1 )
                END
                END

Items        FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ITEM ), CREATE
AsEntered    KEY( ITEM:CustNo, ITEM:OrderNo, ITEM:LineNo ), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record        RECORD, PRE( )
CustNo        LONG
OrderNo       LONG
LineNo        SHORT
ProdCode     SHORT
Quantity     SHORT
                END
                END

```

```
CODE
!program code
Relate:Orders.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
    SELF.AddRelation( Relate:Items,0,0, ITEM:AsEntered )
    SELF.AddRelationLink( ORD:CustNo, ITEM:CustNo )
    SELF.AddRelationLink( ORD:OrderNo, ITEM:OrderNo )
    SELF.AddRelation( Relate:Customer )
```

See Also: AddRelation, Init

CancelAutoInc (undo autoincrement)**CancelAutoInc, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **CancelAutoInc** method restores the managed file to its pre-PrimeAutoInc state, typically when an insert operation is cancelled. CancelAutoInc returns a value indicating its success or failure. A return value of zero (0 or Level:Benign) indicates success; any other return value indicates a problem.

Implementation: The CancelAutoInc method calls the FileManager.CancelAutoInc method for its primary file, passing SELF as the *relation manager* parameter.

Return value EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC as follows:

```
! Severity of error
Level:Benign    EQUATE(0)
Level:User      EQUATE(1)
Level:Program   EQUATE(2)
Level:Fatal     EQUATE(3)
Level:Cancel    EQUATE(4)
Level:Notify    EQUATE(5)
```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCloseEvent PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF SELF.Response <> RequestCompleted
    !procedure code
    IF SELF.OriginalRequest=InsertRecord AND SELF.Response=RequestCancelled
      IF SELF.Primary.CancelAutoInc() !undo PrimeAutoInc - cascade
        SELECT(SELF.FirstField)
        RETURN Level:Notify
      END
    END
    !procedure code
  END
  RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: FileManager.CancelAutoInc, FileManager.PrimeAutoInc

Close (close a file and any related files)**Close**(*cascading*), VIRTUAL, PROC

Close	Closes this object's primary file (see <i>Me</i>) and any related files.
<i>cascading</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether this method was called by itself (recursive). A value of zero (0) indicates a non-recursive call; a value of one (1) indicates a recursive call. This allows the method to stop when it has processed all the related files in a circular relationship. If omitted, <i>cascading</i> defaults to zero (0). You should <i>always</i> omit this parameter when calling the Close method from your program.

The **Close** method closes this object's primary file (see *Me*) if no other procedure needs it, and any related files, and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: The Close method uses the FileManager.Close method to close each file. The Close method returns the FileManager.Close method's return value. See *File Manager Class* for more information.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

Relate:Customer.Open	!open Customer and related files
!program code	!process the files
Relate:Customer.Close	!close Customer and related files

See Also: FileManager.Close

Delete (delete record subject to referential constraints)**Delete([*confirm*]), VIRTUAL**

Delete	Deletes the record from the primary file subject to any specified referential integrity constraints.
<i>confirm</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to confirm the delete with the end user. A value of one (1 or True) deletes only on confirmation from the end user; a value of zero (0 or false) deletes without confirmation. If omitted, <i>confirm</i> defaults to one (1).

The **Delete** method deletes the current record from the primary file (see *Me*) applying any specified referential integrity constraints, then returns a value indicating its success or failure. The deletes are done within a transaction frame if the Init method's *use/logout* parameter is set to one (1).

Implementation: Delete constraints are specified by the AddRelation method. If the constraint is RI:Restrict, the method deletes the current record only if there are no related child records. If the constraint is RI:Cascade, the method also deletes any related child records. If the constraint is RI:None, the method unconditionally deletes only the primary file record. If the constraint is RI:Clear, the method unconditionally deletes the primary file record, and clears the linking field values in any related child records.

The Delete method calls the primary file FileManager.Throw method to confirm the delete with the end user.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

DeleteCustomer PROCEDURE

```

CODE
Relate:Customer.Open                !Open Customer & related files
IF NOT GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:ConfirmDelete) !have user confirm delete
LOOP                                !allow retry if delete fails
  IF Relate:Customer.Delete()        !delete subject to constraints
    IF NOT GlobalErrors.Throw(Msg:RetryDelete) !if del fails, offer to try again
      CYCLE                          !if user accepts, try again
    END                              ! otherwise, fall thru
  END                                !if del succeeds or user declines
UNTIL 1                             ! fall out of loop
END

```

See Also: AddRelation, Init

GetNbFiles(returns number of children)**GetNbFiles**(*relationmanager*)

GetNbFiles Returns the number of child files*relationmanager* The label of the related file's RelationManager object.

The **GetNbFiles** method returns the number of child files related to this objects primary file.

Return Data Type: LONG

GetNbRelations(returns number of relations)**GetNbRelations**

The **GetNbRelations** method returns the number of relations defined for this objects primary file.

Return Data Type: LONG

GetRelation(returns reference to relation manager)

```

GetRelation(|relationposition    |)
              |relatedfile      |

```

GetRelation Returns a reference to the objects relation manager.

relationposition An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expresssion that contains the relation number for the objects primary file.

relatedfile The label of the file to query relations.

The **GetRelation** method returns a reference to the objects relation manager based on the specified relation position or related file.

GetRelation(*relationposition*)
Returns the relation manager for the specified *relationposition* in the internal list of relations.

GetRelation(*relatedfile*)
Returns the relation manager for the specified file.

Return Data Type: *RelationManager

GetRelationType(returns relation type)

```

GetRelationType(whichrelation)

```

GetRelationType Returns the type of relation for the objects primary file.

whichrelation An integer constant, variable, EQUATE or expresssion that contains the relation number.

The **GetRelationType** method returns the type of the relation for the specified relation number.

Implementation: The GetRelationType method returns a -1 when *whichrelation* is not a valid relation number. It returns a one (1) if the relationship is determined to be a one-to-many relationship. It returns a zero (0) for all other relation types.

Return Data Type: LONG

Init (initialize the RelationManager object)

Init(*filemanager* [, *uselogout*])

Init	Initializes the RelationManager object.
<i>filemanager</i>	The label of the FileManager object for the RelationManager's primary file. By definition, the file referenced by this FileManager object is the RelationManager's primary file.
<i>uselogout</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines whether cascaded updates or deletes are done within a transaction frame (LOGOUT/COMMIT). A value of zero (0) indicates no transaction framing; a value of one (1) indicates transaction framing. If omitted, <i>logout</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **Init** method initializes the RelationManager object. To implement the RelationManager's transaction framing, all the files within a transaction must use the same file driver and that file driver must support LOGOUT.

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the Me and UseLogout properties. The ABC Templates set the *uselogout* parameter based on the **Enclose RI code in transaction frame** check box in the **Global Properties** dialog.

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('FILE.INC')                !declare RelationManager class
Access:Client  CLASS(FileManager)    !declare Access:Client class
Init          PROCEDURE
          END

Client        FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CLI),THREAD !declare Client file
IDKey         KEY(CLI:ID),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record        RECORD,PRE()
ID            LONG
Name          STRING(20)
StateCode     STRING(2)
          END
          END

CODE
Access:Client.Init                !initialize Access:Client obj
Relate:Client.Init(Access:Client,1) !init Relate:Client--use logout
Relate:Client.AddRelation( Relate:States )!relate Client to States file
!program code
Relate:Client.Kill                !shut down Relate:Client object
Access:Client.Kill                !shut down Access:Client object

```

See Also: Me

Kill (shut down the RelationManager object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'FILE.INC' )                                !declare RelationManager class

Access:Client  CLASS(FileManager)                      !declare Access:Client class
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Client  FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( CLI ), THREAD !declare Client file
IDKey   KEY( CLI: ID ), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record  RECORD, PRE( )
ID       LONG
Name     STRING( 20 )
StateCode STRING( 2 )
        END
        END

CODE
Access:Client.Init          !initialize Access:Client obj
Relate:Client.Init( Access:Client, 1 ) !init Relate:Client--use logout
Relate:Client.AddRelation( Relate:States ) !relate Client to States file
!program code
Relate:Client.Kill          !shut down Relate:Client object
Access:Client.Kill          !shut down Access:Client object

```

ListLinkingFields (map pairs of linked fields)

ListLinkingFields(*relationmanager*, *fieldpairs* [, *recursed*])

ListLinkingFields	Maps pairs of linking fields between the primary file and a related file.
<i>relationmanager</i>	The label of the related file's RelationManager object.
<i>fieldpairs</i>	The label of the FieldPairsClass object to receive the linking field references.
<i>recursed</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether this method was called by itself (recursive). A value of zero (0) indicates a non-recursive call; a value of one (1) indicates a recursive call. This allows the method to get the list of linking fields from the <i>relationmanager</i> if necessary--since only one side of the relationship maintains the list of linking fields. If omitted, <i>recursed</i> defaults to zero (0). You should <i>always</i> omit this parameter when calling the ListLinkingFields method from your program.

The **ListLinkingFields** method maps pairs of linking fields between the primary file and a related file.

Implementation: The RelationManager object does not use the resulting mapped fields, but provides this mapping service for the ViewManager class, etc.

Example:

```
ViewManager.AddRange PROCEDURE(*? Field,RelationManager MyFile,RelationManager HisFile)
CODE                                     !add range limit to view
SELF.Order.LimitType = Limit:File      !set limit type: relationship
MyFile.ListLinkingFields(HisFile,SELF.Order.RangeList)!get linking fields
ASSERT(RECORDS(SELF.Order.RangeList.List)) !confirm Range limits exist
SELF.SetFreeElement                     !set free key element
```

Open (open a file and any related files)**Open(*cascading*), VIRTUAL, PROC**

Open	Opens this object's primary file (see <i>Me</i>) and any related files.
<i>cascading</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether this method was called by itself (recursive). A value of zero (0) indicates a non-recursive call; value of one (1) indicates a recursive call. This allows the method to stop when it has processed all the related files in a circular relationship. If omitted, <i>cascading</i> defaults to zero (0). You should <i>always</i> omit this parameter when calling the Open method from your program.

The **Open** method Opens this object's primary file (see *Me*) and any related files, and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: The Open method uses the FileManager.Open method to Open each file. The Open method returns the FileManager.Open method's return value. See *File Manager Class* for more information.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

Relate:Customer.Open      !open Customer and related files
!program code             !process the files
Relate:Customer.Close     !Close Customer and related files

```

See Also: FileManager.Open

Save (copy the current record and any related records)**Save, VIRTUAL**

The **Save** method copies the current record in the primary file and any related files. The copies may be used to detect subsequent changes to the current record or restore the current record to its previous state.

Implementation: The Save method uses the BufferedPairsClass.AssignLeftToBuffer method to Save each record. See Field Pairs Classes for more information.

SetAlias (set a file alias)**SetAlias**(*relationmanager*)**SetAlias** Identifies an alias of this object's primary file.*relationmanager* The label of the alias file's RelationManager object.

The **SetAlias** method identifies an alias of this RelationManager object's primary file so that, when appropriate, the RelationManager only processes the file one time. For example, if both the primary file and its alias are part of a framed transaction (LOGOUT/COMMIT), the RelationManager recognizes the alias and appropriately applies the LOGOUT only to the primary file.

Example:

```

Customer FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(CLI), NAME('Customer') !declare Customer file
IDKey    KEY(CLI:ID), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record   RECORD, PRE()
ID       LONG
Name     STRING(20)
        END
        END

Client FILE, DRIVER('TOPSPEED'), PRE(CUS), NAME('Customer') !declare Client 'alias'
IDKey    KEY(CUS:ID), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
Record   RECORD, PRE()
ID       LONG
Name     STRING(20)
        END
        END

Relate:Customer.SetAlias( Relate:Client ) !Client = alias of Customer

```

SetQuickScan (enable QuickScan on a file and any related files)

SetQuickScan(*on* [,*propagate*]), VIRTUAL

SetQuickScan	Enables or disables quick scanning on this object's primary file and on the <i>propagated</i> related files.
<i>on</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that enables or disables quick scanning. A value of zero (0) disables quick scanning; a value of one (1) enables quick scanning.
<i>propagate</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates which related files to include. Valid propagation options are none, one:many, many:one, and all. If omitted, <i>propagate</i> defaults to none.

The **SetQuickScan** method enables or disables quick scanning on this object's primary file and on the *propagated* related files.

Implementation: The SetQuickScan method SENDs the QUICKSCAN driver string to the file driver for each specified file. The QUICKSCAN driver string is supported by the ASCII, BASIC, and DOS drivers. See *Database Drivers* for more information.

Corresponding EQUATEs for the valid propagate options are declared in FILE.INC as follows:

```

ITEMIZE(0),PRE(Propagate)
None      EQUATE      !do primary file only, no related files
OneMany   EQUATE      !do 1-Many relations only
ManyOne   EQUATE      !do Many-1 relations only
All       EQUATE      !do all related files
END

```

Example:

```

Relate:Customer.SetQuickScan(1,Propagate:OneMany) !enable quickscan for 1:Many
Relate:Orders.SetQuickScan(1)                    !enable quickscan for primary
Relate:Orders.SetQuickScan(0)                     !disable quickscan for primary

```

Update (update record subject to referential constraints)**Update(*fromform*), VIRTUAL**

Update	Updates this object's primary file (see <i>Me</i>) subject to the specified referential integrity constraints.
<i>fromform</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether this method was called from a (form) procedure with field history (restore) capability. A value of zero (0) indicates no restore capability; a value of one (1) indicates restore capability. This allows the method to issue an appropriate message when the update fails.

The **Update** method updates the current record in the primary file (see *Me*) applying any specified referential integrity constraints, then returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: Update constraints are specified by the AddRelation method and they apply to the values in the linking fields. If the constraint is RI:Restrict, the method does not update the current record if the change would result in orphaned child records. If the constraint is RI:Cascade, the method updates the primary file record as well as the linking field values in any related child records. If the constraint is RI:None, the method unconditionally updates only the primary file record. If the constraint is RI:Clear, the method unconditionally updates the primary file record, and clears the linking field values in any related child records.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

ChangeOrder ROUTINE

```

IF Relate:Orders.Update(0)           !update subject to constraints
  MESSAGE('Update Failed')           ! if fails, acknowledge
ELSE                                  ! otherwise
  POST(Event:CloseWindow)            ! shut down
END

```

See Also: **AddRelation**

ReportManager Class

ReportManager Overview

The ReportManager is a WindowManager that uses a ProcessClass object to process report records in the background, and optionally uses a PrintPreviewClass object to provide a full-featured print preview facility.

ReportManager Concepts

The ReportManager supports a batch report procedure, complete with progress window, print preview, DETAIL specific record filtering, and optimized sharing of machine resources.

ReportManager Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ReportManager is derived from the WindowManager because it supports a progress window to provide appropriate visual feedback to the end user (see *WindowManager* for more information).

The ReportManager uses the ProcessClass to manage the batch processing of the REPORT's underlying VIEW. The ReportManager optionally uses the PrintPreviewClass to provide a full-featured print preview for the report.

If your program instantiates the ReportManager, it should also instantiate the ProcessClass and may need the PrintPreviewClass as well. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the ReportManager header (ABREPORT.INC) in your program's data section. See the Conceptual Example.

ReportManager ABC Template Implementation

The Report Procedure template and the Report Wizard Utility template automatically generate all the code and include all the classes necessary to support your application's template generated reports.

These Report templates generate code to instantiate a ReportManager object called ThisWindow for each report procedure. The Report templates also instantiate a ProcessClass object and optionally a PrintPreviewClass object for the ThisWindow object to use.

The ThisWindow object supports all the functionality specified in the Report template's **Report Properties** dialog. See *Procedure Templates--Report* for more information.

ReportManager Source Files

The ReportManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The ReportManager source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABREPORT.INC	ReportManager declarations
ABREPORT.CLW	ReportManager method definitions

ReportManager Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use and terminate a ReportManager and related objects.

This example uses the ReportManager object to preview a very simple report before printing it. The program specifies a maximized print preview window.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABREPORT.INC')          !declare ReportManager &
                                   ! and PrintPreviewClass

MAP
END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD

Customer FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUS),THREAD
BYNUMBER KEY(CUS:CUSTNO),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record RECORD,PRE()
CUSTNO LONG
Name STRING(30)
State STRING(2)
      END
      END

Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)      !declare Access:Customer object
Init PROCEDURE
      END
Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)   !declare Relate:Customer object
Init PROCEDURE
      END
CusView VIEW(Customer)                  !declare CusView VIEW
      END
PctDone BYTE                            !track progress variable

report REPORT,AT(1000,1542,6000,7458),PRE(RPT),FONT('Arial',10,,),THOUS
  HEADER,AT(1000,1000,6000,542),FONT(,,FONT:bold)
  STRING('Customers'),AT(2000,20),FONT(,14,,)
  STRING('Id'),AT(52,313),TRN
  STRING('Name'),AT(2052,313),TRN
  STRING('State'),AT(4052,313),TRN
  END
detail DETAIL,AT(,,6000,281),USE(?detail)
  STRING(@n-14),AT(52,52),USE(CUS:CUSTNO)
  STRING(@s30),AT(2052,52),USE(CUS:NAME)

```

```

        STRING(@s2),AT(4052,52),USE(CUS:State)
    END
    FOOTER,AT(1000,9000,6000,219)
        STRING(@pPage <<<#p),AT(5250,31),PAGE NO,USE(?PageCount)
    END
END

ProgressWindow WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(, ,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
    PROGRESS,USE(PctDone),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
    STRING(' '),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?UserString),CENTER
    STRING(' '),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?TxtDone),CENTER
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42),USE(?Cancel)
END

ThisProcedure CLASS(ReportManager)          !declare ThisProcedure object
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
END

CusReport     CLASS(ProcessClass)            !declare CusReport object
TakeRecord    PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
END

Previewer     PrintPreviewClass              !declare Previewer object
                                                    ! for use with ThisProcedure

CODE
    ThisProcedure.Run()                        !run the report procedure

ThisProcedure.Init PROCEDURE()                !initialize ThisProcedure
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    GlobalErrors.Init
    Relate:Customer.Init
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
    SELF.FirstField = ?PctDone
    SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
    SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors                !set error handler for ThisProcedure
    Relate:Customer.Open                      !open Customer & related files
    OPEN(ProgressWindow)
    SELF.Opened=True
    !do report specific initialization
    CusReport.Init(CusView,Relate:Customer,?TxtDone,PctDone,RECORDS(Customer))
    CusReport.AddSortOrder(CUS:BYNUMBER)      !set report sort order
    SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled)    !set action on cancel
    SELF.Init(CusReport,report,Previewer)     !register Previewer & CusReport with
                                                    !ThisProcedure

    SELF.Zoom = PageWidth
    Previewer.AllowUserZoom=True              !allow custom zoom factors

```

```
Previewer.Maximize=True           !initially maximize preview window
SELF.SetAlerts()                  !alert keys for ThisProcedure
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisProcedure.Kill PROCEDURE()     !shut down ThisProcedure
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()       !call base class shut down
  Relate:Customer.Close            !close Customer & related files
  Relate:Customer.Kill             !shut down Relate:Customer object
  GlobalErrors.Kill               !shut down GlobalErrors object
  RETURN ReturnValue

CusReport.TakeRecord PROCEDURE()   !do any per record process
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
SkipDetails BYTE
CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeRecord() !standard process for each record
  PRINT(RPT:detail)                !print detail for each record
  RETURN ReturnValue

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
  SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
  SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
  SELF.Create = 0
  SELF.LazyOpen = False
  SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER,'CUS:BYNUMBER',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  Access:Customer.Init
  PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)
```

ReportManager Properties

The ReportManager inherits all the properties of the WindowManager class from which it is derived. See *WindowManager Properties* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the ReportManager contains the following properties:

Attribute (ReportAttributeManager object)

Attribute **&ReportAttributeManager, PROTECTED**

The **Attribute** property is a reference to the ReportAttributeManager object that the ReportManager uses to manage the attribute processing of the target report's controls. The Attribute property applies any information set by the report control's EXTEND parameter.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Attribute property.

See Also: Init

BreakMan (BreakManagerClass object)

BreakMan **&BreakManagerClass, PROTECTED**

The **BreakMan** property is a reference to the BreakManagerClass object that the ReportManager uses to manage the customized break processing of the target report. The BreakMan property applies any break information set by the report.

Implementation: The AddItem method sets the BreakMan property.

See Also: AddItem

DeferOpenReport (defer open)**DeferOpenReport BYTE, PROTECTED**

The **DeferOpenReport** property controls whether the ReportManager opens the report with the Open method or delays opening the report until the first timer cycle. A value of one (1 or True) delays the open until the first timer cycle; a value of zero (0 or False) opens the report immediately.

The DeferOpenReport property gives you an opportunity to query the end user about items such as filters and sort orders before the report starts printing.

Implementation: The Open and TakeWindowEvent methods implement the behavior specified by the DeferOpenReport property.

See Also: Open, TakeWindowEvent

DeferWindow (defer progress window)**DeferWindow USHORT, PROTECTED**

The **DeferWindow** property controls whether the ReportManager opens the progress window with the Open method or delays opening the progress window until the first timer cycle. A value of one (1 or True) delays the open until the first timer cycle; a value of zero (0 or False) opens the window immediately.

The DeferWindow property gives you an opportunity to leave the progress window closed until there are actual records to process.

Implementation: The TakeWindowEvent method implements the behavior specified by the DeferWindow property.

See Also: TakeWindowEvent

KeepVisible (keep progress window visible)

KeepVisible BYTE, PROTECTED

The **KeepVisible** property controls whether the ReportManager closes the progress window before or after the Print Preview window is displayed. A value of one (1 or True) delays the close until after the Print Preview window is closed; a value of zero (0 or False) closes the window prior to the Print Preview window open.

The KeepVisible property gives you an opportunity to leave the progress window open and viewable with the Print Preview. Useful if you have results that you would like to display on the progress window.

Implementation: The TakeCloseEvent method implements the behavior specified by the KeepVisible property.

See Also: TakeCloseEvent

OutputFileQueue (advanced report generation filenames)

OutputFileQueue &OutputFileQueue, PROTECTED

The **OutputFileQueue** property is a reference to a structure containing the full pathnames of the report's file advanced generation output for each report page. The ReportManager object uses this property to provide to output the report after previewing.

Implementation: The ReportManager only uses the OutputFileQueue property if the ReportTarget property is active.

The OutputFileQueue structure is actually an EQUATE to the PrintPreviewFileQueue, and declared in EQUATES.CLW as follows:

```
PrintPreviewFileQueue  QUEUE, TYPE
Filename               STRING(FILE:MaxFileName)
PrintPreviewImage      STRING(FILE:MaxFileName), OVER(Filename)
END
```


Preview (PrintPreviewClass object)

Preview &PrintPreviewClass, PROTECTED

The **Preview** property is a reference to the PrintPreviewClass object the ReportManager uses to provide an online preview of the report.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Preview property.

See Also: Init

PreviewQueue (report metafile pathnames)

PreviewQueue &PreviewQueue, PROTECTED

The **PreviewQueue** property is a reference to a structure containing the full pathnames of the report's Windows metafiles (*.WMF)--one metafile for each report page. The ReportManager object uses this property to provide an online preview of the report, and to print the report after previewing. See *PREVIEW* in the *Language Reference* for more information on report metafiles.

Implementation: The ReportManager only uses the PreviewQueue property if the Preview property is set.

 The PreviewQueue structure is declared in ABREPORT.INC as follows:

```
PreviewQueue  QUEUE,TYPE
Filename      STRING(128)
              END
```

See Also: Preview

Process (ProcessClass object)

Process

&ProcessClass, PROTECTED

The **Process** property is a reference to the ProcessClass object the ReportManager uses to manage the "batch" processing of the report's data. The Process property applies sort orders, range limits, and filters as needed, and supplies appropriate visual feedback to the end user on the progress of the batch process.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Process property.

See Also: Init

QueryControl (query button)

QueryControl SIGNED

The **QueryControl** property contains the number of the reports query control. This is typically the value of the Query BUTTON's field equate. The ReportManager methods use this value to process the report based on a user defined query.

Implementation: The Init method does not initialize the QueryControl property. You should initialize the QueryControl property after the Init method is called. See the *Conceptual Example*. On EVENT:Accepted for the QueryControl, the TakeEvent method calls the TakeLocate method to collect (from the end user) and apply the ad hoc query.

The ABC ProcessReportQBEBUTTON template generates code to declare and support a QBE button.

Report (the managed REPORT)

Report &WINDOW

The **Report** property is a reference to the managed REPORT structure. The ReportManager uses this property to open, print, and close the REPORT.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Report property.

See Also: Init

ReportTarget (IReportGenerator interface)

ReportTarget &IReportGenerator, PROTECTED

The **ReportTarget** property is a reference to the IReportGenerator interface that the ReportManager uses to manage the type of advanced report generation output (Text, PDF, HTML or XML). The ReportTarget property is set by the active TargetSelector property, which is a reference to the ReportTargetSelector Class.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method of the PrintPreview Class and the SetReportTarget method of the ReportManager sets the ReportTarget property.

See Also: SetReportTarget

SkipPreview (print rather than preview)

SkipPreview BYTE

The **SkipPreview** property controls whether the ReportManager provides an on-line preview when requested, or prints the report instead. A value of one (1 or True) prints rather than previews the report; a value of zero (0 or False) previews the report. The SkipPreview property is only effective if the Preview property is set.

The SkipPreview property lets you suppress the on-line print preview anytime before the AskPreview method executes.

Implementation: The AskPreview method implements the behavior specified by the SkipPreview property.

See Also: AskPreview, Preview

TargetSelector (ReportTargetSelectorClass object)**TargetSelector &ReportTargetSelectorClass, PROTECTED**

The **TargetSelector** property is a reference to the ReportTargetSelectorClass object that the ReportManager uses to determine whether to process the report as a standard printed report, or redirect the report output to another output type (Text, PDF, HTML or XML).

Implementation: The Init method of the PrintPreview Class sets the TargetSelector property.

See Also: PrintPreviewClass.Init , Init

TargetSelectorCreated (report target active)**TargetSelectorCreated BYTE, PROTECTED**

The **TargetSelectorCreated** property is used to signal the ReportManager that a report redirection to an alternative output (Text, PDF, HTML or XML) is active.

Implementation: The Init method of the ReportManager sets the TargetSelectorCreated property.

See Also: Init

TimeSlice (report resource usage)

TimeSlice **USHORT**

The **TimeSlice** property contains the amount of time in hundredths of a second the ReportManager tries to "fill up" for each processing "cycle." A cycle begins with an EVENT:Timer (see *TIMER* in the *Language Reference*), and ends about TimeSlice later. For example, for a TimeSlice of 100, the ReportManager processes as many records as it can within about 100/100 (one) second before yielding control back to the operating system. To provide efficient sharing of machine resources, we recommend setting the TIMER to something less than or equal to TimeSlice.

Implementation: The Init method sets TimeSlice to one (100). The TakeWindowEvent method continuously adjusts the number of records processed per cycle to fill the specified TimeSlice--that is, to process as many records as possible within the TimeSlice. This provides both efficient report processing and reasonable sharing of machine resources, provided the TIMER value is less than or equal to the TimeSlice value. This leaves the user in control in a multi-tasking environment, especially when processing a large data set.

See Also: Init, TakeWindowEvent

WaitCursor (activate Wait cursor during report processing)

WaitCursor **BYTE, PROTECTED**

The **WaitCursor** property is used to signal the ReportManager that a wait cursor will be active as the report is generating. A value of one (1 or True) activates the wait cursor; a value of zero (0 or False) uses the default.

Implementation: The Ask method of the ReportManager implements the WaitCursor property.

See Also: Ask

WMFParser (WMFDocumentParser object)

WMFParser **&WMFDocumentParser, PROTECTED**

The **WMFParser** property is a reference to the WMFDocumentparser object that the ReportManager uses to process embedded attributes and data from the generated Windows metafiles (*.WMF).

Implementation: The Init method of the Reportmanger sets the WMFparser property.

See Also: Init

Zoom (initial report preview magnification)

Zoom SHORT

The **Zoom** property controls the initial zoom or magnification factor for the on-line report preview. A value of zero (0) uses the PrintPreviewClass object's default zoom setting. Any other value specifies the initial preview zoom factor.

The Zoom property lets you override the PrintPreviewClass object's default zoom setting. The PrintPreviewClass object determines the actual zoom factor applied.

The Zoom property is only effective if the Preview property is set.

Implementation: The AskPreview method implements the behavior specified by the Zoom property by passing the Zoom value to the PrintPreviewClass.Display method.

If the PrintPreviewClass object allows custom zoom factors, then the initial magnification equals the Zoom value (81 gives 81%, 104 gives 104%, etc.). If the PrintPreviewClass object only supports a limited set of discrete magnifications, the initial magnification is the one closest to the Zoom value (81 gives 75%, 104 gives 100%, etc.).

See Also: AskPreview, Preview, PrintPreviewClass.ZoomIndex

ReportManager Methods

The ReportManager inherits all the methods of the WindowManager class from which it is derived. See *WindowManager Methods* for more information.

ReportManager Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ReportManager, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ReportManager methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ReportManager object
Askv	display window and process its events
Killv	shut down the ReportManager object

v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Ask	display window and process its events
AskPreview	preview or print the report
CancelPrintReport	cancel printing of report
EndReport	close the report
Kill	shut down the ReportManager object
Next	get next report record
Open	prepare progress window
OpenReport	prepare report for execution
PrintReport	prints the report
ProcessResultFiles	process redirected output
SetDynamicControlsAttributes	set control attributes prior to band printing
SetStaticControlsAttributes	set control attributes after report is opened
TakeNoRecords	handle empty report
TakeCloseEvent	process EVENT:CloseWindow events
TakeWindowEvent	process non-field events

AddItem (program the ReportManager object)**AddItem**(*RecordProcessor*)**AddItem** Adds specific functionality to the ReportManager.*RecordProcessor* The label of a RecordProcessor interface.

The AddItem method registers an ABC Library interface with the ReportManager object and adds the interface's specific functionality to the ReportManager.

Ask (display window and process its events:ReportManager)**Ask, VIRTUAL**

The **Ask** method initiates the event processing (ACCEPT loop) for the report procedure. This virtual method handles any special processing immediately before or after the report procedure's event processing.

Implementation: The Run method calls the Ask method. The Ask method calls the PARENT.Ask method to manage the ACCEPT loop for the report procedure.

Example:

MyReporter.Ask PROCEDURE

CODE

```
SETCURSOR(CURSOR:Wait)      !special pre event handling code
PARENT.Ask                  !process events (ACCEPT)
SETCURSOR( )                !special post event handling code
```

See Also: WindowManager.Ask, WindowManager.Run

AskPreview (preview or print the report)

AskPreview, VIRTUAL

The **AskPreview** method previews or prints the report, only if the Preview property references an operative PrintPreviewClass object.

If the SkipPreview property is true, AskPreview does not preview the report, but prints it instead.

Implementation: The TakeCloseEvent method calls the AskPreview method to print or preview the report. The AskPreview method calls the PrintPreviewClass.Display method to preview the report.

Typically, the Init method sets the Preview reference.

Example:

```
MyReporter.TakeCloseEvent PROCEDURE
CODE
IF EVENT() = EVENT:CloseWindow
  SELF.AskPreview()
  IF ~SELF.Report&=NULL
    CLOSE(SELF.Report)
  END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: Ask, PrintPreviewClass.Display, Init, Preview, SkipPreview

CancelPrintReport (cancel report printing)**CancelPrintReport, VIRTUAL**

The **CancelPrintReport** method is a virtual method that allows you to write any clean up code to execute when canceling in a Print Preview window.

Implementation: The AskPreview method CancelPrintReport method. The method is empty, but generates an embed point to allow custom code to be implemented.

Example:

ReportManager.AskPreview PROCEDURE

```

CODE
IF NOT SELF.Report &= NULL AND SELF.Response = RequestCompleted
  IF SELF.EndReport()=Level:Benign
    IF NOT SELF.Preview &= NULL
      IF CHOOSE (NOT SELF.SkipPreview, SELF.Preview.Display(SELF.Zoom), TRUE)
        SELF.PrintReport()
      ELSE
        SELF.CancelPrintReport()
      END
      FREE(SELF.Preview.ImageQueue)
    ELSE
      SELF.PrintReport()
      FREE(SELF.PreviewQueue)
    END
  ELSIF NOT SELF.Preview &= NULL
    FREE(SELF.Preview.ImageQueue)
  ELSE
    FREE(SELF.PreviewQueue)
  END
END
END

```

EndReport (close the report)**EndReport, VIRTUAL**

The **EndReport** method prepares the report to close and returns a value indicating success or failure. This is a good place to add a final print summary or last page. Valid return value is

Level:Benign report closed successfully

Implementation: The EndReport method is called by the ReportManager's AskPreview method.

It checks to see if any final break logic needs to be processed by the BreakManager, then issues an ENDPAGE statement. You can use the method's embed point to perform any post processing needed prior to closing the report and accessing the Preview window.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

ReportManager.AskPreview PROCEDURE

```
CODE
IF NOT SELF.Report &= NULL AND SELF.Response = RequestCompleted
  IF SELF.EndReport()= Level:Benign
    IF NOT SELF.Preview &= NULL
      IF CHOOSE (NOT SELF.SkipPreview, SELF.Preview.Display(SELF.Zoom), TRUE)
        SELF.PrintReport()
      ELSE
        SELF.CancelPrintReport()
      END
      FREE(SELF.Preview.ImageQueue)
    ELSE
      SELF.PrintReport()
      FREE(SELF.PreviewQueue)
    END
  ELSIF NOT SELF.Preview &= NULL
    FREE(SELF.Preview.ImageQueue)
  ELSE
    FREE(SELF.PreviewQueue)
  END
END
```

Init (initialize the ReportManager object)

Init(*process object* [, *report*] [, *preview object*])

Init	Initializes the ReportManager object.
<i>process object</i>	The label of the ProcessClass object the ReportManager uses to batch process the <i>report</i> VIEW and provide appropriate visual feedback to the end user on the progress of the <i>report</i> .
<i>report</i>	The label of the managed REPORT structure. If omitted, the ReportManager becomes a batch VIEW processor with automatic resource management.
<i>preview object</i>	The label of the PrintPreviewClass object the ReportManager uses to preview or print the <i>report</i> . If omitted, the ReportManager prints the report without generating preview image files.

The **Init** method does the report-specific initialization of the ReportManager object. This Init method is in addition to the Init method inherited from the WindowManager class which does general window procedure initialization.

Implementation: Typically, the Init method calls the Init(*process*, *report*, *preview*) method to do report-specific initialization. The Init method sets the Preview, Process, Report, and TimeSlice properties.

Example:

```
PrintPhones    PROCEDURE
report REPORT,AT(1000,1540,6000,7460),PRE(RPT)
detail  DETAIL,AT(,,6000,280)
        STRING(@s20),AT(50,50,5900,170),USE(PHO:Number)
        END
    END
Previewer PrintPreviewClass      !declare Previewer object
Process   ProcessClass           !declare Process object
ThisWindow CLASS(ReportManager)  !declare derived ThisWindow object
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
        END
!procedure data
CODE
    ThisWindow.Run                !run the procedure (init,ask,kill)
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
CODE
!procedure code
    ThisWindow.Init(Process,report,Previewer)    !call the report-specific Init
!procedure code
```

See Also: WindowManager.Init

Kill (shut down the ReportManager object)**Kill, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. Kill returns a value to indicate the status of the shut down. Valid return values are:

Level:Benign	normal shut down
Level:Notify	no action taken

Implementation: The Run method calls the Kill method. If the Dead property is True, Kill returns Level:Notify and takes no other action. Otherwise, the Kill method, among other things, calls the WindowManager.Kill method.

Return value EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()  
CODE  
IF PARENT.Kill() THEN RETURN Level:Notify.  
IF FilesOpened  
    Relate:Defaults.Close  
END  
IF SELF.Opened  
    INIMgr.Update('Main',AppFrame)  
END  
GlobalResponse = CHOOSE(LocalResponse=0,RequestCancelled,LocalResponse)
```

See Also: WindowManager.Dead, WindowManager.Run

Next (get next report record)**Next, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Next** method gets the next report record and returns a value indicating whether the report is completed, cancelled, or in progress. Valid return values are:

Level:Benign	proceeding normally
Level:Notify	completed normally
Level:Fatal	cancelled or ended abnormally

Implementation: The Next method calls the ProcessClass.Next method to get the next report record. When the report is completed or canceled, the Next method sets the Response property and POSTs an EVENT:CloseWindow to end the progress window procedure.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ReportManager.Open PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Open
SELF.Process.Reset
IF ~SELF.Next()
IF ~SELF.Report&=NULL
OPEN(SELF.Report)
IF ~SELF.Preview &= NULL
SELF.Report{PROP:Preview} = SELF.PreviewQueue.Filename
END
END
END
```

See Also: ProcessClass.Next, WindowManager.Response

Open (a virtual to execute on EVENT:OpenWindow--ReportManager)**Open, VIRTUAL**

The **Open** method prepares the progress window for display. It is designed to execute on window opening events such as EVENT:OpenWindow.

Implementation: The TakeWindowEvent method calls the Open method. The Open method calls the WindowManager.Open method, then conditionally (based on the DeferOpenReport property) calls the OpenReport method to reset the ProcessClass object and get the first report record.

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
CODE
CASE EVENT()
  OF EVENT:OpenWindow
    IF ~BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
      SELF.Open                !handle EVENT:OpenWindow
    END
    IF SELF.FirstField
      SELECT(SELF.FirstField)
    END
  OF EVENT:LoseFocus
    IF SELF.ResetOnGainFocus
      SELF.ForcedReset = 1
    END
  OF EVENT:GainFocus
    IF BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
      SELF.Reset
    ELSE
      SELF.Open                !handle EVENT:GainFocus
    END
  OF EVENT:Completed
    RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
  OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: DeferOpenReport, OpenReport, WindowManager.Open, WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent

OpenReport (prepare report for execution)**OpenReport, PROC, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL**

The **OpenReport** method prepares the report to execute and returns a value indicating success or failure. This is a good place to add any filters or keys specified at runtime. Valid return values are:

Level:Benign	report opened successfully
Level:Notify	no records found
Level:Fatal	failed, cause unknown

Implementation: The TakeWindowEvent method or the Open method calls the OpenReport method depending on the value of the DeferOpenReport property. The OpenReport method calls the Process.Reset method to reset the ProcessClass object, calls the Next method to get the first report record, then opens the REPORT structure.

The OpenReport method resets the DeferOpenReport property to zero so that if deferred, the OpenReport only happens with the first timer event.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ReportManager.Open PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Open
IF ~SELF.DeferOpenReport
    SELF.OpenReport      !call OpenReport if not deferred
END

MyReportManager.TakeWindowEvent PROCEDURE
!procedure data
CODE
IF EVENT() = EVENT:Timer
    IF SELF.DeferOpenReport
        SELF.OpenReport      !if deferred, call OpenReport on timer
    ELSE
!procedure code
```



```

MyReportManager.OpenReport  PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.Process.SetFilter(UserFilter)  !set dynamic filter
SELF.DeferOpenReport = 0
SELF.Process.Reset
IF ~SELF.Next()
    IF ~SELF.Report&=NULL
        OPEN(SELF.Report)
        IF ~SELF.Preview &= NULL
            SELF.Report{PROP:Preview} = SELF.PreviewQueue.Filename
        END
    END
END
END

```

See Also: DeferOpenReport, Next, Open, TakeWindowEvent, Process.Reset

PrintReport (print the report)

PrintReport, VIRTUAL

The **PrintReport** method is used to determine where a report output will be redirected. Based on the ReportTarget value, the report will be processed via the WMFparser, or as a standard report is handled by the ProcessResultFiles method.

Implementation: The PrintReport method is called by the ReportManager's AskPreview method.

Example:

```

ReportManager.AskPreview  PROCEDURE
CODE
IF NOT SELF.Report &= NULL AND SELF.Response = RequestCompleted
    IF SELF.EndReport()=Level:Benign
        IF NOT SELF.Preview &= NULL
            IF CHOOSE (NOT SELF.SkipPreview, SELF.Preview.Display(SELF.Zoom), TRUE)
                SELF.PrintReport() !Print after previewing
            ELSE
                SELF.CancelPrintReport()
            END
            FREE(SELF.Preview.ImageQueue)
        ELSE
            SELF.PrintReport() !Print without previewing
            FREE(SELF.PreviewQueue)
        END
    ELSIF NOT SELF.Preview &= NULL
        FREE(SELF.Preview.ImageQueue)
    ELSE
        FREE(SELF.PreviewQueue)
    END
END
END

```

ProcessResultFiles (process generated output files)**ProcessResultFiles (OutputFileQueue), VIRTUAL**

The **ProcessResultFiles** virtual method is provided as an entry point to process the contents of the *OutputFileQueue* before the queue is freed and the report is either saved to disk in one of several formats, or sent to the printer.

Implementation: The ProcessResultFiles method is called by the ReportManager's PrintReport method. By default, the method returns Level:Benign. If any other value is returned, the report's printing will be aborted.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ReportManager.PrintReport      PROCEDURE( )
Rt      BYTE
lIndex  SHORT
CODE
! Used select the target at the beginning if this is not a standard report
IF NOT SELF.ReportTarget &= NULL THEN
  IF RECORDS(SELF.PreviewQueue) THEN
    IF SELF.ReportTarget.SupportResultQueue()=True THEN
      SELF.ReportTarget.SetResultQueue(SELF.OutputFileQueue)
    END
    IF SELF.ReportTarget.AskProperties(False)=Level:Benign THEN
      SELF.WMFParser.Init(SELF.PreviewQueue, SELF.ReportTarget, SELF.Errors)
      IF SELF.WMFParser.GenerateReport()=Level:Benign THEN
        IF SELF.ReportTarget.SupportResultQueue()=True THEN
          Rt = SELF.ProcessResultFiles(SELF.OutputFileQueue) !after generating
        END
      END
    END
  END
ELSE
  FREE(SELF.OutputFileQueue)
  LOOP lIndex=1 TO RECORDS(SELF.PreviewQueue)
    GET(SELF.PreviewQueue,lIndex)
    IF NOT ERRORCODE() THEN
      SELF.OutputFileQueue.FileName = SELF.PreviewQueue.FileName
      ADD(SELF.OutputFileQueue)
    END
  END
  !prior to flushing to printer
  IF SELF.ProcessResultFiles(SELF.OutputFileQueue)=Level:Benign THEN
    SELF.Report{PROP:FlushPreview} = True
  ELSE
    SELF.Report{PROP:FlushPreview} = FALSE
  END
END
```

SetReportTarget (set ReportGenerator target)

SetReportTarget (*IReportGenerator pReportTarget*)

The SetReportTarget method sets the report's target output as passed by the IReportGenerator interface. This target can be text, HTML, PDF or XML formats.

SetStaticControlsAttributes (set report's static controls)

SetStaticControlsAttributes, VIRTUAL

The **SetStaticControlsAttributes** method is a virtual method used to set any static attribute property on a report's controls prior to opening the report. The control must have the EXTEND attribute applied. This method is used to set attributes that will be recognized by the WMFParser to generate a particular output format.

Implementation: The **SetStaticControlsAttributes** method is a virtual method called by the ReportManager's Open method.

Example:

```
ReportManager.Open  PROCEDURE
CODE
  PARENT.Open
  IF ~SELF.DeferOpenReport
    SELF.OpenReport
    IF NOT SELF.OpenFailed THEN
      IF SELF.Report{PROPPRINT:Extend}=1 THEN
        SELF.SetStaticControlsAttributes()
      END
    END
  END
END
```

SetDynamicControlsAttributes (set report's static controls)

SetDynamicControlsAttributes, VIRTUAL

The **SetDynamicControlsAttributes** method is a virtual method used to set any dynamic attribute property on a report's controls as each record is processed. The control must have the EXTEND attribute applied. This method is used to set attributes that will be recognized by the WMFParser to generate a particular output format.

Implementation: The **SetDynamicControlsAttributes** method is a virtual method called by the ReportManager's TakeRecord method.

Example:

```
ReportManager.TakeRecord PROCEDURE
I          LONG,AUTO
RVal       BYTE(Level:Benign)
CODE
  IF ~SELF.BreakMan &= NULL THEN
    SELF.BreakMan.AskBreak()
  END
  IF SELF.Report{PROPPRINT:Extend}=1 THEN
    SELF.SetDynamicControlsAttributes()
  END
  RVal = SELF.Process.TakeRecord()
  DO CheckState
  LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Processors)
    GET(SELF.Processors,I)
    RVal = SELF.Processors.P.TakeRecord()
    DO CheckState
  END
  IF SELF.Next() THEN
    TARGET{PROP:Timer} = 0
    RETURN Level:Notify
  END
RETURN RVal
```

TakeAccepted (process Accepted event)

TakeAccepted, PROC, PROTECTED, DERIVED

The **TakeAccepted** method processes the accepted event for the ReportManager. This occurs after each record is read. This method processes the record according to the end user query (filter) set by the ProcessReportQBEBUTTON.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: ProcessClass.TakeLocate

TakeCloseEvent (a virtual to process EVENT:CloseWindow)**TakeCloseEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeCloseEvent** method handles EVENT:CloseWindow for the ReportManager and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop.

TakeCloseEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the TakeCloseEvent method. The TakeCloseEvent method calls the AskPreview method to preview or print the report, then closes the report.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: AskPreview, WindowManager.TakeEvent

TakeNoRecords (process empty report)

TakeNoRecords, VIRTUAL

The **TakeNoRecords** method implements any special processing required for a report with no records.

Implementation: The OpenReport method calls the TakeNoRecords method. The TakeNoRecords method issues a message indicating there are no records, and therefore no report.

You can use the TakeNoRecords method to print a page indicating an empty report. The default action is to issue the message and print nothing.

Example:

```
MyReporttr.TakeNoRecords PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.TakeNoRecords
CLI:CustomerName = 'No Customers'
PRINT(CustomerDetail)
```

See Also: OpenReport

TakeRecord(process each record)

TakeRecord, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeRecord** method processes each item in the result set. It returns a value indicating whether processing should continue or should stop. TakeRecord returns Level:Benign to indicate processing should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed and should stop.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: ProcessClass.TakeRecord

TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events:ReportManager)**TakeWindowEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeWindowEvent** method processes all non-field events for the progress window and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeWindowEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the TakeWindowEvent method.

The TakeWindowEvent method processes EVENT:Timer events for the report. The TakeWindowEvent method either calls OpenReport (if DeferOpenReport is True) or begins processing a "cycle" of report records. Each timer event begins a "cycle" of report record processing which ends about TimeSlice later.

TakeWindowEvent calls the TakeRecord method and the Next method for each record within a processing cycle.

TakeWindowEvent adjusts the number of records processed per cycle to fill the TimeSlice and optimize sharing of machine resources.

Finally, TakeWindowEvent calls the WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent method to handle any other non-field events.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: DeferOpenReport, Next, TimeSlice, TakeRecord, WindowManager.TakeEvent,
 WindowManager.TakeWindowEvent

RuleManager

Overview

The Rule Manager classes work together to provide a central repository for business rules logic and a methodology for checking and responding to business rules in Clarion procedures. The Rule Manager classes also provide the option of visual indicators when a rule has been broken and conditional hiding or disabling of controls in the presence of broken rules.

Why Use RuleManager?

A primary requirement of a database system is the validation of data, or, more generally, enforcement of business rules. A common methodology is to put all validation code in the update procedure. However, the same tables may be handled by multiple procedures, e.g., manual input and batch processes, and individual columns may also be updated by procedures primarily concerned with other tables.

The result is that code for validating a particular column is repeated in multiple places throughout the application, providing opportunities for inconsistency and, as the system grows, creating a maintenance nightmare.

The Rule Manager Classes and associated templates provide a mechanism for centralizing validation code so that validation, wherever it is needed, is always provided in exactly the same way by code which can be maintained in a single, central location.

In addition, the Rule Manager Classes provide facilities for identifying broken rules in a convenient manner and enforcing rules through selective disabling or hiding of controls.

RuleManager Concepts

Rule Manager is implemented by a set of three classes:

- The **Rule** CLASS stores the definition of, and provides a method for testing, a single rule.
- The **RulesCollection** CLASS manages a collection of related rules, and provides methods for defining those rules, testing them singly or jointly, counting and/or displaying broken rules, and hiding or disabling controls when one or more rules is broken.
- The **RulesManager** CLASS manages multiple instances of RulesCollection.

These objects work together to implement Rule Manager features.

A Collection Class of Rules

A RulesCollection object is a collection class that is composed of an indefinite number of Rule objects. Each Rule object contains a single expression which when evaluated indicates whether the rule is broken or not. Rules can be explicitly checked by name, numeric id or all at once.

Visual Indicators

Each Rule object within the RulesCollection object has the option of displaying a small button with an image next to a specified control when the rule has been checked and found to be broken.

Evaluation of rules

When a rule is checked, the EVALUATE() function is called internally by the RuleUsBroken() method. Therefore all variables used by a BrokenRulesManager object need to be explicitly bound. If the result of the EVALUATE() returns FALSE, it means that the rule has been broken.

Responding to Broken Rules

RulesCollection provides the ability to keep a tally of how many rules are broken at one time. It does not explicitly re-check all the rules, but rather counts all the rules that have already been flagged as broken. This will provide you with a single, clean reference for determining whether a procedure is in a valid state or not.

Rule Manager Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The Rule Manager Classes work in conjunction with the WindowManager Class to provide visual error indicators. Template-placed code allows Rule Manager to work within the ACCEPT loop of WindowManager to handle events related to error indicators.

RuleManager ABC Template Implementation

Three templates support the use of the Rule Manager classes. They are:

- The **Global Business Rules Manager**, which establishes logical connections between business rules and particular table columns, other fields, and controls.
- The **Local Business Rules Manager**, which implements global rules wherever relevant items are populated and allows for the addition of local rules having effect in only one procedure. The Local Business Rules Manager is automatically added to every procedure in any application which contains the Global Business Rules Manager.
- A code template, the **Error Handler for Business Rules**, which provides enhanced functionality where needed.

RuleManager Source Files

The Rule Manager Classes source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The Rule Manager source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABRULE.INC	Rule Manager Class declarations
ABRULE.CLW	Rule Manager Class method definitions

RuleManager Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use and terminate a RulesCollection and related Rule objects in a standard ABC Window procedure. This example defines several rules and checks them at critical points. Each rule is bound to a specific control (this is optional) and when the rule is checked and found to be broken, a graphic error indicator is displayed next to the associated control. The OK button is disabled when there are broken rules.

```
MEMBER('app.clw')           ! This is a MEMBER module

INCLUDE('ABRULES.INC'),ONCE

INCLUDE('ABTOOLBA.INC'),ONCE
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC'),ONCE

MAP
  INCLUDE('APP001.INC'),ONCE    !Local module procedure declarations
```

END

Main PROCEDURE !Generated from procedure template - Window

```

CusName          STRING(20)
CusAddress       STRING(20)
CusPhone         STRING(10)
CustomerRules &RuleManager !Rule manager for Rules for the customer
Window WINDOW('Example of using RulesManager'),AT(,,169,124), FONT(,,,CHARSET:ANSI),|
GRAY,DOUBLE
SHEET,AT(3,4,159,116),USE(?Sheet1)
TAB('Customer Info'),USE(?Tab1)
SHEET,AT(8,26,149,62),USE(?Sheet2)
TAB('Name'),USE(?Tab3)
ENTRY(@s20),AT(51,55,60,10),USE(CusName),IMM
PROMPT('Cus Name:'),AT(13,55),USE(?CusName:Prompt)
END
TAB('Address'),USE(?Tab4)
PROMPT('Cus Address:'),AT(12,53),USE(?CusAddress:Prompt)
ENTRY(@s20),AT(69,53,60,10),USE(CusAddress),IMM
END
TAB('Phone'),USE(?Tab5)
PROMPT('Cus Phone:'),AT(12,52),USE(?CusPhone:Prompt)
ENTRY(@s10),AT(69,50,60,10),USE(CusPhone),IMM
END
END
BUTTON('OK'),AT(118,96,32,14),USE(?Button:OK),STD(STD:Close)
BUTTON('View Customer Broken Rules'),AT(8,95,101,14),USE(?Button:ListAll)
END
END
END

```

```

ThisWindow      CLASS(WindowManager)
Init            PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
Kill            PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
TakeAccepted    PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
TakeFieldEvent  PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
TakeNewSelection PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,DERIVED
END

```

Toolbar ToolbarClass

```

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

```

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE

ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO

```

CODE
GlobalErrors.SetProcedureName('Main')

```

```

SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()

!Bind the variables used by RulesManager
BIND('CusName',CusName)                !RulesManager Hotfield
BIND('CusAddress',CusAddress)           !RulesManager Hotfield
BIND('CusPhone',CusPhone)               !RulesManager Hotfield

!Define RulesManager
CustomerRules &= New(RuleManager)
CustomerRules.SetErrorImage('~SMCROSS.ICO')
CustomerRules.SetDescription('Rules for the customer')

!Defining rules in RulesManager
CustomerRules.AddRule|
('CusNameReq','Customer name is required','len(clip(CusName))>0',?CusName,3)
  CustomerRules.AddRule|
('Addreq','Customer address is required','len(clip(CusAddress))>0',?CusAddress,3)
CustomerRules.AddRule('PhoneReq','Phone is required','Len(clip(CusPhone))>0',?CusPhone,3)

IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?CusName
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
OPEN(Window)
SELF.Opened=True
!Check all Rules in RulesManager and show error indicators
CustomerRules.CheckAllRules(1)

SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE

ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO

CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
GlobalErrors.SetProcedureName

!UnBind the variables used by RulesManager
UNBIND('CusName')                !RulesManager Hotfield
UNBIND('CusAddress')             !RulesManager Hotfield
UNBIND('CusPhone')               !RulesManager Hotfield
Dispose(CustomerRules)

RETURN ReturnValue

```

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE

ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO

Looped BYTE

CODE

!Pass the Accepted control to RulesManager for processing in case
!the control clicked was an error indicator. If it was an error indicator,
!a MessageBox containing the description of the broken rule will be displayed
CustomerRules.TakeAccepted(Accepted())

LOOP

IF Looped

RETURN Level:Notify

ELSE

Looped = 1

END

ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeAccepted()

CASE ACCEPTED()

OF ?Button:ListAll

ThisWindow.Update

!This will Cause a window to popup that contains a list of all broken rules,
!and if the user double clicked one of the rules in the list, the relevant
!control will be selected.

Select(CustomerRules.EnumerateBrokenRules|
(CustomerRules.GetDescription(),CustomerRules.GetErrorImage()))

END

RETURN ReturnValue

END

ReturnValue = Level:Fatal

RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeFieldEvent PROCEDURE

ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO

Looped BYTE

CODE

LOOP

IF Looped

RETURN Level:Notify

ELSE

Looped = 1

END

!Disable the save button if there are any broken rules

?Button:OK{Prop:Disable} = CustomerRules.BrokenRuleCount()

!Hide the ListAll button if there are no broken rules

```
?Button:ListAll{Prop:Hide} = Choose(CustomerRules.BrokenRuleCount() = 0)

ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeFieldEvent()
RETURN ReturnValue
END
ReturnValue = Level:Fatal
RETURN ReturnValue
```

ThisWindow.TakeNewSelection PROCEDURE

```
ReturnValue          BYTE,AUTO
```

```
Looped BYTE
```

```
CODE
```

```
LOOP
```

```
IF Looped
```

```
RETURN Level:Notify
```

```
ELSE
```

```
Looped = 1
```

```
END
```

```
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeNewSelection()
```

```
CASE FIELD()
```

```
OF ?CusName
```

```
UPDATE
```

```
CustomerRules.CheckRule('CusNameReq',1)!Check for broken rule in RulesManager
```

```
OF ?CusAddress
```

```
UPDATE
```

```
CustomerRules.CheckRule('AddReq',1) !Checking for broken rule in RulesManager
```

```
OF ?CusPhone
```

```
UPDATE
```

```
CustomerRules.CheckRule('PhoneReq',1)!Checking for broken rule in RulesManager
```

```
END
```

```
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
END
```

```
ReturnValue = Level:Fatal
```

```
RETURN ReturnValue
```

Implementation Steps using hand code

Although there is a powerful template that is included with Clarion to help you implement the RuleManager, there are times when you may need to hand code its properties and methods into your source. The following are the recommend steps to implementing the RuleManager in your hand coded projects.

1. Identify specific rules and assign each rule a name. For example, if *Cus:Name* is required, call it *CusNameReq*.
2. For each rule, write a line of code that returns the value of TRUE when the rule is unbroken. For example, if *Cus:Name* is required, the corresponding code will be:

```
Len(Clip(Cus:Name)) > 0
```

If *Cus:Address* is required if *Cus:Name* <> "Unknown", the corresponding code will be

```
Choose(Upper(Clip(Cus:Name))<>'UNKNOWN' and len(Clip(Cus:Address))=0,0,1)
```

3. Bind all of the variables used in each expression.

```
BIND('Cus:Name',Cus:Name)
BIND('Cus:Address',Cus:Address)
```

4. Define a RuleManager Object.

```
CustomerRules &RuleManager
```

5. Instantiate the RuleManager Object

```
CustomerRules &= New(RuleManager)
CustomerRules.SetErrorImage('~SMCROSS.ICO')
CustomerRules.SetDescription('Rules for the customer')
```

6. Define the rules for the RulesManager

```
CustomerRules.AddRule('CusNameReq','Customer name is required' ,|
    'len(clip(CusName))>0',?CusName,3)
!A small button with the icon SMCROSS.ICO' will be displayed 3 pixels to
the left of !?CusName when the expression evaluates to false
```

```
CustomerRules.AddRule|
('Addreq','Customer address is required if customer name is not
"Unknown"',|
    'Choose(Upper(Clip(CusName))<>'UNKNOWN' and |
    len(Clip(CusAddress))=0,0,1)',?CusAddress,3)
!A small button with the icon SMCROSS.ICO' will be displayed 3 pixels to
the left of !?CusAddress when the expression evaluates to false
```


7. Check the rules.

```
CustomerRules.CheckAllRules(1)           !Checks all the rules
CustomerRules.CheckRule('CusNameReq',1) !Checks specific rule
```

8. Trap a mouse click on the error indicator button.

```
CustomerRules.TakeAccepted(Accepted())

!If a description is provided with the corresponding error, a
!message with the corresponding error will appear
```

9. Count the Broken Rules.

```
?OK{Prop:Disable} = CustomerRules.BrokenRuleCount()
!The ?OK button is disabled when there are broken rules
```

10. View All Broken Rules.

```
Select(CustomerRules.EnumerateBrokenRules|
(CustomerRules.GetDescription(),CustomerRules.GetErrorImage()))

!Call a popup listbox of broken rules, and use the default RulesManager
icon as an icon. !If the user double clicks one of the broken rules, the
corresponding control will be !selected.
```

Rule Class Properties

The Rule Class contains no public properties.

Rule Class Methods

Access Methods

Although all of the properties of the Rule class are PRIVATE, public access to these properties is provided by a set of methods:

GetName() returns a STRING containing the Name property.

GetExpression() returns a STRING containing the Expression property.

GetControlNum() returns a LONG containing the ControlNum Property

GetDescription() returns a STRING containing the Description property

GetErrorIndicator() returns a LONG containing the ErrorIndicator property

GetErrorImage() returns a STRING containing the ErrorImage property

GetIsBroken() returns a LONG containing the IsBroken property

GetOffsetRight() returns a LONG containing the OffsetRight property

SetName(string) sets the Name property

SetExpression(string) sets the Expression property

SetControlNum(value) sets the ControlNum property

SetDescription(string) sets the Description property

SetErrorIndicator(value) sets the ErrorIndicator property

SetErrorImage(string) sets the ErrorImage property

SetIsBroken(value) sets the IsBroken property

SetOffsetRight(value) sets the OffsetRight property

Setxxx/Getxxx Sets or retrieves a property

string A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a value appropriate to the property being set.

value A LONG constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a value appropriate to the property being set.

Example:

```
RulesCollection.AddRule PROCEDURE (STRING RuleName, STRING RuleDescription, |
                                STRING RuleExpression, <LONG ControlNum>, |
                                LONG OSR=3)

Counter      LONG
Found        BYTE

CODE
SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance &= NEW(Rule)
SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetName(RuleName)
SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetExpression(RuleExpression)
SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetDescription(RuleDescription)
SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetErrorImage(SELF.ErrorImage)
IF ~OMITTED(5)
    SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetControlNum(ControlNum)
    SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetErrorIndicator(ControlNum+1000)
    SELF.BrokenRuleQueue.BrokenRuleInstance.SetOffsetRight(OSR)
END
ADD( SELF.BrokenRuleQueue )
```

SetGlobalRule (post address to GlobalRule)

SetGlobalRule

SetGlobalRule Posts address of current Rule object to SELF.GlobalRule.

The **SetGlobalRule** method tests the GlobalRule reference property for NULL. If the reference is not NULL, the address of the current instance of Rule (ADDRESS(SELF)) is posted to the referenced variable.

Example:

```
Rule.RuleIsBroken PROCEDURE(Byte DisplayIndicator)
RetVal              LONG
EvaluateResults byte
CODE
SELF.SetGlobalRule
EvaluateResults = EVALUATE(SELF.Expression)
IF INLIST(ERRORCODE(),800,810,1011)
    RetVal = ERRORCODE()
    STOP('Evaluate Syntax error')
ELSE
    RetVal = CHOOSE(EvaluateResults = 0,1,0)
    SELF.SetIsBroken(RetVal)
    IF DisplayIndicator
        SELF.SetIndicator(RetVal)
    END
END
SELF.ResetGlobalRule
RETURN(RetVal)
```

See Also: ResetGlobalRule, RuleIsBroken

ResetGlobalRule (clear address in GlobalRule)

ResetGlobalRule

ResetGlobalRule Sets SELF.GlobalRule to zero.

The **ResetGlobalRule** method tests the GlobalRule reference property for NULL. If the reference is not NULL, a zero is posted to the referenced variable.

Example:

```
Rule.RuleIsBroken PROCEDURE(Byte DisplayIndicator)
RetVal              LONG
EvaluateResults byte
CODE
SELF.SetGlobalRule
EvaluateResults = EVALUATE(SELF.Expression)
IF INLIST(ERRORCODE(),800,810,1011)
    RetVal = ERRORCODE()
    STOP('Evaluate Syntax error')
ELSE
    RetVal = CHOOSE(EvaluateResults = 0,1,0)
    SELF.SetIsBroken(RetVal)
    IF DisplayIndicator
        SELF.SetIndicator(RetVal)
    END
END
SELF.ResetGlobalRule
RETURN(RetVal)
```

See Also: RuleIsBroken

RuleIsBroken (test rule and return result)

RuleIsBroken(*display*)

RuleIsBroken Tests the rule and returns the result

display An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to display an error indicator if the rule is broken.

The **RuleIsBroken** method uses EVALUATE to test SELF.Expression. If the result is zero, the rule is considered broken. Otherwise, the rule is considered sound. The method returns True if the rule is broken, False if not. If the value of *display* is non-zero, an error indicator is set using the SetIndicator method.

Implementation: The RuleIsBroken method relies on the EVALUATE function to test a string containing an expression. Accordingly, all names used in the expression must be bound. If a procedure name is used, it must return a STRING, REAL or LONG value. If the procedures accept parameters, those parameters must be STRINGS passed by value and may not be omissible.

The RuleIsBroken method tests explicitly for errors related to the EVALUATE process and ignores errors which might be posted by called procedures. These procedures must therefore handle any errors which may be posted during their execution.

The RuleIsBroken method calls SELF.SetGlobalRule before evaluating the expression and SELF.ResetGlobalRule immediately after evaluating the expression. During the EVALUATE process, then, a called procedure can use the address posted to call back to the current Rule instance.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
RulesCollection.CheckAllRules Procedure(<BYTE DisplayIndicator>)
RetVal          LONG
LBR             &Rule
Counter         LONG
Recs            LONG
lIsBroken       BYTE
CODE
Recs    = SELF.RuleCount()
RetVal  = 0
LOOP Counter = 1 TO Recs
    LBR    &= SELF.Item(Counter)
    lIsBroken= LBR.RuleIsBroken(DisplayIndicator)
    RetVal +=lIsBroken
END
IF SELF.ChangeControlsStatus
    SELF.SetControlsStatus()
END
RETURN(RetVal)
```

See Also: SetGlobalRule, ResetGlobalRule, SetIndicator

SetIndicator (set error indicator)

SetIndicator(*broken*)

The **SetIndicator** method creates or destroys an error indicator as appropriate.

broken An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the current rule is broken.

Implementation: The SetIndicator method destroys any previously created error indicator for this rule and conditionally creates a new one.

Example:

```
RetVal = CHOOSE(EvaluateResults = 0,1,0)
SELF.SetIsBroken(RetVal)
IF DisplayIndicator
    SELF.SetIndicator(RetVal)
END
```


RulesCollection Class Properties

The RulesCollection Class contains no public properties.

RulesCollection Class Methods

Access Methods

Although all of the properties of the RulesCollection class are PRIVATE, public access to these properties is provided by a set of methods:

GetDescription() returns a STRING containing the Description property

GetErrorImage() returns a STRING containing the ErrorImage property

GetChangeControls() returns a BYTE containing the ChangeControlsStatus property

SetDescription(string) sets the Description property

SetErrorImage(string) sets the ErrorImage property

SetChangeControls(status) sets the ChangeControlsStatus property

Setxxx/Getxxx Sets or retrieves a property

string A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a value appropriate to the property being set.

status A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains either True or False.

Example:

```
Customer.SetErrorImage('~BRuleNo.ico')
Customer.SetDescription('Customer File Rules')
Customer.AddRule('ShortNameRequired','Short name is required', |
                  'cus:ShortName <<> '''' OR CheckShortName()' |
                  ,?cus:ShortName,3)
```

Construct (initialize RulesCollection object)

Construct

Construct Initializes the RulesCollection object. The Construct method is executed automatically when the object is instantiated.

Destruct (shut down RulesCollection object)

Destruct

Destruct Performs necessary cleanup prior to the disposal of the RulesCollection object. The Destruct method is executed automatically when the object is disposed of.

RuleCount (count rules in the collection)

RuleCount()

RuleCount Returns the number of rules being monitored by this RulesCollection object.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
NumberOfRules = SELF.RuleCount()
```

BrokenRuleCount (count rules in the collection which are broken)

BrokenRuleCount()

BrokenRuleCount Returns the number of rules being monitored by this RulesCollection object that are broken.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
CustomerRules RulesCollection  
CODE  
... code omitted ...  
BrokenRules = CustomerRules.BrokenRuleCount()
```

AddRule (add a rule to this collection)

AddRule(*name*,*description*,*expression*,*control*,*offset*)

AddRule	Adds and initializes a rule to the collection being managed by this RuleManager object
<i>name</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a name for this rule. If this name is not unique, results may be unpredictable.
<i>description</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a description of this rule. The primary use of this description is as a message identifying a broken rule. The description should be worded with this use in mind.
<i>expression</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the logical expression which defines this rule. If the expression evaluates to False, the rule is considered broken.
<i>control</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the Field Equate of the control linked to this rule. If the rule is broken, an error indicator will be placed to the right of this control.
<i>offset</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the distance, in dialog units, between the right side of the linked control and the error indicator.

The **AddRule** method creates a Rule object and adds it to the broken rule queue.

Example:

Customer RulesCollection

```
CODE
Customer.SetErrorImage('~BRuleNo.ico')
Customer.SetDescription('Customer File Rules')
Customer.AddRule('ShortNameRequired','Short name is required', |
    'cus:ShortName <<> '''' OR CheckShortName()', |
    ?cus:ShortName,3)
Customer.AddRule('Company Boolean','Must select individual (0) or company (1)', |
    'INRANGE(cus:Company,0,1)',?cus:Company,3)
Customer.AddRule('CompanyNameRequired','Company name is required', |
    'cus:CompanyName <<> '''' OR NOT cus:Company',?cus:CompanyName,3)
Customer.AddRule('LastNameRequired','Last name is required', |
    'cus:LastName <<> '''' OR cus:Company',?cus:LastName,3)
Customer.AddRule('CityRequired','City is required','cus:City <<> ''''',?cus:City,3)
Customer.AddRule('StateRequired','State is required','cus:State <<> ''''',?cus:State,
Customer.AddRule('ZipOK','Postal code must have valid format.',
    'CheckCustomerZip()',?cus:ZipCode,3)
Customer.AddRule('CreditLimit','Credit limit must not exceed $1000.00',
    'cus:CreditLimit =<< 1000',?cus:CreditLimit,3)
```

AddControl (add managed control)

AddControl(*feq*,*action*)

AddControl	Adds a control to the controls queue so that a specified action is taken when any rule in the managed collection is broken.										
<i>feq</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the Field Equate number of a control whose hidden or disabled status will be determined by the existence of one or more broken rules.										
<i>action</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the action to be taken with respect to this control when a rule is broken, defined as follows: <table> <tr><td>RuleAction:None</td><td>EQUATE(0)</td></tr> <tr><td>RuleAction:Hide</td><td>EQUATE(1)</td></tr> <tr><td>RuleAction:UnHide</td><td>EQUATE(2)</td></tr> <tr><td>RuleAction:Disable</td><td>EQUATE(3)</td></tr> <tr><td>RuleAction:Enable</td><td>EQUATE(4)</td></tr> </table>	RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)	RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)	RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)	RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)	RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)
RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)										
RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)										
RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)										
RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)										
RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)										

Example:

```
Customer.SetErrorImage('~BRuleNo.ico')
Customer.SetDescription('Customer File Rules')
Customer.AddRule('StateRequired','State is required','cus:State <<> ''',?cus:State,
Customer.AddRule('ZipOK','Postal code must have valid format.',
    'CheckCustomerZip()',?cus:ZipCode,3)
Customer.AddRule('CreditLimit','Credit limit must not exceed $1000.00',
    'cus:CreditLimit =<< 1000',?cus:CreditLimit,3)
Customer.AddControl(?Ok,RuleAction:Disable) ! Disable OK button if any rule broken
```

AddControlToRule (add managed control)

AddControlToRule(*rule,feq,action*)

AddControlToRule	Adds a control to the controls queue so that a specified action is taken when a particular rule in the managed collection is broken.										
<i>rule</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the name of this rule. If rule names are not unique within the collection managed by this RuleManager object, results may be unpredictable.										
<i>feq</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the Field Equate number of a control whose hidden or disabled status will be determined by the status of this rule.										
<i>action</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the action to be taken with respect to this control when a rule is broken, defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td>RuleAction:None</td><td>EQUATE(0)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:Hide</td><td>EQUATE(1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:UnHide</td><td>EQUATE(2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:Disable</td><td>EQUATE(3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:Enable</td><td>EQUATE(4)</td></tr> </table>	RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)	RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)	RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)	RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)	RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)
RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)										
RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)										
RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)										
RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)										
RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)										

Example:

```
Customer.SetErrorImage('~BRuleNo.ico')
Customer.SetDescription('Customer File Rules')
Customer.AddRule('StateRequired','State is required','cus:State <> ''',?cus:State,
Customer.AddRule('ZipOK','Postal code must have valid format.',
    'CheckCustomerZip()',?cus:ZipCode,3)
Customer.AddControlToRule('StateRequired, ?cus:ZipCode,RuleAction:Hide)
    ! Hide Zip Code field until state is filled in.
```

CheckRule (check a particular rule)

CheckRule(*rule*,*display*)

CheckRule	Checks a particular rule and optionally sets the error indicator for its associated control.
<i>rule</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the name of this rule. If rule names are not unique within the collection managed by this RuleManager object, results may be unpredictable.
<i>display</i>	A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that, if True, will cause the error indicator to be set for the control associated with this rule.
Return Data Type:	BYTE

Example:

```
Customer.CheckRule(ZipOK,True) ! Validate zip code and set indicator if invalid
```

CheckAllRules (check all rules in this collection)

CheckAllRules(*display*)

CheckAllRules	Checks all rules in the collection managed by this FileManager object and optionally sets the error indicators controls associated with those rules.
<i>display</i>	A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that, if True, will cause the error indicator to be set for the control associated with this rule.
Return Data Type:	LONG

Example:

```
Customer.CheckAllRules(False) ! Validate all fields but do not set indicators.
```

Item (locate a particular rule)

```
Item( | rulename | )
      | position  |
```

Item	Locates a specified rule and retrieves its entry from the broken rule queue. t.
<i>rulename</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the name of the rule to be located. If rule names are not unique within the collection managed by this RuleManager object, results may be unpredictable.
<i>position</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a numeric value corresponding to the position in the broken rule queue of the rule to be located.

The **Item** method locates the specified rule and returns the address of its Rule object. If the specified rule name does not exist in the broken rule queue or if the specified position is outside the range of entries in the broken rule queue, the Item method returns zero.

Return Data Type: **LONG**

Example:

RulesCollection.BrokenRuleCount PROCEDURE

LBR **&Rule**

NumberOfRules **LONG**

Counter **LONG**

RetVal **LONG**

CODE

NumberOfRules = **SELF.RuleCount()**

LOOP Counter = 1 TO **NumberOfRules**

LBR &= **SELF.Item(Counter)**

IF LBR.GetIsBroken()

RetVal += 1

END

END

RETURN(Retval)

TakeAccepted (handle acceptance of error indicators)

TakeAccepted(*control*)

TakeAccepted Determines whether or not the specified control is an error indicator for one of the Rule objects managed by this RulesCollection object. If so, the TakeAccepted method displays the description of the rule and provides the user with an option to view the status of all broken rules.

control A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a field equate value. The control indicated by this value is assumed to have been Accepted.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Implementation: When the control that has been accepted is an error indicator, the description of the associated rule is displayed in a message box. This message box always provides a Close button. If the total number of broken rules found exceeds one, a second button offers to display all of them. If the Supervisor property is not NULL, this RulesCollection object uses that property to access the EnumerateBrokenRules method of its supervising RulesManagerObject rather than its own. As a result, the user gets a full list of broken rules even when the controls on a screen involve rules from more than one collection.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE
ReturnVal  BYTE,AUTO
Looped  BYTE
CODE
  Customer.TakeAccepted(Accepted())! RulesCollection traps to determine if
                                     ! error-indicator was clicked
LOOP
  IF Looped
    RETURN Level:Notify
  ELSE
    Looped = 1
  END
  CASE ACCEPTED()
  END
END
```

See Also: CheckAllRules, EnumerateBrokenRules

SetEnumerateIcons (set icons for broken rules display)

SetEnumerateIcons(*windowicon*, *validicon*, *brokenicon*)

SetEnumerateIcons Sets the icons for the display produced by the EnumerateBrokenRules method.

windowicon A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the file name of the icon which will appear on the title bar of the broken rules listing.

validicon A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the file name of the icon which will appear on lines containing valid rules.

brokenicon A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the file name of the icon which will appear on lines containing broken rules.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
Customer. SetEnumerateIcons('~BRules.ico', '~BRuleOk.ico', |  
                             '~BRuleNo.ico')
```

See Also: EnumerateBrokenRules

EnumerateBrokenRules (display a list of rules with status of each)

EnumerateBrokenRules(*header,brokenonly*)

EnumerateBrokenRules	Displays a list of the rules managed by this RulesCollection object.
<i>header</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a header to be displayed in the title bar of the enumerated rules display.
<i>broken</i>	A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that, if True, causes the EnumerateBrokenRules method to display only rules which are broken.

The **EnumerateBrokenRules** method provides a convenient way to display the set of rules (or broken rules) managed by this RulesCollection object. If the user selects a rule from this display, the field equate of the control associated with that rule is returned, allowing the appropriate field to be SELECTed,

Example:

```
IF MESSAGE(Desc,'Error Information',ICON:ASTERISK,'Close |' & MoreString) = 2
  SelectControl = SELF.EnumerateBrokenRules(SELF.GetDescription())
  IF SelectControl
    SELECT(SelectControl)
  END
END
```

See Also: TakeAccepted

SetControlsStatus (set status of managed controls)

SetControlsStatus([*control* [, *action*]])

SetControlsStatus	Sets the hidden or disabled status of a control or controls managed by this RulesCollection object.										
<i>action</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the action to be taken with respect to this control when a rule is broken, defined as follows: <table> <tr> <td>RuleAction:None</td><td>EQUATE(0)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:Hide</td><td>EQUATE(1)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:UnHide</td><td>EQUATE(2)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:Disable</td><td>EQUATE(3)</td></tr> <tr> <td>RuleAction:Enable</td><td>EQUATE(4)</td></tr> </table>	RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)	RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)	RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)	RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)	RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)
RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)										
RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)										
RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)										
RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)										
RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)										
<i>control</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a field equate value.										

The **SetControlsStatus** method sets the status of controls managed by this RulesCollection object depending on the parameters supplied. If *control* is supplied, only status changes involving that control are processed. If *action* is supplied, only status changes involving that action are processed. If neither is supplied, then all changes for all controls are processed.

Example:

```
RulesCollection.SetControlsStatus PROCEDURE
  lIndex LONG
  lIndex2 LONG
  lChange BYTE
  CODE
  LOOP lIndex=1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Controls)
    GET(SELF.Controls,lIndex)
    IF ERRORCODE() THEN BREAK.
    SELF.SetControlsStatus(SELF.Controls.Control,pAction)
  END
```

NeedChangeControlStatus (check if control status needs to change)

NeedChangeControlStatus(*control*, *action*, *found*)

NeedChangeControlStatus Examines the conditions under which the hidden or disabled status of control needs to change and returns information about whether the change is needed now.

control A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a field equate value.

action A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates the action to be taken with respect to this control when a rule is broken, defined as follows:

RuleAction:None	EQUATE(0)
RuleAction:Hide	EQUATE(1)
RuleAction:UnHide	EQUATE(2)
RuleAction:Disable	EQUATE(3)
RuleAction:Enable	EQUATE(4)

found A numeric variable which will be updated with an action code.

The **NeedChangeControlStatus** method returns True if the status of *control* needs to change, False if not. On return, the *found* variable is set to the action that needs to be taken.

Example:

```
lActionExist = RuleAction:None
lChange = SELF.NeedChangeControlStatus(pControlFeq,pAction,lActionExist)
IF lActionExist<>pAction THEN RETURN.
```

RulesManager Properties

The RulesManager Class contains no public properties.

RulesManager Methods

Access Methods

Although most of the properties of the RulesCollection class are PRIVATE, public access to these properties is provided by a set of methods:

GetChangeControls() returns a BYTE containing the ChangeControlsStatus property

SetChangeControls(status) sets the ChangeControlsStatus property

Setxxx/Getxxx Sets or retrieves a property

status A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains either True or False.

Example:

```
RulesManager.AddRulesCollection PROCEDURE(RulesCollection pRM)
    CODE
    SELF.Rules.RM &= pRM
    ADD( SELF.Rules )
    SELF.Rules.RM.ChangeControlsStatus = False
```

Construct (initialize RulesManager object)

Construct

Construct Initializes the RulesManager object. The Construct method is executed automatically when the object is instantiated.

Destruct (shut down RulesManager object)

Destruct

Destruct Performs necessary cleanup prior to the disposal of the RulesManager object. The Destruct method is executed automatically when the object is disposed of.

RulesManagerCount (count rules in the collection)

RulesManagerCount()

RuleManagerCount Returns the number of RulesCollection objects being monitored by this RulesCollection object.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
NumberOfRulesCollections = SELF.RulesManagerCount()
```

BrokenRulesCount (count rules in the collection which are broken)

BrokenRulesCount()

BrokenRulesCount Returns the number of rules being monitored, by all of the RulesCollection objects managed by this RulesManager object, which are broken.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
BrokenRules = SELF.BrokenRuleCount()
```

AddRulesCollection (add a rule to this collection)

AddRulesCollection(*RulesCollection*)

AddRulesCollection Adds a RulesCollection instance to the collection being managed by this RulesManager object

RulesCollection The label of a RulesCollection object.

The **AddRulesCollection** method adds the specified RulesCollection object to the RuleManager and adds it to the Rules queue.

Example:

```
BusinessRulesManager.AddRulesCollection(Customer)
BusinessRulesManager.SetEnumerateIcons('~BRules.ico', '~BRuleOk.ico', |
                                     '~BRuleNo.ico')
BusinessRulesManager.AddControl(?Ok, RuleAction:Disable)
BusinessRulesManager.SetGlobalRuleReferences(GlobalRule)
```

CheckAllRules (check all rules in all collections)

CheckAllRules(*display*)

CheckAllRules Checks all rules in the collections (RulesCollection objects) managed by this FilesManager object, optionally sets the error indicators controls associated with those rules, and returns a count of broken rules.

display A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that, if True, will cause the error indicator to be set for the control associated with this rule.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
BusinessRulesManager.CheckAllRules(True) ! Validate all fields and set indicators.
```

TakeAccepted (handle acceptance of error indicators)

TakeAccepted(*control*)

TakeAccepted Determines whether or not the specified control is an error indicator for one of the Rule objects monitored by RulesCollection objects which are in turn managed by this RulesManager object. If so, the TakeAccepted method displays the description of the rule and provides the user with an option to view the status of all broken rules.

control A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a field equate value. The control indicated by this value is assumed to have been Accepted.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE

Return Value BYTE, AUTO

Looped BYTE

CODE

**BusinessRulesManager.TakeAccepted(Accepted())! RulesManager trap to determine
! if error-indicator was clicked**

LOOP

IF Looped

RETURN Level:Notify

ELSE

Looped = 1

END

CASE ACCEPTED()

END

EMD

SetEnumerateIcons (set icons for broken rules display)

SetEnumerateIcons(*windowicon*, *validicon*, *brokenicon*)

SetEnumerateIcons Sets the icons for the display produced by the EnumerateBrokenRules method.

windowicon A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the file name of the icon which will appear on the title bar of the broken rules listing.

validicon A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the file name of the icon which will appear on lines containing valid rules.

brokenicon A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains the file name of the icon which will appear on lines containing broken rules.

Return Data Type: LONG

Example:

```
BusinessRulesManager.SetEnumerateIcons('~BRules.ico', '~BRuleOk.ico', |  
                                         '~BRuleNo.ico')
```

See Also: EnumerateBrokenRules

EnumerateBrokenRules (display a list of rules with status of each)

EnumerateBrokenRules(*header, brokenonly*)

EnumerateBrokenRules

Displays a list of the rules monitored by RulesCollection objects which in turn are managed by this RulesManager object.

header A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a header to be displayed in the title bar of the enumerated rules display.

broken A Boolean constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that, if True, causes the EnumerateBrokenRules method to display only rules which are broken.

The **EnumerateBrokenRules** method provides a convenient way to display the set of rules (or broken rules) monitored by RulesCollection objects managed by this RulesManager object. If the user selects a rule from this display, the field equate of the control associated with that rule is returned, allowing the appropriate field to be SELECTed,

Example:

```
IF MESSAGE(Desc,'Error Information',ICON:ASTERISK,'Close |' & MoreString) = 2
  SelectControl = SELF.EnumerateBrokenRules(SELF.GetDescription(), |
                                           SELF.GetErrorImage())
  IF SelectControl
    SELECT(SelectControl)
  END
END
```

See Also: TakeAccepted

SetControlsStatus (set status of managed controls)

SetControlsStatus()

SetControlsStatus

Sets the hidden or disabled status of a control or controls managed by this RulesManager object and by RulesCollection objects assigned to this RulesManager object.

The **SetControlsStatus** method sets the status of controls managed by this RulesManager object and subsidiary RulesCollection objects.

SelectFileClass

SelectFileClass Concepts

The SelectFileClass object manages the Windows File Dialog--both 16-bit (short filenames) and 32-bit versions (long filenames)--to select a single file or multiple files.

SelectFileClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ASCIIViewerClass uses the the SelectFileClass to let the end user choose the file to view. Otherwise, the SelectFileClass is completely independent of other Application Builder Classes.

SelectFileClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC DOSFileLookup control template generates code to declare a local SelectFileClass class *and* object for each instance of the SelectFile Control Template.

The class is named SelectFile# where # is the instance number of the DOSFileLookup control template. The template provides the derived class so you can use the **Classes** tab to easily modify the select file behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

SelectFileClass Source Files

The SelectFileClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The SelectFileClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABUTIL.INC	SelectFileClass declarations
ABUTIL.CLW	SelectFileClass method definitions
ABUTIL.TRN	SelectFileClass default text, mask, flags

SelectFileClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a SelectFileClass object. This example displays a dialog that alternatively allows single file or multi-file selection.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABUTIL.INC')          !declare SelectFileClass
  MAP
  END
SelectFile  SelectFileClass      !declare SelectFile object
FileQ       SelectFileQueue      !declare FileName QUEUE
FileQCount  USHORT,AUTO          !declare Q counter
FileNames   CSTRING(255)         !variable to hold file names
FileMask    CSTRING('Text *.txt|*.txt|All *.*|*.*') !File dialog file masks
MultiFiles  BYTE                 !single/multiple file switch
GetFile     WINDOW('Select File'),AT(,,173,40),SYSTEM,GRAY,RESIZE
            ENTRY(@s254),AT(6,6,144,12),USE(FileNames)
            BUTTON('...'),AT(156,6,12,12),USE(?SelectFiles)
            OPTION,AT(6,20,),USE(MultiFiles)
            RADIO('One File'),AT(5,25),USE(?1File),VALUE('0')
            RADIO('Multiple Files'),AT(45,25),USE(?MultiFile),VALUE('1')
            END
            BUTTON('Close'),AT(119,24),USE(?Close)
            END
CODE
OPEN(GetFile)
ACCEPT
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:OpenWindow    !on open window
    SelectFile.Init                !initialize SelectFile object
    SelectFile.AddMask('Clarion source|*.clw;*.inc') !set default file mask
    SelectFile.AddMask(FileMask)   !set additional file masks
  END

```

```
CASE FIELD()
OF ?SelectFiles
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
    IF MultiFiles
      SelectFile.WindowTitle='Select multiple files'
      SelectFile.Ask(FileQ,0)
      LOOP FileQCount=1 TO RECORDS(FileQ)
        GET(FileQ,FileQCount)
        MESSAGE(FileQ.Name)
      END
    ELSE
      SelectFile.WindowTitle = 'Select one file'
      FileNames = SelectFile.Ask(1)
      DISPLAY(?FileNames)
    END
  END
OF ?Close
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)
  END
END
END
```

!on get file button
!if user clicked it
!if multiple files requested
!set file dialog titlebar
!display file dialog
!for each selected file
!get the file information
!process the file

!if single file requested
!set file dialog titlebar
!display file dialog
!redraw Filenames field

!on close button
!if user clicked it
!shut down

SelectFileClass Properties

The SelectFileClass contains the following properties.

DefaultDirectory (initial path)

DefaultDirectory

CSTRING(File:MaxFilePath)

The **DefaultDirectory** property contains the directory the Windows file dialog initially opens to. If DefaultDirectory is null, the file dialog opens to the current directory.

DefaultFile (initial filename/filemask)

DefaultFile

CSTRING(File:MaxFilePath)

The **DefaultFile** property contains the filename that initially appears in the Windows file dialog filename field. The filename may contain wildcard characters such as * to filter the file dialog's file list.

Flags (file dialog behavior)

Flags BYTE

The **Flags** property is a bitmap that indicates the type of file action the Windows file dialog performs (select, multi-select, save directory, lock directory, suppress errors). The Flags property operates identically to the FILEDIALOG *flag* parameter. See *FILEDIALOG* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

Implementation: The Init method sets the Flags property to its default value declared in ABUTIL.TRN--select a file from any directory.

See Also: Init

WindowTitle (file dialog title text)

WindowTitle CSTRING(80)

The **WindowTitle** property contains a string that sets the title bar text in the Windows file dialog.

Implementation: The Init method sets the WindowTitle property to its default value declared in ABUTIL.TRN. The SelectFileClass uses the WindowTitle property as the *title* parameter to the FILEDIALOG function. See *FILEDIALOG* in the *Language Reference* for more information.

See Also: Init

SelectFileClass Methods

AddMask (add file dialog file masks)

AddMask(| *description*, *masks* |)

| *mask string* |

AddMask	Adds file masks to the file dialog's List Files of Type drop-down list.
<i>description</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a file mask description such as 'all files-*. *' or 'source files-*.inc;*.clw'. The mask value may be included in the description for information only.
<i>masks</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that defines the file mask or masks corresponding to the <i>description</i> , such as '*. *' or '*.inc;*.clw'. Multiple masks are separated by a semi-colon (;).
<i>mask string</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that defines both the file masks and their descriptions.

The **AddMask** method adds file masks and their descriptions to the file dialog's **List Files of Type** drop-down list. The first mask is the default selection in the file dialog.

The SetMask method replaces file masks and their descriptions.

The *mask string* parameter must contain one or more descriptions followed by their corresponding file masks in the form *description|masks|description|masks*. All elements in the string must be delimited by the vertical bar (|). For example, 'all files *.*|*.*|Clarion source *.clw;*.inc|*.clw;*.inc' defines two selections for the File Dialog's **List Files of Type** drop-down list. See the *extensions* parameter to the FILEDIALOG function in the *Language Reference* for more information.

Example:

```
FileMask CSTRING('Text *.txt|*.txt|All *.*|*.*')      !File dialog file masks
CODE
!program code
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:OpenWindow                      !on open window
    SelectFile.Init                                  !initialize SelectFile object
    SelectFile.SetMask('Clarion source','*.clw;*.inc')!set default file mask
    SelectFile.AddMask(FileMask)                     !set additional file masks
  END
```

See Also: SetMask

Ask (display Windows file dialog)

Ask([*file queue*] [, *restore path*])

Ask	Displays the Windows file dialog.
<i>file queue</i>	The label of a QUEUE structure that receives information for the selected files. The structure must be the same as the SelectFileQueue structure declared in ABUTIL.INC. If omitted, the end user may select only one file, for which the Ask method returns the full pathname.
<i>restore path</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to restore the current path to its pre-file dialog state. A <i>restore path</i> value of one (1) restores the current path; a value of zero (0) does not restore the current path. If omitted, <i>restore path</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **Ask** method displays the Windows file dialog and returns information, primarily the full pathname, for the selected file or files.

Implementation: The *file queue* parameter must name a QUEUE that begins the same as the SelectFileQueue structure declared in ABUTIL.INC:

```
SelectFileQueue QUEUE,TYPE
Name          STRING(File:MaxFilePath)
ShortName     STRING(File:MaxFilePath)
              END
```

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
FileQ      SelectFileQueue      !declare FileName QUEUE
FileQCount  BYTE
CODE
!program code
SelectFile.Ask(FileQ,0)          !multi file dialog, don't restore directory
LOOP FileQCount=1 TO RECORDS(FileQ) !for each selected file
  GET(FileQ,FileQCount)          !get the file information
  MESSAGE(FileQ.Name)            !process the file
END

FileNames = SelectFile.Ask(1)     !single file dialog, restore directory
```

Init (initialize the SelectFileClass object)

Init

The **Init** method initializes the SelectFileClass object.

Implementation: The Init method WindowTitle and Flags properties to their default values declared in ABUTIL.TRN.

Example:

```
IF EVENT() = EVENT:OpenWindow      !on open window
  SelectFile.Init                   !initialize SelectFile object
  SelectFile.AddMask('Clarion source|*.clw;*.inc') !set default file mask
  SelectFile.AddMask(FileMask)      !set additional file masks
END
```

See Also: Flags, WindowTitle

SetMask (set file dialog file masks)

SetMask(| *description*, *masks* |)

| *mask string* |

SetMask	Sets the file masks available in the file dialog's List Files of Type drop-down list.
<i>description</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a file mask description such as 'all files-*. *' or 'source files-.inc;*.clw'. The mask value may be included in the description for information only.
<i>masks</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that defines the file mask or masks corresponding to the <i>description</i> , such as '*. *' or '*.inc;*.clw'. Multiple masks are separated by a semi-colon (;).
<i>mask string</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that defines both the file masks and their descriptions.

The **SetMask** method sets the file masks and their descriptions available in the file dialog's **List Files of Type** drop-down list. The first mask is the default selection in the file dialog.

The AddMask method appends file masks and their descriptions.

The *mask string* parameter must contain one or more descriptions followed by their corresponding file masks in the form description|masks|description|masks. All elements in the string must be delimited by the vertical bar (|). For example, 'all files *. *|*. *|Clarion source *.clw;*.inc|*.clw;*.inc' defines two selections for the File Dialog's **List Files of Type** drop-down list. See the *extensions* parameter to the FILEDIALOG function in the *Language Reference* for more information.

Example:

```
FileMask CSTRING('Text *.txt|*.txt|All *. *|*. *')      !File dialog file masks
CODE
!program code
IF EVENT() = EVENT:OpenWindow                          !on open window
    SelectFile.Init                                    !initialize SelectFile object
    SelectFile.SetMask('Clarion source','*.clw;*.inc') !set default file mask
    SelectFile.AddMask(FileMask)                       !set additional file masks
END
```

See Also: AddMask

StandardBehavior Class

StandardBehavior Overview

The StandardBehavior class provides a central point for specification of standard basic browse behavior.

StandardBehavior Class Concepts

The StandardBehavior class provides a set of standard methods that can be used for all classes that will emulate a browse box.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The StandardBehavior class implements the IListControl interface and the BrowseQueue interface.

StandardBehavior Source Files

The StandardBehavior source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific StandardBehavior source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	StandardBehavior declarations
ABBROWSE.CLV	StandardBehavior method definitions

StandardBehavior Properties

The StandardBehavior class contains no public properties.

StandardBehavior Methods

StandardBehavior Methods

The StandardBehavior class inherits all of the methods from the BrowseQueue and IListControl interfaces which it implements. See BrowseQueue and IListControl interfaces for more information.

Init(initialize the StandardBehavior object)

Init(*listqueue*, *viewposition*, *listcontrol*)

Init	Initializes the StandardBehavior object.
<i>listqueue</i>	The label of the list control's data source QUEUE.
<i>viewposition</i>	The label of a string field within the <i>listqueue</i> containing the POSITION of the VIEW.
<i>listcontrol</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the browse's LIST control.

The **Init** method initializes the StandardBehavior object.

Implementation: The Init method is called by the BrowseClass.Init method. The BrowseClass.Init method creates an instance of the StandardBehavior object before the Init method is called.

See Also: BrowseClass.Init

StandardErrorLogClass

StandardErrorLogClass Overview

The StandardErrorLogClass manages the opening and closing of an error log file. This class implements the ErrorLogInterface.

StandardErrorLogClass Source Files

The StandardErrorLogClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC. The specific StandardErrorLogClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABERROR.INC	StandardErrorLogClass declarations
ABERROR.CLW	StandardErrorLogClass method definitions

ABC Template Implementation

The StandardErrorLogClass is instantiated in the ErrorClass.Init method.

StandardErrorLogClass Properties

The StandardErrorLogClass contains no public properties.

StandardErrorLogClass Methods

Close (close standarderrorlog file)

Close(*force*), PROC, PROTECTED

Close	Close the ErrorlogFile.
<i>force</i>	An numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the log file must be closed or whether it should be conditionally closed. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally closes the errorlog file; a value of zero (0 or False) only closes the errorlog file as circumstances require.

The **Close** method closes the ErrorLog file. Level:Benign is returned from this method. A Level:Fatal is returned if an error occurs.

Construct (initialize StandardErrorLogClass object)

Construct

The **Construct** method initializes the StandardErrorLogClass. It is automatically called when the object is created.

Destruct (remove the StandardErrorLogClass object)

Destruct

The **Destruct** method destroys the StandardErrorLogClass object. This method is automatically called when the object is destroyed.

Open (open standarderrorlog file)**Open**(*force*), PROC, PROTECTED

Open	Create and open the ErrorLog file.
<i>force</i>	An numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether the log file must be opened or whether it should be conditionally opened. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally opens the errorlog file; a value of zero (0 or False) only opens the errorlog file as circumstances require.

The **Open** method creates and opens the ErrorLog file. Level:Benign is returned from this method. A Level:Fatal is returned if an error occurs.

StepClass

StepClass Overview

The StepClass estimates the relative position of a given record within a keyed dataset. The StepClass is an abstract class--it is not useful by itself. However, other useful classes are derived from it and other structures (such as the BrowseClass and ProcessClass) use it to reference any of its derived classes.

StepClass Concepts

The classes derived from the StepClass let you define an upper and a lower boundary as well as a series of steps between the boundaries. Then the classes help you traverse or navigate the defined steps with a scrollbar thumb, a progress bar, or any control that shows a relative linear position within a finite range.

The classes derived from the StepClass implement some of the common variations in boundaries (alphanumeric or numeric) and steps (alphabetic distribution, surname distribution, normal distribution) that occur in the context of a browse or batch process.

The StepClass requires that the data be traversed with a key. If you are traversing data without a key, you can track your progress simply by counting records, and no StepClass is needed.

StepClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass and ProcessClass optionally use the classes derived from the StepClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass or ProcessClass objects use a StepClass, then your program must instantiate a StepClass for each use.

The StepCustomClass, StepStringClass, StepLongClass, and StepRealClass are all derived from the StepClass. Each of these derived classes provides slightly different behaviors and characteristics.

StepCustomClass

Use the StepCustomClass when the data you are processing has an alphanumeric key with a skewed distribution.

StepStringClass

Use the StepStringClass when the data you are processing has an alphanumeric key with a normal distribution.

StepLongClass

Use the StepLongClass when the data you are processing has an integer key with a normal distribution.

StepRealClass

Use the StepRealClass when the data you are processing has a non-integer numeric key with a normal distribution.

StepClass ABC Template Implementation

Because the StepClass is abstract, the ABC Template generated code does not directly reference the StepClass--rather, it references classes derived from the StepClass.

StepClass Source Files

The StepClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The StepClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	StepClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	StepClass method definitions

StepClass Properties

The StepClass has a single property--Controls. This property is inherited by classes derived from StepClass. The Controls property is described below.

Controls (the StepClass sort sequence)

Controls BYTE

The **Controls** property contains a value that identifies for the StepClass object:

- the characters included in the sort sequence
- the direction of the sort (ascending or descending)

The Init method sets the value of the Controls property.

A StepClass object may be associated with a BrowseClass object sort order. The BrowseClass.AddSortOrder method sets the sort orders for a BrowseClass object.

Implementation: The Controls property is a single byte bitmap that contains several important pieces of information for the StepClass object. Set the value of the Controls property with the Init method.

See Also: Init, BrowseClass.AddSortOrder

StepClass Methods

GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepClass)

GetPercentile(*value*), VIRTUAL

GetPercentile Returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepClass object's boundaries.

value A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value for which to calculate the percentile.

The **GetPercentile** method returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

The GetPercentile method is a placeholder method for classes derived from StepClass--StepLongClass, StepRealClass, StepStringClass, StepCustomClass, etc.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: StepLongClass.GetPercentile, StepRealClass.GetPercentile, StepStringClass.GetPercentile, StepCustomClass.GetPercentile

GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepClass)**GetValue(*percentile*), VIRTUAL**

GetValue Returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepClass object's boundaries.

percentile An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the percentile for which to retrieve the value.

The **GetValue** method returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

The GetValue method is a placeholder method for classes derived from StepClass--StepLongClass, StepRealClass, StepStringClass, StepCustomClass, etc.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

See Also: StepLongClass.GetValue, StepRealClass.GetValue, StepStringClass.GetValue, StepCustomClass.GetValue

Init (initialize the StepClass object)**Init**(*controls*)

Init	Initializes the StepClass object.
<i>controls</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains several important pieces of information for the StepClass object.

The **Init** method initializes the StepClass object.

The *controls* parameter identifies for the StepClass object:

- the characters included in the sort sequence
- whether the key is case sensitive
- the direction of the sort (ascending or descending)

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the Controls property. Set the value of the Controls property by adding together the applicable EQUATEs declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(ScrollSort)
AllowAlpha    EQUATE(1)    !include characters ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AllowAlt      EQUATE(2)    !include characters `!"$%^&*()' '-=_+][#;~@:/.,? \ |
AllowNumeric  EQUATE(4)    !include characters 0123456789
CaseSensitive EQUATE(8)    !include characters abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
Descending    EQUATE(16)   !the sort is descending
END
```

Example:

```
MyStepClass.Init(ScrollSort:AllowAlpha+ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)
```

See Also: Controls

Kill (shut down the StepClass object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method is a virtual method to shut down the StepClass object.

The Kill method is a placeholder method for classes derived from StepClass-- StepStringClass, StepCustomClass, etc.

See Also: StepStringClass.Kill, StepCustomClass.Kill

SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepClass)**SetLimit(*lower*, *upper*), VIRTUAL**

SetLimit	Sets the StepClass object's upper and lower boundaries.
<i>lower</i>	A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepClass object's lower boundary. The value may be numeric or alphanumeric.
<i>upper</i>	A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepClass object's upper boundary. The value may be numeric or alphanumeric.

The **SetLimit** method sets the StepClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

The SetLimit method is a placeholder method for classes derived from StepClass--StepLongClass, StepRealClass, StepStringClass etc.

See Also: StepLongClass.SetLimit, StepRealClass.SetLimit, StepStringClass.SetLimit

SetLimitNeeded (return static/dynamic boundary flag:StepClass)**SetLimitNeeded, VIRTUAL**

The **SetLimitNeeded** method returns a value indicating whether the StepClass object's boundaries are static (set at compile time) or dynamic (set at runtime). A return value of one (1) indicates dynamic boundaries that may need to be reset when the monitored result set changes (records are added, deleted, or filtered). A return value of zero (0) indicates the boundaries are fixed at compile time (name or alpha distribution) and are not adjusted when the monitored result set changes.

The SetLimitNeeded method is a placeholder method for classes derived from StepClass, such as StepStringClass.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: StepStringClass.SetLimitNeeded

StepCustomClass

StepCustomClass Overview

The StepCustomClass is a StepClass that handles a numeric or alphanumeric key with a skewed distribution (data is not evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values). You can provide information about the data distribution so that the StepCustomClass object returns accurate feedback about the data being processed.

StepCustomClass Concepts

You can specify a custom data distribution for a StepCustomClass object that fits a specific data set (the other StepClass objects apply one of several predefined data distributions). Use the AddItem method to set the steps or distribution points for the StepCustomClass object.

For example, your CustomerKey may contain values ranging from 1 to 10,000, but 90 percent of the values fall between 9,000 and 10,000. If your StepClass object assumes the values are *evenly* distributed between 1 and 10,000 (StepLongClass with Runtime distribution), then your progress bars and vertical scroll bar thumbs will give a misleading visual representation of the data. However, if your StepClass object knows the actual data distribution (StepCustomClass object with 90 percent of the steps between 9,000 and 10,000), then your progress bars and vertical scroll bar thumbs will give an accurate visual representation of the data.

Tip: Use the StepLongClass for integer keys with normal distribution. Use the StepStringClass for alphanumeric keys with smooth or skewed distribution. Use the StepRealClass for fractional keys with normal distribution.

Use the StepCustomClass when the data (key) is skewed (data is not evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values), and the skew does not match any of the standard StepStringClass distribution options (see StepStringClass for more information).

StepCustomClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass and the ProcessClass optionally use the StepCustomClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass or ProcessClass uses the StepCustomClass, your program must instantiate the StepCustomClass for each use. See the Conceptual Example.

StepCustomClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates (BrowseBox, Process, and Report) automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to use the StepCustomClass with your BrowseBoxes, Reports, and Processes.

Process and Report Procedure Templates

By default, the Process and Report templates declare a StepStringClass, StepLongClass, or StepRealClass called ProgressMgr. However, you can use the **Report Properties** Classes tab (the **Progress Class** button) to declare a StepCustomClass (or derive from the StepCustomClass) instead. Similarly, you can use the **Process Properties** General tab (the **Progress Manager** button) to declare a StepCustomClass (or derive from the StepCustomClass). The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the ProgressMgr behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

If you specify a StepCustomClass object for a Process or Report procedure, you must embed calls to the AddItem method (ProgressMgr.AddItem) to set the custom "steps" or distribution points.

Browse Procedure and BrowseBox Control Templates

By default, the BrowseBox template declares a StepStringClass, StepLongClass, or StepRealClass called BRWn::Sort#:StepClass, where *n* is the BrowseBox template instance number, and # is the sort order sequence (identifies the key). You can use the BrowseBox's **Scroll Bar Behavior** dialog to specify a StepCustomClass and to set the custom "steps" or distribution points. You can use the **Step Class** button to derive from the StepCustomClass so you can modify the StepCustomClass behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

StepCustomClass Source Files

The StepCustomClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The StepCustomClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC
ABBROWSE.CLW

StepCustomClass declarations
StepCustomClass method definitions

StepCustomClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a BrowseClass object and related objects. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including searching, scrolling, and updating. When they are initialized properly, the BrowseClass and WindowManager objects do most of the work (default event handling) internally.

```

INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')
INCLUDE('ABREPORT.INC')

MAP
CustomerProcess  PROCEDURE
END

CustomerProcess  PROCEDURE

FilesOpened      BYTE
Thermometer      BYTE
Process:View     VIEW(Customer)
END

ProgressWindow  WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(,,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
                PROGRESS,USE(Thermometer),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
                STRING(''),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?UserString),CENTER
                STRING(''),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?PctText),CENTER
                BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42,50,15),USE(?Cancel)
END

ThisWindow CLASS(ReportManager)
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
END

ThisProcess  ProcessClass          !declare ThisProcess object
ProgressMgr  StepCustomClass       !declare ProgressMgr object
CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?Thermometer
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)

```

```

CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
Relate:Customer.Open
FilesOpened = True
OPEN(ProgressWindow)
SELF.Opened=True

ProgressMgr.Init(ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)  !initialize ProgressMgr object
                                           ! ignores inapplicable parameters
                                           !build skewed distribution steps
                                           !10% of customerids fall between 1 & 9000
LOOP i# = 1 TO 9000 BY 1000
    Step="i#"
    ProgressMgr.AddItem(Step")
END
LOOP i# = 9010 TO 10000 BY 11              !90% of customerids between 9000 & 10000
    Step="i#"
    ProgressMgr.AddItem(Step")
END

ThisProcess.Init(Process:View,Relate:Customer,?PctText,Thermometer,ProgressMgr,CUS:ID)
ThisProcess.AddSortOrder(CUS:CustomerIDKey)
SELF.Init(ThisProcess)
SELF.AddItem(?Progress:Cancel,RequestCancelled)
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
IF FilesOpened
    Relate:Customer.Close
END
RETURN ReturnValue

```

StepCustomClass Properties

The StepCustomClass inherits all the properties of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Properties* and *StepClass Concepts* for more information.

In addition to its inherited properties, the StepCustomClass also contains the following properties:

Entries (expected data distribution)

Entries &CStringList, PROTECTED

The **Entries** property is a reference to a structure containing the markers or boundaries that define the expected data distribution for the StepCustomClass object. This property defines the expected data distribution points (or steps), as well as the upper and lower boundaries the StepCustomClass object implements. This, plus the actual data distribution, ultimately determines how "far" the indicator (thumb or progress bar) actually moves as records are processed.

The AddItem method sets the value of the Entries property.

Implementation: The Entries property is a reference to a QUEUE declared in BROWSE.INC as follows:

```
CStringList  QUEUE,TYPE
Item         &CSTRING
            END
```

See Also: AddItem

StepCustomClass Methods

StepCustomClass Methods

The StepCustomClass inherits all the methods of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Concepts* and *StepClass Methods* for more information.

AddItem (add a step marker)

AddItem(*stepmarker*)

AddItem	Adds a step marker to the expected data distribution for the StepCustomClass object.
<i>stepmarker</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the next step boundary for each step of the StepCustomClass object's expected data distribution.

The **AddItem** method adds a step marker to the expected data distribution for the StepCustomClass object.

Implementation: The AddItem method sets the value of the Entries property.

Example:

```
GradeStepClass.AddItem('0')      !Failing:      0-65
GradeStepClass.AddItem('65')     !Below Average: 65-75
GradeStepClass.AddItem('75')     !Average:       75-85
GradeStepClass.AddItem('85')     !Better Than Average:85-95
GradeStepClass.AddItem('95')     !Outstanding:   95-
GradeStepClass.AddItem('1000')   !Catchall upper boundary
```

See Also: Entries

GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepCustomClass)**GetPercentile(*value*), VIRTUAL**

GetPercentile Returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepCustomClass object's boundaries.

value A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value for which to calculate the percentile.

The **GetPercentile** method returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepCustomClass object's "steps."

Implementation: The AddItem method sets the StepCustomClass object's steps.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?Locator                !focus on locator field
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted        !if accepted
    MyBrowse.TakeAcceptedLocator     !BrowseClass handles it
    ?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos}=MyStep.GetPercentile(Locator) !position thumb to match
  END
END
```

See Also: AddItem

GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepCustomClass)**GetValue(*percentile*), VIRTUAL**

GetValue Returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepCustomClass object's boundaries.

percentile An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the percentile for which to retrieve the value.

The **GetValue** method returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepCustomClass object's "steps."

Implementation: The AddItem method sets the StepCustomClass object's steps.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyList                                !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:ScrollDrag                      !if thumb moved
    Locator=MyStep.GetValue(?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos})!update locator to match
  END
END
```

See Also: AddItem

Init (initialize the StepCustomClass object)**Init**(*controls*)

Init	Initializes the StepCustomClass object.
<i>controls</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains several important pieces of information for the StepCustomClass object.

The **Init** method initializes the StepCustomClass object.

The *controls* identifies for the StepCustomClass object:

- the case sensitivity
- the direction of the sort (ascending or descending)

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the Controls property. Set the value of the Controls property by adding together the applicable EQUATEs declared in BROWSE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(ScrollSort)
CaseSensitive EQUATE(8)      !include abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
Descending    EQUATE(16)     !the sort is descending
END
```

Example:

```
MyStepCustomClass.Init(ScrollSort:CaseSensitive)
!program code
MyStepCustomClass.Kill
```

See Also: StepClass.Controls

Kill (shut down the StepCustomClass object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method frees memory allocated for the Custom property.

Example:

```
MyStepCustomClass.Init(ScrollSort:AllowAlpha+ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)
!program code
MyStepCustomClass.Kill
```

StepLongClass

StepLongClass Overview

The StepLongClass is a StepClass that handles integer keys with a normal distribution (data is evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values).

StepLongClass Concepts

The StepLongClass object applies a normal data distribution between its upper and lower boundaries. Use the SetLimit method to set the expected data distribution for the StepLongClass object.

Use the StepLongClass with integer keys that have a normal distribution (data is evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values).

Tip: Use the StepCustomClass for integer keys with other skews. Use the StepRealClass for non-integer numeric keys. Use the StepStringClass for alphanumeric keys.

StepLongClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass and the ProcessClass optionally use the StepLongClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass or ProcessClass uses the StepLongClass, your program must instantiate the StepLongClass for each use. See the Conceptual Example.

StepLongClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates (BrowseBox, Process, and Report) automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to use the StepLongClass with your BrowseBoxes, Reports, and Processes.

Process and Report Procedure Templates

By default, the Process and Report templates declare a StepLongClass for integer keys called ProgressMgr. You can use the **Report Properties** Classes tab (the **Progress Class** button) or the **Process Properties** General tab (the **Progress Manager** button) to derive from the StepLongClass instead. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the ProgressMgr behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Browse Procedure and BrowseBox Control Templates

By default, the BrowseBox template declares a StepLongClass for integer keys called BRWn::Sort#:StepClass, where *n* is the BrowseBox template instance number, and # is the sort order sequence (identifies the key). You can use the BrowseBox's **Scroll Bar Behavior** dialog--**Step Class** button to derive from the StepLongClass so you can modify the StepLongClass behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

StepLongClass Source Files

The StepLongClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The StepLongClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	StepLongClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	StepLongClass method definitions

StepLongClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a StepLongClass object and related objects. The example batch processes a Customer file on an integer key--CustomerID.

```

INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABREPORT.INC' )

MAP
CustomerProcess PROCEDURE
END

CustomerProcess PROCEDURE

FilesOpened      BYTE
Thermometer      BYTE
Process:View     VIEW(Customer)
END
ProgressWindow WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(,,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
    PROGRESS,USE(Thermometer),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
    STRING(' '),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?UserString),CENTER
    STRING(' '),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?PctText),CENTER
    BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42,50,15),USE(?Cancel)
END

ThisWindow      CLASS(ReportManager)
Init            PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill            PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
END

ThisProcess     ProcessClass      !declare ThisProcess object
ProgressMgr     StepLongClass     !declare ProgressMgr object

```

```
CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    SELF.FirstField = ?Thermometer
    SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
    SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
    CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
    CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
    Relate:Customer.Open
    FilesOpened = True
    OPEN(ProgressWindow)
    SELF.Opened=True
    ProgressMgr.Init(ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)    !initialize ProgressMgr object
                                                ! ignores inapplicable parameters
    ThisProcess.Init(Process:View,Relate:Customer,?PctText,Thermometer,ProgressMgr,CUS:ID)
    ThisProcess.AddSortOrder(CUS:CustomerIDKey)
    SELF.Init(ThisProcess)
    SELF.AddItem(?Progress:Cancel,RequestCancelled)
    SELF.SetAlerts()
    RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
    ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
    IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
    IF FilesOpened
        Relate:Customer.Close
    END
    RETURN ReturnValue
```

StepLongClass Properties

The StepLongClass inherits all the properties of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Properties* for more information.

In addition to its inherited properties, the StepLongClass also contains the following properties:

Low (lower boundary:StepLongClass)

Low LONG

The **Low** property contains the value of the StepLongClass object's lower boundary.

The SetLimit method sets the value of the Low property.

See Also: SetLimit

High (upper boundary:StepLongClass)

High LONG

The **High** property contains the value of the StepLongClass object's upper boundary.

The SetLimit method sets the value of the High property.

See Also: SetLimit

StepLongClass Methods

The StepLongClass inherits all the methods of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the StepLongClass contains the following methods:

GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepLongClass)

GetPercentile(*value*), VIRTUAL

GetPercentile Returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepLongClass object's boundaries.

value A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value for which to calculate the percentile.

The **GetPercentile** method returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepLongClass object's upper and lower boundaries. For example, if the bounds are 0 and 1000 then GetPercentile(750) returns 75.

Implementation: The SetLimit method sets the StepLongClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?Locator                                   !focus on locator field
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted                       !if accepted
    MyBrowse.TakeAcceptedLocator                   !BrowseClass handles it
    ?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos}=MyStep.GetPercentile(Locator) !position thumb to match
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLimit

GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepLongClass)**GetValue(*percentile*), VIRTUAL**

GetValue Returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepLongClass object's boundaries.

percentile An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the percentile for which to retrieve the value.

The **GetValue** method returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepLongClass object's upper and lower boundaries. For example, if the bounds are 0 and 1000 then GetValue(25) returns '250'.

Implementation: The SetLimit method sets the StepLongClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyList                                !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:ScrollDrag                      !if thumb moved
    Locator=MyStep.GetValue(?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos})!update locator to match
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLimit

SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepLongClass)**SetLimit(*lower*, *upper*), VIRTUAL**

SetLimit Sets the StepLongClass object's evenly distributed steps between *upper* and *lower*.*lower* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepLongClass object's lower boundary.*upper* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepLongClass object's upper boundary.

The **SetLimit** method sets the StepLongClass object's evenly distributed steps between *upper* and *lower*. The StepLongClass object (GetPercentile and GetValue methods) uses these steps to estimate key values and percentiles for the processed data.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.ResetThumbLimits (a PRIVATE method) and the ProcessClass.SetProgressLimits methods call the SetLimit method to calculate the expected data distribution for the data. The SetLimit method sets 100 evenly distributed "steps" or markers between *lower* and *upper*.

Example:

```
MyStep.SetLimit(1,9700)            !establish scrollbar steps and boundaries
```

See Also: GetPercentile, GetValue, ProcessClass.SetProgressLimits

StepLocatorClass

StepLocatorClass Overview

The StepLocatorClass is a LocatorClass that accepts a *single character* search value, and does a *continuous (wrap around) search* starting from the current item so you can, for example, find the next item that begins with the search value (say, 'T'), then continue to the next item that begins with the same search value, etc. If there are no matching values, the step locator proceeds the the next highest item.

Use a Step Locator when the search field is a STRING, CSTRING, or PSTRING, a single character search is sufficient (a step locator is not appropriate when there are many key values that begin with the same character), and you want the search to take place immediately upon the end user's keystroke. Step Locators are not appropriate for numeric keys.

StepLocatorClass Concepts

A Step Locator is a single-character locator with no locator control required.

The StepLocatorClass lets you specify a locator control and a sort field on which to search (the free key element) for a BrowseClass object. The BrowseClass object uses the StepLocatorClass to locate and scroll to the nearest matching item.

When the BrowseClass LIST has focus and the user types a character, the BrowseClass object advances the list to the next matching item (or the subsequent item if there is no match).

StepLocatorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass uses the StepLocatorClass to locate and scroll to the nearest matching item. Therefore, if your program's BrowseClass objects use a Step Locator, your program must instantiate the StepLocatorClass for each use. Once you register the StepLocatorClass object with the BrowseClass object (see BrowseClass.AddLocator), the BrowseClass object uses the StepLocatorClass object as needed, with no other code required. See the Conceptual Example.

StepLocatorClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC BrowseBox template generates code to instantiate the StepLocatorClass for your BrowseBoxes. The StepLocatorClass objects are called BRW*n*::Sort*#*:Locator, where *n* is the template instance number and *#* is the sort sequence (id) number. As this implies, you can have a different locator for each BrowseClass object sort order.

You can use the BrowseBox's **Locator Behavior** dialog (the **Locator Class** button) to derive from the EntryLocatorClass. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the locator's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

StepLocatorClass Source Files

The StepLocatorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The StepLocatorClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	StepLocatorClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	StepLocatorClass method definitions

StepLocatorClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a BrowseClass object and related objects, including a StepLocatorClass object. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including scrolling, updating, and locating records.

Note that the WindowManager and BrowseClass objects internally handle the normal events surrounding the locator.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')           !declare WindowManager class
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')           !declare BrowseClass and Locator
  MAP
  END
  State      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ST),THREAD
  StateCodeKey KEY(ST:STATECODE),NOCASE,OPT
  Record     RECORD,PRE()
  STATECODE  STRING(2)
  STATENAME  STRING(20)
  END
  END
  StView     VIEW(State)             !declare VIEW to process
  END
  StateQ     QUEUE                   !declare Q for LIST
  ST:STATECODE LIKE(ST:STATECODE)
  ST:STATENAME LIKE(ST:STATENAME)
  ViewPosition STRING(512)
  END
  Access:State CLASS(FileManager)   !declare Access:State object
  Init       PROCEDURE
  END
  Relate:State CLASS(RelationManager) !declare Relate:State object
  Init       PROCEDURE
  END
  VCRRequest LONG(0),THREAD
  StWindow WINDOW('Browse States'),AT(, ,123,152),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
  LIST,AT(8,5,108,124),USE(?StList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(StateQ),|
  FORMAT(' 27L(2)|M~CODE~@s2@80L(2)|M~STATENAME~@s20@')
  END

```

```

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)      !declare ThisWindow object
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
      END
BrowseSt  CLASS(BrowseClass)          !declare BrowseSt object
Q          &StateQ
      END
StLocator StepLocatorClass            !declare StLocator object
StStep    StepStringClass             !declare StStep object

CODE
ThisWindow.Run()                      !run the window procedure

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()           !initialize things
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()           !call base class init
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Init                     !initialize Relate:State object
SELF.FirstField = ?StList             !set FirstField for ThisWindow
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest        !VCRRequest not used
Relate:State.Open                     !open State and related files
!Init BrowseSt object by naming its LIST,VIEW,Q,RelationManager & WindowManager
BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
OPEN(StWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BrowseSt.Q &= StateQ                 !reference the browse QUEUE
StStep.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime)!initialize the StStep
object
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(StStep,ST:StateCodeKey)!set the browse sort order
BrowseSt.AddLocator(StLocator)        !plug in the browse locator
StLocator.Init(,ST:STATECODE,1,BrowseSt) !initialize the locator object
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATECODE,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATECODE) !set a column to browse
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATENAME,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATENAME) !set a column to browse
SELF.SetAlerts()                     !alert any keys for ThisWindow
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()           !shut down things
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()           !call base class shut down
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Close                   !close State and related files
Relate:State.Kill                    !shut down Relate:State object
GlobalErrors.Kill                    !shut down GlobalErrors object
RETURN ReturnValue

```

StepLocatorClass Properties

The StepLocatorClass inherits all the properties of the LocatorClass from which it is derived. See *LocatorClass Properties* for more information.

StepLocatorClass Methods

StepLocatorClass Methods

The StepLocatorClass inherits all the methods of the LocatorClass from which it is derived. See *LocatorClass Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the StepLocatorClass contains the following methods:

Set (restart the locator:StepLocatorClass)

Set, DERIVED

The **Set** method prepares the locator for a new search.

Implementation: The Set method does nothing because each new step locator search reprimed the locator's FreeElement--since the step locator is a single character search.

Example:

```
BrowseClass.SetSort PROCEDURE(BYTE B,BYTE Force)
CODE
IF SELF.SetSort(B)
  IF ~SELF.Sort.Locator &= NULL
    SELF.Sort.Locator.Set
  END
END
```

TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke:StepLocatorClass)**TakeKey, DERIVED**

The **TakeKey** method processes an alerted keystroke for the LIST control and returns a value indicating whether the browse list display must change.

Tip: By default, all alphanumeric keys are alerted for LIST controls.

Implementation: The TakeKey method primes the FreeElement property with the appropriate search value, then returns one (1) if a new search is required or returns zero (0) if no new search is required. A search is required only if the keystroke is a valid search character.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeKey()      ! process the search key
  SELF.Reset(1)                     ! if valid, reset the view
  SELF.ResetQueue( Reset:Done )     ! and the browse queue
END
```

See Also: FreeElement

StepRealClass

StepRealClass Overview

The StepRealClass is a StepClass that handles fractional (non-integer) keys with a normal distribution (data is evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values).

StepRealClass Concepts

The StepRealClass object applies a normal data distribution between its upper and lower boundaries. Use the SetLimit method to set the expected data distribution for the StepRealClass object. Use the StepRealClass with non-integer numeric keys that have a normal distribution (data is evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values).

Tip: Use the StepLongClass for integer numeric keys. Use the StepStringClass for alphanumeric keys. Use the StepCustomClass for keys with skewed distributions.

StepRealClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass and the ProcessClass optionally use the StepRealClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass or ProcessClass uses the StepRealClass, your program must instantiate the StepRealClass for each use. See the Conceptual Example.

StepRealClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates (BrowseBox, Process, and Report) automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to use the StepRealClass with your BrowseBoxes, Reports, and Processes.

Process and Report Procedure Templates

By default, the Process and Report templates declare a StepRealClass for fractional keys called ProgressMgr. You can use the **Report Properties** Classes tab (the **Progress Class** button) or the **Process Properties** General tab (the **Progress Manager** button) to derive from the StepRealClass instead. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the ProgressMgr behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Browse Procedure and BrowseBox Control Templates

By default, the BrowseBox template declares a StepRealClass for non-integer numeric keys called BRWn::Sort#:StepClass, where n is the BrowseBox template instance number, and # is the sort order sequence (identifies the key). You can use the BrowseBox's **Scroll Bar Behavior** dialog--**Step Class** button to derive from the StepRealClass so you can modify the StepRealClass behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

StepRealClass Source Files

The StepRealClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The StepRealClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	StepRealClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CWL	StepRealClass method definitions

StepRealClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a StepRealClass object and related objects. The example batch-processes a Customer file on a fractional (non-integer) key--CustomerID.

```

INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )
INCLUDE( 'ABREPORT.INC' )

MAP
CustomerProcess  PROCEDURE
END

CustomerProcess  PROCEDURE

FilesOpened      BYTE
Thermometer      BYTE
Process:View     VIEW(Customer)
                END
ProgressWindow  WINDOW('Progress...'),AT(,,142,59),CENTER,TIMER(1),GRAY,DOUBLE
                PROGRESS,USE(Thermometer),AT(15,15,111,12),RANGE(0,100)
                STRING(''),AT(0,3,141,10),USE(?UserString),CENTER
                STRING(''),AT(0,30,141,10),USE(?PctText),CENTER
                BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(45,42,50,15),USE(?Cancel)
                END

ThisWindow      CLASS(ReportManager)
Init            PROCEDURE( ),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill           PROCEDURE( ),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
                END

ThisProcess     ProcessClass          !declare ThisProcess object
ProgressMgr     StepRealClass         !declare ProgressMgr object

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue     BYTE,AUTO
CODE
```

```
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
SELF.FirstField = ?Thermometer
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
Relate:Customer.Open
FilesOpened = True
OPEN(ProgressWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
ProgressMgr.Init(ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)    !initialize ProgressMgr object
                                              ! ignores inapplicable parameters
ThisProcess.Init(Process:View,Relate:Customer,?PctText,Thermometer,ProgressMgr,CUS:ID)
ThisProcess.AddSortOrder(CUS:CustomerIDKey)
SELF.Init(ThisProcess)
SELF.AddItem(?Progress:Cancel,RequestCancelled)
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
  IF FilesOpened
    Relate:Customer.Close
  END
RETURN ReturnValue
```

StepRealClass Properties

StepRealClass Properties

The StepRealClass inherits all the properties of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Properties* for more information.

In addition to its inherited properties, the StepRealClass also contains the following properties:

Low (lower boundary:StepRealClass)

Low REAL

The **Low** property contains the value of the StepRealClass object's lower boundary.

The SetLimit method sets the value of the Low property.

See Also: SetLimit

High (upper boundary:StepRealClass)

High REAL

The **High** property contains the value of the StepRealClass object's upper boundary.

The SetLimit method sets the value of the High property.

See Also: SetLimit

StepRealClass Methods

StepRealClass Methods

The `StepRealClass` inherits all the methods of the `StepClass` from which it is derived. See *StepClass Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the `StepRealClass` contains the following methods:

GetPercentile (return a value's percentile:StepRealClass)

GetPercentile(*value*), VIRTUAL

GetPercentile	Returns the specified <i>value</i> 's percentile relative to the StepRealClass object's boundaries.
----------------------	---

<i>value</i>	A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value for which to calculate the percentile.
--------------	---

The **GetPercentile** method returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepRealClass object's upper and lower boundaries. For example, if the bounds are 0 and 1000 then GetPercentile(750) returns 75.

Implementation: The SetLimit method sets the StepRealClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Example:

```

IF FIELD() = ?Locator           !focus on locator field
IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted     !if accepted
  MyBrowse.TakeAcceptedLocator  !BrowseClass handles it
  ?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos}=MyStep.GetPercentile(Locator) !position thumb to match
END
END

```

See Also: [SetLimit](#)

GetValue (return a percentile's value:StepRealClass)**GetValue(*percentile*), VIRTUAL**

GetValue Returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepRealClass object's boundaries.

percentile An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the percentile for which to retrieve the value.

The **GetValue** method returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepRealClass object's upper and lower boundaries. For example, if the bounds are 0 and 1000 then GetValue(25) returns '250'.

Implementation: The SetLimit method sets the StepRealClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyList           !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:ScrollDrag !if thumb moved
    Locator=MyStep.GetValue(?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos})!update locator to match
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLimit

SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepRealClass)**SetLimit**(*lower*, *upper*), VIRTUAL

SetLimit Sets the StepRealClass object's evenly distributed steps between *upper* and *lower*.*lower* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepRealClass object's lower boundary.*upper* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepRealClass object's upper boundary.

The **SetLimit** method sets the StepRealClass object's evenly distributed steps between *upper* and *lower*. The StepRealClass object (GetPercentile and GetValue methods) uses these steps to estimate key values and percentiles for the processed data.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.ResetThumbLimits (a PRIVATE method) and the ProcessClass.SetProgressLimits methods call the SetLimit method to calculate the expected data distribution for the data. The SetLimit method sets 100 evenly distributed "steps" or markers between *lower* and *upper*.

Example:

```
MyStep.SetLimit(1,9700)      !establish scrollbar steps and boundaries
```

See Also: GetPercentile, GetValue, ProcessClass.SetProgressLimits

StepStringClass

StepStringClass Overview

The StepStringClass is a StepClass that handles alphanumeric keys with a normal distribution (data is evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values) or with English Alphabet or US Surname distribution. You can provide information about the data distribution so that the StepStringClass object returns accurate feedback about the data being processed.

StepStringClass Concepts

You can set the expected data distribution for a StepStringClass object--the StepStringClass object applies one of several predefined data distributions. Use the Init and SetLimit methods to set the expected data distribution for the StepStringClass object.

For example, your NameKey may contain US Surname values ranging from 'Aabel' to 'Zuger.' If your StepClass assumes the values are evenly distributed between these values, then your progress bars and vertical scroll bar thumbs will give an inaccurate visual representation of the data. However, if your StepClass assumes a typical US Surname distribution, then your progress bars and vertical scroll bar thumbs will give an accurate visual representation of the data.

Use the StepStringClass with alphanumeric keys that have a normal distribution (data is evenly distributed between the lowest and highest key values) or with English Alphabet or US Surname distribution.

Tip: Use the StepLongClass for integer keys with normal distribution. Use the StepRealClass for fractional keys with normal distribution. Use the StepCustomClass for numeric or alphanumeric keys with skewed distribution.

StepStringClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass and the ProcessClass optionally use the StepStringClass. Therefore, if your BrowseClass or ProcessClass uses the StepStringClass, your program must instantiate the StepStringClass for each use. See the Conceptual Example.

StepStringClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates (BrowseBox, Process, and Report) automatically include all the classes and generate all the code necessary to use the StepStringClass with your BrowseBoxes, Reports, and Processes.

Process and Report Procedure Templates

By default, the Process and Report templates declare a StepStringClass for alphanumeric keys called ProgressMgr. You can use the **Report Properties** Classes tab (the **Progress Class** button) or the **Process Properties** General tab (the **Progress Manager** button) to derive from the StepStringClass instead. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the ProgressMgr behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

Browse Procedure and BrowseBox Control Templates

By default, the BrowseBox template declares a StepStringClass for alphanumeric keys called BRWn::Sort#:StepClass, where *n* is the BrowseBox template instance number, and # is the sort order sequence (identifies the key). You can use the BrowseBox's **Scroll Bar Behavior** dialog to specify the expected data distribution (normal distribution, English alphabet, or US surname). You can use the **Step Class** button to derive from the StepStringClass so you can modify the StepStringClass behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

StepStringClass Source Files

The StepStringClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The StepStringClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABBROWSE.INC	StepStringClass declarations
ABBROWSE.CLW	StepStringClass method definitions

StepStringClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a StepStringClass object and related objects. The example initializes and page-loads a LIST, then handles a number of associated events, including scrolling.

The StepStringClass object's steps are calculated based on the poles of the actual browsed data-a list of State abbreviations.

```

PROGRAM
INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )           !declare WindowManager class
INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )           !declare BrowseClass & StepClasses
MAP
END

State      FILE,DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ),PRE( ST ),THREAD
StateCodeKey KEY( ST:STATECODE ),NOCASE,OPT
Record      RECORD,PRE( )
STATECODE   STRING( 2 )
STATENAME   STRING( 20 )
            END
            END

StView      VIEW( State )            !declare VIEW to process
            END

StateQ       QUEUE                  !declare Q for LIST
ST:STATECODE LIKE( ST:STATECODE )
ST:STATENAME LIKE( ST:STATENAME )
ViewPosition STRING( 512 )
            END

GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:State CLASS( FileManager )
Init          PROCEDURE
            END
Relate:State  CLASS( RelationManager )
Init          PROCEDURE
            END
VCRRequest   LONG( 0 ),THREAD

StWindow WINDOW( 'Browse States' ),AT( , ,123,152 ),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
LIST,AT( 8,5,108,124 ),USE( ?StList ),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM( StateQ ),|
FORMAT( ' 27L( 2 ) |M~CODE~@s2@80L( 2 ) |M~STATENAME~@s20@' )
BUTTON( '&Insert' ),AT( 8,133 ),USE( ?Insert )
BUTTON( '&Change' ),AT( 43,133 ),USE( ?Change ),DEFAULT
BUTTON( '&Delete' ),AT( 83,133 ),USE( ?Delete )

```

```

        END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
        END

BrowseSt  CLASS(BrowseClass)          !declare BrowseSt object
Q         &StateQ
        END

StStep    StepStringClass             !declare StStep object

CODE
ThisWindow.Run()                      !run the window procedure

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()           !initialize things
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:State.Init
SELF.FirstField = ?StList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
Relate:State.Open
BrowseSt.Init(?StList,StateQ.ViewPosition,StView,StateQ,Relate:State,SELF)
OPEN(StWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BrowseSt.Q &= StateQ
StStep.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime)!initialize the StStep object
BrowseSt.AddSortOrder(StStep,ST:StateCodeKey)      ! & plug in to the BrowseSt
                ! BrowseSt calls SetLimit to
                ! calculate data distribution
                ! from the poles of the data
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATECODE,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATECODE)
BrowseSt.AddField(ST:STATENAME,BrowseSt.Q.ST:STATENAME)
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()           !shut down things
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
IF ReturnValue THEN RETURN ReturnValue.
Relate:State.Close
Relate:State.Kill

```

```
GlobalErrors.Kill  
RETURN ReturnValue
```

```
Access:State.Init PROCEDURE  
CODE  
PARENT.Init(State,GlobalErrors)  
SELF.FileNameValue = 'State'  
SELF.Buffer &= ST:Record  
SELF.AddKey(ST:StateCodeKey,'ST:StateCodeKey',0)
```

```
Relate:State.Init PROCEDURE  
CODE  
Access:State.Init  
PARENT.Init(Access:State,1)
```

StepStringClass Properties

The StepStringClass inherits all the properties of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Properties* for more information. In addition to its inherited properties, the StepStringClass also contains the following properties:

LookupMode (expected data distribution)

LookupMode BYTE

The **LookupMode** property sets the *expected* data distribution the StepStringClass object implements. This, plus the *actual* data distribution, ultimately determines how "far" the indicator (scrollbar thumb or progress bar) actually moves as records are processed. The Init method sets the value of the LookupMode property.

Implementation: Valid data distribution options are U.S. surnames, English alphabet, and runtime data distribution calculated from the poles of the actual data. Corresponding LookupMode EQUATEs are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(ScrollBy)
Name      EQUATE  !U.S. surnames distribution
Alpha     EQUATE  !English alphabet distribution
Runtime   EQUATE  !calculate distribution from runtime poles
END
```

The U.S. surnames and English alphabet data distributions are defined in ABBROWSE.CLW as follows:

```
Scroll:Alpha STRING(' AFANATB BFBNBTC CFCNCT'|
    &'D DFDNDTE EFENETF FFFNFT'|
    &'G GFGNGTH HFHNHTI IFINIT'|
    &'J JFJNJTK KFKNKTL LFLNLT'|
    &'M MFMNMTN NFNNNTN OFONOT'|
    &'P PFPNPTQ QNR RFRNRTS SF'|
    &'SNSTT TFTNTTU UFUNUTV VF'|
    &'VNVTV WFWNWTX XFXNXTY YF'|
    &'YNYTZ ZN')
Scroll:Name STRING(' ALBAMEARNBAKBATBENBIABOBBRA'|
    &'BROBUACACCARCENCHRCONCORCRU'|
    &'DASDELDIADONDURELDEVEFELFISFLO'|
    &'FREFUTGARGIBGOLGOSGREGUTHAMHEM'|
    &'HOBHOTINGJASJONKAGKEAKIRKORKYO'|
    &'LATLEOLIGLOUMACMAQMARMAUMCKMER'|
    &'MILMONMORNATNOLOKEPAGPAUPETPIN'|
    &'PORPULRAUREYROBROSUBSALSASCASCH'|
    &'SCRSHASIGSKISNASOUSTESTISUNTAY'|
    &'TIRTUCVANWACWASWEIWIWIMWOLYOR')
```

See Also: Init

Root (the static portion of the step)

Root &CSTRING, PROTECTED

The **Root** property is a reference to a structure containing the static or non-determinative characters of a step. For example, if the step bounds are 'abbey' and 'abracadabra' then Root contains 'ab'. The related property TestLen is equal to the length of Root, that is, 2.

Implementation: The GetPercentile and GetValue methods use the Root and TestLen properties to efficiently traverse the defined steps.

See Also: GetPercentile, GetValue, TestLen

SortChars (valid sort characters)

SortChars &CSTRING

The **SortChars** property is a reference to a structure containing the valid sort characters for the StepStringClass object. The StepStringClass object uses the SortChars property to compute steps. For example if SortChars contains only 'ABYZ' then that is the information the StepStringClass uses to compute your steps.

The Init method sets the value of the SortChars property.

Implementation: The SortChars property only affects StepStringClass objects with a LookupMode specifying runtime data distribution. The SetLimit method computes the runtime data distribution.

See Also: Init, LookupMode, SetLimit

TestLen (length of the static step portion)

TestLen **BYTE, PROTECTED**

The **TestLen** property contains the length of the Root property. For example, if the step bounds are 'abbey' and 'abracadabra' then Root contains 'ab'. The related property TestLen is equal to the length of Root, that is, 2.

The Init method sets the value of the TestLen property.

Implementation: The GetPercentile and GetValue methods use the Root and TestLen properties to efficiently traverse the defined steps.

The value of the TestLen property depends on the value of the LookupMode property. LookupMode of U.S. surnames uses TestLen of 3, English alphabet uses TestLen of 2, and runtime data distribution uses TestLen of 4.

See Also: Init, LookupMode, Root

StepStringClass Methods

The StepStringClass inherits all the methods of the StepClass from which it is derived. See *StepClass Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the StepStringClass contains the following methods:

GetPercentile (return a value's percentile)

GetPercentile(*value*), VIRTUAL

GetPercentile Returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepStringClass object's boundaries.

value A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value for which to calculate the percentile.

The **GetPercentile** method returns the specified *value*'s percentile relative to the StepStringClass object's upper and lower boundaries. For example, if the bounds are 'A' and 'Z' then GetPercentile('M') returns 50.

Implementation: The SetLimit method sets the StepStringClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?Locator                    !focus on locator field
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:Accepted           !if accepted
    MyBrowse.TakeAcceptedLocator        !BrowseClass handles it
    ?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos}=MyStep.GetPercentile(Locator) !position thumb to match
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLimit

GetValue (return a percentile's value)**GetValue(*percentile*), VIRTUAL**

GetValue Returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepStringClass object's boundaries.

percentile An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the percentile for which to retrieve the value.

The **GetValue** method returns the specified *percentile*'s value relative to the StepStringClass object's upper and lower boundaries. For example, if the bounds are 'A' and 'Z' then GetValue(50) returns 'M'.

Implementation: The SetLimit method sets the StepStringClass object's upper and lower boundaries.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
IF FIELD() = ?MyList                !focus on browse list
  IF EVENT() = EVENT:ScrollDrag      !if thumb moved
    Locator=MyStep.GetValue(?MyList{PROP:VScrollPos})!update locator to match
  END
END
```

See Also: SetLimit

Init (initialize the StepStringClass object)**Init**(*controls*, *mode*)

Init	Initializes the StepStringClass object.
<i>controls</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains several important pieces of information for the StepClass object.
<i>mode</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that determines the data distribution points (or steps) the StepStringClass object implements.

The **Init** method initializes the StepStringClass object.

The *controls* parameter identifies for the StepClass object:

- the characters included in the calculated runtime distribution
- whether the key is case sensitive
- the direction of the sort (ascending or descending)

A *mode* parameter value of ScrollBy:Name gives U.S. surname distribution, ScrollBy:Alpha gives English alphabet distribution, and ScrollBy:Runtime gives a smooth data distribution from the poles of the actual data, as calculated by the SetLimit method.

Implementation: The Init method sets the value of the Controls and LookupMode properties. Set the value of the Controls property by adding together the applicable EQUATES declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(ScrollSort)
AllowAlpha EQUATE(1) !include ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
AllowAlt EQUATE(2) !include `!"#$%^&*()' '-=_+][#;~@:/.,? \ |
AllowNumeric EQUATE(4) !include 0123456789
CaseSensitive EQUATE(8) !include abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
Descending EQUATE(16) !the sort is descending
```

EQUATES for the *mode* parameter are declared in ABBROWSE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(ScrollBy)
Name EQUATE !US Surname distribution
Alpha EQUATE !English alphabet distribution
Runtime EQUATE !calculate normal distribution from data poles
END
```

Example:

```
MyStepStringClass.Init(ScrollSort:AllowAlpha+ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)
!program code
MyStepStringClass.Kill
```

See Also: StepClass.Controls, LookupMode, SetLimit

Kill (shut down the StepStringClass object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method frees memory allocated for the Ref, Root, and SortChars properties.

Example:

```
MyStepStringClass.Init(ScrollSort:AllowAlpha+ScrollSort:AllowNumeric)
!program code
MyStepStringClass.Kill
```

SetLimit (set smooth data distribution:StepStringClass)**SetLimit(*lower*, *upper*), VIRTUAL**

SetLimit Sets the StepStringClass object's evenly distributed steps between *upper* and *lower*.*lower* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepStringClass object's lower boundary. The value may be numeric or alphanumeric.*upper* A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the StepStringClass object's upper boundary. The value may be numeric or alphanumeric.

The **SetLimit** method sets the StepStringClass object's evenly distributed steps between *upper* and *lower*. The StepStringClass object (GetPercentile and GetValue methods) uses these steps to estimate key values and percentiles for the processed data.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.ResetThumbLimits (a PRIVATE method) and the ProcessClass.SetProgressLimits methods call the SetLimit method to calculate the expected data distribution for the data. The SetLimit method sets 100 evenly distributed "steps" or markers between *lower* and *upper*. SetLimit considers the Controls property (as set by the Init method) when calculating the expected data distribution.

Example:

```
MyStep.SetLimit('A','Z')      !establish uppercase alphabetic scrollbar limits
```

See Also: GetPercentile, GetValue, Init, ProcessClass.SetProgressLimits, StepClass.Controls

SetLimitNeeded (return static/dynamic boundary flag:StepStringClass)**SetLimitNeeded, VIRTUAL**

The **SetLimitNeeded** method returns a value indicating whether the StepClass object's steps and boundaries are static (set at compile time) or dynamic (set at runtime). A return value of one (1) indicates dynamic boundaries that may need to be reset when the monitored result set changes (records are added, deleted, or filtered). A return value of zero (0) indicates the boundaries are fixed at compile time (name or alpha distribution) and are not adjusted when the monitored result set changes.

Implementation: The SetLimitNeeded method returns one (1 or True) if the LookupMode property equals ScrollBy:RunTime; otherwise it returns zero (0 or False).

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

BrowseClass.ResetThumbLimits PROCEDURE
HighValue ANY
CODE
  IF SELF.Sort.Thumb &= NULL OR ~SELF.Sort.Thumb.SetLimitNeeded()
    RETURN
  END
  SELF.Reset
  IF SELF.Previous()
    RETURN
  END
  HighValue = SELF.Sort.FreeElement
  SELF.Reset
  IF SELF.Next()
    RETURN
  END
  SELF.Sort.Thumb.SetLimit(SELF.Sort.FreeElement,HighValue)

```

See Also: StepClass.SetLimitNeeded

TagHTMLHelp Class

TagHTMLHelpOverview

HTML Help is emerging as the new standard help file format. HTML Help is distributed in a single (.chm) file. This file is compressed and made from several .html files. All images, table of contents, index, and search files are compiled into this single .chm file. This makes for easier distribution of your help system.

HTML Help is available on any 32-bit windows platform, Windows 95/98, Windows 2000, and NT 4. On Windows 95 and NT 4, the HTML Help Display Engine, Internet Explorer 4.0 or later, or Microsoft Office 2000 must be installed on the user's system.

TagHTMLHelp Class Concepts

Clarion's HTML Help implementation is a DLL that communicates with the Microsoft HTML System. The DLL is accessed by the TagHTMLHelp Class. Clarion's HTML Help intercepts the call to the Windows Help system when the F1 key is pressed. These calls are re-directed to the HTML Help System. There are several templates available which make the HTML Help system easily accessible from your Clarion program. Accessing Topics, Table of Contents, Indexing, Searching, Keywords, and Hyperlinks are a snap.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The TagHTMLHelp class works independently of all other ABC classes.

TagHTMLHelp ABC Template Implementation

Once the cwHH global template extension is added to the application, the templates instantiate a TagHTMLHelp object into the generated code for the main procedure of the application. This is also where the TagHTMLHelp object is initialized.

TagHTMLHelp Source Files

The TagHTMLHelp class declarations are installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The TagHTMLHelp component is distributed as a LIB/DLL, therefore the source code for the methods is not available. However, the methods are defined in this chapter and may be implemented in applications provided the required LIB/DLL is available at runtime.

cwHH.INC	Help Class Definition
cwHHL.INC	Help Class Definition Local Compile
cwHH60.dll	Help DLL
cwHH60.lib	Help LIB
cwHHL.lib	Help Local LIB

TagHTMLHelp Methods

The TagHTMLHelp class contains the following methods.

AlinkLookup (associative link lookup)

AlinkLookup(*keywords*, | *messagetext*, *messagetitle* |)

AlinkLookup	Look up one or more Associative link (Alink) names within a compiled help (.chm) file.
<i>keywords</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the Associative link (<i>keyword</i>) to search for. Multiple keywords can be used by concatenating them with semicolons (;).
<i>messagetext</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the message to display in a message box if the Alink is not found.
<i>messagetitle</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the title of the message box dialog.

The **AlinkLookup** method looks up one or more Associative link (Alink) names within a compiled help (.chm) file. Associative links are used to link related help topics to each other. When a link that contains an Alink is clicked, a popup window appears with the list of related topics.

Example:

```
oHH.AlinkLookup(sSearch,sMsg,sTitle )!Find sSearch Alink
```


CloseHelp (close HTML help file)**CloseHelp**

The **CloseHelp** method closes any Help windows opened by the application.

Example:

```
oHH.CloseHelp()!Close all Help windows
```

GetHelpFile (get help file name)**GetHelpFile**

The **GetHelpFile** method retrieves the current HTML Help (.chm) file name. The file name is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
sHelpFileName =oHH.GetHelpFile()!Get Help file name
```

GetTopic (get current topic name)**GetTopic**

The **GetTopic** method retrieves the current HTML Help topic name. The topic name is returned.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
sHelpFileName =oHH.GetTopic()!Get topic name
```

Init (initialize HTML Help object)

Init(*helpfile*, [*keycode*])

AlinkLookup	Look up one or more Associative link (Alink) names within a compiled help (.chm) file.
<i>helpfile</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the help file name. This should be enclosed in single quotes.
<i>keycode</i>	A numeric keycode or keycode EQUATE. If omitted, the default value is 123, F12Key. Keycode equates can be found in KEYCODES.CLW.

The **Init** method initializes the TagHTMLHelp object and opens the specified help file. This method also aliases the F1 key to the F12 (keycode 123) key by default in order for the rest of the methods to be able to check for this keystroke. If F12 is used by some other function in the application this may be changed to whatever keystroke is unused in the application.

Example:

```
oHH.Init( 'cwhh.chm' )
```

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

KeyWordLookup (lookup keyword)

KeyWordLookup(*keywords*, | *messagetext*, *messagetitle* |)

KeyWordLookup Look up one or more keywords.

keywords A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the Associative link (*keyword*) to search for. Multiple keywords can be used by concatenating them with semicolons (;).

messagetext A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the message to display in a message box if the Alink is not found.

messagetitle A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the title of the message box dialog.

The **KeyWordLookup** method looks up Keywords within a compiled help (.chm) file. Keywords are a collection of words and phrases that make up the help file's index. They are used to find specific help topics.

Example:

```
oHH.KeyWordLookUp( 'Demo' )
```

Kill (shutdown the TagHTMLHelp object)

Kill

The **Kill** method shuts down the TagHTMLHelp object by freeing any memory used during the life of the object.

Example:

```
oHH.Kill()
```

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

SetHelpFile (set the current HTML Help file name)**SetHelpFile**(*helpfile*)**SetHelpFile**

Set the HTML Help file name.

helpfile

A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the help file name. This should be enclosed in single quotes.

The **SetHelpFile** method sets the name of the current compiled HTML help file (.chm) that the application will use

Example:

```
oHH.SetHelpFile('Demo.chm ' ) !Set help file name for application
```

SetTopic (set the current HTML Help file topic)**SetTopic**(*iControl* [, *topic*]

SetTopic	Set the HTML Help file topic.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number (FEQ).
<i>topic</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a help file topic. This should be enclosed in single quotes.

The **SetTopic** method sets the current topic name. This should be set before displaying the topic. To tie a help topic to load when a specific control has focus, specify an optional *control* value. To specify a help topic use the 'SectionName/PageName.htm' naming convention. If the topic page is in the default section you simply use 'PageName.htm'. Remember that when using the Section/Page convention, the slash is a forward slash.

Example:

```
oHH.SetTopic( 'Class_Interface/Class_Interface.htm' )  
oHH.SetTopic( ?OKButton, 'myform/ok.htm' ) .
```

ShowIndex (open the HTML Help index tab)**ShowIndex**(*keyword*)

ShowIndex	Open HTML Help index tab.
<i>keyword</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the keyword to search for. The keyword should be enclosed in single quotes.

The **ShowIndex** method opens the Index tab in the Navigation pane of the HTML Help Viewer and searches for the keyword, if specified.

Example:

```
oHH.ShowIndex()!Opens Index tab  
oHH.ShowIndex('Demo ' )!Opens Index tab and searches for keyword
```

ShowSearch (open the HTML Help search tab)

ShowSearch

The **ShowSearch** method opens the Search tab in the Navigation pane of the HTML Help Viewer.

Example:

```
oHH.ShowSearch( )
```

ShowTOC (open the HTML Help contents tab)

ShowTOC

The **ShowTOC** method opens the Contents tab in the Navigation pane of the HTML Help Viewer.

Example:

```
oHH.ShowTOC( )
```

ShowTopic (display a help topic)

ShowTopic(*topic*)

ShowTopic

topic

Display the HTML Help file topic.

A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a help file topic. This should be enclosed in single quotes.

The **ShowTopic** method displays the help topic specified by the SetTopic method. If a *topic* is specified it will override the current topic name, however after the call to display the topic, the default topic name is still the default. This method does not change the default topic name.

Example:

```
oHH.ShowTopic( )
```

TextWindowClass

TextWindowClass Overview

The TextWindowClass is a Class that manages a Window that is used for the editing of EIP memo and large string fields.

TextWindowClass Concepts

The TextWindowClass manages a window (TxtWindow) that is defined in ABEIP.CLW. This window contains a TEXT control along with OK and Cancel buttons.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The TextWindowClass is derived from the WindowManager class. It manages the opening and closing of a special text window. This text window is where the memo or large string can be edited. The class also provides a method to handle the OK and Cancel buttons.

The TextWindowClass is instantiated within the EditTextClass.TakeEvent method. When the user presses the ellipsis button to edit the text, the special window is initiated.

ABC Template Implementation

If the EditTextClass is used to allow special Edit-in-Place editing of memos or large string fields, the TextWindow class is automatically generated. This class manages the window that opens when the user presses the ellipsis button on the special EIP Combo control.

TextWindowClass Source Files

The TextWindowClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific TextWindowClass source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABEIP.INC	TextWindowClass declarations
ABEIP.CLW	TextWindowClass method definitions

TextWindowClass Properties

The TextWindowClass inherits all the properties of the WindowManager from which it is derived.

In addition to the inherited properties, the TextWindowClass contains the following properties:

SeIE (ending edit position)

SeIE **UNSIGNED, AUTO**

The **SeIE** property identifies the ending edit position (character) in a TEXT control.

Implementation: The SeIE property value is initialized in the TextWindowClass.Init method.

See Also: TextWindowClass.Init

SeIS (starting edit position)

SeIS **UNSIGNED, AUTO**

The **SeIS** property identifies the starting edit position (character) in a TEXT control.

Implementation: The SeIS property value is initialized in the TextWindowClass.Init method.

See Also: TextWindowClass.Init

Txt (field equate number)

Txt **ANY, AUTO**

The **Txt** property is the field equate number (FEQ) of the TEXT control holding the data available for edit.

Implementation: The Txt property is initialized in the TextWindowClass.Init method.

See Also: TextWindowClass.Init

TextWindowClass Methods

The TextWindowClass inherits all the methods of the WindowManager class from which it is derived.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the TextWindowClass contains the following methods:

Init (initialize TextWindow object)

Init(*entryFEQ*, *title*)
Init, **DERIVED**, **PROC**

Init	Initializes and opens the special Text window.
<i>entryFEQ</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that represents the field number (FEQ) of the text control.
<i>title</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that sets the title bar text in the dialog containing the text control.

The **Init** method initializes and opens the special Text window. A Level:Benign is returned from this method.

Implementation: The EditTextClass.TakeEvent method calls the TextWindowClass.Init method and initiates the ACCEPT loop for the text window.

Return Data Type: **BYTE** for Init, DERIVED, PROC prototype

See Also: EditTextClass.TakeEvent

Kill (shutdown TextWindow object)

Kill, **DERIVED**, **PROC**

The **Kill** method closes the Text window and updates the control with the new value. It also disposes any memory allocated during the object's lifetime by calling the PARENT.KILL method. KILL returns a value to indicate the status of the shutdown.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

TakeAccepted (process window controls)**TakeAccepted, PROC, DERIVED**

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted for the OK and Cancel button controls. TakeAccepted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; Level:Notify is returned to indicate processing is complete for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; Level:Fatal is returned to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method calls the WindowManager.SetResponse to register the methods' result (complete or cancelled) and triggers the normal procedure shutdown.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: WindowManager.SetReponse

ToolBarClass

ToolBarClass Overview

ToolBarClass and ToolbarTarget objects work together to reliably "convert" an event associated with a toolbar button into an appropriate event associated with a specific control or window.

ToolBarClass objects communicate with zero or more ToolbarTarget objects. Each ToolbarTarget object is associated with a specific entity, such as a browse list, relation tree, or update form. The ToolbarClass object forwards events and method calls to the *active* ToolbarTarget object. Only one target is active at a time.

This lets you use a single toolbar to drive a variety of targets, such as update forms, browse lists, relation tree lists, etc. A single toolbar can even drive multiple targets (two or more BrowseBoxes) in a single procedure.

ToolBarClass Concepts

Within an MDI application, the ToolbarClass and ToolbarTarget work together to reliably interpret and pass an event (EVENT:Accepted) associated with a toolbar button into an event associated with a specific control or window. For example, the end user CLICKS on a toolbar button (say the "Insert" button) on the MDI application frame. The frame procedure forwards the event to the active thread (`POST(EVENT:Accepted,ACCEPTED(),SYSTEM{Prop:Active})`). The active thread (procedure) manages a window that displays two LIST controls, and one of the LISTs has focus. This procedure has a ToolbarClass object plus a ToolbarTarget object for each LIST control. The ToolbarClass object takes the event (ToolBarClass.TakeEvent)₁ and forwards the event to the *active* ToolbarTarget object (the target that represents the LIST with focus). The ToolbarTarget object takes the event (ToolBarListBoxClass.TakeEvent) and handles it by posting an appropriate event to a specific control or to the window, for example:

```
POST(EVENT:ACCEPTED,SELF.InsertButton) !insert a record
POST(EVENT:PageDown,SELF.Control)      !scroll a LIST
POST(EVENT:Completed)                   !complete an update form
POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)                  !select a record
etc.
```

!If the procedure has a WindowManager object, the WindowManager object takes the event (WindowManager.TakeEvent) and forwards it to the ToolbarClass object (WindowManager.TakeAccepted).

ToolBarClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

ToolBarTarget

The ToolbarClass object keeps a list of ToolbarTarget objects so it can forward events and method calls to a particular target. Each ToolbarTarget object is associated with a specific entity,

such as a browse list, relation tree, or update form. At present, the ABC Library has three classes derived from the ToolbarTarget:

ToolbarListboxClass	BrowseClass toolbar target
ToolbarReltreeClass	Reltree control toolbar target
ToolbarUpdateClass	Form procedure toolbar target

These ToolbarTarget objects implement the event handling specific to the associated entity. There may be zero or more ToolbarTarget objects within a procedure; however, *only one is active* at a time. The SetTarget method sets the active ToolbarTarget object.

BrowseClass and WindowManager

The WindowManager optionally uses the ToolbarClass, as does the BrowseClass. Therefore, if your program uses a WindowManager or BrowseClass object, it may also need the ToolbarClass. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the WindowManager or BrowseClass headers (ABWINDOW.INC and ABBROWSE.INC) in your program's data section. See the Conceptual Example.

ToolBarClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC procedure templates instantiate a ToolbarClass object called Toolbar within each procedure containing a template that asks for global toolbar control--that is, the BrowseBox template, the FormVCRControls template, and the RelationTree template.

The templates generate code to instantiate the ToolbarClass object and to register the ToolbarClass object with the WindowManager object. You may see code such as the following in your template-generated procedures.

```
Toolbar      ToolbarClass      !declare Toolbar object
CODE
!
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE
    SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)                !register Toolbar with WindowManager
    BRW1.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)       !register BrowseClass as target
    Toolbar.AddTarget(REL1::Toolbar,?RelTree) !register RelTree as target
    SELF.AddItem(ToolbarForm)            !register update form as target
```

The WindowManager and BrowseClass are both programmed to use ToolbarClass objects. Therefore most of the interaction between these objects is encapsulated within the Application Builder Class code, and is only minimally reflected in the ABC Template generated code.

ToolBar Class Source Files

The ToolbarClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The ToolbarClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABTOOLBA.INC	ToolBarClass declarations
ABTOOLBA.CLW	ToolBarClass method definitions

ToolbarClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ToolbarClass object and related ToolbarTarget objects.

This example uses the ToolbarClass to allow a global toolbar to drive two separate but related LISTS within a single MDI procedure. The primary LIST shows client information and the related LIST shows phone numbers for the selected client. The toolbar drives whichever list has focus.

The program POSTs toolbar events to the active MDI window using the SYSTEM{Prop:Active} property. Then the local ToolbarClass object calls on the active ToolbarTarget object to handle the event.

```

PROGRAM

INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')           !declare BrowseClass
INCLUDE('ABTOOLBA.INC')          !declare Toolbar classes
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')          !declare WindowManager
CODE
!program code

Main PROCEDURE                   !contains global toolbar
AppFrame APPLICATION('Toolbars'),AT(,,275,175),SYSTEM,MAX,RESIZE,IMM
MENUBAR
  ITEM('Browse Customers'),USE(?BrowseCustomer)
END
TOOLBAR,AT(0,0,400,22)           !must use ABTOOLBA.INC EQUATES:
BUTTON,AT(4,2),USE(?Top,Toolbar:Top),DISABLE,ICON('VCRFIRST.ICO'),FLAT
BUTTON,AT(16,2),USE(?PageUp,Toolbar:PageUp),DISABLE,ICON('VCRPRIOR.ICO'),FLAT
BUTTON,AT(28,2),USE(?Up,Toolbar:Up),DISABLE,ICON('VCRUP.ICO'),FLAT
BUTTON,AT(40,2),USE(?Down,Toolbar:Down),DISABLE,ICON('VCRDOWN.ICO'),FLAT
BUTTON,AT(52,2),USE(?PageDown,Toolbar:PageDown),DISABLE,ICON('VCRNEXT.ICO'),FLAT
BUTTON,AT(64,2),USE(?Bottom,Toolbar:Bottom),DISABLE,ICON('VCRLAST.ICO'),FLAT
END
END

Frame      CLASS(WindowManager)
Init       PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeAccepted PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
          END
Toolbar    ToolbarClass          !declare Toolbar object
CODE
Frame.Run()

Frame.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
CODE

```

```

ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)           !register Toolbar with WindowManager
OPEN(AppFrame)
SELF.Opened=True
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue
Frame.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
Looped          BYTE
CODE
LOOP
  IF Looped THEN RETURN Level:Notify ELSE Looped=1.
  CASE ACCEPTED()
  OF Toolbar:First TO Toolbar:Last           !for EVENT:Accepted on toolbar
    POST(EVENT:Accepted,ACCEPTED(),SYSTEM{Prop:Active}) !transfer it to active thread
    CYCLE                                           ! and stop
  END
  ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeAccepted()
  IF ACCEPTED() = ?BrowseCustomer
    START(BrowseCustomer,050000)
  END
  RETURN ReturnValue
END

BrowseCustomer PROCEDURE           !contains local Toolbar and targets
CusView  VIEW(Customer)
        END
CusQ      QUEUE
CUS:CUSTNO  LIKE(CUS:CUSTNO)
CUS:NAME    LIKE(CUS:NAME)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
        END
PhView    VIEW(Phones)
        END
PhQ        QUEUE
PH:NUMBER  LIKE(PH:NUMBER)
PH:ID      LIKE(PH:ID)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
        END

```

```

CusWindow WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(,,246,131),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY,MDI
    LIST,AT(8,7,160,100),USE(?CusList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CusQ),|
        FORMAT('51R(2)|M~CUSTNO~C(0)@n-14@80L(2)|M~NAME~@s30@')
    BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(17,111,45,14),USE(?InsertCus),SKIP
    BUTTON('&Change'),AT(66,111,45,14),USE(?ChangeCus),SKIP,DEFAULT
    BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(115,111,45,14),USE(?DeleteCus),SKIP
    LIST,AT(176,7,65,100),USE(?PhList),IMM,FROM(PhQ),FORMAT('80L~Phones~L(1)')
    BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(187,41,42,12),USE(?InsertPh),HIDE
    BUTTON('&Change'),AT(187,54,42,12),USE(?ChangePh),HIDE
    BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(187,67,42,12),USE(?DeletePh),HIDE
END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)          !declare ThisWindow object
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeSelected PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
            END

Toolbar     ToolbarClass                  !declare Toolbar object to receive
                                                ! and process toolbar events from Main

CusBrowse   CLASS(BrowseClass)            !declare CusBrowse object
Q           &CusQ
            END

PhBrowse    CLASS(BrowseClass)            !declare PhBrowse object
Q           &PhQ
            END

CODE
ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?CusList                !CusList gets initial focus
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)                    !register Toolbar with WindowManager
Relate:Customer.Open
CusBrowse.Init(?CusList,CusQ.ViewPosition,CusView,CusQ,Relate:Customer,SELF)
PhBrowse.Init(?PhList,PhQ.ViewPosition,PhView,PhQ,Relate:Phones,SELF)
OPEN(CusWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
CusBrowse.Q &= CusQ
CusBrowse.AddSortOrder(,CUS:BYNUMBER)
CusBrowse.AddField(CUS:CUSTNO,CusBrowse.Q.CUS:CUSTNO)
CusBrowse.AddField(CUS:NAME,CusBrowse.Q.CUS:NAME)
PhBrowse.Q &= PhQ
PhBrowse.AddSortOrder(,PH:IDKEY)
PhBrowse.AddRange(PH:ID,Relate:Phones,Relate:Customer)
PhBrowse.AddField(PH:NUMBER,PhBrowse.Q.PH:NUMBER)

```



```

PhBrowse.AddField(PH:ID,PhBrowse.Q.PH:ID)
CusBrowse.InsertControl=?InsertCus
CusBrowse.ChangeControl=?ChangeCus
CusBrowse.DeleteControl=?DeleteCus
CusBrowse.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)           !Make CusBrowse a toolbar target
PhBrowse.InsertControl=?InsertPh
PhBrowse.ChangeControl=?ChangePh
PhBrowse.DeleteControl=?DeletePh
PhBrowse.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)           !Make PhBrowse a toolbar target
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Customer.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeSelected PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
Looped        BYTE
CODE
LOOP
IF Looped THEN RETURN Level:Notify ELSE Looped=1.
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeSelected()
CASE FIELD()
  OF ?CusList           !if selected,
    Toolbar.SetTarget(?CusList)      ! make ?CusList the active target
  OF ?PhList            !if selected
    IF RECORDS(PhBrowse.Q) > 1      !and contains more than one record,
      Toolbar.SetTarget(?PhList)    ! make ?PhList the active target
    END
  END
RETURN ReturnValue
END

```

ToolBarClass Methods

The ToolBarClass contains the methods listed below.

ToolBarClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ToolBarClass, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ToolBarClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into two categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ToolBarClass object
AddTarget	register toolbar driven entity
Kill _v	shut down the ToolBarClass object

Mainstream Use:

SetTarget	set active target & appropriate toolbar state
TakeEvent _v	process toolbar event for active target

Occasional Use:

DisplayButtons _v	enable appropriate toolbar buttons
-----------------------------	------------------------------------

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--other base class methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

DisplayButtons	enable appropriate toolbar buttons
TakeEvent	process toolbar event for active target
Kill	shut down the ToolBarClass object

AddTarget (register toolbar driven entity)

AddTarget(*target*, *control*)

AddTarget Adds a toolbar target to the ToolbarClass object's list of potential toolbar targets.

target The label of a ToolbarTarget object.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the *target*'s ID number. For targets associated with a control, this is the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label).

The **AddTarget** method adds a toolbar target (ToolbarTarget object) to the ToolbarClass object's list of potential toolbar targets.

The last added target is the active target until supplanted by a subsequent call to AddTarget or SetTarget.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                !initialize Toolbar object
ToolBar.AddTarget( ToolBarForm, -1 )    !register an Update Form target
ToolBar.AddTarget( REL1::ToolBar, ?RelTree )!register a RelTree target
BRW1.AddToolBarTarget( Toolbar )        !register a BrowseBox target...
                                      !BrowseClass method calls AddTarget
```

See Also: SetTarget

DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarClass)**DisplayButtons, VIRTUAL**

The **DisplayButtons** method enables and disables the appropriate toolbar buttons for the active toolbar target.

The **SetTarget** method sets the active toolbar target.

Implementation: The **DisplayButtons** method calls the **ToolbarTarget.DisplayButtons** method for the active toolbar target.

Example:

CODE

```
Toolbar.Init                                     !initialize Toolbar object
Toolbar.AddTarget( ToolBarForm, -1 )        !register an Update Form target
Toolbar.DisplayButtons                        !and enable appropriate toolbar buttons
                                              !for that target
```

See Also: **SetTarget**

Init (initialize the ToolbarClass object)

Init

The **Init** method initializes the ToolbarClass object.

Implementation: The Init method allocates a new list of potential toolbar targets.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                !initialize Toolbar object
!program code
ACCEPT
!program code
END
ToolBar.Kill                !shut down Toolbar object
```

Kill (shut down the ToolbarClass object)

Kill, VIRTUAL

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method disposes of the list of potential toolbar targets.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                !initialize Toolbar object
!program code
ACCEPT
!program code
END
ToolBar.Kill                !shut down Toolbar object
```

SetTarget (sets the active target)**SetTarget**([*ID*])**SetTarget** Sets the ToolbarClass object's active toolbar target.

ID An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the *target's* ID number. For targets associated with a control, this is the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label). If omitted or zero (0), SetTarget sets the most likely target.

The **SetTarget** method sets the ToolbarClass object's active toolbar target (ToolbarTarget object), and adjusts the TOOLBAR state appropriate to that target.

Implementation: The SetTarget method calls the ToolbarTarget.TakeToolbar or ToolbarTarget.TryTakeToolbar method to set the toolbar buttons' TIP attributes and enabled/disabled status appropriate to the active toolbar target.

Example:

```

ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:OpenWindow           !on open window
DO RefreshWindow              !load the browse QUEUES
OF EVENT:Accepted              !for Accepted events (which may
CASE FOCUS()                  ! come from the global toolbar)
OF ?ClientList                 ! make the list with FOCUS
Toolbar.SetTarget(?ClientList) ! the active toolbar target
OF ?PhoneList                  ! and enable appropriate toolbar
Toolbar.SetTarget(?PhoneList)  ! buttons and TIP attributes
END
Toolbar.TakeEvent(VCRRequest, WM)!the Toolbar object calls the
END                             ! active target's event handler
END                             ! which in turn scrolls, inserts,
                                ! deletes, helps, etc. The event
                                ! handler often simply POSTs
                                ! another event to the correct
                                ! control, e.g.
                                ! Event:Accepted to ?Insert or
                                ! Event:PageUp to ?ClientList

```

See Also: ToolbarTarget.TakeToolbar, ToolbarTarget.TryTakeToolbar

TakeEvent (process toolbar event:ToolBarClass)

TakeEvent([*vcr*], *window manager*), **VIRTUAL**

TakeEvent Processes toolbar events for the active toolbar target.

vcr An integer variable to receive the control number of the accepted VCR navigation button. This lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent action. If omitted, the ToolbarTarget object does no "post processing" navigation.

Windowmanager

The label of the ToolbarTarget object's WindowManager object. See *Window Manager* for more information.

The **TakeEvent** method processes toolbar events for the active toolbar target (ToolbarTarget object).

The *vcr* parameter lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent or secondary action. For example, the ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeEvent method (for a FORM), may interpret a *vcr* scroll down as "save and then scroll." The method takes the necessary action to save the item and accomplishes the secondary scroll action by setting the *vcr* parameter.

The SetTarget method sets the active toolbar target.

Implementation: The WindowManager.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method. The TakeEvent method calls the ToolbarTarget.TakeEvent method for the active toolbar target.

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF ~SELF.Toolbar &= NULL
    SELF.Toolbar.TakeEvent( SELF.VCRRequest,SELF)
  END
!procedure code
```

See Also: SetTarget, WindowManager.TakeEvent

ToolbarListBoxClass

ToolbarListBoxClass Overview

The ToolbarListBoxClass is a ToolbarTarget that handles events for a BrowseClass LIST. See BrowseClass and Control Templates--BrowseBox for more information.

ToolbarListboxClass Concepts

ToolbarListBoxClass objects implement the event handling specific to a BrowseClass LIST. The LIST specific events are primarily scrolling events, but also include the event to select a single list item (EVENT:Accepted for a Select button). There may be zero or several ToolbarTarget objects within a procedure; however, *only one is active* at a time.

ToolbarListBoxClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ToolbarListboxClass is derived from the ToolbarTarget class.

The ToolbarClass keeps a list of ToolbarTarget objects (including ToolbarListboxClass objects) so it can forward events and method calls to a particular target.

ToolbarListBoxClass ABC Template Implementation

The ToolbarListboxClass is completely encapsulated within the BrowseClass and is not referenced in the template-generated code.

ToolbarListboxClass Source Files

The ToolbarListboxClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The ToolbarListboxClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABTOOLBA.INC	ToolbarListboxClass declarations
ABTOOLBA.CLW	ToolbarListboxClass method definitions

ToolbarListBoxClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ToolbarClass object and related ToolbarListboxClass objects.

This example uses a global toolbar to drive two separate but related LISTs within a single MDI procedure. The primary LIST shows client information and the related LIST shows phone numbers for the selected client. The toolbar drives whichever list has focus. See also *ToolbarUpdateClass--Conceptual Example*.

The program POSTs toolbar events to the active MDI window using the SYSTEM{Prop:Active} property. Then the local ToolbarClass object calls on the active ToolbarTarget object to handle the event.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE( 'ABBROWSE.INC' )           !declare BrowseClass
  INCLUDE( 'ABTOOLBA.INC' )           !declare Toolbar classes
  INCLUDE( 'ABWINDOW.INC' )           !declare WindowManager
  CODE
  !program code

Main PROCEDURE                        !contains global toolbar
AppFrame APPLICATION('Toolbars'),AT(,,275,175),SYSTEM,MAX,RESIZE,IMM
  MENUBAR
    ITEM('Browse Customers'),USE(?BrowseCustomer)
  END
  TOOLBAR,AT(0,0,400,22)              !must use ABTOOLBA.INC EQUATES:
  BUTTON,AT(4,2),USE(?Top,Toolbar:Top),DISABLE,ICON('VCRFIRST.ICO'),FLAT
  BUTTON,AT(16,2),USE(?PageUp,Toolbar:PageUp),DISABLE,ICON('VCRPRIOR.ICO'),FLAT
  BUTTON,AT(28,2),USE(?Up,Toolbar:Up),DISABLE,ICON('VCRUP.ICO'),FLAT
  BUTTON,AT(40,2),USE(?Down,Toolbar:Down),DISABLE,ICON('VCRDOWN.ICO'),FLAT
  BUTTON,AT(52,2),USE(?PageDown,Toolbar:PageDown),DISABLE,ICON('VCRNEXT.ICO'),FLAT
  BUTTON,AT(64,2),USE(?Bottom,Toolbar:Bottom),DISABLE,ICON('VCRLAST.ICO'),FLAT
  END
  END
Frame      CLASS(WindowManager)
Init       PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeAccepted PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
  END
Toolbar    ToolbarClass              !declare Toolbar object
  CODE
  Frame.Run()

Frame.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
  CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
  SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
  SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
  SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)              !register Toolbar with WindowManager
  OPEN(AppFrame)
  SELF.Opened=True
  SELF.SetAlerts()
  RETURN ReturnValue

Frame.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue BYTE,AUTO
Looped      BYTE

```

```

CODE
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF Toolbar:First TO Toolbar:Last      !for EVENT:Accepted on toolbar
  POST(EVENT:Accepted,ACCEPTED(),SYSTEM{Prop:Active}) !transfer it to active thread
  RETURN Level:Notify
OF ?BrowseCustomer
  START(BrowseCustomer,050000)
END
RETURN PARENT.TakeAccepted()

BrowseCustomer PROCEDURE                !contains local Toolbar and targets
CusView  VIEW(Customer)
      END
CusQ      QUEUE
CUS:CUSTNO  LIKE(CUS:CUSTNO)
CUS:NAME    LIKE(CUS:NAME)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
      END
PhView  VIEW(Phones)
      END
PhQ      QUEUE
PH:NUMBER  LIKE(PH:NUMBER)
PH:ID      LIKE(PH:ID)
ViewPosition STRING(512)
      END
CusWindow WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(,,246,131),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY,MDI
  LIST,AT(8,7,160,100),USE(?CusList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CusQ),|
  FORMAT(' 51R(2)|M~CUSTNO~C(0)@n-14@80L(2)|M~NAME~@s30@')
  BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(17,111,45,14),USE(?InsertCus),SKIP
  BUTTON('&Change'),AT(66,111,45,14),USE(?ChangeCus),SKIP,DEFAULT
  BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(115,111,45,14),USE(?DeleteCus),SKIP
  LIST,AT(176,7,65,100),USE(?PhList),IMM,FROM(PhQ),|
  FORMAT(' 80L~Phones~L(1)@s20@')
  BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(187,41,42,12),USE(?InsertPh),HIDE
  BUTTON('&Change'),AT(187,54,42,12),USE(?ChangePh),HIDE
  BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(187,67,42,12),USE(?DeletePh),HIDE
  END

ThisWindow  CLASS(WindowManager)        !declare ThisWindow object
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeSelected PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
      END
Toolbar  ToolbarClass                    ! declare Toolbar object to receive
                                              ! and process toolbar events from Main
CusBrowse  CLASS(BrowseClass)            !declare CusBrowse object
Q          &CusQ

```

```

        END
PhBrowse   CLASS(BrowseClass)           !declare PhBrowse object
Q          &PhQ
        END

CODE
ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?CusList              !CusList gets initial focus
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)                  !register Toolbar with WindowManager
Relate:Customer.Open
CusBrowse.Init(?CusList,CusQ.ViewPosition,CusView,CusQ,Relate:Customer,SELF)
PhBrowse.Init(?PhList,PhQ.ViewPosition,PhView,PhQ,Relate:Phones,SELF)
OPEN(CusWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
CusBrowse.Q &= CusQ
CusBrowse.AddSortOrder(,CUS:BYNUMBER)
CusBrowse.AddField(CUS:CUSTNO,CusBrowse.Q.CUS:CUSTNO)
CusBrowse.AddField(CUS:NAME,CusBrowse.Q.CUS:NAME)
PhBrowse.Q &= PhQ
PhBrowse.AddSortOrder(,PH:IDKEY)
PhBrowse.AddRange(PH:ID,Relate:Phones,Relate:Customer)
PhBrowse.AddField(PH:NUMBER,PhBrowse.Q.PH:NUMBER)
PhBrowse.AddField(PH:ID,PhBrowse.Q.PH:ID)
CusBrowse.InsertControl=?InsertCus
CusBrowse.ChangeControl=?ChangeCus
CusBrowse.DeleteControl=?DeleteCus
CusBrowse.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)     !Make CusBrowse a toolbar target
PhBrowse.InsertControl=?InsertPh
PhBrowse.ChangeControl=?ChangePh
PhBrowse.DeleteControl=?DeletePh
PhBrowse.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)     !Make PhBrowse a toolbar target
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Customer.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeSelected  PROCEDURE()

```

```
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeSelected()
CASE FIELD()
OF ?CusList
    Toolbar.SetTarget(?CusList)      !if selected,
                                      ! make ?CusList the active target
OF ?PhList
    !if selected
    IF RECORDS(PhBrowse.Q) > 1      !and contains more than one record,
        Toolbar.SetTarget(?PhList)  ! make ?PhList the active target
    END
END
RETURN ReturnValue
```

ToolbarListboxClass Properties

The `ToolbarListboxClass` inherits all the properties of the `ToolbarTarget` from which it is derived. See *ToolbarTarget Properties* for more information.

In addition to its inherited properties, the `ToolbarListboxClass` contains the following properties.

Browse (BrowseClass object)

Browse &BrowseClass

The **Browse** property is a reference to the `ToolbarListboxClass` object's `BrowseClass` object. The `ToolbarListboxClass` object uses this property to access the `BrowseClass` object's properties and methods.

Implementation: The `BrowseClass.AddToolbarTarget` method sets the value of the `Browse` property.

 The `TryTakeToolbar` method uses the `Browse` property to determine whether the associated `LIST` control is visible.

See Also: `BrowseClass.AddToolbarTarget`

ToolBarListBoxClass Methods

The ToolBarListBoxClass inherits all the methods of the ToolbarTarget from which it is derived. See *ToolBarTarget Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the ToolBarListBoxClass contains the following methods:

DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolBarListBoxClass)

DisplayButtons, VIRTUAL

The **DisplayButtons** method enables and disables the appropriate toolbar buttons for the ToolBarListBoxClass object based on the values of the HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, and SelectButton properties.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar method calls the DisplayButtons method. The DisplayButtons method calls the PARENT.DisplayButtons method (ToolBarTarget.DisplayButtons) to handle buttons common to all ToolbarTargets.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                                !initialize Toolbar object
  BRW1.AddToolBarTarget( Toolbar )          !register a BrowseBox target
  ToolBar.SetTarget( ?Browse:1)             !calls DisplayButtons via TakeToolbar
```

```
MyToolBarListBoxClass.DisplayButtons PROCEDURE !a derived class virtual
CODE
  DISABLE(ToolBar:History)                  !disable toolbar ditto button
  ENABLE(ToolBar:Locate)                    !enable locator button
  PARENT.DisplayButtons                     !call base class DisplayButtons
  !your custom code here
```

See Also: HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, SelectButton, TakeToolbar, ToolbarTarget.DisplayButtons

TakeEvent (convert toolbar events:ToolbarListboxClass)

TakeEvent([*vcr*], *window manager*), **VIRTUAL**

TakeEvent	Handles toolbar events for the ToolbarListboxClass object.
<i>vcr</i>	An integer variable to receive the control number of the accepted vcr button. This lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent action. If omitted, the ToolbarListboxClass object does no "post processing" navigation.
<i>windowmanager</i>	The label of the ToolbarListboxClass object's WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.

The **TakeEvent** method handles toolbar events for the ToolbarListboxClass object.

The *vcr* parameter lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent or secondary action. For example, the ToolbarListboxClass.TakeEvent method, may interpret a scroll down as "save and then scroll." The method takes the necessary action to save the item and accomplishes the secondary scroll action by setting the *vcr* parameter.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method for the active ToolbarTarget object. The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active ToolbarTarget object.

Example:

```
ToolbarClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(<*LONG VCR>,WindowManager WM)
  CODE
  ASSERT(~SELF.List &= NULL)
  IF RECORDS(SELF.List)
    SELF.List.Item.TakeEvent(VCR,WM)
  END
```

See Also: ToolbarClass.SetTarget, ToolbarClass.TakeEvent

TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar)

TakeToolbar, VIRTUAL

The **TakeToolbar** method sets the toolbar state appropriate to the ToolbarListBoxClass object.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar method sets appropriate TIP attributes for the toolbar buttons and enables and disables toolbar buttons appropriate for the ToolbarListBoxClass object. The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method and the TryTakeToolbar method call the TakeToolbar method.

Example:

```
MyToolbarClass.SetTarget PROCEDURE(SIGNED Id)
I USHORT,AUTO
Hit USHORT
CODE
  ASSERT(~ (SELF.List &= NULL))
  IF Id                                !set explicitly requested target
    SELF.List.Id = Id
    GET(SELF.List,SELF.List.Id)
    ASSERT (~ERRORCODE())
    SELF.List.Item.TakeToolbar
  ELSE                                !set any (last) valid target
    LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.List)
      GET(SELF.List,I)
      IF SELF.List.Item.TryTakeToolbar() THEN Hit = I.
    END
    IF Hit THEN GET(SELF.List,Hit).
  END
```

See Also: TryTakeToolbar, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

TryTakeToolbar (return toolbar control indicator:ToolbarListBoxClass)**TryTakeToolbar, VIRTUAL**

The **TryTakeToolbar** method returns a value indicating whether the ToolbarTarget object successfully assumed control of the toolbar. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates success; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates failure to take control of the toolbar.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method calls the TryTakeToolbar method. The TryTakeToolbar method calls the TakeToolbar method if the ToolbarListboxClass object's LIST is visible.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ToolbarClass.SetTarget PROCEDURE(SIGNED Id)
I USHORT,AUTO
Hit USHORT
CODE
  ASSERT(~ (SELF.List &= NULL))
  IF Id                                !set explicitly requested target
    SELF.List.Id = Id
    GET(SELF.List,SELF.List.Id)
    ASSERT (~ERRORCODE())
    SELF.List.Item.TakeToolbar
  ELSE                                !set a valid target
    LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.List)
      GET(SELF.List,I)
      IF SELF.List.Item.TryTakeToolbar() THEN Hit = I.
    END
    IF Hit THEN GET(SELF.List,Hit).
  END
```

See Also: TakeToolbar, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

ToolBarReltreeClass

ToolBarReltreeClass Overview

The ToolBarReltreeClass is a ToolbarTarget that handles events for a RelationTree control LIST. See Control Templates--RelationTree for more information.

ToolBarReltreeClass Concepts

ToolBarReltreeClass objects implement the event handling specific to a RelationTree control LIST. The LIST specific events are primarily scrolling events, but may include other events. There may be zero or several ToolbarTarget objects within a procedure; however, *only one is active* at a time.

ToolBarReltreeClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ToolBarReltreeClass is derived from the ToolbarTarget class.

The ToolbarClass keeps a list of ToolbarTarget objects (including ToolBarReltreeClass objects) so it can forward events and method calls to a particular target.

ToolBarReltreeClass ABC Template Implementation

The RelationTree control template derives a ToolBarReltreeClass object called REL#::Toolbar, where # is the RelationTree template's instance number. The template generates code to register the REL#::Toolbar object with the Toolbar object for the procedure that contains the RelationTree control template. Finally, the template generates the REL#::Toolbar.TakeEvent method to convert toolbar events into actions specific to the RelationTree LIST control.

ToolBar ToolBarReltreeClass Source Files

The ToolBarReltreeClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The source code and its respective components are in:

ABTOOLBA.INC
ABTOOLBA.CLW

ToolBarReltreeClass declarations
ToolBarReltreeClass method definitions

ToolbarReltreeClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ToolbarClass object and a related ToolbarReltreeClass (ToolbarTarget) object.

This example uses a global toolbar to drive a template generated RelTree control. The program POSTs toolbar events to the active MDI window using the SYSTEM{Prop:Active} property. Then the ToolbarClass object calls on the active ToolbarReltreeClass object to handle the (scrolling) events.

```

PROGRAM

_ABCDllMode_  EQUATE(0)
_ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)
INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')
INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')
INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')
INCLUDE('ABTOOLBA.INC')
INCLUDE('KEYCODES.CLW')

MAP
Main      PROCEDURE
OrderTree PROCEDURE
END
GlobalErrors ErrorClass
Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
Init            PROCEDURE
                END

Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
Init            PROCEDURE
Kill            PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
                END

Access:Orders CLASS(FileManager)
Init            PROCEDURE
                END

Relate:Orders CLASS(RelationManager)
Init            PROCEDURE
Kill            PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
                END

GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
VCRRequest     LONG(0),THREAD

```

```

Customer      FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( CUS ), CREATE, BINDABLE, THREAD
KeyCustNumber  KEY( CUS: CustNumber ), NOCASE, OPT
KeyCompany     KEY( CUS: Company ), DUP, NOCASE
Record         RECORD, PRE( )
CustNumber     LONG
Company        STRING( 20 )
ZipCode        LONG
              END
              END

Orders        FILE, DRIVER( 'TOPSPEED' ), PRE( ORD ), CREATE, BINDABLE, THREAD
KeyOrderNumber KEY( ORD: OrderNumber ), NOCASE, OPT, PRIMARY
KeyCustNumber  KEY( ORD: CustNumber ), DUP, NOCASE, OPT
Record         RECORD, PRE( )
CustNumber     LONG
OrderNumber    SHORT
InvoiceAmount  DECIMAL( 7, 2 )
              END
              END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate: Customer.Init
Relate: Orders.Init
Main              !run Application Frame w/ toolbar
Relate: Customer.Kill
Relate: Orders.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

Main PROCEDURE              !Application Frame w/ toolbar
Frame APPLICATION( 'Application' ), AT( , , 310, 210 ), SYSTEM, MAX, RESIZE, IMM
  MENUBAR
    ITEM( 'Orders' ), USE( ?OrderTree )
  END
  TOOLBAR, AT( 0, 0, , 20 ) !must use toolbar EQUATES
  BUTTON, AT( 4, 4 ), USE( ?Toolbar: Top, Toolbar: Top ), DISABLE, ICON( 'VCRFIRST.ICO' )
  BUTTON, AT( 16, 4 ), USE( ?Toolbar: PageUp, Toolbar: PageUp ), DISABLE, ICON( 'VCRPRIOR.ICO' )
  BUTTON, AT( 28, 4 ), USE( ?Toolbar: Up, Toolbar: Up ), DISABLE, ICON( 'VCRUP.ICO' )
  BUTTON, AT( 40, 4 ), USE( ?Toolbar: Down, Toolbar: Down ), DISABLE, ICON( 'VCRDOWN.ICO' )
  BUTTON, AT( 52, 4 ), USE( ?Toolbar: PageDown, Toolbar: PageDown ), DISABLE, ICON( 'VCRNEXT.ICO' )
  BUTTON, AT( 64, 4 ), USE( ?Toolbar: Bottom, Toolbar: Bottom ), DISABLE, ICON( 'VCRLAST.ICO' )
  END
  END

ThisWindow CLASS( WindowManager )
Init        PROCEDURE( ), BYTE, PROC, VIRTUAL
TakeAccepted PROCEDURE( ), BYTE, PROC, VIRTUAL
              END

```

```

CODE
  ThisWindow.Run()

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
  SELF.FirstField = 1
  OPEN(Frame)
  SELF.Opened=True
  RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
CODE
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF Toolbar:First TO Toolbar:Last      !post toolbar event to active thread
  POST(EVENT:Accepted,ACCEPTED(),SYSTEM{Prop:Active})
  RETURN Level:Notify
OF ?OrderTree
  START(OrderTree,25000)                !start OrderTree procedure/thread
END
RETURN PARENT.TakeAccepted()
OrderTree      PROCEDURE                !template generated Window procedure
                                         ! with RelTree control template

DisplayString   STRING(255)
Toolbar         ToolbarClass            !declare Toolbar object
REL1::Toolbar   CLASS(ToolbarReltreeClass) !derive REL1::Toolbar object (target)
TakeEvent       PROCEDURE(<*LONG VCR>,WindowManager WM),VIRTUAL
                END
!template generated RelTree QUEUES and vaiables

window WINDOW('Browse Orders'),AT(,,115,110),SYSTEM,GRAY,DOUBLE,MDI
  LIST,AT(5,4,106,100),USE(?RelTree),FORMAT('800LT@s200@'),FROM(Queue:RelTree)
END

ThisWindow     CLASS(WindowManager)      !derive ThisWindow object
Init           PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill           PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeFieldEvent PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
                END

```

```

CODE
GlobalResponse = ThisWindow.Run()
!template generated RelTree ROUTINES

ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?RelTree
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)           !register Toolbar with ThisWindow
Relate:Customer.Open
DO REL1::ContractAll
OPEN(window)
SELF.Opened=True
Toolbar.AddTarget(REL1::Toolbar,?RelTree) !make REL1::Toolbar a toolbar target
Toolbar.SetTarget(?RelTree)           !make REL1::Toolbar the active target
?RelTree{Prop:Selected} = 1
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue

REL1::Toolbar.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(<*LONG VCR>,WindowManager WM)
CODE                                     !convert toolbar events to
CASE ACCEPTED()                         ! Reltree-specific actions
OF Toolbar:Bottom TO Toolbar:Up
    SELF.Control{PROPLIST:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(SELF.Control)
    EXECUTE(ACCEPTED()-Toolbar:Bottom+1)
    DO REL1::NextParent           !on Toolbar:Bottom
    DO REL1::PreviousParent       !on Toolbar:Top
    DO REL1::NextLevel            !on Toolbar:PageDown
    DO REL1::PreviousLevel        !on Toolbar:PageUp
    DO REL1::NextRecord           !on Toolbar:Down
    DO REL1::PreviousRecord       !on Toolbar:Up
END
END

```

ToolbarReltreeClass Properties

The `ToolbarReltreeClass` inherits all the properties of the `ToolbarTarget` from which it is derived. See *ToolbarTarget Properties* for more information.

ToolBarReltreeClass Methods

The ToolBarReltreeClass inherits all the methods of the ToolbarTarget from which it is derived. See *ToolbarTarget Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the ToolBarReltreeClass contains the following methods:

DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolBarReltreeClass)

DisplayButtons, VIRTUAL

The **DisplayButtons** method enables and disables the appropriate toolbar buttons for the ToolBarReltreeClass object based on the values of the HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, and SelectButton properties.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar method calls the DisplayButtons method.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                                !initialize Toolbar object
  ToolBar.AddTarget( ToolBarForm, -1 )      !register an Update Form target
  Toolbar.AddTarget( REL1::ToolBar, ?RelTree ) !register a RelTree target
  ToolBar.SetTarget( ?RelTree )             !calls DisplayButtons via TakeToolbar
!program code

MyToolBarReltreeClass.DisplayButtons PROCEDURE !a derived class virtual
CODE
  DISABLE(ToolBar:History)                  !disable toolbar ditto button
  ENABLE(ToolBar:Locate)                    !enable locator button
  PARENT.DisplayButtons                     !call base class DisplayButtons
!your custom code here
```

See Also: HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, SelectButton, TakeToolbar

TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar:ToolbarReltreeClass)**TakeToolbar, VIRTUAL**

The **TakeToolbar** method sets the toolbar state appropriate to the ToolbarReltreeClass object.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar method sets appropriate TIP attributes for the toolbar buttons and enables and disables toolbar buttons appropriate for the ToolbarReltreeClass object. The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method calls the TakeToolbar method.

Example:

```

CODE
Toolbar.Init                                !initialize Toolbar object
  Toolbar.AddTarget( ToolBarForm, -1 )      !register an Update Form target
  Toolbar.AddTarget( REL1::Toolbar, ?RelTree ) !register a RelTree target
  Toolbar.SetTarget( ?RelTree )             !calls TakeToolbar
!program code

MyToolbarReltreeClass.TakeToolbar PROCEDURE !a derived class virtual
CODE
!your custom code here
SELF.DisplayButtons                        !enable appropriate buttons

```

See Also: ToolbarClass.SetTarget

ToolBarTargetClass

ToolBarTarget Overview

ToolBarClass and ToolBarTarget objects work together to reliably "convert" an event associated with a toolbar button into an appropriate event associated with a specific control or window. This lets you use a single toolbar to drive a variety of targets, such as update forms, browse lists, relation tree lists, etc. A single toolbar can even drive multiple targets (two or more BrowseBoxes) in a single procedure.

Although the ToolBarTarget is useful by itself, other more useful classes are derived from it (ToolBarListBoxClass, the ToolBarRelTreeClass, and the ToolBarUpdateClass), and other structures, such as the ToolBarClass, use it to reference any of these derived classes. The classes derived from ToolBarTarget let you set the state of the toolbar appropriate to the toolbar driven entity (set tooltips, enable/disable buttons, etc.), then process toolbar events for the entity by converting the generic toolbar events into appropriate entity-specific events.

ToolBarTarget Concepts

Within an MDI application, the ToolBarClass and ToolBarTarget work together to reliably interpret and pass an event (EVENT:Accepted) associated with a toolbar button into an event associated with a specific control or window. For example, the end user CLICKS on a toolbar button (say the "Insert" button) on the MDI application frame. The frame procedure forwards the event to the active thread (POST(EVENT:Accepted,ACCEPTED(),SYSTEM{Prop:Active})). The active thread (procedure) manages a window that displays two LIST controls, and one of the LISTS has focus. This procedure has a ToolBarClass object plus a ToolBarTarget object for each LIST control. The ToolBarClass object takes the event (ToolBarClass.TakeEvent)₁ and forwards the event to the *active* ToolBarTarget object (the target that represents the LIST with focus). The ToolBarTarget object takes the event (ToolBarListBoxClass.TakeEvent) and handles it by posting an appropriate event to a specific control or to the window, for example:

```
POST(EVENT:ACCEPTED,SELF.InsertButton) !insert a record
POST(EVENT:PageDown,SELF.Control)      !scroll a LIST
POST(EVENT:Completed)                   !complete an update form
POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)                  !select a record
etc.
```

₁If the procedure has a WindowManager object, the WindowManager object takes the event (WindowManager.TakeEvent) and forwards it to the ToolBarClass object (WindowManager.TakeAccepted).

ToolbarTarget Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

At present, the ABC Library has three classes derived from the ToolbarTarget class:

ToolbarListboxClass	BrowseClass toolbar target
ToolbarReltreeClass	Reltree control toolbar target
ToolbarUpdateClass	Form procedure toolbar target

These ToolbarTarget objects convert generic toolbar events into appropriate entity-specific events. There may be zero or more ToolbarTarget objects within a procedure; however, *only one* is *active* at a time.

The ToolbarClass keeps a list of ToolbarTarget objects so it can forward events and method calls to a particular target.

ToolbarTarget ABC Template Implementation

Each template that requests global toolbar control instantiates a ToolbarTarget object. The FormVCRControls template's ToolbarTarget object is called ToolBarForm; the RelationTree template's ToolbarTarget object is called REL#:Toolbar, where # is the RelationTree template's instance number; and the BrowseBox's ToolbarTarget object is completely encapsulated within the BrowseClass object and is not referenced in the template generated code. You may see code such as the following in your template generated procedures.

```

Toolbar      ToolbarClass      !declare Toolbar object
CODE
!
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE
    SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)                !register Toolbar with WindowManager
    BRW1.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)        !register BrowseClass as target
    Toolbar.AddTarget(REL1::Toolbar,?RelTree) !register RelTree as target
    SELF.AddItem(ToolbarForm)             !register update form as target

```

ToolbarTarget Source Files

The ToolbarTarget source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The ToolbarTarget source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABTOOLBA.INC	ToolbarTarget declarations
ABTOOLBA.CLW	ToolbarTarget method definitions

ToolBarTarget Properties

ChangeButton (change control number)

ChangeButton **SIGNED**

The **ChangeButton** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label) of the window control that invokes the change record action for this ToolBarTarget object.

A value of zero (0) disables the toolbar change button.

Implementation: The ToolBarTarget object uses this property to enable or disable the toolbar change button, and as the target control when POSTing certain events. See POST in the *Language Reference* for more information. The ToolBarTarget object POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the ChangeButton control when the end user CLICKS the toolbar change button.

Control (window control)

Control **SIGNED**

The **Control** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label) of the window control associated with this ToolBarTarget object. For ToolBarTarget objects that do not have an associated control (update forms), the Control property may contain any identifying number.

The ToolBarTarget object uses this property as the target control when POSTing certain events. See POST in the *Language Reference*.

The ToolBarClass.AddTarget method sets the value of this property.

Implementation: By convention, update forms have a Control value of negative one (-1).

See Also: ToolBarClass.AddTarget

DeleteButton (delete control number)

DeleteButton SIGNED

The **DeleteButton** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label) of the window control that invokes the delete record action for this ToolbarTarget object.

A value of zero (0) disables the toolbar delete button.

Implementation: The ToolbarTarget object uses this property to enable or disable the toolbar delete button, and as the target control when POSTing certain events. See POST in the *Language Reference* for more information. The ToolbarTarget object POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the DeleteButton control when the end user CLICKS the toolbar delete button.

HelpButton (help control number)

HelpButton SIGNED

The **HelpButton** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label) of the window control that invokes Windows help for this ToolbarTarget object.

A value of zero (0) disables the toolbar help button.

Implementation: The ToolbarTarget object uses this property to enable or disable the toolbar help button. The ToolbarTarget object "presses" the help (F1) key when the end user CLICKS the toolbar help button.

InsertButton (insert control number)

InsertButton SIGNED

The **InsertButton** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label) of the window control that invokes the insert record action for this ToolBarTarget object.

A value of zero (0) disables the toolbar insert button.

Implementation: The ToolBarTarget object uses this property to enable or disable the toolbar insert button, and as the target control when POSTing certain events. See POST in the *Language Reference* for more information. The ToolBarTarget object POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the InsertButton control when the end user CLICKS the toolbar insert button.

LocateButton(query control number)

LocateButton SIGNED

The **LocateButton** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's field equate label) of the window control that invokes the query action for this ToolBarTarget object.

A value of zero (0) disables the toolbar Locate button.

Implementation: The ToolBarTarget object uses this property to enable or disable the toolbar Locate button, and as the target control when POSTing certain events. See POST in the *Language Reference* for more information. The ToolBarTarget object POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the LocateButton control when the user Presses the toolbar locate button.

The LocateButton control is used when the QBE extension template has been added to a procedure.

See Also: ToolBarTarget.DisplayButtons

SelectButton (select control number)**SelectButton SIGNED**

The **SelectButton** property contains the control number (usually represented by the control's Field Equate Label) of the window control that invokes the select record action for this ToolbarTarget object.

A value of zero (0) disables the toolbar select button.

Implementation: The ToolbarTarget object uses this property to enable or disable the toolbar select button, and as the target control when POSTing certain events. See POST in the *Language Reference* for more information. The ToolbarTarget object POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the SelectButton control when the end user CLICKS the toolbar select button.

ToolBarTarget Methods

ToolBarTarget Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ToolBarTarget class, it is useful to recognize that all its methods are virtual. Typically you will not call these methods directly from your program--the ToolbarClass methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Virtual Methods

DisplayButtons	enable appropriate toolbar buttons
TryTakeToolbar	return toolbar control indicator
TakeToolbar	assume control of the toolbar
TakeEvent	convert toolbar events

DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolbarTarget)**DisplayButtons, VIRTUAL**

The **DisplayButtons** method enables and disables the appropriate toolbar buttons for the ToolbarTarget object based on the values of the HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, and SelectButton properties.

Implementation: The ToolbarListboxClass.TakeToolbar, ToolbarRelTreeClass.TakeToolbar, and ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeToolbar methods call the DisplayButtons method. The DisplayButtons method appropriately enables and disables toolbar buttons common to all ToolbarTarget objects.

Example:

MyToolbarListboxClass.DisplayButtons PROCEDURE

CODE

```
PARENT.DisplayButtons      !Call base class DisplayButtons
!your custom code here
```

See Also: HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, SelectButton, TakeToolbar, ToolbarRelTreeClass.TakeToolbar, ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeToolbar

TakeEvent (convert toolbar events:ToolBarTarget)

TakeEvent([*vcr*], *window manager*), **VIRTUAL**

TakeEvent	Process toolbar events for this toolbar target.
<i>vcr</i>	An integer variable to receive the control number of the accepted VCR navigation button. If omitted, the ToolbarTarget object does no "post processing" navigation.
<i>Windowmanager</i>	The label of the ToolbarTarget object's WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.

The **TakeEvent** method handles toolbar events for this toolbar target.

The *vcr* parameter lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent or secondary action. For example, the ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeEvent method (for a FORM), may interpret a *vcr* scroll down as "save and then scroll." The method takes the necessary action to save the item and accomplishes the secondary scroll action by setting the *vcr* parameter.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method for the active ToolbarTarget object. The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active ToolbarTarget object. The TakeEvent method POSTs an EVENT:Accepted to the appropriate local control (insert, change, delete, help) common to all ToolbarTarget objects.

Example:

```
REL1::Toolbar.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(<*LONG VCR>,WindowManager WM)
CODE
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF Toolbar:Bottom TO Toolbar:Up
  SELF.Control{PROPLIST:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(SELF.Control)
  EXECUTE(ACCEPTED()-Toolbar:Bottom+1)
    DO REL1::NextParent
    DO REL1::PreviousParent
    DO REL1::NextLevel
    DO REL1::PreviousLevel
    DO REL1::NextRecord
    DO REL1::PreviousRecord
  END
OF Toolbar:Insert TO Toolbar>Delete
  SELF.Control{PROPLIST:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(SELF.Control)
  EXECUTE(ACCEPTED()-Toolbar:Insert+1)
    DO REL1::AddEntry
    DO REL1::EditEntry
    DO REL1::RemoveEntry
  END
ELSE
  PARENT.TakeEvent(VCR,ThisWindow)
END
```

See Also: ToolbarClass.SetTarget, ToolbarClass.TakeEvent

TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar:ToolBarTarget)**TakeToolbar, VIRTUAL**

The **TakeToolbar** method is a placeholder method to set the toolbar state appropriate to the ToolbarTarget object. This includes setting MSG and TIP attributes, enabling and disabling appropriate buttons, etc.

The TakeToolbar method is a placeholder method for derived classes.

See Also: ToolbarListboxClass.TakeToolbar, ToolbarRelTreeClass.TakeToolbar,
 ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeToolbar

TryTakeToolbar (return toolbar control indicator:ToolBarTarget)**TryTakeToolbar, VIRTUAL**

The **TryTakeToolbar** method is a virtual placeholder method to return a value indicating whether the ToolbarTarget object successfully assumed control of the toolbar. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates success; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates failure to take control of the toolbar.

The TryTakeToolbar method is a placeholder method for derived classes.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: ToolbarListboxClass.TryTakeToolbar, ToolbarUpdateClass.TryTakeToolbar

ToolBarUpdateClass

ToolBarUpdateClass Overview

The ToolBarUpdateClass is a ToolbarTarget that handles events for a template generated Form Procedure that is called from a template generated Browse Procedure. See *Procedure Templates--Browse* and *Form* for more information.

ToolBarUpdateClass Concepts

ToolBarUpdateClass objects implement the event handling specific to a template generated Form Procedure. The Form specific events are primarily the event to complete the Form and save the record (EVENT:Accepted for an OK button). There may be zero or several ToolbarTarget objects within a procedure; however, *only one is active* at a time.

ToolBarUpdateClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ToolBarUpdateClass is derived from the ToolbarTarget class.

The ToolbarClass keeps a list of ToolbarTarget objects (including ToolBarUpdateClass objects) so it can forward events and method calls to a particular target.

ToolBarUpdateClass ABC Template Implementation

The FormVCRControls extension template generates code to declare a ToolBarUpdateClass object called ToolbarForm, and to register the ToolbarForm object with the procedure's WindowManager.

Once the ToolbarForm is registered with the WindowManager, the WindowManager handles the interaction between the ToolbarClass object and the ToolBarUpdateClass object with no other references in the template generated code.

You can use the FormVCRControl template's prompts to derive from the ToolBarUpdateClass. The templates provide the derived class so you can modify the ToolBarForm's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

ToolBarUpdateClass Source Files

The ToolBarUpdateClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The ToolBarUpdateClass source code and its respective components are:

ABTOOLBA.INC	ToolBarUpdateClass declarations
ABTOOLBA.CLW	ToolBarUpdateClass method definitions

ToolBarUpdateClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ToolbarClass object and related ToolbarTarget (ToolbarUpdateClass and ToolbarListboxClass) objects.

This example uses a global toolbar to drive a BrowseClass LIST, its child Form procedure, and the Form procedure's secondary BrowseClass LIST.

The program POSTs toolbar events to the active MDI window using the SYSTEM{Prop:Active} property. Then the local ToolbarClass object calls on the active ToolbarTarget object to handle the event.

```

PROGRAM
  _ABCDllMode_  EQUATE(0)
  _ABCLinkMode_ EQUATE(1)

  INCLUDE('ABERROR.INC')
  INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')
  INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')
  INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')
  INCLUDE('ABTOOLBA.INC')
  INCLUDE('KEYCODES.CLW')

  MAP
  Main          PROCEDURE          !contains global toolbar
  BrowseCustomers PROCEDURE          !template generated Browse
  UpdateCustomer PROCEDURE          !template generated Form
  END

  GlobalErrors  ErrorClass
  Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)
  Init          PROCEDURE
  END

  Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)
  Init          PROCEDURE
  Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
  END

  Access:Orders  CLASS(FileManager)
  Init          PROCEDURE
  END
  Relate:Orders  CLASS(RelationManager)
  Init          PROCEDURE
  Kill          PROCEDURE,VIRTUAL
  END

  GlobalRequest  BYTE(0),THREAD
  GlobalResponse BYTE(0),THREAD
  VCRRequest     LONG(0),THREAD

  Customer       FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUS),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
  KeyCustNumber  KEY(CUS:CustNumber),NOCASE,OPT

```



```

KeyCompany      KEY(CUS:Company),DUP,NOCASE
Record          RECORD,PRE()
CustNumber      LONG
Company         STRING(20)
ZipCode         LONG
                END
                END
Orders          FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ORD),CREATE,BINDABLE,THREAD
KeyOrderNumber  KEY(ORD:OrderNumber),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
KeyCustNumber   KEY(ORD:CustNumber),DUP,NOCASE,OPT
Record          RECORD,PRE()
CustNumber      LONG
OrderNumber     SHORT
InvoiceAmount   DECIMAL(7,2)
                END
                END

CODE
GlobalErrors.Init
Relate:Customer.Init
Relate:Orders.Init
Main            !run Application Frame w/ toolbar
Relate:Customer.Kill
Relate:Orders.Kill
GlobalErrors.Kill

Main PROCEDURE                                     !Application Frame w/ toolbar
Frame APPLICATION('Application'),AT(,,310,210),SYSTEM,MAX,RESIZE,IMM
    MENUBAR
        ITEM('Browse Customers'),USE(?BrowseCustomers)
    END
    TOOLBAR,AT(0,0,,20)                            !must use toolbar EQUATES
    BUTTON,AT(4,4),USE(?Toolbar:Top,Toolbar:Top),DISABLE,ICON('VCRFIRST.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(16,4),USE(?Toolbar:PageUp,Toolbar:PageUp),DISABLE,ICON('VCRPRIOR.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(28,4),USE(?Toolbar:Up,Toolbar:Up),DISABLE,ICON('VCRUP.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(40,4),USE(?Toolbar:Down,Toolbar:Down),DISABLE,ICON('VCRDOWN.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(52,4),USE(?Toolbar:PageDown,Toolbar:PageDown),DISABLE,ICON('VCRNEXT.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(64,4),USE(?Toolbar:Bottom,Toolbar:Bottom),DISABLE,ICON('VCRLAST.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(96,4),USE(?Toolbar:Insert,Toolbar:Insert),DISABLE,ICON('INSERT.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(108,4),USE(?Toolbar:Change,Toolbar:Change),DISABLE,ICON('EDIT.ICO')
    BUTTON,AT(121,4),USE(?Toolbar>Delete,Toolbar>Delete),DISABLE,ICON('DELETE.ICO')
    END
    END

FrameWindow CLASS(WindowManager)
Init          PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeAccepted  PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
                END

CODE
FrameWindow.Run()
FrameWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue   BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()

```

```

SELF.FirstField = 1
OPEN(Frame)
SELF.Opened=True
RETURN ReturnValue

FrameWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
CODE
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF Toolbar:First TO Toolbar:Last           !post toolbar event to active thread
  POST(EVENT:Accepted,ACCEPTED(),SYSTEM{Prop:Active})
  RETURN Level:Notify
OF ?BrowseCustomers
  START(BrowseCustomers,25000)              !start BrowseCustomers procedure/thread
END
RETURN PARENT.TakeAccepted()

BrowseCustomers PROCEDURE                  !template generated Browse
CustView    VIEW(Customer)
            END
CustQ        QUEUE
CUS:CustNumber  LIKE(CUS:CustNumber)
CUS:Company    LIKE(CUS:Company)
CUS:ZipCode    LIKE(CUS:ZipCode)
ViewPosition  STRING(1024)
            END

QuickWindow WINDOW('Browse Customers'),AT(,,211,155),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY,DOUBLE,MDI
LIST,AT(8,6,198,142),USE(?CustList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(CustQ),|
FORMAT('28R(2)|M-ID~C(0)n4@80L(2)|M-Company~36L(2)|M-Zip~@P#####P@')
BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(49,62),USE(?Insert),HIDE
BUTTON('&Change'),AT(98,62),USE(?Change),HIDE,DEFAULT
BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(147,62),USE(?Delete),HIDE
END

BrowseWindow CLASS(WindowManager)         !derive BrowseWindow object
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Run         PROCEDURE(USHORT Number,BYTE Request),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
            END

Toolbar     ToolbarClass                  !declare Toolbar object
BRW1        CLASS(BrowseClass)           !derive BRW1 object from BrowseClass
Q           &CustQ
            END
CODE
GlobalResponse = BrowseWindow.Run()

BrowseWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()

```

```

SELF.FirstField = ?CustList
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)           !register Toolbar with BrowseWindow
Relate:Customer.Open
BRW1.Init(?CustList,CustQ.ViewPosition,CustView,CustQ,Relate:Customer,SELF)
OPEN(QuickWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
BRW1.Q &= CustQ
BRW1.AddSortOrder(,CUS:KeyCompany) !set scroll order for Browse AND child Form
BRW1.AddField(CUS:CustNumber,BRW1.Q.CUS:CustNumber)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:Company,BRW1.Q.CUS:Company)
BRW1.AddField(CUS:ZipCode,BRW1.Q.CUS:ZipCode)
BRW1.AskProcedure = 1
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete
BRW1.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)    !BRW1 instantiates a ToolbarListboxClass
SELF.SetAlerts()                 ! object, and makes it a target
RETURN ReturnValue

BrowseWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
Relate:Customer.Close
RETURN ReturnValue

BrowseWindow.Run PROCEDURE(USHORT Number,BYTE Request)
CODE
GlobalRequest = Request
UpdateCustomer           !Browse Procedure calls Form Procedure
RETURN GlobalResponse

UpdateCustomer PROCEDURE           !template generated Form Procedure

OrderView    VIEW(Orders)
END

OrderQ        QUEUE
ORD:OrderNumber    LIKE(ORD:OrderNumber)
ORD:InvoiceAmount  LIKE(ORD:InvoiceAmount)
ViewPosition      STRING(1024)
END

QuickWindow WINDOW('Update Customer'),AT(,,172,132),IMM,GRAY,DOUBLE,MDI
SHEET,AT(4,4,164,106),USE(?CurrentTab)
TAB('Customer'),USE(?CustomerTab)
PROMPT('&Cust Number:'),AT(8,23),USE(?CustNumber:Prompt)
STRING(@n4),AT(64,23),USE(CUS:CustNumber),RIGHT(1)
PROMPT('&Company:'),AT(8,36),USE(?Company:Prompt)

```

```

ENTRY(@s20),AT(64,36),USE(CUS:Company)
PROMPT('&Zip Code:'),AT(8,52),USE(?Zip:Prompt)
ENTRY(@P####P),AT(64,52),USE(CUS:ZipCode),RIGHT(1)
END
TAB('Orders'),USE(?OrderTab)
LIST,AT(8,22,156,81),USE(?OrdList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(OrderQ),|
FORMAT('52R(2)|M~Order ID~C(0)@n-7@60D(12)|M~Amount~C(0)@n-10.2@')
END
END
BUTTON('OK'),AT(97,114),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(133,114),USE(?Cancel)
END

```

```

FormWindow CLASS(WindowManager)      !derive FormWindow from WindowManager
Init      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
Kill      PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
TakeSelected PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL
END

```

```

Toolbar      ToolbarClass      !declare Toolbar object
ToolbarForm  ToolbarUpdateClass !declare ToolbarForm object
OrderBrowse  CLASS(BrowseClass) !derive OrderBrowse from BrowseClass
Q            &OrderQ
END
CODE
GlobalResponse = FormWindow.Run()

```

```

FormWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()
SELF.FirstField = ?CustNumber:Prompt
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled)
Relate:Customer.Open
SELF.Primary &= Relate:Customer
SELF.OkControl = ?OK
IF SELF.PrimeUpdate() THEN RETURN Level:Notify.
OrderBrowse.Init(?OrdList,OrderQ.ViewPosition,OrderView,OrderQ,Relate:Orders,SELF)
OPEN(QuickWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
OrderBrowse.Q &= OrderQ
OrderBrowse.AddSortOrder(,ORD:KeyCustNumber)
OrderBrowse.AddRange(ORD:CustNumber,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer)
OrderBrowse.AddField(ORD:OrderNumber,OrderBrowse.Q.ORD:OrderNumber)
OrderBrowse.AddField(ORD:InvoiceAmount,OrderBrowse.Q.ORD:InvoiceAmount)
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)      !Register Toolbar with FormWindow
SELF.AddItem(ToolbarForm)  !Register ToolbarForm with FormWindow

```

```

                                ! (and with FormWindow's Toolbar)
OrderBrowse.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)!Instantiate a ToolbarListboxClass object,
SELF.SetAlerts()                    ! and register with FormWindow's Toolbar
RETURN ReturnValue

FormWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue  BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()
  Relate:Customer.Close
  RETURN ReturnValue

FormWindow.TakeSelected PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF FIELD(){PROP:Type}=Create:List
    Toolbar.SetTarget(FIELD())      !make selected list the active Target
  END                               !(FormWindow also auto selects the Target)
  RETURN PARENT.TakeSelected()

Access:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
  SELF.FileNameValue = 'Customer'
  SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
  SELF.Create = 1
  SELF.AddKey(CUS:KeyCustNumber,'CUS:KeyCustNumber',1)
  SELF.AddKey(CUS:KeyCompany,'CUS:KeyCompany',0)
  SELF.AddKey(CUS:KeyZipCode,'CUS:KeyZipCode',0)

Access:Orders.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  PARENT.Init(Orders,GlobalErrors)
  SELF.FileNameValue = 'Orders'
  SELF.Buffer &= ORD:Record
  SELF.Create = 1
  SELF.AddKey(ORD:KeyOrderNumber,'ORD:KeyOrderNumber',1)
  SELF.AddKey(ORD:KeyCustNumber,'ORD:KeyCustNumber',0)

Relate:Customer.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  Access:Customer.Init
  PARENT.Init(Access:Customer,1)
  SELF.AddRelation(Relate:Orders,RI:CASCADE,RI:RESTRICT,ORD:KeyCustNumber)
  SELF.AddRelationLink(CUS:CustNumber,ORD:CustNumber)

Relate:Customer.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
  Access:Customer.Kill
  PARENT.Kill

Relate:Orders.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
  Access:Orders.Init

```

```
PARENT.Init(Access:Orders,1)
SELF.AddRelation(Relate:Customer)
```

```
Relate:Orders.Kill PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:Orders.Kill
PARENT.Kill
```

ToolBarUpdateClass Properties

The ToolBarUpdateClass inherits all the properties of the ToolbarTarget from which it is derived. See *ToolBarTarget Properties* for more information.

In addition to the inherited properties, the ToolBarUpdateClass contains the following properties.

Request (requested database operation)

Request **BYTE**

The **Request** property indicates for what purpose the ToolBarUpdateClass object's entity is used. The ToolBarUpdateClass uses this value to set appropriate toolbar button TIP attributes and enable and disable the appropriate toolbar buttons.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar and DisplayButtons methods set the toolbar state based on the value of the Request property. EQUATEs for the Request values are declared in TPLEQU.CW as follows:

```
InsertRecord    EQUATE (1)    !Add a record
ChangeRecord   EQUATE (2)    !Change the current record
DeleteRecord   EQUATE (3)    !Delete the current record
SelectRecord   EQUATE (4)    !Select the current record
```

See Also: DisplayButtons, TakeToolbar

History (enable toolbar history button)**History BYTE**

The **History** property indicates whether or not to enable the toolbar history (ditto) button for this ToolbarUpdateClass object. The ToolbarUpdateClass uses this value to set the appropriate toolbar button TIP attribute and enable or disable the appropriate toolbar button.

By convention the history button restores the previous value for a field or record. See *Control Templates--SaveButton* for more information.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar and DisplayButtons methods set the toolbar state based on the value of the History property. A History value of one (1) enables the toolbar history button; a value of zero (0) disables the history button

See Also: DisplayButtons, TakeToolbar

ToolBarUpdateClass Methods

The ToolBarUpdateClass inherits all the methods of the ToolBarTarget from which it is derived. See *ToolBarTarget Methods* for more information.

In addition to (or instead of) the inherited methods, the ToolBarUpdateClass contains the following methods:

DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons:ToolBarUpdateClass)

DisplayButtons, VIRTUAL

The **DisplayButtons** method enables and disables the appropriate toolbar buttons for the ToolBarUpdateClass object based on the values of the HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, and SelectButton properties.

Implementation: The TakeToolBar method calls the DisplayButtons method.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                                !initialize Toolbar object
ToolBar.AddTarget( ToolbarForm, -1 )        !register an Update Form target
ToolBar.AddTarget( REL1::ToolBar, ?RelTree ) !register a RelTree target
ToolBar.SetTarget( -1 )                     !calls DisplayButtons via TakeToolBar
!program code

MyToolBarUpdateClass.DisplayButtons PROCEDURE !a derived class virtual
CODE
ENABLE(ToolBar:History)                    !enable toolbar ditto button
DISABLE(ToolBar:Locate)                     !disable locator button
PARENT.DisplayButtons                      !call base class DisplayButtons
!your custom code here
```

See Also: HelpButton, InsertButton, ChangeButton, DeleteButton, SelectButton,
TakeToolBar

TakeEvent (convert toolbar events:ToolbarUpdateClass)**TakeEvent**([*vcr*], *window manager*), **VIRTUAL**

TakeEvent	Handles toolbar events for the ToolbarUpdateClass object.
<i>vcr</i>	An integer variable to receive the control number of the accepted VCR navigation button. This lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent action. If omitted, the ToolbarUpdateClass object does no "post processing" navigation.
<i>windowmanager</i>	The label of the ToolbarUpdateClass object's WindowManager object. See <i>Window Manager</i> for more information.

The **TakeEvent** method handles toolbar events for the ToolbarUpdateClass object.

The *vcr* parameter lets the TakeEvent method specify an appropriate subsequent or secondary action. For example, the ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeEvent method (for a FORM), may interpret a *vcr* scroll down as "save and then scroll." The method takes the necessary action to save the item and accomplishes the secondary scroll action by setting the *vcr* parameter.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass.TakeEvent method calls the TakeEvent method for the active ToolbarTarget object. The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method sets the active ToolbarTarget object.

Example:

```
ToolbarClass.TakeEvent PROCEDURE(<*LONG VCR>,WindowManager WM)
  CODE
  ASSERT(~SELF.List &= NULL)
  IF RECORDS(SELF.List)
    SELF.List.Item.TakeEvent(VCR,WM)
  END
```

See Also: ToolbarClass.SetTarget, ToolbarClass.TakeEvent

TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar:ToolBarUpdateClass)**TakeToolbar, VIRTUAL**

The **TakeToolbar** method sets the toolbar state appropriate to the ToolBarUpdateClass object.

Implementation: The TakeToolbar method sets appropriate TIP attributes for the toolbar buttons and enables and disables toolbar buttons appropriate for the ToolBarUpdateClass object. The ToolBarClass.SetTarget method and the TryTakeToolbar method call the TakeToolbar method.

Example:

```
CODE
ToolBar.Init                                !initialize Toolbar object
  ToolBar.AddTarget( ToolbarForm, -1 )      !register an Update Form target
  ToolBar.AddTarget( REL1::ToolBar, ?RelTree ) !register a RelTree target
  ToolBar.SetTarget( -1 )                   !calls TakeToolbar
!program code

MyToolBarUpdateClass.TakeToolbar PROCEDURE  !a derived class virtual
CODE
  !your custom code here
  SELF.DisplayButtons                       !enable appropriate buttons
```

See Also: ToolBarClass.SetTarget, TryTakeToolbar

TryTakeToolbar (return toolbar control indicator:ToolbarUpdateClass)**TryTakeToolbar, VIRTUAL**

The **TryTakeToolbar** method returns a value indicating whether the ToolbarTarget object successfully assumed control of the toolbar. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates success; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates failure to take control of the toolbar.

Implementation: The ToolbarClass.SetTarget method calls the TryTakeToolbar method. The TryTakeToolbar method calls the TakeToolbar and returns True because, by default, a ToolbarUpdateClass object may always assume toolbar control.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ToolbarClass.SetTarget PROCEDURE(SIGNED Id)
I USHORT,AUTO
Hit USHORT
CODE
  ASSERT(~ (SELF.List &= NULL))
  IF Id                                !set explicitly requested target
    SELF.List.Id = Id
    GET(SELF.List,SELF.List.Id)
    ASSERT (~ERRORCODE())
    SELF.List.Item.TakeToolbar
  ELSE                                !set a valid target
    LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.List)
      GET(SELF.List,I)
      IF SELF.List.Item.TryTakeToolbar() THEN Hit = I.
    END
    IF Hit THEN GET(SELF.List,Hit).
  END
```

See Also: TakeToolbar, ToolbarClass.SetTarget

TranslatorClass

TranslatorClass Overview

By default, the ABC Templates, the ABC Library, and the Clarion visual source code formatters generate American English user interfaces. However, Clarion makes it very easy to efficiently produce non-English user interfaces for your application programs.

The TranslatorClass provides very fast runtime translation of user interface text. The TranslatorClass lets you deploy a single application that serves all your customers, regardless of their language preference. That is, you can use the TranslatorClass to display several different user interface languages based on end user input or some other runtime criteria, such as INI file or control file contents.

Alternatively, you can use the Clarion translation files (*.TRN) to implement a single non-English user interface at compile time.

TranslatorClass Concepts

The TranslatorClass and the ABUTIL.TRN file provide a way to perform language translation at runtime. That is, you can make your program display one or more non-English user interfaces based on end user input or some other runtime criteria such as INI file or control file contents. You can also use the TranslatorClass to customize a single application for multiple customers. The TranslatorClass operates on all user interface elements including window controls, window titlebars, tooltips, list box headers, and static report controls.

The ABUTIL.TRN File

The ABUTIL.TRN file contains translation pairs for all the user interface text generated by the ABC Templates and the ABC Library. A translation pair is simply two text strings: one text string for which to search and another text string to replace the searched-for text. At runtime, the TranslatorClass applies the translation pairs to each user interface element.

You can directly edit the ABUTIL.TRN file to add additional translation items. We recommend this method for translated text common to several applications. The translation pairs you add to the Translator GROUP declared in ABUTIL.TRN are automatically shared by any application relying on the ABC Library and the ABC Templates.

Translating Custom Text

The default ABUTIL.TRN translation pairs do not include any custom text that you apply to your windows and menus. To translate custom text, you simply add translation pairs to the translation process, either at a global level or at a local level according to your requirements. To help identify custom text, the TranslatorClass automatically identifies any untranslated text for you; you need only supply the translation. See ExtractText for more information.

Macro Substitution

The TranslatorClass defines and translates macro strings. A TranslatorClass macro is simply text delimited by percent signs (%), such as %mymacro%. You may use a macro within the text on an APPLICATION, WINDOW, or REPORT control or titlebar, or you may use a macro within TranslatorClass translation pairs text.

You define the macro with surrounding percent signs (%), and you define its substitution value with a TranslatorClass translation pair (without percent signs).

This macro substitution capability lets you

- translate a small portion (the macro) of a larger text string
- do multiple levels of translation (a macro substitution value may also contain a macro)

See the Conceptual Example for more information.

TranslatorClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The WindowManager, PopupClass, and PrintPreviewClass optionally use the TranslatorClass to translate text at runtime. These classes do not require the TranslatorClass; however, if you want them to do runtime translation, you must include the TranslatorClass in your program. See the Conceptual Example.

TranslatorClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates instantiate a global TranslatorClass object for each application that checks the **Enable Run-Time Translation** box on the **Global Properties** dialog. See Template Overview--Application Properties for more information.

The TranslatorClass object is called Translator, and each template-generated procedure calls on the Translator object to translate all text for its APPLICATION, WINDOW or REPORT. Additionally, the template-generated PopupClass objects (ASCIIViewer and BrowseBox templates) and PrintPreviewClass objects (Report template) use the Translator to translate menu text.

Note: The ABC Templates use the TranslatorClass to apply user interface text defined at compile time. The templates do not provide a runtime switch between user interface languages.

TranslatorClass Source Files

The TranslatorClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The TranslatorClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABUTIL.INC	TranslatorClass declarations
ABUTIL.CLW	TranslatorClass method definitions
ABUTIL.TRN	TranslatorClass default translation pairs

TranslatorClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a TranslatorClass object.

This example applies both default and custom translations to a "preferences" window. It also collects and stores untranslated text in a file so you don't have to manually collect the text to translate.

```

PROGRAM
INCLUDE( 'ABUTIL.INC' )           !declare TranslatorClass
MAP
END

MyTranslations GROUP              !declare local translations
Items        USHORT(4)           !4 translations pairs
    PSTRING( 'Company' )         ! item 1 text (macro)
    PSTRING( 'Widget %CoType%' ) ! item 1 replacement text
    PSTRING( '&Sound' )          ! item 2 text
    PSTRING( '&xSoundx' )         ! item 2 replacement text
    PSTRING( '&Volume' )         ! item 3 text
    PSTRING( '&xVolumex' )       ! item 3 replacement text
    PSTRING( 'OK' )              ! item 4 text
    PSTRING( 'xOKx' )            ! item 4 replacement text
END

INIMgr        INIClass           !declare INIMgr object
Translator    TranslatorClass    !declare Translator object
CoType        STRING( 'Inc.' )   !default company type
Sound         STRING( 'ON ' )    !default preference value
Volume        BYTE(3)            !default preference value

PWindow WINDOW( '%Company% Preferences' ), AT( , , 100, 35 ), IMM, SYSTEM, GRAY
    CHECK( '&Sound' ), AT( 8, 6 ), USE( Sound ), VALUE( 'ON', 'OFF' )
    PROMPT( '&Volume' ), AT( 31, 19 ), USE( ?VolumePrompt )
    SPIN( @s20 ), AT( 8, 20, 21, 7 ), USE( Volume ), HVSCROLL, RANGE( 0, 9 ), STEP( 1 )
    BUTTON( 'OK' ), AT( 57, 3, 30, 10 ), USE( ?OK )
END

CODE
INIMgr.Init( '.\MyApp.INI' )      !initialize INIMgr object
INIMgr.Fetch( 'Preferences', 'CoType', CoType ) !get company type, default Inc.
Translator.Init                   !initialize Translator object:
    ! add default translation pairs
Translator.AddTranslation( MyTranslations ) !add local translation pairs
Translator.AddTranslation( 'CoType', CoType ) !add translation pair from INI
Translator.ExtractText= '.\MyApp.trn'      !collect user interface text
OPEN( PWindow )
Translator.TranslateWindow         !translate controls & titlebar

```


TranslatorClass Properties

The TranslatorClass contains the following properties:

ExtractText (identify text to translate)

ExtractText CSTRING(File:MaxFilePath)

The **ExtractText** property contains the pathname of a file to receive a list of runtime user interface text to translate. If ExtractText contains a pathname, the TranslatorClass identifies, extracts, and writes the user interface text it encounters at runtime to the named file.

To generate a complete list of text to translate, assign a filename to the ExtractText property, compile and run your application, then open each procedure, menu, and option in the application. When you close the application, the TranslatorClass generates a sorted list of all the untranslated text items. You can then use this information to provide appropriate translations for the untranslated text. See AddTranslation for more information.

For applications that do dynamic text assignments based on data, you may even want to set the ExtractText property when you deploy your application, so you can collect the text that actually appears on end user screens based on the specific ways the end users work and the data they access.

Implementation: The ExtractText property defaults to blank. A value of blank does not extract untranslated text. A non-blank value extracts the text, and a valid pathname writes the untranslated text to the specified file.

See Also: AddTranslation

TranslatorClass Methods

The TranslatorClass contains the following methods:

AddTranslation (add translation pairs)

```
AddTranslation(      | group      | )
                    | text, translation |
```

AddTranslation	Adds translation pairs.
<i>group</i>	The label of a structure that contains one or more <i>text/translation</i> pairs.
<i>text</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing user interface text to search for. The TranslatorClass replaces each found <i>text</i> with its corresponding <i>translation</i> .
<i>translation</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the replacement text for the corresponding <i>text</i> .

The **AddTranslation** method adds translation pairs to the runtime translation process.

The *text* is not limited to a single word; it may contain a phrase, or any text string, including TranslatorClass macros (see *TranslatorClass Concepts--Runtime Translation*).

Implementation: The *group* parameter must name a GROUP that *begins* the same as the TranslatorGroup structure declared in ABUTIL.INC:

```
TranslatorGroup GROUP,TYPE
Number          USHORT
                END
```

When you declare a translation *group*, be sure to set the correct number of translation pairs in the GROUP. For example:

```
MyAppTranslator GROUP
Pairs            USHORT(2)                !2 translation pairs
                PSTRING('&Insert')         !begin 1st pair
                PSTRING('&Agregar')        ! end 1st pair
                PSTRING('Insert a new Record') !begin 2nd pair
                PSTRING('Agregar un nuevo Registro') ! end 2nd pair
                END
```

The TranslatorClass uses whole word, case sensitive matching to search for *text*. For example, 'Insert' does not match '&Insert' or 'INSERT' or 'Insert a new Record.'

The Init method uses the AddTranslation method to add the translation pairs declared in ABUTIL.TRN to the translation process.

The various "Translate" methods apply the translation pairs.

Example:

```
MyTranslations GROUP                                !declare local translations
Pairs          USHORT(4)                          !4 translations pairs
               PSTRING('&Sound')                   ! item 1 text
               PSTRING('&xSoundx')                 ! item 1 replacement text
               PSTRING('&Volume')                  ! item 2 text
               PSTRING('&xVolumex')                ! item 2 replacement text
               PSTRING('Preferences')             ! item 3 text
               PSTRING('xPreferencesx')           ! item 3 replacement text
               PSTRING('OK')                      ! item 4 text
               PSTRING('xOKx')                   ! item 4 replacement text
               END
Translator      TranslatorClass                    !declare Translator object
CODE
Translator.Init                               !initialize Translator object
               !add default translation pairs
Translator.AddTranslation(MyTranslations) !add local translation pairs
OPEN(MyWindow)
Translator.TranslateWindow                    !translate all window controls
               ! and window titlebar
```

See Also: Init, TranslateControl, TranslatedControls, TranslateString, TranslateWindow

Init (initialize the TranslatorClass object)

Init

The **Init** method initializes the TranslatorClass object.

Implementation: The Init method uses the TranslatorClass.AddTranslation method to add the translation pairs declared in ABUTIL.TRN to the translation process.

Example:

```
Translator      TranslatorClass      !declare Translator object
CODE
Translator.Init      !initialize Translator object:
                    ! with default translation pairs

!program code
Translator.Kill      !shut down Translator object
```

Kill (shut down the TranslatorClass object)

Kill

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and does any other required termination code.

Implementation: The Kill method writes out a list of untranslated text strings if the ExtractText property contains a valid INI file pathname.

Example:

```
Translator      TranslatorClass      !declare Translator object
CODE
Translator.Init      !initialize Translator object:
                    ! with default translation pairs

!program code
Translator.Kill      !shut down Translator object
```

TranslateControl (translate text for a control)**TranslateControl(*control* [, *window*]), VIRTUAL****TranslateControl** Translates text for a control.*control* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control to translate.*window* The label of the APPLICATION, WINDOW, or REPORT to translate. If omitted, TranslateControl operates on the active target.

The **TranslateControl** method translates the text for the specified *control*. The AddTranslation method sets the translation values for the control text.

Implementation: The TranslateControl method calls the TranslateString method for the specified control. Where applicable, the TranslateControl method translates MSG attribute text, TIP attribute text, and FORMAT attribute text.

The TranslateControl method does not translate USE variable contents; therefore it does not translate STRING controls that display a variable, nor the contents of ENTRY, SPIN, TEXT, or COMBO controls. You can use the TranslateString method to translate these elements if necessary.

Example:

```

PWindow WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
  CHECK('&Sound'),AT(8,6),USE(Sound),VALUE('ON','OFF')
  PROMPT('&Volume'),AT(31,19),USE(?VolumePrompt)
  SPIN(@s20),AT(8,20,21,7),USE(Volume),HVSCROLL,RANGE(0,9),STEP(1)
  BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
END
CODE
OPEN(PWindow)
Translator.TranslateControl(?Sound)           !translate Sound check box
Translator.TranslateControl(?VolumePrompt)    !translate Volume prompt
ACCEPT                                         !leave OK button
END                                           ! and window title bar alone

```

See Also: AddTranslation, TranslateString

TranslateControls (translate text for range of controls)**TranslateControls**(*first control*, *last control* [, *window*]), **VIRTUAL****TranslateControls** Translates text for a range of controls.

first control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the first control to translate.

last control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the last control to translate.

window The label of the APPLICATION, WINDOW, or REPORT to translate. If omitted, TranslateControl operates on the active target.

The **TranslateControls** method translates the text for each control between the *first control* and the *last control*, inclusive. The AddTranslation method sets the translation values for the control text.

Implementation: The TranslateControls method calls the TranslateControl method for each control with a USE attribute in the specified range. The TranslateControls method ignores controls with no USE attribute.

Example:

```
Pwindow WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    CHECK('&Sound'),AT(8,6),USE(Sound),VALUE('ON','OFF')
    PROMPT('&Volume'),AT(31,19),USE(?VolumePrompt)
    SPIN(@s20),AT(8,20,21,7),USE(Volume),HVSCROLL,RANGE(0,9),STEP(1)
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
END
CODE
OPEN(Pwindow)
Translator.TranslateControls(?Sound,?VolumePrompt) !translate ?Sound thru ?Volume
ACCEPT                                           !leave OK button untranslated
END
```

See Also: AddTranslation, TranslateControl

TranslateString (translate text)**TranslateString(*text*), VIRTUAL**

TranslateString Translates a text string.

text A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing text to search for.

The **TranslateString** method returns the translation value for the specified *text*. The translation values and macro substitution values are set by the AddTranslation method.

Implementation: The TranslateString method uses whole word, case sensitive matching to search for *text*. For example, 'Insert' does not match '&Insert' or 'INSERT' or 'Insert a new Record.' If there is no translation value for the specified *text*, TranslateString returns *text*.

The TranslateString method implements the TranslatorClass macro substitution by translating any percent sign (%) delimited text it detects within its own return value.

Return Data Type: **STRING**

Example:

```
MyVar STRING('Sound')
PWindow WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    STRING(@s12),AT(8,30),USE(MyVar)
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
END

CODE
OPEN(PWindow)
MyVar=Translator.TranslateString(MyVar) !translate USE variable contents
ACCEPT
END
```

See Also: **AddTranslation**

TranslateWindow (translate text for a window)**TranslateWindow([,window]), VIRTUAL****TranslateControls** Translates text for each control on the WINDOW.

window The label of the APPLICATION, WINDOW, or REPORT to translate. If omitted, TranslateControl operates on the active target.

The **TranslateWindow** method translates the text for each control on the active target (APPLICATION, WINDOW, or REPORT). The AddTranslation method sets the translation values for the controls.

Implementation: The TranslateWindow method calls the TranslateControls method, specifying the entire range of controls on the window, except for menus and toolbars.

Example:

```
PWindow WINDOW('Preferences'),AT(,,89,34),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
    CHECK('&Sound'),AT(8,6),USE(Sound),VALUE('ON','OFF')
    PROMPT('&Volume'),AT(31,19),USE(?VolumePrompt)
    SPIN(@s20),AT(8,20,21,7),USE(Volume),HVSCROLL,RANGE(0,9),STEP(1)
    BUTTON('OK'),AT(57,3,30,10),USE(?OK)
END
CODE
OPEN(PWindow)
Translator.TranslateWindow ! translate all controls
ACCEPT                    ! plus window titlebar
END
```

See Also: AddTranslation, TranslateControls

ViewManager

ViewManager Overview

The ViewManager class manages a VIEW. The ViewManager gives you easy, reliable access to all the sophisticated power and speed of VIEWS, through its proven objects. So you get this speed and power without reinventing any wheels.

ViewManager Concepts

The management provided by the ViewManager includes defining and applying multiple sort orders, range limits (key based filters), and filters (non-key based) to the VIEW result set. It also includes opening, buffering, reading, and closing the VIEW. Finally, it includes priming and validating the view's primary file record buffer in anticipation of adding or updating records.

All these services provided by the ViewManager are applied to a VIEW--not a FILE. A VIEW may encompass some or all of the fields in one or more related FILES. The VIEW concept is extremely powerful and perhaps essential in a client-server environment with normalized data. The VIEW lets you access data from several different FILES as though from a single file, and it does so very efficiently. See VIEW in the *Language Reference* for more information.

In addition, the ViewManager supports buffering (some file drivers do not support buffering) which allows the performance of "browse" type procedures to be virtually instantaneous when displaying pages of records already read. Buffering (see BUFFER in the *Language Reference*) can also optimize performance when the file driver is a Client/Server back-end database engine (usually SQL-based), since the file driver can then optimize the calls made to the back-end database for minimum network traffic.

ViewManager Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The ViewManager relies on the FieldPairsClass and the RelationManager to do much of its work. Therefore, if your program instantiates the ViewManager it must also instantiate these other classes. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the ViewManager header (ABFILE.INC) in your program's data section. See Field Pairs Classes and Relation Manager Class for more information. Also, see the Conceptual Example.

Perhaps more significantly, the ViewManager serves as the foundation of the BrowseClass and the ProcessClass. That is, both the BrowseClass and the ProcessClass are derived from the ViewManager.

BrowseClass--An Interactive VIEW

The BrowseClass implements an interactive VIEW that includes a visual display of records with scrolling, sorting, searching, and updating capabilities. See Browse Classes for more information.

ProcessClass--A Non-Interactive VIEW

The ProcessClass implements a batch (non-interactive) VIEW with sorting and updating capability, but no visual display and therefore no scrolling or searching capability. See Process Class for more information.

ViewManager ABC Template Implementation

The ViewManager serves as the foundation to the Browse procedure template, the Report procedure template, and the Process procedure template, because all these templates rely on VIEWS.

The BrowseClass and the ProcessClass are derived from the ViewManager, and the ABC Templates instantiate these derived classes; that is, the templates do not instantiate the ViewManager independently of the BrowseClass or ProcessClass. The Browse procedure template instantiates the BrowseClass, and the Process and Report procedure templates instantiate the ProcessClass.

ViewManager Source Files

The ViewManager source code is installed by default to ..\LIBSRC. The specific ViewManager files and their respective components are:

ABFILE.INC	ViewManager declarations
ABFILE.CLW	ViewManager method definitions

ViewManager Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a ViewManager object. This example simply establishes a VIEW with a particular sort order, range limit and filter, then processes the result set that fits the range and filter criteria.

```

PROGRAM
    INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')          !declare ViewManager class
    MAP                             !program map
    END

GlobalErrors  ErrorClass          !declare GlobalErrors object
View:Customer ViewManager        !declare View:Customer object

Access:CUSTOMER CLASS(FileManager) !declare Access:Customer object
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

Relate:CUSTOMER CLASS(RelationManager)!declare Relate:Customer object
Init          PROCEDURE
              END

CUSTOMER      FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUS),THREAD,BINDABLE
BYNUMBER      KEY(CUS:CUSTNO),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record        RECORD,PRE()
CUSTNO        LONG
NAME          STRING(30)
ZIP           DECIMAL(5)
              END
              END

Customer:View VIEW(CUSTOMER) !declare Customer VIEW
              END

Low          LONG                !low end of range limit
High         LONG(1000)          !high end of range limit
ProgressMsg  STRING(60)

ProgressWindow WINDOW('Processing...'),AT(,,215,60),GRAY,TIMER(100)
              STRING(@S60),AT(1,21,210,10),USE(ProgressMsg),CENTER
              BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(87,37,45,14),USE(?Cancel)
              END

```

CODE

```

GlobalErrors.Init           !initialize GlobalErrors object
Relate:CUSTOMER.Ini         !initialize Relate:Customer object
View:Customer.Init(Customer:View,Relate:CUSTOMER) !initialize View:Customer object
View:Customer.AddSortOrder( CUS:BYNUMBER )      !add sort BYNUMBER
View:Customer.AppendOrder( 'CUS:Name,CUS:ZIP' )  !add secondary sorts
View:Customer.AddRange(CUS:CUSTNO,Low,High)     !add a range limit
View:Customer.SetFilter( 'CUS:ZIP=33066','1')    !add filter #1
Relate:CUSTOMER.Open       !open customer & related files
OPEN(ProgressWindow)      !open the window
ProgressMsg='Processing...'

```

ACCEPT

```

CASE EVENT()
OF Event:OpenWindow
  View:Customer.Reset(1)           !open view, apply range & filter
OF Event:Timer
  CASE View:Customer.Next()        !get next view record
  OF Level:Notify                  !if end of file, stop
    POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
    BREAK
  OF Level:Fatal                   !if fatal error, stop
    POST(EVENT:CloseWindow)
    BREAK
  END
  CUS:ZIP=33065                    !process the record
  IF Relate:CUSTOMER.Update()      !update customer & related files
    BREAK
  ELSE
    ProgressMsg = CLIP(CUS:Name)&' zip changed to '&CUS:ZIP
    DISPLAY(ProgressMsg)
  END
END
IF FIELD() = ?Cancel              !if user cancelled, stop
  IF EVENT() = Event:Accepted
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)
  END
END
END
Relate:CUSTOMER.Close            !close customer & related files
View:CUSTOMER.Kill               !shut down View:Customer object
Relate:CUSTOMER.Kill             !shut down Relate:Customer object
GlobalErrors.Kill                !shut down GlobalErrors object

```

```
Access:CUSTOMER.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
PARENT.Init(Customer,GlobalErrors)
SELF.FileNameValue = 'CUSTOMER.TPS'
SELF.Buffer &= CUS:Record
SELF.AddKey(CUS:BYNUMBER,'CUS:BYNUMBER',1)
SELF.LazyOpen = False

Relate:CUSTOMER.Init PROCEDURE
CODE
Access:CUSTOMER.Init
PARENT.Init(Access:CUSTOMER,1)
```

ViewManager Properties

The ViewManager properties include references to the specific view being managed, as well as several flags or switches that tell the ViewManager how to manage the referenced view.

The references are to the VIEW, the primary FILE's RelationManager object, and the VIEW's sort information. These references allow the otherwise generic ViewManager object to process a specific view.

The processing switches include buffering parameters that allow asynchronous read-ahead buffering of pages and saving pages of already read records. This buffering provides instant response for procedures displaying pages of records already read, and can also minimize network traffic for Client/Server programs by reducing packets.

Each of these properties is fully described below.

Order (sort, range-limit, and filter information)

Order &SortOrder, PROTECTED

The **Order** property is a reference to a structure that contains the sort, range, and filter information for the managed VIEW. The ViewManager methods use this information to sort, range limit, and filter the VIEW result set.

Several ViewManager methods affect the contents of the Order property, including AddSortOrder, AddRange, AppendOrder, and SetFilter. The SetOrder method overrides a particular sort order, and the SetSort method determines which sort order is current for the underlying VIEW.

Implementation: The Order property is a reference to QUEUE declared in ABFILE.INC:

```
FilterQueue QUEUE,TYPE
ID          STRING(30)      !sorted to indicate priority
Filter      &STRING        !filter expression
END

SortOrder   QUEUE,TYPE      !sort & filter information
Filter      &FilterQueue    !ANDed list of filter expressions
FreeElement ANY            !the Free key element
LimitType   BYTE           !range limit type flag
MainKey     &KEY            !the main KEY
Order       &STRING        !ORDER expression list
RangeList   &BufferedPairsClass !list of fields in range limit
END
```

See Also: AddSortOrder, AddRange, AppendOrder, SetFilter, SetOrder, SetSort

PagesAhead (buffered pages)

PagesAhead USHORT

The **PagesAhead** property controls automatic record set buffering for the managed view (see *BUFFER* in the *Language Reference*). Some file drivers do not support buffering. PagesAhead specifies the number of additional "pages" of records to read ahead of the currently displayed page.

Implementation: The Init method sets the PagesAhead property to zero (0). The Open method implements the buffering specified by the PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, and TimeOut properties.

See Also: Init, Open, PagesBehind, PageSize, TimeOut

PagesBehind (buffered pages)

PagesBehind USHORT

The **PagesBehind** property controls automatic record set buffering for the managed view (see *BUFFER* in the *Language Reference*). Some file drivers do not support buffering. PagesBehind specifies the number of "pages" of already read records to save.

Implementation: The Init method sets the PagesBehind property to two (2). The Open method implements the buffering specified by the PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, and TimeOut properties.

See Also: Init, Open, PagesAhead, PageSize, TimeOut

PageSize (buffer page size)

PageSize USHORT

The **PageSize** property controls automatic record set buffering for the managed view (see *BUFFER* in the *Language Reference*). Some file drivers do not support buffering. PageSize specifies the number of records in a buffer "page."

Implementation: The Init method sets the PageSize property to twenty(20). The Open method implements the buffering specified by the PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, and TimeOut properties.

See Also: Init, Open, PagesAhead, PagesBehind, TimeOut

Primary (the primary file RelationManager)

Primary &RelationManager, PROTECTED

The **Primary** property is a reference to the RelationManager object for the managed VIEW's primary file. The ViewManager methods use this property to enforce relational integrity constraints among related files within the managed VIEW.

The ViewManager.Init method sets the value of the Primary property.

See Also: Init

SavedBuffers (saved record buffers)

SavedBuffers &BuffersQueue, PROTECTED

The **SavedBuffers** property contains references to saved copies of the record buffer for the managed view. The saved record images may be used to detect changes by other workstations, to implement cancel operations, etc.

Implementation: The SaveBuffers method stores a copy of the current Buffer contents into the SavedBuffers property.

The RestoreBuffers method releases memory allocated by the SaveBuffers method. Therefore, to prevent a memory leak, each call to SaveBuffers should be paired with a corresponding call to RestoreBuffers.

SavedBuffers is a reference to a QUEUE declared in ABFILE.INC as follows:

```
BuffersQueue QUEUE,TYPE    !Saved records
Id            USHORT        !Handle to recognize saved instance
FM            &FileManager !Reference to the FileManager Class
END
```

See Also: SaveBuffers, Restore Buffers

TimeOut (buffered pages freshness)

TimeOut USHORT

The **TimeOut** property controls automatic record set buffering for the managed view (see *BUFFER* in the *Language Reference*). Some file drivers do not support buffering.

TimeOut specifies the number of seconds the buffered records are considered "trustworthy" in a network environment. If the TimeOut period has expired, the VIEW fills a request for records from the backend database rather than from the buffer.

Implementation: The Init method sets the TimeOut property to sixty (60). The Open method implements the buffering specified by the PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, and TimeOut properties.

See Also: Init, Open, PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize

View (the managed VIEW)

View &VIEW

The **View** property is a reference to the managed VIEW. The View property simply identifies the managed VIEW for the various ViewManager methods.

The ViewManager.Init method sets the value of the View property.

See Also: Init

ViewManager Methods

The ViewManager contains the following methods.

ViewManager Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the ViewManager, it is useful to organize its methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the ViewManager methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the ViewManager object
AddRange	add a range limit to the active sort order
AddSortOrder	add a sort order
AppendOrder	refine the active sort order
Kill _v	Shut down the ViewManager object

Mainstream Use:

Open _v	open the VIEW
Next _v	get the next element
Previous _v	get the previous element
PrimeRecord	prepare a record for adding
ValidateRecord _v	validate the current element
SetFilter _v	specify a filter for the active sort order
SetSort _v	set the active sort order
Close _v	close the VIEW

Occasional Use:

SetOrder _v	replace the active sort order
UseView	use LazyOpen files

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically, you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Open	open the VIEW
Next	get the next element
Previous	get the previous element
Reset	reset the VIEW position
SetSort	set the active sort order
SetFilter	specify a filter for the active sort order
SetOrder	replace the active sort order
ApplyFilter	range limit and filter the result set
ApplyOrder	sort the result set
ApplyRange	range limit & filter the result set
ValidateRecord	validate the current element
GetFreeElementName	return the free element field name
GetFreeElementPosition	return the free element field position
Close	close the VIEW
Kill	shut down the ViewManager object

AddRange (add a range limit)

AddRange(*field* [[*,min limit* [*,max limit*]] |)
 | *,primaryrelation, parentrelation* |

AddRange	Specifies a sort-specific range limit.
<i>field</i>	The label of the field to limit. This need not be a component of a KEY or INDEX, but VIEW performance is substantially faster if it is.
<i>min limit</i>	A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the value, or the lower end of a range of values, to which the <i>field</i> is limited. If omitted, the <i>field</i> is limited to its current value.
<i>max limit</i>	A constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the upper end of an inclusive range of values to which the <i>field</i> is limited. The lower end of the inclusive range is specified by <i>min limit</i> . If <i>max limit</i> is omitted, the <i>field</i> is limited to the value of <i>min limit</i> .
<i>primaryrelation</i>	The label of the RelationManager object for the managed VIEW's primary file. This limits all available linking fields to their current values in the corresponding parent file fields.
<i>parentrelation</i>	The label of the RelationManager object for the primary file's parent file. The ViewManager uses this object to get the limiting values from the parent file for a file-relationship range limit.

The **AddRange** method specifies a sort-specific range limit that may be applied to the VIEW when the range limit's sort order is active. When the range limit is applied, only those records whose *field* contains the specified value(s) are included in the result set. You may specify only one range limit per sort order.

Implementation: The AddSortOrder method adds a sort order. The ApplyRange method applies the active sort order's range limit. The SetSort method sets the active sort order.

AddRange ignores the *field* parameter when the *primaryrelation* parameter is present.

Example:

```
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)           !sort by customer no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer) !range limit by parent file
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByOrder)               !sort by order no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:OrderNo)                   !range limit by current
                                              !value of ORD:OrderNo
```

See Also: AddSortOrder, ApplyRange, SetSort

AddSortOrder (add a sort order)**AddSortOrder([key]), PROC**

AddSortOrder Specifies a sort order for the ViewManager object.

key The label of the primary file KEY on which to sort. If omitted, the ViewManager processes in record order.

The **AddSortOrder** method specifies a sort order for the ViewManager object and returns a number identifying the sequence in which the sort order was added.

Only one sort order is active at a time. The SetSort method sets the active sort order based on the sequence numbers returned by AddSortOrder.

Implementation: You may specify multiple sort orders by calling AddSortOrder multiple times. The first call to AddSortOrder returns one (1), the second call returns two (2), etc.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

CustSort = MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)      !sort by customer no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer) !range limit by parent file
OrderSort = MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByOrder)        !sort by order no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:OrderNo)                        !range limit by current
                                                    !value of ORD:OrderNo

!program code
IF MyView.SetSort(CustSort)                        !set active sort order
  DISPLAY                                           !if changed, refresh
END

```

See Also: SetSort

AppendOrder (refine a sort order)

AppendOrder(*expression list*), VIRTUAL

AppendOrder Refines the active sort order for the ViewManager object.

expression list A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains an ORDER expression list. See the *Language Reference--ORDER* for more information.

The **AppendOrder** method refines or extends the active sort order for the ViewManager object.

The SetSort method sets the active sort order.

Implementation: The ViewManager implements sort orders with the VIEW's ORDER attribute. The AppendOrder method appends the *expression list* to the active sort order's expression list. You do not need to prepend a comma or other separator to the *expression list*.

Example:

MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)	!sort by customer no
MyView.AppendOrder('CUST:CustName')	!and customer name

See Also: AddSortOrder, SetSort

ApplyFilter (range limit and filter the result set)

ApplyFilter, VIRTUAL

The **ApplyFilter** method applies the range limits and filter for the active sort order to the managed VIEW. The filter applies starting with the next read.

The AddSortOrder and SetSort methods set the active sort order. The SetFilter method sets filter expression.

Implementation: The ViewManager implements range limits and filters with the VIEW's FILTER attribute. See the *Language Reference--FILTER* for more information.

Example:

<code>MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)</code>	<code>!sort by customer no</code>
<code>MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer)</code>	<code>!range limit by parent file</code>
<code>MyView.SetFilter('(CUST:Name>'T')')</code>	<code>!set customer name filter</code>
<code>!program code</code>	
<code>MyView.ApplyFilter</code>	<code>!apply the filter</code>
<code>MyView.Next()</code>	<code>!get next subject to filter</code>

See Also: SetFilter, SetSort

ApplyOrder (sort the result set)

ApplyOrder, VIRTUAL

The **ApplyOrder** method applies the active sort order to the managed VIEW. The order applies starting with the next read from the VIEW.

The AddSortOrder method sets the available sort orders. The SetSort method sets the active sort order.

Implementation: The ViewManager implements sort orders with the VIEW's ORDER attribute. See the *Language Reference--ORDER* for more information.

Example:

<code>MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)</code>	<code>!sort by customer no</code>
<code>!program code</code>	
<code>MyView.ApplyOrder</code>	<code>!apply the order</code>
<code>MyView.Next()</code>	<code>!get next in specified order</code>

See Also: AddSortOrder, SetSort

ApplyRange (conditionally range limit and filter the result set)

ApplyRange, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **ApplyRange** method applies the range limits and calls the ApplyFilter method if the range limits have changed. The ApplyRange method returns a value indicating whether or not a change occurred. A return value of one (1 or True) indicates a change; a return value of zero (0 or False) indicates no change.

The AddRange method specifies the range limits for the ViewManager object. The SetSort method sets the active sort order.

Implementation: The ApplyRange method applies range limits and filters with the ApplyFilter method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)           !sort by customer no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer) !range limit by parent file
!program code
MyView.ApplyRange                               !apply the range limit
MyView.Next()                                  !get next, subject to range
```

See Also: SetSort ,AddRange, ApplyFilter

Close (close the view)

Close (<force>), VIRTUAL

The **Close** method closes the managed VIEW.

Normally, a VIEW is closed by the **Close** method, providing that it was opened with the Open method. The *force* flag is used to close a VIEW that was not originally opened by the ViewManagers's Open method

Example:

<code>MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)</code>	<code>!sort by customer no</code>
<code>MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer)</code>	<code>!range limit by parent file</code>
<code>MyView.Open</code>	<code>!open the view</code>
<code>!program code</code>	
<code>MyView.Close</code>	<code>!close the view</code>

GetFirstSortField (return first field of current sort)

GetFirstSortField

The **GetFirstSortField** method returns the first field that contains the current sort. If there is no current sort active, the **GetFirstSortField** method returns a NULL.

Implementation: The BrowseClass uses the GetFirstSortField method to prime the BrowseClass.SetLocatorField method.

Return Data Type: ANY

GetFreeElementName (return free key element name)**GetFreeElementName**

The **GetFreeElementName** method returns the fully qualified field name of the first sort field in the active sort order that is not limited to a single value by the applied range limit. For example, consider a VIEW sorted by Customer, Order, and Item, with the Customer field range limited to its current value. The free element is the Order field. But remove the range limit, and the free element is the Customer field.

The AddSortOrder method sets the key/sort order for the VIEW. The SetSort method sets the active sort order. The AddRange method adds range limits.

Implementation: The FilterLocatorClass uses the GetFreeElementName method to refresh the window.

Return Data Type: STRING

Example:

```
BuildFilter PROCEDURE(STRING filter)
FieldName CSTRING(100)
CODE
  FieldName = MyView.GetFreeElementName()           !get filterable field name
  MyView.SetFilter(FieldName&'[1] = ''&filter[1]&'') !set a filter expression
  MyView.ApplyFilter()                             !apply the filter expression
```

See Also: AddRange, AddSortOrder, SetSort

GetFreeElementPosition (return free key element position)

GetFreeElementPosition, PROTECTED, VIRTUAL

The **GetFreeElementPosition** method returns the position of the first sort field in the active sort order that is not limited to a single value by the applied range limit. For example, consider a VIEW sorted by Customer, Order, and Item, with the Customer field range limited to its current value. The free element is the Order field. But remove the range limit, and the free element is the Customer field.

The AddSortOrder method sets the key/sort order for the VIEW. The SetSort method sets the active sort order. The AddRange method adds range limits.

Implementation: The BrowseClass.TakeKey method uses the GetFreeElementPosition method to reposition the VIEW based on the fixed key elements. The GetFreeElementName method uses the GetFreeElementPosition method to find the free element name.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

BrowseClass.TakeKey PROCEDURE

```
!method code
IF SELF.Sort.Locator.TakeKey()
    Handled = 1
    SELF.Reset(SELF.GetFreeElementPosition())
    SELF.ResetQueue(Reset:Done)
ELSE
    SELF.ListControl{PROP:SelStart} = SELF.CurrentChoice
END
```

See Also: GetFreeElementName, BrowseClass.TakeKey

Init (initialize the ViewManager object)

Init(*view*, *primaryrelation* [, *order*])

Init	Initializes the ViewManager object.
<i>view</i>	The label of the managed VIEW.
<i>primaryrelation</i>	The label of the RelationManager object for the <i>view</i> 's primary file.
<i>order</i>	A structure containing the sort, range limit, and filter information for the managed VIEW. If omitted, the Init method supplies an empty SortOrder structure that may be set up with AddSortOrder, AppendOrder, SetOrder, AddRange, and SetFilter methods.

The **Init** method initializes the ViewManager object.

Implementation: The Init method sets the values of the Order, PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, Primary, and View properties.

 The *order* parameter allows derived classes, such as the BrowseClass, to add additional sort information to their underlying views.

 By passing the Order property from another ViewManager object or the Sort property from a BrowseClass object as the *order* parameter, you can implement several objects with similar sorts, filters, and range limits.

Example:

```
MyView.Init(OrderView,Relate:Order)!initialize the ViewManager
MyView.Open                               !open the view
!program code
MyView.Close                               !close the view
MyView.Kill                               !shut down the ViewManager
```

See Also: Order, Primary, View, PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize

Kill (shut down the ViewManager object)**Kill, VIRTUAL**

The **Kill** method shuts down the ViewManager object by freeing any memory allocated during the life of the object and executing any other required termination code.

Example:

```
MyView.Init(OrderView,Relate:Order)           !initialize the ViewManager
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)           !sort by customer no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer) !range limit by parent file
MyView.Open                                   !open the view
!program code
MyView.Close                                 !close the view
MyView.Kill                                  !shut down the ViewManager
```

Next (get the next element)**Next, VIRTUAL**

The **Next** method gets the next VIEW element, subject to the applied sort order, range limit, and filter, and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

If Next succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns Level:Notify or Level:Fatal depending on the error encountered. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

Implementation: The Next method uses the ValidateRecord method to validate records that are not filtered out.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CASE MyView.Next()           !try to get the next record
OF Level:Benign              !& check for success
  !process the record
OF Level:Notify              !& check for failure
  !write error log
OF Level:Fatal               !& check for fatality
  POST(Event:CloseWindow)
  BREAK
END
```

See Also: ValidateRecord

Open (open the view)**Open, VIRTUAL**

The **Open** method opens the managed VIEW.

Implementation: The Open method opens the view *and* applies the active sort order and filter with the ApplyOrder and ApplyFilter methods. The Open method applies the buffering specified by the PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, and TimeOut properties.

Example:

```
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)           !sort by customer no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer) !range limit by parent file
MyView.Open                                     !open the view
!program code
MyView.Close                                   !close the view
```

See Also: ApplyFilter, ApplyOrder, PagesAhead, PagesBehind, PageSize, TimeOut

Previous (get the previous element)

Previous, VIRTUAL

The **Previous** method gets the previous VIEW element, subject to the applied sort order, range limit, and filter, and returns a value indicating its success or failure.

Implementation: If Previous succeeds, it returns Level:Benign (declared in ABERROR.INC). If it fails, it returns Level:Notify or Level:Fatal depending on the error encountered. See *Error Class* for more information on severity levels.

The Previous method uses the ValidateRecord method to validate records that are not filtered out.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
CASE MyView.Previous()      !try to get the previous record
OF Level:Benign             !& check for success
  !process the record
OF Level:Notify             !& check for failure
  !write error log
OF Level:Fatal              !& check for fatality
  POST(Event:CloseWindow)
  BREAK
END
```

See Also: ValidateRecord

PrimeRecord (prepare a record for adding:ViewManager)**PrimeRecord**([*suppress clear*]), **VIRTUAL**

PrimeRecord Prepares the VIEW's primary file record buffer to add a new record.

suppress clear An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether or not to clear the record buffer. A value of zero (0 or False) clears the buffer; a value of one (1 or True) does not clear the buffer. If omitted, *suppress clear* defaults to zero (0).

The **PrimeRecord** method prepares the VIEW's primary file record buffer with initial values to add a new record.

Implementation: The PrimeRecord method uses the primary file's FileManager.PrimeRecord method to prime the record. Then it uses any applicable range limit information to prime other fields. The *suppress clear* parameter lets you clear or retain any other values in the record buffer.

Example:

```
CASE FIELD()  
OF ?InsertButton          !on insert button  
  CASE EVENT()  
  OF EVENT:Accepted       !if insert clicked  
    MyView.PrimeRecord    !prime the record for adding  
    !insert the new record  
  END  
END
```

See Also: FileManager.PrimeRecord

Reset (reset the view position)

Reset([*number*]), **VIRTUAL**

Reset	Resets the VIEW position.
<i>number</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the start position based on the contents of the first <i>number</i> components of the applicable ORDER attribute. If omitted, Reset positions the VIEW to the first element in theVIEW's result set.

The **Reset** method resets the VIEW position to the beginning of the result set specified by the VIEW's applied sort order, range limit and filter. The *number* parameter further refines the position by considering the *contents* of the first *number* expressions in the active sort order.

For example, consider a VIEW sorted by Customer where Customer's value is ten(10). If *number* is omitted, Reset positions to the element with the lowest Customer value, regardless of Customer's value. However, if *number* is one (1), Reset positions to the first element with a Customer value of ten (10).

Implementation: The Reset method calls the Open method and SETs the managed VIEW. See the *Language Reference--SET* for more information.

Example:

```
View:Customer.Init(Customer:View,Relate:CUSTOMER) !initialize View:Customer object
View:Customer.AddSortOrder( CUS:BYNUMBER ) !add sort BYNUMBER
View:Customer.AddRange(CUS:CUSTNO,Low,High) !add a range limit
View:Customer.SetFilter( 'CUS:ZIP=33064','1' ) !add filter #1
Relate:CUSTOMER.Open !open customer & related files
View:Customer.Reset !open view, apply range & filter
IF View:Customer.Next() !get first view record
  HALT !if no records, stop
END
```

See Also: Open

RestoreBuffers (restore VIEW file buffers)

RestoreBuffers(), VIRTUAL

RestoreBuffers Restores the contents of a VIEW's file buffers.

The **RestoreBuffers** method restores the current file buffer's contents specified by the view from an internal queue as defined by the *SavedBuffers* property.

See Also: [SaveBuffers](#)

SaveBuffers (save VIEW file buffers)

SaveBuffers(), VIRTUAL

SaveBuffers Saves the contents of a VIEW's file buffers.

The **SaveBuffers** method saves the current file buffer's contents specified by the view to an internal queue defined by the *SavedBuffers* property.

See Also: [RestoreBuffers](#)

SetFilter (add, change, or remove active filter)**SetFilter(*expression* [, *id*]), VIRTUAL**

SetFilter	Specifies a filter for the active sort order.
<i>expression</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains a FILTER expression. See <i>FILTER</i> in the <i>Language Reference</i> for more information. If <i>expression</i> is null ("), SetFilter deletes any existing filter with same <i>id</i> .
<i>id</i>	A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that uniquely identifies (and prioritizes) the filter so you can apply multiple filter conditions, and so you can replace or remove filter conditions with subsequent calls to SetFilter. If omitted, the filter gets a default id so that subsequent calls to SetFilter with no <i>id</i> replace the filter <i>expression</i> set by prior calls to SetFilter with no <i>id</i> .

The **SetFilter** method specifies a filter for the active sort order. When the filter is applied, the view only includes those elements whose *expression* evaluates to true.

The *id* parameter lets you specify multiple filter *expressions* or replace a specific *expression* by its *id*. If you set several *expressions*, each with a unique id, then all those *expressions* must evaluate to true to include an item in the result set.

The ViewManager evaluates the *expressions* in *id* order, so it is efficient to prioritize *expressions* most likely to fail; for example:

```
MyView.SetFilter('TaxPayer=True','9Tax')      !low priority expression
MyView.SetFilter('LotteryWinner=True','1Lot') !high priority expression
!evaluates as: (LotteryWinner=True) AND (TaxPayer=True)
```

The ApplyFilter and ApplyRange methods apply the active sort order's filter. The SetSort method sets the active sort order.

Implementation: The ViewManager uses the *id* to indicate the priority of the *expression*. The priority is implemented by sorting the list of filter expressions by the *id*. The *id* is truncated after 30 characters. If omitted, *id* defaults to '5 Standard' which specifies a medium priority filter that is replaced by any subsequent calls to SetFilter with *id* omitted (or '5 Standard') and with the same active sort order.

Each call to SetFilter with a unique *id* parameter adds to the filter expression for the active sort order. Multiple expressions added in this fashion are joined with the boolean AND operator.

The SetFilter method adds the filter *id* and *expression* to the Order property.

Example:

```
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByOrder)           !order no. sort (1)
MyView.SetFilter('(ORD:OrdNo=CUST:OrdNo)','!OrderNo')!filter on OrderNo
MyView.SetFilter('(ORD:Date='&TODAY()&')','!Date')  !AND on date. Date test applied
                                                    !first because it sorts first
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByName)             !customer name sort (2)
MyView.SetFilter('CUST:Name[1]=''A'')        !filter on cust name

!program code
MyView.SetSort(2)                           !sort by customer name
MyView.SetFilter('CUST:Name[1]=''J'')        !new filter on cust name
                                              !replaces prior name filter
```

See Also: AddSortOrder, Order

SetOrder (replace a sort order)**SetOrder**(*expression list*), **VIRTUAL**

SetOrder Replaces the active sort order.

expression list A string constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that contains an ORDER attribute expression list. See the *Language Reference--ORDER* for more information.

The **SetOrder** method replaces the active sort order for the ViewManager object.

The SetSort method sets the active sort order.

Implementation: The ViewManager implements sort orders with the VIEW's ORDER attribute. The SetOrder method replaces the active sort order's expression list with the *expression list*.

Example:

```
MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)           !sort by customer no
!program code
MyView.SetOrder(CUST:CustName)                 !sort by customer name
```

See Also: SetSort

SetSort (set the active sort order)**SetSort(*sortnumber*), VIRTUAL**

SetSort Set the view's active sort order.

sortnumber An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that specifies the sort order to use. Sort orders are numbered in the sequence they are added by the AddSortOrder method.

The **SetSort** method sets the view's active sort order and returns a value indicating whether the active sort (*sortnumber*) changed.

Implementation: SetSort returns one (1) if the *sortnumber* changed; otherwise it returns zero (0).

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

CustSort = MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByCustomer)      !sort by customer no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:CustNo,Relate:Orders,Relate:Customer) !range limit by parent file
OrderSort = MyView.AddSortOrder(ORD:ByOrder)        !sort by order no
MyView.AddRange(ORD:OrderNo)                        !range limit by current
                                                    !value of ORD:OrderNo

!program code
IF MyView.SetSort(CustSort)                        !set active sort order
    MESSAGE('New Sort Order')                      !acknowledge new order
END

```

See Also: AddSortOrder

UseView (use LazyOpen files)

UseView, PROTECTED

The **UseView** method notifies ABC Library objects that the files in the managed view whose opening was delayed by the LazyOpen property are about to be used.

Implementation: The Init and Open methods call the UseView method. The UseView method calls FileManager.UseFile for each file in the managed view.

Example:

```
ViewManager.Open PROCEDURE
CODE
IF ~SELF.Opened
  ASSERT(RECORDS(SELF.Order))
  SELF.UseView()           !really open files
  OPEN(SELF.View)
  IF ERRORCODE()
    SELF.Primary.Me.Throw(Msg:ViewOpenFailed)
  END
  BUFFER(SELF.View,SELF.PageSize,SELF.PagesBehind,SELF.PagesAhead,SELF.TimeOut)
  SELF.Opened = 1
  SELF.ApplyOrder
  SELF.ApplyFilter
END
```

See Also: Init, Open, FileManager.LazyOpen, FileManager.UseFile

ValidateRecord (validate an element)**ValidateRecord, VIRTUAL**

The **ValidateRecord** method validates the current VIEW element and returns a value indicating whether or not the data is valid. A return value of zero (0) indicates the item is valid; any other value indicates the item is invalid.

Implementation: The ValidateRecord is a virtual placeholder for derived class methods.

The Next and Previous methods call the ValidateRecord method.

Return values are declared in ABFILE.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE(0),PRE(Record)
OK          EQUATE      !Record passes range and filter
OutOfRange EQUATE      ! Record fails range test
Filtered    EQUATE      ! Record fails filter tests
END
```

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ViewManager.Next PROCEDURE
CODE
LOOP
NEXT(SELF.View)
IF ERRORCODE()
IF ERRORCODE() = BadRecErr
RETURN Level:Notify
ELSE
SELF.Primary.Me.Throw(Msg:AbortReading)
RETURN Level:Fatal
END
ELSE
CASE SELF.ValidateRecord()
OF Record:OK
RETURN Level:Benign
OF Record:OutOfRange
RETURN Level:Notify
END
END
END
```

See Also: Next, Previous

WindowComponent Interface

WindowComponent Overview

The WindowComponent interface is used with the WindowManager to provide an program efficient way of the window's components to communicate easily with the WindowManager. Methods common to all components are included with the interface, including event handling (TakeEvent), initialization and refreshing the components and window itself (Reset, Update), and general housekeeping (Buffer Save and Restore, Kill).

WindowComponent Concepts

The WindowComponent interface defines a set of common methods an object must implement in order for the object to plug into the window.

Although all of the classes that implement the WindowComponent interface must implement all of the methods, that does not mean that all need to do something.

Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The BrowseClass, FileDropClass, BrowseToolbarClass, FormVCRCClass, HistHandlerClass, and RecipientControl all implement the WindowComponent interface.

WindowComponent Source Files

The WindowComponent source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The specific WindowComponent source code and their respective components are contained in:

ABWINDOW.INC	WindowComponent interface declaration
ABBROWSE.CLW	BrowseClass.WindowComponent method definitions
ABDROPS.CLW	FileDropClass.WindowComponent method definitions
ABDST.CLW	RecipientControl.WindowComponent method definitions
ABERROR.CLW	HistHandler.WindowComponent method definitions
ABTOOLBA.CLW	BrowseToolbarClass.WindowComponent method definitions
ABVCRFRM.CLW	FormVCRCClass.WindowComponent method definitions

WindowComponent Methods

WindowComponent Methods

The WindowComponent interface defines the following methods.

Kill(shutdown the parent object)

Kill

The **Kill** method releases any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The Kill method calls the BrowseClass.Kill method to terminate the BrowseClass object.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The Kill method calls the FileDropClass.Kill method to terminate the FileDropClass object.

See Also: BrowseClass.Kill, FileDropClass.Kill

PrimaryBufferRestored(confirm restore of primary buffer)**PrimaryBufferRestored()**

The **PrimaryBufferRestored** method notifies the Window component that the buffer has been restored successfully. This allows synchronization of the restored buffer with other Window Manager threads.

Implementation:

The **PrimaryBufferRestored** method is called after the SELF.Primary.Me.RestoreBuffer() method to notify the Window Component that the restore is completed.

See Also: PrimaryBufferSaved
 PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired

PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired(flag restore of primary buffer)**PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired(),BYTE**

The **PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired** method returns TRUE (1) if the buffer pointer of the Window Component has been changed. This allows synchronization of the saved buffer with other Window Manager threads.

Implementation:

The **PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired** method calls the SELF.Primary.Me.RestoreBuffer method to restore the primary buffer in the WindowManager's ResetBuffers method.

See Also: PrimaryBufferSaveRequired
 PrimaryBufferRestored

PrimaryBufferSaved(confirm save of primary buffer)

PrimaryBufferSaved

The **PrimaryBufferSaved** method notifies the Window component that the buffer has been saved successfully. This allows synchronization of the saved buffer with other Window Manager threads.

Implementation:

The **PrimaryBufferSaved** method is called after the SELF.Primary.Me.SaveBuffer() method to notify the Window Component that the save is completed.

See Also: PrimaryBufferRestored
 PrimaryBufferSaveRequired

PrimaryBufferSaveRequired(flag save of primary buffer)

PrimaryBufferSaveRequired(),BYTE

The **PrimaryBufferSaveRequired** method returns TRUE (1) if the buffer pointer of the Window Component has been deleted. This allows synchronization of the saved buffer with other Window Manager threads.

Implementation:

The **PrimaryBufferSaveRequired** method calls the SELF.Primary.Me.SaveBuffer() method to save the primary buffer in the WindowManager's ResetBuffers method.

See Also: PrimaryBufferSaved
 PrimaryBufferRestoreRequired

Reset(reset object's data)**Reset**(*forcereset*)**Reset**

Resets the object's data.

forcereset

A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to reset the object's data. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets the object's data; a value of zero (0 or False) only resets the objects data as circumstances require

The **Reset** method resets the object's data if needed or if *forcereset* is TRUE.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The Reset method calls the BrowseClass.ResetSort method to reapply the active sort order to the BrowseClass object. For more information see the BrowseClass.ResetSort section.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The Reset method calls the FileDropClass.ResetQueue method to fill or refill the File Drop control template's display queue.

See Also:

BrowseClass.ResetSort, FileDropClass.ResetQueue

ResetRequired(determine if screen refresh needed)**ResetRequired**

The **ResetRequired** method determines whether the objects data needs to be refreshed. A TRUE return value indicates a refresh occurred and a screen redraw is necessary.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The ResetRequired method calls the BrowseClass.ApplyRange method to apply the reset fields and range limits and refresh the Browse Box control list if necessary. A TRUE return value indicates a screen redraw is needed.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The ResetRequired method calls the FileDropClass's ApplyRange method inherited from the ViewManager. This method applies the range limits and filters. A TRUE return value indicates a screen redraw is needed.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: BrowseClass.ApplyRange, ViewManager.FileDropClass.ApplyRange

SetAlerts(alert keystrokes for window component)**SetAlerts**

The **SetAlerts** method alerts standard keystrokes for the control associated with the window componet's object.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The SetAlerts method alerts standard keystrokes for the Browse Box control and for any associated locator controls.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The SetAlerts method is not implemented for the FileDropClass window component.

TakeEvent(process the current ACCEPT loop event)**TakeEvent**

The **TakeEvent** method processes the current ACCEPT loop event.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The TakeEvent method calls the BrowseClass.TakeEvent method to process the current ACCEPT loop event for the BrowseClass object. The method returns a Level:Benign value. For more information see the BrowseClass.TakeEvent section.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The TakeEvent method processes the current ACCEPT loop event for the FileDropClass object. The method returns a Level:Benign value. For more information see the FileDropClass.TakeEvent section.

Return Data Type: BYTE

See Also: BrowseClass.TakeEvent, FileDropClass.TakeEvent

Update(get VIEW data for the selected item)

Update

The **Update** method regets the selected item from the VIEW in order to update the record on disk.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The Update method calls the BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord method to reread the selected record from the VIEW. For more information see the BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The Update method is not implemented for the FileDropClass window component.

See Also: BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord

UpdateWindow(update window controls)

UpdateWindow

The **UpdateWindow** method updates the controls on the window based upon certain conditions set by the WindowComponent object.

BrowseClass Implementation:

The UpdateWindow method calls the BrowseClass.UpdateWindow method to refresh the window controls based upon determined conditions from the BrowseBox. For more information see the BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord.

FileDropClass Implementation:

The UpdateWindow method is not implemented for the FileDropClass window component.

See Also: BrowseClass.UpdateWindow

WindowResizeClass

WindowResizeClass Overview

The WindowResizeClass lets the end user resize windows that have traditionally been fixed in size due to the controls they contain (List boxes, entry controls, buttons, nested controls, etc.). The WindowResizeClass *intelligently* repositions the controls, resizes the controls, or both, when the end user resizes the window.

WindowResizeClass Concepts

The intelligent repositioning is accomplished by recognizing there are many different types of controls that each have unique repositioning *and* resizing requirements. The WindowResizeClass also recognizes that controls are often nested, and considers whether a given control's coordinates are more closely related to the window's coordinates or to another control's coordinates. That is, intelligent repositioning correctly identifies each control's parent. See SetParentControl for more information on the parent concept.

The intelligent repositioning includes several overall strategies that apply to all window controls, as well as custom per-control strategies for resizing and repositioning individual controls. The overall strategies include:

Surface	Makes the most of the available pixels by positioning other controls to maximize the size of LIST, SHEET, PANEL, and IMAGE controls. We recommend this strategy for template generated windows.
Spread	Maintains the design-time look and feel of the window by applying a strategy specific to each control type. For example, BUTTON sizes are not changed but their positions are tied to the nearest window edge. In contrast, LIST sizes <i>and</i> positions are scaled in proportion to the window.
Resize	Rescales all controls in proportion to the window.

See SetStrategy for more information on resizing strategies for individual controls.

Note: To allow window resizing you must set the WINDOW's frame type to Resizable. We also recommend adding the MAX attribute. See The Window Formatter--The Window Properties Dialog in the *User's Guide* for more information on these settings.

WindowResizeClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The WindowResizeClass is independent of the other Application Builder Classes. It does not rely on other ABC classes, nor do other ABC classes rely on it.

WindowResizeClass ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates instantiate a WindowResizeClass object for each WindowResize template in the application, typically one for each procedure that manages a window. The templates may also derive a class from the WindowResizeClass. The derived class (and its object) is called Resizer. The ABC Templates provide the derived class so you can use the WindowResize template **Classes** tab to easily modify the Resizer's behavior on an instance-by-instance basis.

The object instantiated from the derived class is called Resizer. This object supports all the functionality specified in the WindowResize template. See Other Templates--Window Resize for more information on the template implementation of this class.

WindowResizeClass Source Files

The WindowResizeClass source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The WindowResizeClass source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABRESIZE.INC	WindowResizeClass declarations
ABRESIZE.CLW	WindowResizeClass method definitions

WindowResizeClass Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a WindowResizeClass object. This example illustrates the Surface strategy plus some custom strategies for specific controls. The program does nothing except present a window with a typical variety of controls.

```

PROGRAM
  INCLUDE('ABRESIZE.INC')           !declare WindowResizeClass
  MAP
  END
  Resizer WindowResizeClass        !declare Resizer object

  ClientQ QUEUE,PRE(CLI)           !declare LIST QUEUE
  Name     STRING(20)
  State    STRING(2)
  END
  !WINDOW needs IMM & RESIZE
  window WINDOW('Client Information'),AT(, ,185,100),IMM,GRAY,MAX,RESIZE
    SHEET,AT(3,3,180,78),USE(?Sheet1)
    TAB('Client List'),USE(?ListTab)
    LIST,AT(10,20,165,55),USE(?List1),FROM(ClientQ),|
    FORMAT('87L~Name~@s20@8L~State Code~@s2@')
    END
    TAB('Client Logo'),USE(?LogoTab)
    IMAGE('SV.gif'),AT(50,35),USE(?CLI:Logo)
    END
  END
  PROMPT('Locate:'),AT(7,87),USE(?LocatorPrompt)
  ENTRY(@s20),AT(33,86,61,12),USE(CLI:Name)
  BUTTON('Restore'),AT(110,84),USE(?Restore)
  BUTTON('Close'),AT(150,84),USE(?Close)
  END
CODE
  OPEN(window)
  window{PROP:MinWidth}=window{PROP:Width}      !set window's minimum width
  window{PROP:MinHeight}=window{PROP:Height}    !set window's minimum height
  Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface)              !initialize Resizer object
  Resizer.SetStrategy(?LocatorPrompt, |         !set control specific strategy:
    Resize:FixLeft+Resize:FixBottom,Resize:LockSize) ! at bottom left & fixed size
  Resizer.SetStrategy(?CLI:Name, |             !set control specific strategy:
    Resize:FixLeft+Resize:FixBottom,Resize:LockHeight)! at bottom left & fixed height
  ACCEPT
  CASE EVENT( )
  OF EVENT:CloseWindow                          !on close window,
    Resizer.Kill                                ! shut down Resizer object
  OF EVENT:Sized                                !on sized window,

```

```
    Resizer.Resize                ! resize & reposition controls
END                               ! applying above strategies
CASE ACCEPTED()
OF ?Restore
    Resizer.RestoreWindow        !restore window to initial size
OF ?Close
    POST(Event:CloseWindow)
END
END
```


WindowResizeClass Properties

The WindowResizeClass contains the following properties.

AutoTransparent (optimize redraw)

AutoTransparent **BYTE**

The **AutoTransparent** property indicates whether controls that support it are made transparent (TRN attribute) during the resize process. Transparent controls result in less flicker and shadow and smoother resizing, and avoids a Windows bug on some windows.

A value of one (1) makes controls transparent; a value of zero (0) does not.

DeferMoves (optimize resize)

DeferMoves **BYTE**

The **DeferMoves** property indicates whether to defer control movement until the end of the ACCEPT loop (see *PROP:DeferMove* in the *Language Reference*). This lets the runtime library perform all control movement at once, resulting in a cleaner, "snappier" resize, and avoids a Windows bug on some windows.

A value of one (1) defers control movement; a value of zero (0) does not.

WindowResizeClass Methods

The WindowResizeClass contains the methods listed below.

WindowResizeClass Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the WindowResizeClass, it is useful to organize the various WindowResizeClass methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the WindowResizeClass methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Init	initialize the WindowResizeClass object
Kill	shut down the WindowResizeClass object

Mainstream Use:

Resize _v	resize and reposition all controls
---------------------	------------------------------------

Occasional Use:

SetParentControl	set control's parent
SetStrategy	set control's resize strategy

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

SetParentDefaults	set all controls' parents
RestoreWindow	restore window to initial size
GetParentControl	return control's parent
Resize	resize and reposition all controls

GetParentControl (return parent control)**GetParentControl(*control*), VIRTUAL****GetParentControl** Returns the parent for a window *control*.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a control number. The Resize method rescales the *control* based on the coordinates of the parent.

The **GetParentControl** method returns the parent for a window *control*. A return value of zero indicates the WINDOW is the parent. Otherwise, the return value is the field equate of another window control.

The SetParentDefaults method intelligently sets the appropriate parent for all the window controls, and the SetParentControl method sets the parent for a single control. The Resize method rescales the *control* based on the coordinates of the parent.

Return Data Type: SIGNED

Example:

```

window WINDOW('Nested Controls'),AT(, ,165,97),IMM,GRAY,MAX,RESIZE
  GROUP('OuterGroup'),AT(5,3,154,92),USE(?OuterGroup),BOXED
  BUTTON('Button 1'),AT(14,23),USE(?Button1)
  ENTRY(@s20),AT(60,24),USE(Entry1)
  GROUP('InnerGroup'),AT(11,49,141,38),USE(?InnerGroup),BOXED
  CHECK('Check 1'),AT(32,64),USE(Check1)
  CHECK('Check 2'),AT(91,64),USE(Check2)
  . . .
CODE
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Spread)           !initialize Resizer object
Resizer.SetParentDefaults                   !set parents for all controls
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Button1,?OuterGroup) !override parent for a control
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Check1,?InnerGroup) !override parent for a control
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Check2,?InnerGroup) !override parent for a control

```

See Also: Resize, SetParentControl, SetParentDefaults

GetPositionStrategy (return position strategy for a control type)

GetPositionStrategy(*control type* [, *strategy*])

GetPositionStrategy

Returns the repositioning strategy for a *control type*.

control type An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the type of control (BUTTON, ENTRY, LIST, etc.).

strategy An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the overall strategy for resizing and repositioning all the controls on the window. If omitted, *strategy* defaults to the strategy specified by the Init method.

The **GetPositionStrategy** method returns the appropriate repositioning strategy for a particular *control type* based on the overall *strategy*.

Implementation: The Reset method calls the GetPositionStrategy method to set the position strategy for dynamically created controls.

EQUATES for the *control type* parameter are declared in EQUATES.CLW. Each control type EQUATE is prefixed with CREATE:.

EQUATES for the return value are declared in ABRESIZE.INC. Each strategy EQUATE is prefixed with Resize:.

Example:

```
GET( SELF.ControlQueue, SELF.ControlQueue.ID)      !get control resize info
IF ERRORCODE( )                                     !if no control info, add it
  SELF.ControlQueue.Type=FieldCounter{PROP:Type} ! set control type
  SELF.ControlQueue.ParentID=0                     ! set parent
  SELF.ControlQueue.HasChildren=False               ! set children
  SELF.ControlQueue.ID=FieldCounter                 ! set ID
  GetSizeInfo(FieldCounter, SELF.ControlQueue.Pos)! set coordinates
                                                    ! set resize strategies
  SELF.ControlQueue.PositionalStrategy=SELF.GetPositionStrategy( SELF.ControlQueue.Type)
  SELF.ControlQueue.ResizeStrategy=SELF.GetResizeStrategy( SELF.ControlQueue.Type)
  ADD( SELF.ControlQueue, SELF.ControlQueue.ID)    ! add control info
  ASSERT( ~ERRORCODE( ) )
END
```

See Also: Init, Reset

GetResizeStrategy (return resize strategy for a control type)**GetResizeStrategy**(*control type* [, *strategy*])**GetResizeStrategy**Returns the resizing strategy for a *control type*.*control type* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the type of control (BUTTON, ENTRY, LIST, etc.).*strategy* An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the overall strategy for resizing and repositioning all the controls on the window. If omitted, *strategy* defaults to the strategy specified by the Init method.The **GetResizeStrategy** method returns the appropriate resizing strategy for a particular *control type* based on the overall *strategy*.

Implementation: The Reset method calls the GetResizeStrategy method to set the resizing strategy for dynamically created controls.

EQUATES for the *control type* parameter are declared in EQUATES.CLW. Each control type EQUATE is prefixed with CREATE:.

EQUATES for the return value are declared in ABRESIZE.INC. Each strategy EQUATE is prefixed with Resize:.

Return Data Type: USHORT

Example:

```

GET( SELF.ControlQueue, SELF.ControlQueue.ID)      !get control resize info
IF ERRORCODE( )                                     !if no control info, add it
    SELF.ControlQueue.Type=FieldCounter{PROP:Type}! set control type
    SELF.ControlQueue.ParentID=0                     ! set parent
    SELF.ControlQueue.HasChildren=False              ! set children
    SELF.ControlQueue.ID=FieldCounter                ! set ID
    GetSizeInfo(FieldCounter, SELF.ControlQueue.Pos)! set coordinates
    ! set resize strategies
    SELF.ControlQueue.PositionalStrategy=SELF.GetPositionStrategy( SELF.ControlQueue.Type)
    SELF.ControlQueue.ResizeStrategy=SELF.GetResizeStrategy( SELF.ControlQueue.Type)
    ADD( SELF.ControlQueue, SELF.ControlQueue.ID)   ! add control info
    ASSERT( ~ERRORCODE( ) )
END

```

See Also: Init, Reset

Init (initialize the WindowResizeClass object)

Init([*strategy*] [,*minimum size*] [,*maximum size*])

Init	Initializes the WindowResizeClass object.
<i>strategy</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the overall strategy for resizing and repositioning all the controls on the window. If omitted, <i>strategy</i> defaults to <code>AppStrategy:Resize</code> , which rescales all controls in proportion to the parent.
<i>minimum size</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the minimum size of the window. A value of one (1) sets the minimum window size to its design size. If omitted, <i>minimum size</i> defaults to zero (0), which indicates no minimum.
<i>maximum size</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the minimum size of the window. A value of one (1) sets the maximum window size to its design size. If omitted, <i>maximum size</i> defaults to zero (0), which indicates no maximum.

The **Init** method initializes the WindowResizeClass object and sets the overall strategy for resizing and repositioning window controls. You can use the SetStrategy method to override the overall strategy for individual controls.

Implementation: The Init method adds the IMM attribute to the WINDOW.

If the *strategy* parameter is present, Init applies a strategy to each control based on the parameter value. If the *strategy* parameter is absent, Init applies the default strategy to each control. The default *strategy* is to rescale all control coordinates (x, y, width, and height) proportionally with the parent.

The parent may be the WINDOW containing the control, or it may be another control on the WINDOW. The SetParentControl and SetParentDefaults methods determine the parent for a given control.

The *strategy* parameter EQUATEs are declared in RESIZE.INC as follows:

```

ITEMIZE(0),PRE(AppStrategy)
Resize EQUATE !Rescale all controls proportionally
Spread EQUATE !Preserve design time look & feel
Surface EQUATE !Maximize available pixels
END

```

The purpose and effect of these strategies are:

Resize	Scales all window coordinates by the same amount as the parent, thus preserving the relative sizes and positions of all controls. This is the default strategy.
Surface	Makes the most of the available pixels by positioning other controls to maximize the size of LIST, SHEET, PANEL, and IMAGE controls.
Spread	Preserves the design-time look and feel of the window by applying the following strategies by control type:
BUTTON	Horizontal and Vertical position (X and Y coordinates) are "fixed" relative to the nearest parent border; width and height are unchanged.
RADIO	Horizontal and vertical position are scaled with the parent, but width and height are unchanged.
CHECK	Horizontal and vertical position are scaled with the parent, but width and height are unchanged.
ENTRY	Width, horizontal and vertical position are scaled with the parent, but height is unchanged.
COMBO+DROP	Width, horizontal and vertical position are scaled with the parent, but height is unchanged.
LIST+DROP	Width, horizontal and vertical position are scaled with the parent, but height is unchanged.
SPIN	Width, horizontal and vertical position are scaled with the parent, but height is unchanged.
Other	All coordinates are scaled with the parent.

Tip: Even though LIST and COMBO controls may be resized, the column widths within them are not resized. However, the right-most column does expand or contract depending on the available space.

Example:

```
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface)!initialize Resizer object
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT()
  OF EVENT:CloseWindow           !on close window,
    Resizer.Kill                 ! shut down Resizer object
  OF EVENT:Sized                 !on sized window,
    Resizer.Resize               ! resize & reposition controls
END
END
```

See Also: SetParentControl, SetParentDefaults, SetStrategy

Kill (shut down the WindowResizeClass object)**Kill**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code.

Example:

```
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface)      !initialize Resizer object
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT( )
  OF EVENT:CloseWindow                 !on close window,
    Resizer.Kill                       ! shut down Resizer object
  OF EVENT:Sized                       !on sized window,
    Resizer.Resize                     ! resize & reposition controls
END
END
```

Reset (resets the WindowResizeClass object)

Reset, VIRTUAL

The **Reset** method resets the WindowResizeClass object to conform to the window in its present state.

Implementation: The Init method calls the Reset method. The Reset method stores the initial coordinates for the window and its controls. The WindowResizeClass object uses the stored coordinates to restore the window, establish parent-child relationships between controls, etc.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
!procedure code
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface,Resize:SetMinSize)
SELF.AddItem(Resizer)
Resizer.AutoTransparent=True
Resizer.SetParentDefaults
INIMgr.Fetch('BrowseMembers',QuickWindow)
Resizer.Resize      !Resize needed if window altered by INIMgr
Resizer.Reset       !Reset needed if window altered by INIMgr
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN ReturnValue
```

See Also: Init

Resize (resize and reposition controls)**Resize, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Resize** method resizes and respositions each window control by applying the specified strategy to each control, and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop.

Resize returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of the event (typically EVENT:Sized) should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for the event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

The Init method and the SetStrategy method determine the strategies to apply to each control. All resizing strategies consider the new coordinates of the each control's "parent." By default, the WINDOW is the parent of each control. However, you may designate any control as the parent of any other control with the SetParentControl method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```

OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface)           !init Resizer-general strategy
Resizer.SetStrategy(?CloseButton, |         !set control specific strategy:
  Resize:FixRight+Resize:FixBottom,Resize:LockSize) ! at bottom right & fixed
size
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:CloseWindow           !on close window,
  Resizer.Kill                 ! shut down Resizer object
OF EVENT:Sized                 !on sized window,
  Resizer.Resize               ! resize & reposition controls
END
END

```

See Also: Init, SetStrategy, SetParentControl

RestoreWindow (restore window to initial size)

RestoreWindow, VIRTUAL

The **RestoreWindow** method restores the window and all its controls to their sizes in effect when the Init method executed.

Example:

```
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface)      !init Resizer overall strategy
ACCEPT
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:CloseWindow
  Resizer.Kill                          ! shut down Resizer object
OF EVENT:Sized
  Resizer.Resize                        ! resize & reposition controls
END
CASE ACCEPTED( )
OF ?RestoreButton
  Resizer.RestoreWindow                 !restore window to original spec
END
END
```

See Also: Init

SetParentControl (set parent control)**SetParentControl**(*control* [,*parent*])**SetParentControl** Sets the *parent* for a window *control*.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a control number. The Resize method rescales the *control* based on the coordinates of the *parent*.

parent An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a control number. The Resize method rescales the *control* based on the coordinates of the *parent*. If omitted, *parent* defaults to the WINDOW.

The **SetParentControl** method sets the *parent* for a window *control*. The Resize method rescales the *control* based on the coordinates of the *parent*.

This lets you rescale a particular control based upon a related control's coordinates rather than on the window's coordinates. This is appropriate when the strategy applied to the parent control causes it to be scaled disproportionately from the window. For example, controls within a GROUP structure whose size is "locked" may be rescaled to fit the GROUP's coordinates rather than the window's coordinates.

The SetParentDefaults method intelligently sets the appropriate parent for each window control so you only need to use SetParentControl if SetParentDefaults sets an inappropriate parent. The GetParentControl method returns the parent control number for a control.

Example:

```

window WINDOW('Nested Controls'),AT(,,165,97),IMM,GRAY,MAX,RESIZE
  GROUP('OuterGroup'),AT(5,3,154,92),USE(?OuterGroup),BOXED
    BUTTON('Button 1'),AT(14,23),USE(?Button1)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(60,24),USE(Entry1)
  GROUP('InnerGroup'),AT(11,49,141,38),USE(?InnerGroup),BOXED
    CHECK('Check 1'),AT(32,64),USE(Check1)
    CHECK('Check 2'),AT(91,64),USE(Check2)
  END
END
END
CODE
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Spread)           !initialize Resizer object
Resizer.SetParentDefaults                   !set parents for all controls
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Button1,?OuterGroup) !override parent for a control
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Check1,?InnerGroup) !override parent for a control
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Check2,?InnerGroup) !override parent for a control

```

See Also: GetParentControl, Resize, SetParentDefaults

SetParentDefaults (set default parent controls)

SetParentDefaults, VIRTUAL

The **SetParentDefaults** method intelligently sets the appropriate parent for each window control. The **Resize** method rescales each control based on the coordinates of its parent.

This lets you rescale a particular control based upon a related control's coordinates rather than on the window's coordinates. This is appropriate when the strategy applied to the parent control causes it to be scaled disproportionately from the window. For example, controls within a **GROUP** structure whose size is "locked" may be rescaled to fit the **GROUP**'s coordinates rather than the window's coordinates.

You may use the **SetParentControl** method to set the parent for a single control.

Implementation: The **SetParentDefaults** method considers each control's coordinates. If the control's coordinates fall within the coordinates of another control, the **SetParentDefaults** method sets the "outer" control as the parent of the "inner" control.

The **Init** method calls the **SetParentDefaults** method when the resize strategy is **AppStrategy:Surface**.

Example:

```

window WINDOW('Nested Controls'),AT(,,165,97),IMM,GRAY,MAX,RESIZE
  GROUP('OuterGroup'),AT(5,3,154,92),USE(?OuterGroup),BOXED
    BUTTON('Button 1'),AT(14,23),USE(?Button1)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(60,24),USE(Entry1)
    GROUP('InnerGroup'),AT(11,49,141,38),USE(?InnerGroup),BOXED
      CHECK('Check 1'),AT(32,64),USE(Check1)
      CHECK('Check 2'),AT(91,64),USE(Check2)
    END
  END
END
CODE
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Spread)           !initialize Resizer object
Resizer.SetParentDefaults                   !set parents for all controls
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Button1,?OuterGroup) !override parent for a control
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Check1,?InnerGroup) !override parent for a control
Resizer.SetParentControl(?Check2,?InnerGroup) !override parent for a control

```

See Also: **Resize**, **SetParentControl**

SetStrategy (set control resize strategy)

SetStrategy(*[[control]* ,*position strategy* , *size strategy*)

| *source control* , *target control* |

SetStrategy	Sets the <i>position strategy</i> and the <i>size strategy</i> to apply to a control.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing a control number. If omitted, the SetStrategy method applies <i>position strategy</i> and <i>size strategy</i> to all controls on the WINDOW.
<i>position strategy</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the position strategy to apply to the <i>control</i> .
<i>size strategy</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the size strategy to apply to the <i>control</i> .
<i>source control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the control whose <i>position strategy</i> and <i>size strategy</i> are applied to the <i>target control</i> .
<i>target control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the control whose <i>position strategy</i> and <i>size strategy</i> are copied from the <i>source control</i> .

The **SetStrategy** method sets the *position strategy* and the *size strategy* to apply to a window *control* or controls. The Resize method applies the specified strategies.

Implementation: EQUATEs for the *position strategy* and the *size strategy* parameters are declared in ABRESIZE.INC as follows. To apply two or more strategies, simply add them together.

```
!Resize strategies
Resize:Resize      EQUATE(0000b) !rescale height & width
Resize:LockWidth   EQUATE(0001b) !locks width
Resize:LockHeight  EQUATE(0010b) !locks height
Resize:LockSize    EQUATE(0011b) !locks height & width
Resize:ConstantRight EQUATE(0100b) !locks right edge, moves left
Resize:ConstantBottom EQUATE(1000b) !locks bottom edge, moves top
```

```
!Reposition Strategies - Horizontal position
Resize:Reposition  EQUATE(0000h) !rescale X & Y
Resize:LockXPos    EQUATE(0001h) !locks left edge (absolute)
Resize:FixRight    EQUATE(0002h) !fixes right edge (relative)
Resize:FixLeft     EQUATE(0003h) !fixes left edge (relative)
Resize:FixXCenter  EQUATE(0004h) !fixes horizontal center (relative)
Resize:FixNearestX EQUATE(0005h) !FixRight or FixLeft
```

```
!Reposition Strategies - Vertical position
Resize:LockYPos      EQUATE(0100h) !locks top edge (absolute)
Resize:FixBottom     EQUATE(0200h) !fixes bottom edge (relative)
Resize:FixTop        EQUATE(0300h) !fixes top edge (relative)
Resize:FixYCenter    EQUATE(0400h) !fixes vertical center (relative)
Resize:FixNearestY   EQUATE(0500h) !FixTop or FixBottom
```

Example:

```
window WINDOW('Client Information'),AT(, ,185,100),IMM,GRAY,MAX,RESIZE
    SHEET,AT(3,3,180,78),USE(?Sheet1)
    TAB('Client List'),USE(?ListTab)
    LIST,AT(10,20,165,55),USE(?List1),FROM(ClientQ),|
    FORMAT(' 87L~Name~@s20@8L~State Code~@s2@')
    END
    TAB('Client Logo'),USE(?LogoTab)
    IMAGE,AT(10,20,165,55),USE(?CLI:Logo)
    END
    END
    PROMPT('Locate: '),AT(7,87),USE(?LocatorPrompt)
    ENTRY(@s20),AT(33,86,61,12),USE(CLI:Name)
    BUTTON('Close'),AT(150,84),USE(?Close)
    END
CODE
OPEN(window)
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface)                !init Resizer overall strategy
Resizer.SetStrategy(?LocatorPrompt, |            !set control specific strategy:
Resize:FixLeft+Resize:FixBottom,Resize:LockSize) ! at bottom left & fixed size
Resizer.SetStrategy(?CLI:Name, |                 !set control specific strategy:
Resize:FixLeft+Resize:FixBottom,Resize:LockHeight)! at bottom left & fixed height
```

See Also: Resize

WindowManager

WindowManager Overview

The WindowManager class declares a Window Manager that provides highly structured, consistent, flexible, and convenient processing for Clarion window procedures. The WindowManager class is actually a window *procedure* manager. This includes almost every template generated procedure, including Process and Report procedures.

WindowManager Concepts

A Structured Window Procedure Manager

The WindowManager object initializes the procedure, runs the procedure by handling all ACCEPT loop events for the WINDOW, then shuts down the procedure. The WindowManager handles events primarily by forwarding the events to other ABC Library objects for processing.

The WindowManager is a fairly generic base class and therefore handles events and processes that are common across most Windows applications. For an example of a process-specific WindowManager implementation, see Print Preview Class and Report Manager Class.

Implements Update Procedure Policy

In addition to its function as a general purpose window procedure manager, the WindowManager may be configured to implement a variety of options for update procedures--window procedures that support record inserts, changes, and deletes. The WindowManager carries out the specified options for these update procedures (forms).

Integrated with other ABC Library Objects

The WindowManager is closely integrated with several other ABC Library objects; in particular, the BrowseClass, ToolbarClass, FileDropClass, and FileDropComboClass objects. These objects register their presence with each other, set each other's properties, and call each other's methods to accomplish their goals.

These integrated objects could override the WindowManager's methods (such as TakeAccepted) to perform their jobs; however, because the WindowManager is programmed to understand these ABC objects, once they are registered (AddItem), the WindowManager drives them directly according to their documented interfaces.

Encapsulated Event Processing

The WindowManager provides separate virtual methods to group the handling of all ACCEPT loop events into logical, convenient containers (virtual methods), so that, should you need to implement custom (non-default) event handling, you can implement your changes within the relatively small scope of the specific virtual method that implements the default event handling you wish to change. This logical grouping of window event handling is as follows:

TakeEvent	(handle all events)
TakeWindowEvent	(handle all non-field events--do default processing for common non-field e
TakeAccepted	(do default EVENT:Accepted processing)
TakeRejected	(do default EVENT:Rejected processing)
TakeSelected	(do default EVENT:Selected processing)
TakeNewSelection	(do default EVENT:NewSelection processing)
TakeCompleted	(do default EVENT:Completed processing)
TakeCloseEvent	(do default EVENT:Close processing)
TakeFieldEvent	(handle all field events--do custom processing for field events)

WindowManager ABC Template Implementation

The ABC Templates *derive* a class from the WindowManager class for *each* procedure that drives an interactive window, including Report and Process procedures. The derived class is called ThisWindow, and its methods and behavior can be modified on the Window Behavior Classes tab.

The ABC Templates generate virtual methods as needed to provide procedure specific initialization, event handling, and shut down.

WindowManager Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes

The WindowManager is closely integrated with several other ABC Library objects--in particular, the BrowseClass, FileDropClass, FileDropComboClass, and ToolbarClass objects. These objects register their presence with the WindowManager, set each other's properties, and call each other's methods as needed to accomplish their respective goals.

The BrowseClass uses the WindowManager to refresh the window as needed. Therefore, if your program instantiates the BrowseClass, it must also instantiate the WindowManager. Much of this is automatic when you INCLUDE the BrowseClass header (ABBROWSE.INC) in your program's data section. See the Conceptual Example and see Browse Class for more information.

The WindowManager serves as the foundation of the PrintPreviewClass and the ReportManager. That is, both the PrintPreviewClass and the ReportManager are derived from the WindowManager, because both derived classes manage a window procedure.

PrintPreviewClass--Print Preview Window Manager

The PrintPreviewClass implements a full featured print preview window. See Print Preview Class for more information.

ReportManager--Progress Window Manager

The ReportManager implements a progress window that monitors and displays the status of a report. See Report Manager Class for more information.

WindowManager Source Files

The WindowManager source code is installed by default to the Clarion \LIBSRC folder. The WindowManager source code and its respective components are contained in:

ABWINDOW.INC	WindowManager declarations
ABWINDOW.CLW	WindowManager method definitions

WindowManager Conceptual Example

The following example shows a typical sequence of statements to declare, instantiate, initialize, use, and terminate a WindowManager and related objects. This example performs repetitive inserts to a Customer file and also adds phone numbers for each customer to a related Phones file. It uses the WindowManager to call a procedure to validate the customer's state code against a States file.

Note that the WindowManager is aware of other ABC objects, such as BrowseClass objects, Toolbar objects, FileDrop objects, etc. This example shows the interaction between the WindowManager object and a FileManager object and a BrowseClass object.

AddCustomer PROGRAM

```

    INCLUDE('ABWINDOW.INC')           !declare WindowManager
    INCLUDE('ABFILE.INC')             !declare File,View&Relation Mgrs
    INCLUDE('ABBROWSE.INC')           !declare BrowseClass

    MAP
SelectState PROCEDURE                 !procedure to validate State
    END

GlobalErrors    ErrorClass            !declare GlobalErrors object
GlobalRequest   BYTE(0),THREAD        !inter procedure communication
GlobalResponse   BYTE(0),THREAD       !inter procedure communication
VCRRequest      LONG(0),THREAD        !inter procedure communication

Customer        FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(CUS),CREATE,THREAD
BYNUMBER        KEY(CUS:CUSTNO),NOCASE,OPT,PRIMARY
Record          RECORD,PRE()
CUSTNO          LONG
Name            STRING(30)
State           STRING(2)
                END
                END

Phones          FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(PH),CREATE,THREAD
IDKEY           KEY(PH:ID),DUP,NOCASE
Record          RECORD,PRE()
ID              LONG
NUMBER          STRING(20)
                END
                END

State           FILE,DRIVER('TOPSPEED'),PRE(ST),CREATE,THREAD
StateCodeKey    KEY(ST:STATECODE),NOCASE,OPT
Record          RECORD,PRE()

```

```

STATECODE      STRING(2)
STATENAME      STRING(20)
      END
      END
Access:State    CLASS(FileManager)      !declare Access:State object
Init           PROCEDURE
      END
Relate:State    CLASS(RelationManager)   !declare Relate:State object
Init           PROCEDURE
      END
Access:Customer CLASS(FileManager)      !declare Access:Customer object
Init           PROCEDURE
      END
Relate:Customer CLASS(RelationManager)   !declare Relate:Customer object
Init           PROCEDURE
      END
Access:Phones   CLASS(FileManager)      !declare Access:Phones object
Init           PROCEDURE
      END
Relate:Phones   CLASS(RelationManager)   !declare Relate:Phones object
Init           PROCEDURE
      END

PhoneView VIEW(Phones)                  !declare Phones VIEW
      END

PhoneQ  QUEUE                          !declare PhoneQ for browse list
PH:ID   LIKE(PH:ID)
PH:NUMBER LIKE(PH:NUMBER)
ViewPos STRING(512)
      END

CUS:Save  LIKE(CUS:RECORD),STATIC      !declare save area for Cus ditto key

CUSWindow WINDOW('Add Customer'),AT(,,146,128),IMM,SYSTEM,GRAY
      SHEET,AT(4,4,136,102),USE(?CurrentTab)
      TAB('General'),USE(?GeneralTab)      !General tab
      PROMPT('ID:'),AT(8,35),USE(?CUSTNO:Prompt)
      ENTRY(@n-14),AT(42,35,41,10),USE(CUS:CUSTNO),RIGHT(1)
      PROMPT('Name:'),AT(8,49),USE(?NAME:Prompt)
      ENTRY(@s30),AT(42,49,90,10),USE(CUS:NAME)! Customer Name
      PROMPT('State:'),AT(8,63),USE(?State:Prompt)
      ENTRY(@s2),AT(42,63,40,10),USE(CUS:State)! Customer State
      END
      TAB('Phones'),USE(?PhoneTab)      !Phones tab
      LIST,AT(8,20,128,63),USE(?PhoneList),IMM,HVSCROLL,FROM(PhoneQ),|
      FORMAT('38R(2)|M~ID~C(0)@n-14@80L(2)|M~NUMBER~@s20@')
      BUTTON('&Insert'),AT(8,87),USE(?Insert)

```

```

        BUTTON('&Change'),AT(53,87),USE(?Change)
        BUTTON('&Delete'),AT(103,87),USE(?Delete)
    END
END
BUTTON('OK'),AT(68,110),USE(?OK),DEFAULT
BUTTON('Cancel'),AT(105,110),USE(?Cancel)
END

ThisWindow CLASS(WindowManager)                !declare derived ThisWindow object
Init        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL      !procedure specific initialization
Kill        PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL      !procedure specific shut down
Run         PROCEDURE(USHORT Number,BYTE Request),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL !run a procedure
TakeAccepted PROCEDURE(),BYTE,PROC,VIRTUAL      !non-default EVENT:Accepted handling
END

PhBrowse CLASS(BrowseClass)                    !declare PhBrowse object
Q           &PhoneQ                            !which works with ThisWindow object
END

CODE
    ThisWindow.Run()                            !run the program / procedure
                                                !(Init, Ask, Kill)
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()                    !setup and "program" ThisWindow
ReturnValue    BYTE,AUTO
CODE
GlobalErrors.Init                !initialize GlobalErrors object
Relate:Customer.Init             !initialize Relate:Customer object
Relate:State.Init                !initialize Relate:State object
Relate:Phones.Init               !initialize Relate:Phones object
ReturnValue = PARENT.Init()       !call base class WindowManager.Init
Relate:Customer.Open              !open Customer & related files
Relate:State.Open                 !open State & related files
                                !Program ThisWindow object:
SELF.Request = InsertRecord       ! insert records only
SELF.FirstField = ?CUSTNO:Prompt! CustNo is firstfield for ThisWindow
SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest    ! set VCRRequest for ThisWindow
SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors      ! set error handler for ThisWindow
SELF.HistoryKey = 734             ! set ditto key (CTRL')
SELF.AddHistoryFile(CUS:Record,CUS:Save) ! set ditto file
SELF.AddHistoryField(?CUS:CUSTNO,1)    ! set ditto (restorable) field
SELF.AddHistoryField(?CUS:NAME,2)      ! set ditto (restorable) field
SELF.AddHistoryField(?CUS:State,3)     ! set ditto (restorable) field
SELF.AddUpdateFile(Access:Customer)    ! register FileManager with ThisWindow
SELF.Primary &= Relate:Customer        ! register RelationMgr with ThisWindow
SELF.AddItem(?Cancel,RequestCancelled) ! set action for Cancel button
SELF.InsertAction = Insert:Batch       ! set insert action (repetitive)
SELF.OkControl = ?OK                  ! set OK button

```

```

IF SELF.PrimeUpdate() THEN RETURN Level:Notify. !prepare record for add
OPEN(CUSWindow)                                !open the window
SELF.Opened=True                                ! flag it as open
                                                !Program PhBrowse object, including
                                                ! registering ThisWindow (SELF)
PhBrowse.Init(?PhoneList,PhoneQ.ViewPos,PhoneView,PhoneQ,Relate:Phones,SELF)
PhBrowse.Q &= PhoneQ
PhBrowse.AddSortOrder(,PH:IDKEY)
PhBrowse.AddRange(PH:ID,Relate:Phones,Relate:Customer)
PhBrowse.AddField(PH:ID,PhBrowse.Q.PH:ID)
PhBrowse.AddField(PH:NUMBER,PhBrowse.Q.PH:NUMBER)
PhBrowse.InsertControl=?Insert
PhBrowse.ChangeControl=?Change
PhBrowse.DeleteControl=?Delete
SELF.SetAlerts()                                !alert keys for ThisWindow
RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Kill  PROCEDURE()                    !shut down ThisWindow
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  ReturnValue = PARENT.Kill()                    !call base class WindowManager.Kill
  Relate:Customer.Close                         !close Customer & related files
  Relate:State.Close                           !close State & related files
  Relate:Customer.Kill                         !shut down Relate:Customer object
  Relate:State.Kill                           !shut down Relate:State object
  Relate:Phones.Kill                           !shut down Relate:Phones object
  GlobalErrors.Kill                           !shut down GlobalErrors object
  RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.Run  PROCEDURE(USHORT Number,BYTE Request)!call other procedures
ReturnValue      BYTE,AUTO
CODE
  GlobalRequest = Request                       !set inter procedure request
  EXECUTE Number                               !run specified procedure
  SelectState
END
  ReturnValue = GlobalResponse                   !set inter procedure response
  RETURN ReturnValue

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted  PROCEDURE()            !EVENT:Accepted handling
ReturnValue              BYTE,AUTO
Looped BYTE
CODE
LOOP
  IF Looped THEN RETURN Level:Notify ELSE Looped = 1. !allow CYCLE to work
  ReturnValue = PARENT.TakeAccepted()              !do standard EVENT:Accepted
  CASE ACCEPTED()                                !do special EVENT:Accepted
  OF ?CUS:State                                  ! on State field

```

```
ST:STATECODE = CUS:State           ! lookup State code
IF Access:State.Fetch(ST:StateCodeKey) ! if not found
  IF SELF.Run(1,SelectRecord) = RequestCompleted ! let user select one
    CUS:State = ST:STATECODE           ! set selected state
  ELSE                                 !if user didn't select one
    SELECT(?CUS:State)                 !focus on State field
    CYCLE                             !start over
  END
END
ThisWindow.Reset()                  !reset ThisWindow if needed
END
RETURN ReturnValue
END
```


WindowManager Properties

The WindowManager contains the following properties.

AutoRefresh (reset window as needed flag)

AutoRefresh BYTE

The **AutoRefresh** property determines whether the WindowManager automatically resets the window and its associated objects whenever it detects a change. The WindowManager checks for changes after it processes each event. A value of one (1 or True) automatically resets the window; a value of zero (0 or False) does not automatically reset the window.

AutoRefresh is particularly useful when resetting a BrowseClass object changes a field which is a range-limit of another BrowseClass object.

Implementation: The Init method sets the AutoRefresh property to one. The TakeEvent method implements the action specified by AutoRefresh by calling the Reset method only if any registered BrowseClass objects have changed.

 The AddItem method registers BrowseClass objects with the WindowManager.

See Also: AddItem, Init, Reset

AutoToolbar (set toolbar target on new tab selection)

AutoToolbar BYTE

The **AutoToolbar** property determines how the WindowManager sets the ToolbarTarget. A value of one (1 or True) uses the ToolbarClass object to set the appropriate ToolbarTarget whenever a new TAB is selected; a value of zero (0 or False) uses the current ToolbarTarget.

Implementation: The Init method sets the AutoToolbar property to True. The TakeNewSelection method implements the action specified by AutoToolbar by calling ToolbarClass.SetTarget if the control selected is a SHEET.

See Also: Init, ToolbarClass.SetTarget, ToolbarTargetClass

CancelAction (response to cancel request)**CancelAction BYTE**

The **CancelAction** property indicates the WindowManager action to take when the end user "Cancels" the window with changes pending. Valid actions are:

Cancel:Cancel	immediate abandon (no confirmation)
Cancel:Save	immediate save (no confirmation)
Cancel:Save+Cancel:Query	offer to save or abandon
Cancel:Cancel+Cancel:Query	offer to resume editing or abandon

Implementation: The Init method sets the CancelAction property to Cancel:Save + Cancel:Query. The TakeCloseEvent method carries out the action specified by the CancelAction property.

CancelAction EQUATEs are declared in ABWINDOW.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(Cancel)
Cancel EQUATE(0)
Save EQUATE(1)
Query EQUATE(2)
END
```

See Also: Init, TakeCloseEvent, Request, Response

ChangeAction (response to change request)

ChangeAction BYTE

The **ChangeAction** property whether change is a valid action for an update procedure. A value of one (1 or True) indicates the procedure may change (write) records; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates the procedure may not change records.

Implementation: The Init method sets the ChangeAction property to one (1).

See Also: Init

Dead (shut down flag)

Dead BYTE, PROTECTED

The **Dead** property indicates whether the WindowManager should shut down. The WindowManager uses this property to undertake a normal shut down at the earliest opportunity. A value of one (1 or True) indicates the WindowManager should shut down; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates the WindowManager should continue.

Implementation: The Kill method sets the Dead property to True.

See Also: Kill

DeleteAction (response to delete request)**DeleteAction BYTE**

The **DeleteAction** property indicates the WindowManager action to take when the end user requests to delete a record. Valid actions are:

Delete:None	delete not allowed
Delete:Warn	confirm delete with message
Delete:Form	confirm delete with update form
Delete:Auto	immediate delete (no confirmation)

Implementation: The Init method sets the DeleteAction property to Delete:Warn. The PrimeUpdate method carries out the action specified by the DeleteAction property.

DeleteAction EQUATEs are declared in ABWINDOW.INC as follows:

```
ITEMIZE,PRE(Delete)
None    EQUATE
Warn    EQUATE
Form    EQUATE
Auto    EQUATE
END
```

See Also: Init, TakeCloseEvent, Request, Response

Errors (ErrorClass object)

Errors &ErrorClass

The **Errors** property is a reference to the ErrorClass object that handles unexpected conditions for the WindowManager. In an ABC Template generated program, the ErrorClass object is called GlobalErrors.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not initialize the Errors property. Your derived Init method should initialize the Errors property. See the Conceptual Example.

FilesOpened(files opened by procedure)

FilesOpened BYTE, PROTECTED

The **FilesOpened** property is a flag used to keep track of files opened by the WindowManager class.

Implementation: The FilesOpened property is set to TRUE in the Init method if there are files to be opened by the procedure. This property is examined in the Kill method to determine whether files need to be closed by the procedure.

FirstField (first window control)

FirstField SIGNED

The **FirstField** property contains the control number (field equate) of the window control that initially receives focus when the window displays.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not initialize the FirstField property. Your derived Init method should initialize the FirstField property. See the Conceptual Example.

ForcedReset (force reset flag)

ForcedReset BYTE

The **ForcedReset** property indicates whether the WindowManager should unconditionally reset itself. A value of zero (0 or False) allows a conditional reset (reset only if circumstances demand, for example, when the end user invokes a new BrowseBox sort order or invokes a BrowseBox locator); a value of one (1 or True) forces an unconditional reset.

Implementation: The Reset method carries out the action specified by the ForcedReset property.

See Also: Reset

HistoryKey (restore field key)

HistoryKey SIGNED

The **HistoryKey** property enables "save/restore field history" and sets the keystroke which restores a form field's prior saved value. When the end user presses the specified key, the WindowManager restores the field with focus from the previously processed record.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not initialize the HistoryKey property. Your derived Init method should initialize the HistoryKey property if your window uses a history key. See the *Conceptual Example*.

The AddHistoryFile method names the file and record buffers from which fields are saved and restored. AddHistoryField associates specific fields from the history file with their corresponding WINDOW controls. The SaveHistory method saves a copy of the history fields. The RestoreField method restores the contents of a specific control.

Keystroke EQUATEs are declared in \LIBSRC\KEYCODES.CLW.

See Also: AddHistoryField, AddHistoryFile, RestoreField, SaveHistory

InsertAction (response to insert request)

InsertAction BYTE

The **InsertAction** property indicates the WindowManager action to take when the end user "Inserts" a record. Valid actions are:

Insert:None	use the default insert action (Insert:Caller)
Insert:Caller	return to calling procedure
Insert:Batch	immediately allow another insert
Insert:Query	offer to return or do another insert

Implementation: The Init method sets the InsertAction property to Insert:Caller. The TakeCompleted method carries out the action specified by the InsertAction property.

 The AddUpdateFile method registers files involved in batch adds.

 InsertAction EQUATEs are declared in ABWINDOW.INC as follows:

```
          ITEMIZE,PRE(Insert)
None     EQUATE
Caller   EQUATE
Batch    EQUATE
Query    EQUATE
          END
```

See Also: AddUpdateFile, TakeCompleted, Init, Request, Response

LastInsertedPosition (hold position of last inserted record)

LastInsertedPosition STRING(1024), PROTECTED

The **LastInsertedPosition** property contains the position of the last record added.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass clears the LastInsertedPosition property in the Ask method. The property is updated by the File Manager's Position method after a Insert:Batch update.

OKControl (window acceptance control--OK button)**OKControl SIGNED**

The **OKControl** property contains the control number (field equate) of the window control that indicates end user acceptance of the window--typically the OK button. The WindowManager uses this property to close the window, or to initiate control and record validation if changes are pending.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not initialize the OKControl property. Your derived Init method should initialize the OKControl property. See the Conceptual Example.

Opened (window opened flag)**Opened BYTE**

The **Opened** property indicates whether the WindowManager's WINDOW has been opened. A value of one (1 or True) indicates the WINDOW is open; a value of zero (0 or False) indicates the WINDOW is not opened. You can use this property to control tasks (such as resizing, or saving and restoring window coordinates) that require the WINDOW to be opened or closed.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not set the Opened property. Your derived Init method should set it. See the Conceptual Example.

See Also: Init

OriginalRequest (original database request)

OriginalRequest

BYTE

The **OriginalRequest** property indicates the database action for which the procedure was originally called. The WindowManager uses this property to make appropriate processing decisions with regard to priming records, saving or abandoning changes, etc. Valid requests are:

InsertRecord
ChangeRecord
DeleteRecord
SelectRecord

Implementation: The Init method sets the OriginalRequest property to equal the Request property. EQUATES for the OriginalRequest and Request properties are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CW as follows:

```
InsertRecord EQUATE (1) !Add a record
ChangeRecord EQUATE (2) !Change the current record
DeleteRecord EQUATE (3) !Delete the current record
SelectRecord EQUATE (4) !Select a record
```

See Also: Init, Request

Primary (RelationManager object)

Primary

&RelationManager

The **Primary** property is a reference to the RelationManager object for the WindowManager's primary file. The WindowManager uses this property to carry out inserts, changes and deletes.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not initialize the Primary property. Your derived Init method should initialize the Primary property if the procedure does database updates. See the Conceptual Example.

Request (database request)**Request BYTE**

The **Request** property indicates the database action the procedure is handling. The WindowManager uses this property to make appropriate processing decisions with regard to priming records, saving or abandoning changes, etc. Valid requests are:

InsertRecord
ChangeRecord
DeleteRecord
SelectRecord

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not set the Request property. Your derived Init method should immediately set the Request property. The WindowManagerClass.Init method sets the OriginalRequest property equal to the Request property to preserve its initial value. See the Conceptual Example.

EQUATEs for the OriginalRequest and Request properties are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CW as follows:

```
InsertRecord    EQUATE (1)    !    Add a record to table
ChangeRecord   EQUATE (2)    !    Change the current record
DeleteRecord   EQUATE (3)    !    Delete the current record
SelectRecord   EQUATE (4)    !    Select the current record
```

See Also: Init, OriginalRequest

ResetOnGainFocus (gain focus reset flag)

ResetOnGainFocus BYTE

The **ResetOnGainFocus** property indicates whether the WindowManager should unconditionally reset itself when the window receives focus. A value of zero (0 or False) allows a conditional reset (reset only if changes demand, for example, when the end user invokes a new BrowseBox sort order or invokes a BrowseBox locator); a value of one (1 or True) forces an unconditional reset (reset regardless of circumstances).

Implementation: The ResetOnGainFocus property defaults to zero (0). The TakeWindowEvent method carries out the action specified by the ResetOnGainFocus property by optionally setting the ForcedReset property to True when the window loses focus.

See Also: ForcedReset

Resize (WindowResize object)

Resize &WindowResizeClass

The **Resize** property is a reference to the WindowResizeClass object that handles window resizing events.

Response (response to database request)

Response BYTE

The **Response** property indicates the WindowManager's response to the original database request (indicated by the OriginalRequest property). The WindowManager uses this property to make appropriate processing decisions with regard to priming records, saving or abandoning changes, etc.

The SetResponse method sets the value of the Response property and exits the procedure.

Implementation: EQUATEs for the Response property are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW as follows:

RequestCompleted	EQUATE (1)	! Update Completed
RequestCancelled	EQUATE (2)	! Update Aborted

See Also: OriginalRequest, SetResponse

Saved (copy of primary file record buffer)

Saved USHORT, PROTECTED

The **Saved** property locates a copy of the WindowManager's primary file record buffer. The WindowManager uses this property to detect pending changes to the record, and to restore the record if necessary.

The SetSaved method sets the value of the Saved property.

Implementation: The WindowManager uses the FileManager.SaveBuffer, FileManager.RestoreBuffer, and FileManager.EqualBuffer methods (through its Primary property) to manipulate the Saved property.

See Also: FileManager.SaveBuffer, FileManager.RestoreBuffer, FileManager.EqualBuffer

Translator (TranslatorClass object:WindowManager)**Translator &TranslatorClass**

The **Translator** property is a reference to the TranslatorClass object for the WindowManager. The WindowManager uses this property to translate window text to the appropriate language.

The AddItem method sets the value of the Translator property.

Implementation: The WindowManagerClass does not initialize the Translator property. The WindowManager only invokes the Translator if the Translator property is not null. Your derived Init method should initialize the Translator property if translation is needed. See the Conceptual Example.

See Also: AddItem

VCRRequest (delayed scroll request)**VCRRequest &LONG**

The **VCRRequest** property is a reference to a variable identifying a scroll request made simultaneously with a database operation request. The WindowManager uses this property to carry out the scroll request after it completes the database operation.

For example, when the end user changes fields on a form then presses the Insert button, he simultaneously requests to save the changes and to scroll to the next record. The WindowManager completes the change request, and only then does it handle the scroll request.

Implementation: EQUATEs for the VCRRequest property are declared in \LIBSRC\ABTOOLBA.INC as follows:

```

ITEMIZE,PRE(VCR)
Forward      EQUATE(Toolbar:Down)      !EQUATE(1)
Backward     EQUATE(Toolbar:Up)         !EQUATE(2), etc..
PageForward  EQUATE(Toolbar:PageDown)
PageBackward EQUATE(Toolbar:PageUp)
First        EQUATE(Toolbar:Top)
Last         EQUATE(Toolbar:Bottom)
Insert       EQUATE(Toolbar:Insert)
None         EQUATE(0)
END

```

WindowManager Methods

The WindowManager contains the following methods.

WindowManager Functional Organization--Expected Use

As an aid to understanding the WindowManager, it is useful to organize its various methods into two large categories according to their expected use--the Non-Virtual and the virtual methods. This organization reflects what we believe is typical use of the WindowManager methods.

Non-Virtual Methods

The Non-Virtual methods, which you are likely to call fairly routinely from your program, can be further divided into three categories:

Housekeeping (one-time) Use:

Run _v	run this procedure
Init _v	initialize the WindowManager object
AddHistoryField	add restorable control and field
AddHistoryFile	add restorable history file
AddItem	program the WindowManager object
AddUpdateFile	register batch add files
Kill _v	shut down the WindowManager object

Mainstream Use:

None

Occasional Use:

Run _v	run another procedure
SaveHistory	save history fields for later restoration
PostCompleted	a virtual to prime fields

_v These methods are also Virtual.

Virtual Methods

Typically you will not call these methods directly--the Non-Virtual methods call them. However, we anticipate you will often want to override these methods, and because they are virtual, they are very easy to override. These methods do provide reasonable default behavior in case you do not want to override them.

Init	initialize the WindowManager object
Ask	display window and process its events
Kill	shut down the WindowManager object
Open	a virtual to execute on EVENT:OpenWindow
PrimeFields	a virtual to prime fields
PrimeUpdate	update or prepare for update
Reset	reset the window and registered items
RestoreField	restore field to last saved value
Run	run this procedure or another procedure
SetAlerts	alert window control keystrokes
SetResponse	OK or Cancel the window
TakeAccepted	a virtual to process EVENT:Accepted
TakeCompleted	a virtual to complete an update form
TakeCloseEvent	a virtual to Cancel the window
TakeEvent	a virtual to process all events
TakeFieldEvent	a virtual to process field events
TakeNewSelection	a virtual to process EVENT:NewSelection
TakeRejected	a virtual to process EVENT:Rejected
TakeSelected	a virtual to process EVENT:Selected
TakeWindowEvent	a virtual to process non-field events
Update	Prepare records for writing to disk

AddHistoryField (add restorable control and field)**AddHistoryField(*control*, *field*)****AddHistoryField** Adds a history field to the WindowManager object.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control whose contents to restore from the *field*. This is the field equate number of the control.

field An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the position of the field within the history file's record layout. The field is identified by its position in the FILE declaration. A value of one (1) indicates the first field, two (2) indicates the second field, etc. See WHAT and WHERE in the *Language Reference* for more information.

The **AddHistoryField** method adds a history field to the WindowManager object. AddHistoryField associates a window control with its corresponding database field or column, so the WindowManager can restore the control's contents when the end user invokes the history key (or FrameBrowseControl ditto button).

Implementation: The AddHistoryFile method names the file and record buffers from which fields are saved and restored. The AddHistoryField method associates specific fields from the history file with their corresponding WINDOW controls. The SaveHistory method saves a copy of the history fields. The RestoreField method restores the contents of a specific control.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
  CODE
  !procedure code
  SELF.HistoryKey = CtrlR
  SELF.AddHistoryFile(CLI:Record,History::CLI:Record)
  SELF.AddHistoryField(?CLI:Name,2)
  SELF.AddHistoryField(?CLI:StateCode,3)
```

See Also: AddHistoryFile, HistoryKey, RestoreField, SaveHistory

AddHistoryFile (add restorable history file)

AddHistoryFile(*record buffer*, *save buffer*)

AddHistoryFile Adds a history file to the WindowManager object.

record buffer The label of the history file's RECORD.

save buffer The label of a STATIC variable declared LIKE(*record buffer*). The WindowManager saves to and restores from this variable.

The **AddHistoryFile** method adds a history file to the WindowManager object. AddHistoryFile sets the file's record buffer and a corresponding save buffer so the WindowManager can restore from the save buffer when the end user invokes the history key (or FrameBrowseControl ditto button).

Implementation: The AddHistoryFile method names the file and record buffers from which fields are saved and restored. The AddHistoryField method associates specific fields from the history file with their corresponding WINDOW controls. The SaveHistory method saves a copy of the history fields. The RestoreField method restores the contents of a specific control.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
  CODE  
  !procedure code  
  SELF.HistoryKey = CtrlR  
  SELF.AddHistoryFile(CLI:Record,History::CLI:Record)  
  SELF.AddHistoryField(?CLI:Name,2)  
  SELF.AddHistoryField(?CLI:StateCode,3)
```

See Also: AddHistoryFile, HistoryKey, RestoreField, SaveHistory

AddItem (program the WindowManager object)

AddItem (<i>class</i> <i>WindowComponent</i> <i>control, response</i>)	
<hr/>	
AddItem	Adds specific functionality to the WindowManager.
<i>class</i>	The label of one of the following objects: BrowseClass, ToolbarClass, ToolbarUpdateClass, TranslatorClass, or WindowResizeClass
<i>WindowComponent</i>	The label of a WindowComponent interface.
<i>control</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control whose acceptance invokes the <i>response</i> — typically OK and Cancel buttons.
<i>response</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the action to register when the <i>control</i> is accepted.
<p>The AddItem method registers another ABC Library object with the WindowManager object to add the object's specific functionality to the WindowManager. The AddItem method also registers an interface with the Window Manager's Component List.</p> <p>Implementation: The TakeAccepted method assigns the <i>response</i> value to the Response property when the <i>control</i> is accepted. EQUATEs for the <i>response</i> parameter are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW as follows:</p> <pre>RequestCompleted EQUATE (1) !Update Completed RequestCancelled EQUATE (2) !Update Aborted</pre>	

See Also: Response, WindowManager.TakeAccepted

AddUpdateFile (register batch add files)

AddUpdateFile(*file manager*)

AddUpdateFile Registers FileManager objects with the WindowManager object.

file manager The label of the FileManager object for the file.

The **AddUpdateFile** method registers FileManager objects with the WindowManager object, for files whose record buffers must be saved and restored to support batch (repetitive) adds.

Implementation: The WindowManager uses the update file's FileManager to save and restore the file's buffer.

 The InsertAction property specifies batch adds.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
  CODE  
  !procedure code  
  SELF.AddUpdateFile(Access:Client)  
  !procedure code
```

See Also: InsertAction

Ask (display window and process its events:WindowManager)**Ask, VIRTUAL**

The **Ask** method displays the window and processes its events.

Implementation: The Run method calls the Ask method only if the Init method returns Level:Benign. Ask RETURNS immediately if the Dead property is True. The Kill method sets the Dead property to True, so calling the Kill method before the Ask method has the effect of shutting down the window procedure before Ask displays the WINDOW.

The Ask method implements the ACCEPT loop for the window and calls the TakeEvent method to handle all events. The ACCEPT loop continues until TakeEvent RETURNS Level:Fatal.

Tip: To shut down the window procedure while the Ask method is running, RETURN Level:Fatal from any of the "Take" methods.

The ACCEPT loop CYCLES when TakeEvent returns Level:Notify.

Tip: To immediately stop processing for an event (including stopping resizing and alerted keys), RETURN Level:Notify from any of the "Take" methods.

Example:

WindowManager.Run PROCEDURE

```
CODE
IF ~SELF.Init()
    SELF.Ask
END
SELF.Kill
```

WindowManager.Ask PROCEDURE

```
CODE
IF SELF.Dead THEN RETURN .
CLEAR(SELF.LastInsertedPosition)
ACCEPT
CASE SELF.TakeEvent()
    OF Level:Fatal
        BREAK
    OF Level:Notify
        CYCLE !Not as dopey at it looks, it is for 'short-stopping' certain events
    END
END
```

See Also: Dead, Init, Kill, Run, TakeEvent

ChangeRecord(execute change record process)

ChangeRecord, VIRTUAL

The **ChangeRecord** method performs the necessary database change or update operations when called. **ChangeRecord** returns Level:Benign to indicate successful a change operation.

Implementation: The ChangeRecord method is called by the TakeCompleted method when Request is set to ChangeRecord.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.SaveHistory()
CASE SELF.Request
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.InsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.ChangeAction()
OF DeleteRecord
RETURN SELF.DeleteAction()
OF SaveRecord
CASE SELF.OriginalRequest
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnInsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnChangeAction()
END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also:

TakeCompleted

Request

InsertRecord

DeleteRecord

DeleteRecord(execute delete record process)**DeleteRecord, VIRTUAL**

The **DeleteRecord** method performs the necessary database delete operations when called. **DeleteRecord** returns Level:Benign to indicate successful a delete operation.

Implementation: The DeleteRecord method is called by the TakeCompleted method when Request is set to DeleteRecord.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.SaveHistory()
CASE SELF.Request
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.InsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.ChangeAction()
OF DeleteRecord
RETURN SELF.DeleteAction()
OF SaveRecord
CASE SELF.OriginalRequest
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnInsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnChangeAction()
END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also:

TakeCompleted

Request

ChangeRecord

InsertRecord

Init (initialize the WindowManager object)

Init, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **Init** method initializes the WindowManager object. Init returns Level:Benign to indicate normal initialization.

The Init method both "programs" the WindowManager object and initializes the overall procedure.

The WindowManager may be configured to implement a variety of options regarding update windows (forms). You can use the Init method to configure form behavior by setting the Request, InsertAction, ChangeAction, and DeleteAction properties.

The WindowManager is closely integrated with several other ABC Library objects. You can use the Init method to register these other objects with the WindowManager by calling the AddItem method. The objects can then set each other's properties and call each other's methods as needed to accomplish their respective goals.

Implementation: Typically, the Init method is paired with the Kill method, performing the converse of the Kill method tasks.

The Run method calls the Init method.

Return value EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Tip: To prevent the Ask method from starting, RETURN Level:Notify from the Init method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.Run PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF SELF.Init() = Level:Benign
    SELF.Ask
  END
  SELF.Kill
```

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()
CODE
  SELF.Request = GlobalRequest
  PARENT.Init()
  SELF.FirstField = ?Browse:1
  SELF.VCRRequest &= VCRRequest
```

```

SELF.Errors &= GlobalErrors
SELF.AddItem(Toolbar)
CLEAR(GlobalRequest)
CLEAR(GlobalResponse)
SELF.AddItem(?Close,RequestCancelled)
Relate:Client.Open
FilesOpened = True
OPEN(QuickWindow)
SELF.Opened=True
Resizer.Init(AppStrategy:Surface,Resize:SetMinSize)
SELF.AddItem(Resizer)
Resizer.AutoTransparent=True
BRW1.Init|
(?Browse:1,Queue:Browse:1.Position,BRW1::View:Browse,Queue:Browse:1,Relate:Client,SELF
BRW1.Q &= Queue:Browse:1
BRW1::Sort1:StepClass.Init(+ScrollSort:AllowAlpha,ScrollBy:Runtime)
BRW1.AddSortOrder(BRW1::Sort1:StepClass,CLI:NameKey)
BRW1.AddLocator(BRW1::Sort1:Locator)
BRW1::Sort1:Locator.Init(,CLI:Name,1,BRW1)
BRW1.AddField(CLI:Name,BRW1.Q.CLI:Name)
BRW1.AddField(CLI:StateCode,BRW1.Q.CLI:StateCode)
BRW1.AddField(CLI:ID,BRW1.Q.CLI:ID)
BRW1.InsertControl=?Insert:2
BRW1.ChangeControl=?Change:2
BRW1.DeleteControl=?Delete:2
BRW1.AddToolbarTarget(Toolbar)
BRW1.AskProcedure = 1
SELF.SetAlerts()
RETURN Level:Benign

```

See Also: AddItem, Ask, Kill, Run

InsertRecord (execute insert record activity)

InsertRecord, VIRTUAL

The **InsertRecord** method performs the necessary database insert operations when called. **InsertRecord** returns Level:Benign to indicate successful a insert operation.

Implementation: The TakeCompleted method calls the InsertRecord method when Request is set to InsertRecord.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.SaveHistory()
CASE SELF.Request
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.InsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.ChangeAction()
OF DeleteRecord
RETURN SELF.DeleteAction()
OF SaveRecord
CASE SELF.OriginalRequest
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnInsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnChangeAction()
END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also:

TakeCompleted

Request

ChangeRecord

DeleteRecord

Kill (shut down the WindowManager object)**Kill, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **Kill** method frees any memory allocated during the life of the object and performs any other required termination code. Kill returns a value to indicate the status of the shut down.

Implementation: Kill sets the Dead property to True and returns Level:Benign to indicate a normal shut down. If the Dead property is already set to True, Kill returns Level:Notify to indicate it is taking no additional action.

Typically, the Kill method is paired with the Init method, performing the converse of the Init method tasks.

The Run method calls the Kill method.

Return value EQUATES are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Kill PROCEDURE()  
CODE  
IF PARENT.Kill() THEN RETURN Level:Notify.  
IF FilesOpened  
    Relate:Defaults.Close  
END  
IF SELF.Opened  
    INIMgr.Update('Main',AppFrame)  
END  
GlobalResponse = CHOOSE(LocalResponse=0,RequestCancelled,LocalResponse)
```

See Also: Dead, Init, Run

Open (a virtual to execute on EVENT:OpenWindow--WindowManager)

Open, VIRTUAL

The **Open** method prepares the window for display. It is designed to execute on window opening events such as EVENT:OpenWindow and EVENT:GainFocus.

Implementation: The Open method invokes the Translator if present and calls the Reset method to reset the WINDOW.

The TakeWindowEvent method calls the Open method.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.TakeWindowEvent  PROCEDURE
CODE
CASE EVENT( )
  OF EVENT:OpenWindow
    IF ~BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
      SELF.Open
    END
  OF EVENT:GainFocus
    IF BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
      SELF.Reset
    ELSE
      SELF.Open
    END
  END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

```
ThisWindow.Open  PROCEDURE
CODE
  IF ~SELF.Translator&=NULL
    SELF.Translator.TranslateWindow
  END
  SELF.Reset
  SELF.Inited = BOR(SELF.Inited,1)
```

See Also: Reset, TakeWindowEvent

PostCompleted (initiates final Window processing)

PostCompleted

The **PostCompleted** method initiates final or closedown processing for the window. This process is typically initiated with an "OK" button. The actual processing depends on the type of window defined.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method calls the PostCompleted method. The ToolbarUpdateClass.TakeEvent also calls PostCompleted. The PostCompleted method initiates AcceptAll mode for update Forms (see SELECT in the *Language Reference* for more information) and POSTs an EVENT:Completed for all other windows.

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE
I LONG,AUTO
A SIGNED,AUTO
CODE
A = ACCEPTED()
IF ~SELF.Toolbar &= NULL
    SELF.Toolbar.TakeEvent(SELF.VCRRequest,SELF)
    IF A = Toolbar:History
        SELF.RestoreField(FOCUS())
    END
END
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Buttons)
    GET(SELF.Buttons,I)
    IF SELF.Buttons.Control = A
        SELF.SetResponse(SELF.Buttons.Action)
        RETURN Level:Notify
    END
END
IF SELF.OkControl AND SELF.OkControl = A
    SELF.PostCompleted
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: OKControl, TakeAccepted

PrimeFields (a virtual to prime form fields)

PrimeFields, VIRTUAL

The **PrimeFields** method is a virtual placeholder method to prime fields for adding a record. PrimeFields is called *after* the FileManager.PrimeRecord method to allow update form specific field priming.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.PrimeFields PROCEDURE  
CODE  
CLI:StateCode = 'FL'  
PARENT.PrimeFields
```

PrimeUpdate (update or prepare for update)

PrimeUpdate, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **PrimeUpdate** method prepares the record buffer for entering the update form ACCEPT loop. For actions that can be completed without the ACCEPT loop, PrimeUpdate prevents the ACCEPT loop from executing by returning an appropriate value.

PrimeUpdate returns Level:Benign to indicate the record buffer is ready and the update form's ACCEPT loop should execute.

PrimeUpdate returns Level:Fatal to indicate the ACCEPT loop should not execute, either because the record buffer could not be primed, or because PrimeUpdate completed the requested operation and no further action is necessary.

Implementation: The PrimeUpdate method primes the record buffer for inserts, deletes the record for automatic deletes, and saves a copy of the record buffer in all cases.

Return value EQUATEs are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
CODE  
!procedure code  
IF SELF.PrimeUpdate() THEN RETURN Level:Fatal .  
OPEN(ClientFormWindow)  
SELF.SetAlerts()  
RETURN Level:Benign
```

RemoveItem(remove WindowComponent object)

RemoveItem(*WindowComponent*)

RemoveItem Unregisters a WindowComponent object.

WindowComponent A reference to a *WindowComponent* interface.

The **RemoveItem** method removes a WindowComponent from the WindowManager object. The object was initially registered with the WindowManager by the AddItem method.

See Also: WindowComponent Interface, WindowManager

Reset (reset the window for display)**Reset**([*force reset*]), **VIRTUAL**

Reset	Resets the WindowManager object.
<i>force reset</i>	A numeric constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression that indicates whether to conditionally or unconditionally reset the window. A value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets the window; a value of zero (0 or False) only resets the window if circumstances require, such as a new sort on browse object or a changed reset field on a browse object. If omitted, <i>force reset</i> defaults to zero (0).

The **Reset** method resets the WindowManager object and any registered (AddItem) objects. A *force reset* value of one (1 or True) unconditionally resets all the objects and should therefore be used sparingly to enhance performance.

Implementation: The Reset method calls the ResetSort and UpdateWindow methods for each BrowseClass object registered by the AddItem method. It calls the ResetQueue method for each FileDropClass object registered by the AddItem method.

The Open, TakeWindowEvent, and TakeNewSelection methods all call the Reset method.

Example:

```

ThisWindow.TakeWindowEvent PROCEDURE
CODE
CASE EVENT( )
OF EVENT:GainFocus
  IF BAND(SELF.Inited,1)
    SELF.Reset
  ELSE
    SELF.Open
  END
OF EVENT:Sized
  IF BAND(SELF.Inited,2)
    SELF.Reset
  ELSE
    SELF.Inited = BOR(SELF.Inited,2)
  END
END
RETURN Level:Benign

```

See Also: AutoRefresh, Open, ResetOnGainFocus, TakeNewSelection, TakeWindowEvent, BrowseClass.AddResetField, BrowseClass.ResetSort, BrowseClass.UpdateWindow

RestoreField (restore field to last saved value)

RestoreField(*control*), VIRTUAL

RestoreField Restores the contents of the specified control.

control An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression containing the control number of the control whose contents to restore. This is the field equate number of the control.

The **RestoreField** method restores the contents of the specified control to the value it contained when the record was last saved. The RestoreField only works if the HistoryKey property is set.

Implementation: The AddHistoryFile method names the file and record buffers from which fields are saved and restored. The AddHistoryField method associates specific fields from the history file with their corresponding WINDOW controls. The SaveHistory method saves a copy of the history fields. The RestoreField method restores the contents of a specific control.

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE
A SIGNED,AUTO
CODE
A = ACCEPTED()
IF ~SELF.Toolbar &= NULL
    SELF.Toolbar.TakeEvent(SELF.VCRRequest,SELF)
    IF A = Toolbar:History
        SELF.RestoreField(FOCUS())
    END
END
!procedure code
```

See Also: AddHistoryField, AddHistoryFile, HistoryKey, SaveHistory

Run (run this procedure or a subordinate procedure)**Run([*number, request*]), VIRTUAL, PROC**

Run	Run this procedure, or run the specified subordinate procedure.
<i>number</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the subordinate procedure to run. A value of one (1) runs the first procedure, two (2) runs the second procedure, etc. Typically, this is the procedure's position within an EXECUTE structure. If omitted, Run executes the normal WindowManager Init-Ask-Kill sequence.
<i>request</i>	An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression identifying the action (insert, change, delete, select) the subordinate procedure takes. If omitted, Run executes the normal WindowManager Init-Ask-Kill sequence.

The **Run** method executes the normal WindowManager Init-Ask-Kill sequence, or it runs the specified subordinate procedure on the same thread. Run returns a value indicating whether it completed or cancelled the requested operation.

Run

Executes the normal WindowManager Init-Ask-Kill sequence.

Run(*number, request*)

A virtual placeholder method to execute a procedure identified by *number*. This allows other objects and template generated code to invoke subordinate WindowManager procedures by number rather than by name. The procedure runs on the same thread as the calling procedure.

Return Data Type: **BYTE**

Implementation: Return value EQUATES are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CW as follows:

```
RequestCompleted EQUATE (1) !Update Completed
RequestCancelled EQUATE (2) !Update Cancelled
```

Example:

```
!procedure data
```

```
CODE
```

```
ThisWindow.Run !normal Init-Ask-Kill sequence
```

```
ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE( )
```

```
CODE
```

```
!procedure code
```

```
IF SELF.Run(1,SelectRecord) = RequestCompleted !run a procedure on this thread
```

```
CLI:StateCode = ST:StateCode
```

```
ELSE
```

```
SELECT(?CLI:StateCode)
```

```
    CYCLE
  END

BrowseClass.Ask PROCEDURE(BYTE Request)
  CODE
  !procedure code
  Response=SELF.Window.Run(SELF.AskProcedure,Request) !run a procedure on this thread

ThisWindow.Run PROCEDURE                                !do Init-Ask-Kill sequence
  CODE
  IF SELF.Init() = Level:Benign
    SELF.Ask
  END
  SELF.Kill
  RETURN GlobalResponse

ThisWindow.Run PROCEDURE(USHORT Number,BYTE Request) !run a subordinate procedure
  CODE
  GlobalRequest = Request
  EXECUTE Number
  SelectStates
  UpdatePhones
  END
  RETURN GlobalResponse

See Also:      Init, Ask, Kill
```

SaveHistory (save history fields for later restoration)

SaveHistory, PROTECTED

The **SaveHistory** method saves a copy of the fields named by the AddHistoryField method for later restoration by the RestoreField method.

Implementation: The AddHistoryFile method names the file and record buffers from which fields are saved and restored. The AddHistoryField method associates specific fields from the history file with their corresponding WINDOW controls. The SaveHistory method saves a copy of the history fields. The RestoreField method restores the contents of a specific control.

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.SaveHistory
CASE SELF.Request
OF InsertRecord
DO InsertAction
OF ChangeRecord
DO ChangeAction
OF DeleteRecord
DO DeleteAction
END
```

See Also: RestoreField AddHistoryField, AddHistoryFile, HistoryKey,

SaveOnChangeAction(execute change record process and remain active)**SaveOnChangeAction, VIRTUAL**

The **SaveOnChangeAction** method performs the necessary database change or update operations when called. **SaveOnChangeAction** returns Level:Benign to indicate a successful change operation.

Implementation: The SaveOnChangeAction method is called by the TakeCompleted method when Request is set to SaveRecord and OriginalRequest is set to ChangeRecord.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.SaveHistory()
CASE SELF.Request
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.InsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.ChangeAction()
OF DeleteRecord
RETURN SELF.DeleteAction()
OF SaveRecord
CASE SELF.OriginalRequest
OF InsertRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnInsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
RETURN SELF.SaveOnChangeAction()
END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also:

TakeCompleted

Request

SaveOnInsertAction(execute insert record activity and remain active)**SaveOnInsertAction, VIRTUAL**

The **SaveOnInsertAction** method performs the necessary database insert operations when called. **SaveOnInsertAction** returns Level:Benign to indicate a successful insert operation.

Implementation: The SaveOnInsertAction method is called by the TakeCompleted method when Request is set to SaveRecord and OriginalRequest is set to InsertRecord.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeCompleted PROCEDURE
CODE
SELF.SaveHistory()
CASE SELF.Request
OF InsertRecord
    RETURN SELF.InsertAction()
OF ChangeRecord
    RETURN SELF.ChangeAction()
OF DeleteRecord
    RETURN SELF.DeleteAction()
OF SaveRecord
    CASE SELF.OriginalRequest
    OF InsertRecord
        RETURN SELF.SaveOnInsertAction()
    OF ChangeRecord
        RETURN SELF.SaveOnChangeAction()
    END
END
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also:

TakeCompleted

Request

SetAlerts (alert window control keystrokes)

SetAlerts, VIRTUAL

The **SetAlerts** method alerts any required keystrokes for the window's controls, including keystrokes required by the window's history key, browse lists, and locators.

Implementation: The SetAlerts method calls the BrowseClass.SetAlerts method for each BrowseClass object added by the AddItem method. SetAlerts also ALERTs the HistoryKey keystroke for each AddHistoryField control.

Note that the alerted keystrokes are associated only with the specific affected controls, such as a LIST or ENTRY. The keystrokes are not alerted for the WINDOW. See ALERT in the *Language Reference* for more information.

Example:

```
ThisWindow.Init PROCEDURE()  
CODE  
!procedure code  
SELF.SetAlerts()  
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: AddHistoryField, HistoryKey, BrowseClass.SetAlerts

SetResponse (OK or Cancel the window)**SetResponse**(*response*), VIRTUAL**SetResponse** Initiates standard "OK" or "Cancel" processing.

response An integer constant, variable, EQUATE, or expression indicating the WindowManager's response (OK or Cancel) to the requested operation.

The **SetResponse** method initiates standard "OK" or "Cancel" processing for the procedure. That is, it registers the procedure's result (completed or cancelled) and triggers the normal procedure shut down.

Implementation: The TakeAccepted method calls the SetResponse method. SetResponse sets the Response property and POSTs an EVENT:CloseWindow. If the *response* is RequestCancelled, SetResponse also sets the VCRRequest property to VCR:None.

EQUATEs for the response parameter are declared in \LIBSRC\TPLEQU.CLW.
as follows:

```
RequestCompleted EQUATE (1)  !Update Completed
RequestCancelled EQUATE (2)  !Update Aborted
```

Example:

```
WindowManager.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE
I LONG,AUTO
A SIGNED,AUTO
CODE
A = ACCEPTED()
!procedure code
LOOP I = 1 TO RECORDS(SELF.Buttons)
  GET(SELF.Buttons,I)
  IF SELF.Buttons.Control = A
    SELF.SetResponse(SELF.Buttons.Action)
    RETURN Level:Notify
  END
END
!procedure code
RETURN Level:Benign
```

See Also: Request, Response

TakeAccepted (a virtual to process EVENT:Accepted--WindowManager)**TakeAccepted, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeAccepted** method processes EVENT:Accepted events for the window's controls, and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeAccepted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: TakeAccepted carries out HistoryKey and 2 parameter AddItem actions.

Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeAccepted method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: AddItem, HistoryKey, TakeEvent

TakeCloseEvent (a virtual to Cancel the window)

TakeCloseEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeCloseEvent** method processes EVENT:CloseWindow and EVENT:CloseDown events for the window and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop.

TakeCloseEvent implements the default processing when the end user cancels an update form (presses the Cancel button). The actual process depends on the value of various WindowManager properties, including Request, Response, CancelAction, OriginalRequest, etc.

TakeCloseEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeEvent method calls the TakeCloseEvent method. The TakeCloseEvent method undoes any processing rendered invalid by the form cancellation (for example, deleting a dummy autoincremented record that is no longer needed).

Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
```

```
IF FIELD()  
  RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()  
END  
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: [CancelAction](#), [Request](#), [Response](#), [OriginalRequest](#), [TakeEvent](#)

TakeCompleted (a virtual to complete an update form)

TakeCompleted, VIRTUAL, PROC

The **TakeCompleted** method processes the EVENT:Completed event for the window and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop.

TakeCompleted implements the default processing when the end user accepts an update form (presses the OK button). The actual process depends on the value of various WindowManager properties, including Request, InsertAction, VCRRequest, etc.

TakeCompleted returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: The TakeCompleted method calls the SaveHistory method, then completes the requested action (insert, change, or delete), subject to various validation constraints. That is the FileManager object validates form fields and does concurrency checking, and the RelationManager object enforces any referential constraints.

TakeCompleted sets the Response property and POSTs an EVENT:CloseWindow when appropriate.

Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeCompleted method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection;RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
```

```
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
      RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
      RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: InsertAction, Request, Response, TakeEvent, VCRRequest

TakeEvent (a virtual to process all events:WindowManager)**TakeEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeEvent** method processes all window events and returns a value indicating whether ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

 The Ask method calls the TakeEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
WindowManager.Ask PROCEDURE
CODE
IF SELF.Dead THEN RETURN .
CLEAR(SELF.LastInsertedPosition)
ACCEPT
CASE SELF.TakeEvent()
OF Level:Fatal
BREAK
OF Level:Notify
CYCLE !Not as dopey at it looks, it is for 'short-stopping' certain events
END
END
```

See Also: Ask

TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events:WindowManager)**TakeFieldEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeFieldEvent** method is a virtual placeholder to process all field-specific/control-specific events for the window. It returns a value indicating whether window process is complete and should stop. TakeFieldEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeFieldEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: Ask

TakeNewSelection (a virtual to process EVENT:NewSelection)**TakeNewSelection, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeNewSelection** method processes EVENT:NewSelection events for the window's controls and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeNewSelection returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: TakeNewSelection resets the WindowManager when the end user selects a new TAB.

Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeNewSelection method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeEvent

TakeRejected (a virtual to process EVENT:Rejected)**TakeRejected, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeRejected** method processes EVENT:Rejected events for the window's controls and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeRejected returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: TakeRejected sounds the audible alarm and returns focus to the offending (rejected) control.

Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeRejected method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal  BYTE(Level:Benign)
I     USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeEvent

TakeSelected (a virtual to process EVENT:Selected)**TakeSelected, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeSelected** method is a virtual placeholder to process EVENT:Selected events for the window's controls. It returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeSelected returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeSelected method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
Rval BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
    CODE
    IF ~FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
        IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    END
    CASE EVENT()
    OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
    OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
    OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
    OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
    OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
    OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
        RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
    END
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
    IF FIELD()
        RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
    END
    RETURN RVal
```

See Also: TakeEvent

TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events:WindowManager)**TakeWindowEvent, VIRTUAL, PROC**

The **TakeWindowEvent** method processes all non-field events for the window and returns a value indicating whether window ACCEPT loop processing is complete and should stop. TakeWindowEvent returns Level:Benign to indicate processing of this event should continue normally; it returns Level:Notify to indicate processing is completed for this event and the ACCEPT loop should CYCLE; it returns Level:Fatal to indicate the event could not be processed and the ACCEPT loop should BREAK.

Implementation: TakeWindowEvent implements standard handling of EVENT:OpenWindow (Open method), EVENT:LoseFocus, EVENT:GainFocus (Reset method), and EVENT:Sized (WindowResizeClass.Resize method).

Return values are declared in ABERROR.INC.

The TakeEvent method calls the TakeWindowEvent method.

Return Data Type: BYTE

Example:

```
MyWindowManager.TakeEvent PROCEDURE
RVal BYTE(Level:Benign)
I    USHORT,AUTO
CODE
IF ~FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeWindowEvent()
    IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
END
CASE EVENT()
OF EVENT:Accepted;    RVal = SELF.TakeAccepted()
OF EVENT:Rejected;    RVal = SELF.TakeRejected()
OF EVENT:Selected;    RVal = SELF.TakeSelected()
OF EVENT:NewSelection; RVal = SELF.TakeNewSelection()
OF EVENT:Completed;   RVal = SELF.TakeCompleted()
OF EVENT:CloseWindow OROF EVENT:CloseDown
    RVal = SELF.TakeCloseEvent()
END
IF RVal THEN RETURN RVal.
IF FIELD()
    RVal = SELF.TakeFieldEvent()
END
RETURN RVal
```

See Also: Open, Reset, TakeEvent, WindowResizeClass.Resize

Update (prepare records for writing to disk)

Update, VIRTUAL

The **Update** method prepares the WindowManager's FILE and VIEW records for writing to disk by synchronizing buffer contents with their corresponding screen values. The Update method also arms automatic optimistic concurrency checking so an eventual write (PUT) to disk returns an error if another user changed the data since it was retrieved.

Implementation: The Update method calls BrowseClass.UpdateViewRecord for each BrowseClass object added by the AddItem method.

Example:

```

ThisWindow.TakeAccepted PROCEDURE()
Looped BYTE
CODE
LOOP
  IF Looped
    RETURN Level:Notify
  ELSE
    Looped = 1
  END
  PARENT.TakeAccepted()
  CASE ACCEPTED()
  OF ?Expand
    ThisWindow.Update
    ?CusTree{PropList:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(?CusTree)
    DO REL1::ExpandAll
  OF ?Contract
    ThisWindow.Update
    ?CusTree{PropList:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(?CusTree)
    DO REL1::ContractAll
  OF ?Insert
    ThisWindow.Update
    ?CusTree{PropList:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(?CusTree)
    DO REL1::AddEntry
  OF ?Change
    ThisWindow.Update
    ?CusTree{PropList:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(?CusTree)
    DO REL1::EditEntry
  OF ?Delete
    ThisWindow.Update
    ?CusTree{PropList:MouseDownRow} = CHOICE(?CusTree)
    DO REL1::RemoveEntry
  END
RETURN Level:Benign

```

Index:

- _Print (print rich text control contents).....305
- _Print print a Crystal Report283
- ABC Template Implementation.....338, 957, 1099, 1167
- ACCEPT 1332
- ActiveInvisible 150
 - BrowseClass 150
- ActiveInvisible (obscured browse list action) 150
- AddBreak 123
- AddControl 463
- AddEditControl 174
 - BrowseClass 174
- AddEditControl (specify custom edit-in-place class) 174
- AddErrors 502
 - ErrorClass 502
- AddErrors (add or override recognized errors) 502
- AddField 175, 579
 - BrowseClass 175
 - FileDropClass 579
- AddField (specify a FILE/QUEUE field pair) 175
- AddField (specify display fields) 579
- AddField(track fields in a structure) 604
- AddHistory (update History structure) 503
- AddHistoryField 1328
 - WindowManagerClass 1328
- AddHistoryField (add restorable control and field) 1328
- AddHistoryFile 1329
 - WindowManagerClass 1329
- AddHistoryFile (add restorable history file) 1329
- AddItem 104, 256, 540, 835, 1118, 1330
 - AsciiViewerClass 104
 - FieldPairsClass 540
 - PopupClass 835
 - QueryClass 913
 - StepCustomClass 1118
 - WindowManagerClass 1330
- AddItem (add a step marker) 1118
- AddItem (add field to query) 913
- AddItem (add menu item) 835
- AddItem (maintain the columninfo structure) 316
- AddItem (maintain the namequeue structure) 327
- AddItem (program the AsciiViewer object) 104
- AddItem (program the WindowManager object) 1330
- AddItem(program the BrowseClass object) 176
- AddItem(program the ReportManager object) 1032
- AddItemEvent 837
 - PopupClass 837
- AddItemEvent (set menu item action) 837
- AddItemMimic 838
 - PopupClass 838
- AddItemMimic (tie menu item to a button) 838
- AddKey 605
 - FileManagerClass 605
- AddKey (set the file's keys) 605
- AddLocator 176
 - BrowseClass 176
- AddLocator (specify a locator) 758
- AddLocator (specify a locator) 176
- AddLogFile (maintain log file structure) ...317
- AddMask 1090
 - SelectFileClass 1090
- AddMask (add file dialog file masks) 1090
- AddMenu 839
 - PopupClass 839
- AddPair 238, 541
 - BufferedPairsClass 239
 - FieldPairsClass 541
- AddPair (add a field pair) 238, 541
- AddRange 1255
 - ViewManagerClass 1255
- AddRange (add a range limit) 1255
- AddRecord (add a record filedrop queue) 561
- AddRelation 1000
 - RelationManagerClass 1000
- AddRelation (set a file relationship) 1000
- AddRelationLink 1002

AddResetField	177	AllText	721
BrowseClass	177	AppendOrder	1257
AddResetField (set a field to monitor for changes)	177	ViewManagerClass	1257
AddSortOrder	178, 1256	AppendOrder (refine a sort order)	1257
BrowseClass	178	ApplyFilter	1258
ViewManagerClass	1256	ViewManagerClass	1258
AddSortOrder (add a sort order)	1256	ApplyFilter (range limit and filter the result set)	1258
AddSortOrder (specify a browse sort order)	178	ApplyOrder.....	1259
AddSubMenu	840	ViewManagerClass	1259
PopupClass.....	840	ApplyOrder (sort the result set).....	1259
AddTarget	1179	ApplyRange	180, 1260
ToolBarClass.....	1179	BrowseClass	180
AddTarget (register toolbar driven entity)	1179	ViewManagerClass	1260
AddThread (maintains the triggerqueue).327		ApplyRange (conditionally range limit and filter the result set).....	1260
AddToolBarTarget.....	179	ApplyRange (refresh browse based on resets and range limits).....	180
BrowseClass	179	Arrow.....	454
AddToolBarTarget (set the browse toolbar)	179	ArrowAction.....	152
AddTranslation	1235, 1236	BrowseClass	152
TranslatorClass.....	1235, 1236	ArrowAction (edit-in-place action on arrow key).....	152
AddTranslation (add translation pairs) ..	1235	ASCIIFile.....	64
AddUpdateField.....	580	ASCIIFileClass	64
FileDropClass	580	ASCIIFile (the ASCII file)	64
AddUpdateField (specify field assignments)	580	ASCIIFileClass.....	97, 98
AddUpdateFile	1331	ASCIIFileClass Functional Organization— Expected Use	65
WindowManagerClass	1331	ASCIIFileClass Overview.....	61
AddUpdateFile (register batch add files)	1331	ASCIIPrintClass	97, 98
AddValue		ASCIIPrintClass Overview	79
EditMultiSelectClass	437	ASCIISearchClass	97, 98
AddValue (prime the MultiSelect dialog) .	437	ASCIISearchClass Overview	87
Again.....	454	ASCIIViewerClass	97, 98, 99
AliasedFile	594	AsciiViewerClass Functional Organization— Expected Use	102
FileManagerClass	594	ASCIIViewerClass Overview	97
AliasedFile (the primary file).....	594	Ask	
AlinkLookup (associative link lookup)....	1160	ASCIIPrintClass	83
AllowReset.....	576	ASCIISearchClass	92
AllowUnfilled	151	BrowseClass	181
BrowseClass	151	FileDropComboClass	561
AllowUnfilled (display filled list)	151	PopupClass	841
AllowUserZoom	866	QueryClass.....	915
PrintPreviewClass.....	866	QueryFormClass	938
AllowUserZoom (allow any zoom factor).866		ReportManagerClass	1032

-
- SelectFileClass 1091
 - ASK.. 83, 92, 181, 183, 561, 841, 964, 1032, 1091, 1332
 - Ask (a virtual to accept query criteria) 915
 - Ask (add a record to the lookup file) 561
 - Ask (display the popup menu) 841
 - Ask (display window and process its events) 1032
 - Ask (display Windows file dialog) 1091
 - Ask (solicit print specifications) 83
 - Ask (solicit query criteria QueryListClass) 964
 - Ask (solicit query criteria) 938
 - Ask (solicit search specifications) 92
 - Ask (update selected browse item) 181
 - AskGotoLine 105
 - ASCIIViewerClass 105
 - AskGotoLine (go to user specified line) ... 105
 - AskPage 872
 - PrintPreviewClass 872
 - AskPreview 1033
 - ReportManagerClass 1033
 - AskPreview (preview or print the report) 1033
 - AskPrintPages 873
 - AskProcedure 153
 - BrowseClass 153
 - AskProcedure (update procedure) .. 153, 556
 - AskRecord
 - BrowseClass 183
 - AskThumbnails 875
 - PrintPreviewClass 875
 - AskThumbnails (prompt for new thumbnail configuration) 875
 - AssignBufferToLeft 240
 - BufferedPairsClass 240
 - AssignBufferToLeft (copy from "buffer" fields to "left" fields) 240
 - AssignBufferToRight 241
 - BufferedPairsClass 241
 - AssignBufferToRight (copy from "buffer" fields to "right" fields) 241
 - AssignLeftToBuffer 242
 - BufferedPairsClass 242
 - AssignLeftToBuffer (copy from "left" fields to "buffer" fields) 242
 - AssignLeftToRight 543
 - FieldPairsClass 543
 - AssignLeftToRight (copy from "left" fields to "right" fields) 543
 - AssignRightToBuffer 243
 - BufferedPairsClass 243
 - AssignRightToBuffer (copy from "right" fields to "buffer" fields) 243
 - AssignRightToLeft 544
 - FieldPairsClass 544
 - AssignRightToLeft (copy from "right" fields to "left" fields) 544
 - Attribute 1022
 - autoincrement 607, 645, 648
 - AutoRefresh 1313
 - WindowManagerClass 1313
 - AutoRefresh (reset window as needed flag) 1313
 - AutoToolbar 1313
 - WindowManagerClass 1313
 - AutoToolbar (set toolbar target on new tab selection) 1313
 - AutoTransparent 1289
 - WindowResizeClass 1289
 - AutoTransparent (optimize redraw) 1289
 - background processes
 - ReportManagerClass 1029
 - BC 137
 - BC (browse class) 137
 - BeforeChange (update audit log file before file change) 318, 769
 - BeginRefresh 721
 - begins with
 - Filter Locator 683
 - BindFields 606
 - FileManagerClass 606
 - BindFields (bind fields when file is opened) 606
 - BreakMan 1022
 - Browse 1190
 - initial position 167
 - ToolbarListBoxClass 1190
 - Browse (BrowseClass object) 226, 1190
 - BrowseBox
 - reset 173
 - BrowseClass 145, 146, 147
 - methods 172
 - properties 150

BrowseClass Functional Organization--		CalcPopup	724
Expected Use	172	CalcPopupAdd2	725
BrowseClass Methods	172	CancelAction	1314
BrowseClass Overview	145	WindowManagerClass	1314
BrowseClass Properties	150	CancelAction (response to cancel request)	
BrowseEIPManagerClass	131	.....	1314
BrowseEIPManagerClass Concepts	132	CancelAutoInc	607, 608, 609, 1004
BrowseEIPManagerClass Properties	137	FileManagerClass	607
BrowseEIPManagerClass Source Files ..	133	RelationManagerClass	1004
BrowseEIPManagerClass--ABC Template		CancelAutoInc (undo autoincrement) ...	1004
Implementation	133	CancelAutoInc (undo PrimeAutoInc)	607
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Conceptual		CancelPrintReport	1034
Example	134	CanRedo (check for redo data)	293
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Functional		Caption (window title)	824
Organization--Expected Use	138	CaseSensitiveValue (case sensitive flag)	895
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Overview	131	ChangeAction	1315
BrowseEIPManagerClass--Relationship to		WindowManagerClass	1315
Other Application Builder Classes	133	ChangeAction (response to change request)	
BrowseQueue Concepts	221	.....	1315
BrowseQueue Source Files	221	ChangeButton	1205
BrowseToolBarClass ABC Template		ToolBarTargetClass	1205
Implementation	225	ChangeButton (change control number)	1205
BrowseToolBarClass Concepts	225	ChangeControl	153
BrowseToolBarClass Overview	225	BrowseClass	153
BrowseToolBarClass Source Files	225	ChangeField (virtual method for managing	
Buffer		field changes)	770
FileManagerClass	595	ChangeFontStyle (set current font style) .	293
BUFFER	595	ChangeRecord	1333
Buffer (the record buffer)	595	CheckChanges(check record for changes)	
buffer management	535	.....	328
BufferedPairsClass		CheckPair(check field pairs for changes)	328
methods	236	Children (reference to child group controls)	
properties	235	.....	754
BufferedPairsClass Functional		Choice(returns current selection number)	
Organization—Expected Use	236	.....	773
BufferedPairsClass Methods	236	Chosen (current browse queue element)	754
BufferedPairsClass Overview	233	ClearColumn	139, 464
BufferedPairsClass Properties	235	ClearColumn (reset column property values	
Buffers	595	EIPManagerClass)	464
FileManagerClass	595	ClearColumn (reset column property values)	
Buffers (saved record buffers)	595	.....	139
Button (toolbar buttons FEQ values)	227	ClearKey	610
ButtonTypes (standard windows buttons)	824	FileManagerClass	610
CalcBestPositionNodeText	722	ClearKey (clear specified key components)	
CalcCurrentGraph	722	.....	610
CalcCurrentNode	723	ClearKeycode	833
CalcGraph	723	PopupClass	833

- ClearKeycode (clear KEYCODE character)833
- ClearLeft545
 - FieldPairsClass545
- ClearLeft (clear each "left" field)545
- ClearQuery916
- ClearQuery (remove loaded query)916
- ClearRight546
 - FieldPairsClass546
- ClearRight (clear each "right" field)546
- ClickPress (forward control)755
- Close
 - FileManagerClass612
 - RelationManagerClass.....1005
 - ViewManagerClass1261
- CLOSE.....612, 1005, 1261
- Close (close a file and any related files) 1005
- Close (close standarderrorlog file)1101
- Close (close the file)612
- Close (close the view)1261
- Close (initiate close of log file).....532
- CloseHelp (close HTML help file)1161
- COLUMN454
- ConfirmPages.....866
- ConstantClass Functional Organization—
 - Expected Use.....255
- ConstantClass Overview249
- Construct (initialize FuzzyClass object)...688
- Construct (initialize StandardErrorLogClass object)1101
- Control813, 1205
 - LocatorClass813
 - ToolbarTargetClass1205
- Control (the locator control number).....813
- Control (window control).....1205
- ControlBase (base control number)755
- ControlNumber (number of controls).....755
- Controls1105
 - StepClass.....1105
- Controls (the StepClass sort sequence) 1105
- CREATE596
- CreateControl357, 447
 - EditCheckClass.....392, 404
 - EditClass345
 - EditColorClass375, 414
 - EditFontClass.....425
- CreateControl (a virtual to create the edit control)345
- CreateControl (create the edit-in-place CHECK control).....366
- CreateControl (create the edit-in-place COMBO control).....384
- CreateControl (create the edit-in-place control)375, 414, 425
- CreateControl (create the edit-in-place DROPLIST control)392
- CreateControl (create the edit-in-place ENTRY control)404
- CreateControl (create the edit-in-place SPIN control)357
- CreateHeader (create log file header records)318
- Crystal8 Class.....265
- Crystal8 Class Properties266
- CurrentPage867
 - PrintPreviewClass867
- CurrentPage (the selected report page) ..867
- cwRTF ABC Template Implementation ...290
- cwRTF Class Concepts289
- cwRTF Overview289
- cwRTF Properties291
- cwRTF Relationship to Other Application
 - Builder Classes290
- cwRTF Source Files290
- Database Operations
 - FileManagerClass601
- DbAuditManager ABC Template
 - Implementation.....313
- DbAuditManager Methods.....316
- DbAuditManager Properties314
- DbAuditManager Source Files.....313
- DbChangeManager ABC Template
 - Implementation.....325
- DbChangeManager Methods.....327
- DbChangeManager Overview325
- DbChangeManager Properties326
- DbChangeManager Source Files325
- DbLogFileManager ABC Template
 - Implementation.....333
- DbLogFileManager Methods335
- DbLogFileManager Overview333
- DbLogFileManager Properties.....334
- DbLogFileManager Source Files333

Dead	1315	DisplayButtons	1180, 1191, 1201, 1210, 1225
WindowManagerClass	1315	ToolBarClass	1180
Dead (shut down flag)	1315	ToolBarListBoxClass	1191
DefaultCategory (error category)	495	ToolBarReltreeClass	1201
DefaultDirectory	1088	ToolBarTargetClass	1210
SelectFileClass	1088	ToolBarUpdateClass	1225
DefaultDirectory (initial path)	1088	DisplayButtons (enable appropriate toolbar buttons)	1180, 1191, 1201, 1210, 1225
DefaultFile	1088	DisplayPage	106
SelectFileClass	1088	ASCIIViewerClass	106
DefaultFile (initial filename/filemask)	1088	DisplayPage (display new page)	106
DefaultFill	576	Draw	728
FileDropClass	576	DrawGraph	728
DeferMoves	1289	DrawReport	729
WindowResizeClass	1289	DrawWallpaper	729
DeferMoves (optimize resize)	1289	DrillDown	730
DeferOpenReport	1023	ECON (current state of entry completion)	556
ReportManagerClass	1023	EditCheckClass	359
DeferOpenReport (defer open)	1023	CreateControl	366, 392, 404
DeferWindow	1023	methods	365
Delete		properties	364
RelationManagerClass	1006	EditCheckClass ABC Template	
DELETE	917, 1006	Implementation	359
Delete (remove saved query)	917	EditCheckClass Concepts	359
Delete (delete record subject to referential constraints)	1006	EditCheckClass Conceptual Example	361
DeleteAction	1316	EditCheckClass Functional Organization—	
WindowManagerClass	1316	Expected Use	365
DeleteAction (response to delete request)	1316	EditCheckClass Methods	365
DeleteButton	1206	EditCheckClass Overview	359
DeleteButton (delete control number)	1206	EditCheckClass Properties	364
DeleteControl	154	EditCheckClass Relationship to Other	
BrowseClass	154	Application Builder Classes	359
Deleted (return record status)	613	EditCheckClass Source Files	359
DeletelImageQueue	876	EditClass	337
Deleteltem	842	CreateControl	345
PopupClass	842	FEQ	343
Deleteltem (remove menu item)	842	Init	346
DeleteRecord	1334	Kill	347
DeleteRecord (delete a record)	614	methods	346
Destruct (automatic destructor)	615	SetAlerts	347, 393
Destruct (remove the		TakeEvent	349
StandardErrorLogClass object)	1101	EditClass Concepts	337
DiagramNameText	726, 727	EditClass Conceptual Example	339
DiagramText	726, 727	EditClass Overview	337
DISPLAY	877	EditClass Properties	343
		EditClass Source Files	338

EditColorClass	367	EditEntryClass Functional Organization--	
CreateControl	375, 414	Expected Use	403
properties	373	EditEntryClass Methods	403
TakeEvent	376, 415	EditEntryClass Overview	397
Title	373	EditEntryClass Properties	402
EditColorClass ABC Template		EditEntryClass Relationship to Other	
Implementation	367	Application Builder Classes	397
EditColorClass Concepts	367	EditEntryClass Source Files	398
EditColorClass Conceptual Example	369	EditFileClass	405
EditColorClass Functional Organization--		FileMask	411
Expected Use	374	FilePattern	411
EditColorClass Properties	373	properties	411
EditColorClass Relationship to Other		Title	412
Application Builder Classes	367	EditFileClass ABC Template Implementation	
EditColorClass Source Files	368	.....	405
EditColorClass Overview	367	EditFileClass Concepts	405
EditDropComboClass ABC Template		EditFileClass Conceptual Example	407
Implementation	377	EditFileClass Functional Organization--	
EditDropComboClass Concepts	377	Expected Use	413
EditDropComboClass Conceptual Example		EditFileClass Overview	405
.....	379	EditFileClass Properties	411
EditDropComboClass Functional		EditFileClass Relationship to Other	
Organization	383	Application Builder Classes	405
EditDropComboClass Methods	383	EditFileClass Source Files	406
EditDropComboClass Overview	377	EditFontClass	417
EditDropComboClass Properties	382	CreateControl	425
EditDropComboClass Source Files	378	methods	424
EditDropListClass	385	properties	423
properties	390	TakeEvent	426
EditDropListClass ABC Template		Title	423
Implementation	385	EditFontClass ABC Template	
EditDropListClass Concepts	385	Implementation	417
EditDropListClass Conceptual Example	387	EditFontClass Concepts	417
EditDropListClass Functional Organization--		EditFontClass Conceptual Example	419
Expected Use	391	EditFontClass Functional Organization--	
EditDropListClass Overview	385	Expected Use	424
EditDropListClass Properties	390	EditFontClass Methods	424
EditDropListClass Relationship to Other		EditFontClass Overview	417
Application Builder Classes	385	EditFontClass Properties	423
EditDropListClass Source Files	385	EditFontClass Relationship to Other	
EditEntryClass	397	Application Builder Classes	417
methods	403	EditFontClass Source Files	418
properties	402	EditList	155
EditEntryClass ABC Template		BrowseClass	155
Implementation	398	EditList (list of edit-in-place controls)	155
EditEntryClass Concepts	397	EditMultiSelectClass	427
EditEntryClass Conceptual Example	398	AddValue	437

CreateControl.....	438	EndReport.....	1035
methods	435	Enter	455
properties	434	Enter (edit-in-place action on enter key).....	455
Reset.....	438	EnterAction	156
TakeAction	439, 440	BrowseClass	156
TakeEvent	442	EnterAction (edit-in-place action on enter key).....	156
Title	434	Entries	1117
EditMultiSelectClass ABC Template		StepCustomClass	1117
Implementation	428	Entries (expected data distribution)	1117
EditMultiSelectClass Concepts	427	EntryCompletion	557
EditMultiSelectClass Conceptual Example		FileDropComboClass	557
.....	429	EntryCompletion (automatic fill-ahead flag)	
EditMultiSelectClass Functional		.....	557
Organization--Expected Use.....	435	EntryLocatorClass	
EditMultiSelectClass Methods	435	methods.....	482
EditMultiSelectClass Overview.....	427	properties	481
EditMultiSelectClass Properties	434	EntryLocatorClass Methods.....	482
EditMultiSelectClass Relationship to Other		EntryLocatorClass Overview	477
Application Builder Classes	427	EntryLocatorClass Properties	481
EditMultiSelectClass Source Files.....	428	EQ.....	455
EditSpinClass	351	Equal.....	547
EditSpinClass -- Relationship to Other		FieldPairsClass	547
Application Builder Classes	351	Equal (return 1 if all pairs are equal)	547
EditSpinClass Concepts	351	Equal(checks for equal before and after values).....	329
EditSpinClass Methods	356	EqualBuffer	616
EditSpinClass Properties.....	355	FileManagerClass	616
EditSpinClass Source Files	351	EqualBuffer (detect record buffer changes)	
EditSpinClass--ABC Template		.....	616
Implementation	351	EqualLeftBuffer	244
EditSpinClass--Conceptual Example	352	BufferedPairsClass	244
EditSpinClass--Functional Organization—		EqualLeftBuffer (compare "left" fields to "buffer" fields).....	244
Expected Use.....	356	EqualLeftRight	548
EditSpinClass--Overview.....	351	FieldPairsClass	548
EditTextClass Overview	443	EqualLeftRight (return 1 if all pairs are equal)	548
EditTextClass Methods.....	446	EqualRightBuffer.....	245
EIP	155	BufferedPairsClass	245
EIPManagerClass.....	449	EqualRightBuffer (compare "right" fields to "buffer" fields).....	245
EIPManagerClass Concepts	449	Err (errorclass object)	824
EIPManagerClass Source Files	450	Err (errorclass obejct)	765
EIPManagerClass--ABC Template		ErrorClass	
Implementation	450	methods.....	500, 501
EIPManagerClass--Conceptual Example	451	properties	495
EIPManagerClass--Functional Organization-			
Expected Use	461		
EIPManagerClass--Overview	449		
EIPManagerClass--Relationship to Other			
Application Builder Classes	449		

ErrorClass Functional Organization--		FieldPairsClass Functional Organization--	
Expected Use	500	Expected Use	539
ErrorClass Overview	489	FieldPairsClass Overview	535
ErrorClass Properties	495	FieldPairsClass Properties	538
ErrorClass Source Files	823	Fields	456
ErrorLog (errorlog interface)	495	Fields (managed fields)	456
ErrorLogInterface Concepts	531	FILE	596
ErrorLogInterface Methods	532	File Manager	589
ErrorLogInterface Source Files	531	FileDropClass	
ErrorMgr	64	methods	577
ASCIIFileClass	64	properties	576
ErrorMgr (ErrorClass object)	64	FileDropClass Functional Organization--	
Errors	496, 1317	Expected Use	577
ErrorClass	496	FileDropClass Methods	577
WindowManagerClass	1317	FileDropClass Overview	571
Errors (ErrorClass object)	315, 1317	FileDropClass Properties	576
Errors (recognized error definitions)	496	FileDropComboClass	
eShowSBonFirstThread	710	methods	559
eSumYMax	710	Overview	551
ExtractText	1234	properties	556
TranslatorClass	1234	FileDropComboClass Functional	
ExtractText (identify text to translate)	1234	Organization--Expected Use	559
FEQ	346	FileDropComboClass Methods	559
EditClass	343	FileDropComboClass Properties	556
FEQ (the edit-in-place control number) ...	343	FileManager	
Fetch	184, 617, 789, 790	methods	601
BrowseClass	184	properties	594
FileManagerClass	617	FileManager Functional Organization--	
INIClass	790	Expected Use	602
Fetch (get a page of browse items)	184	FileManager Overview	589
Fetch (get a specific record by key value)		FileManager Properties	594
.....	617	FileManagerClass	
Fetch (get INI file entries)	789	Database Operations	601
FetchFeq (retrieve button feq)	826	Interactive Database Operations	601
FetchField	791	Silent Database Operations	601
INIClass	791	FileMask	
FetchField (return comma delimited INI file		EditFileClass	411
value)	791	FileMgr	82, 91
FetchQueue	792	AsciiPrintClass	82
INIClass	792	ASCIISearchClass	91
FetchQueue (get INI file queue entries) ..	792	FileName	497, 597
FetchRecord (retrieve selected record) ...	758	FileManagerClass	597
FetchStdButton (determine button pressed)		INIClass	788
.....	826	FileName (variable filename)	597
FieldName	497	FileNameValue	598
FieldPairsClass	535, 536, 537	FileManagerClass	598
properties	538	FileNameValue (constant filename)	598

FilesOpened(files opened by procedure)	FuzzyClass ABC Template Implementation
..... 1317	..... 687
FilterLocatorClass	FuzzyClass Source Files 687
methods 684	FuzzyClassClass Properties 688
properties 683	GetAcross (number of horizontal grids) ... 759
FilterLocatorClass Methods 684	GetButtonFeq(returns a field equate label)
FilterLocatorClass Overview 679	..... 948
FilterLocatorClass Properties 683	GetCategory (retrieve error category) 503
FilterReset 817	GetClickPress (forward click control) 759
Find 90	GetComponents 618
ASCIISearchClass 90	FileManagerClass 618
Find (search constraints) 90	GetComponents (return the number of key
FindNearbyNodes 731	components) 618
FirstField	GetControl(returns control number) 774
WindowManagerClass 1317	GetDOSFilename 67
FIRSTFIELD 1317	ASCIIFileClass 67
FirstField (first window control) 1317	GetDOSFilename (let end user select file) 67
Flags 1089	GetDown (number of vertical grids) 759
SelectFileClass 1089	GetEdit 465
Flags (file dialog behavior) 1089	GetEdit (identify edit-in-place field) 465
FlatButtons (use flat button style) 296	GetEOF 619
FldsEIP 972	FileManagerClass 619
FldsEIP (reference to the EditDropListClass)	GetEOF (return end of file status) 619
..... 972	GetError 503, 620
FloatRight 683	ErrorClass 503
FilterLocatorClass 683	FileManagerClass 620
FloatRight ("contains" or "begins with" flag)	GetError (return the current error ID) 620
..... 683	GetErrorcode 504
FocusLoss 456	ErrorClass 504
FocusLoss (action on loss of focus) 456	GetField 621
FocusLossAction 157	FileManagerClass 621
BrowseClass 157	GetField (return a reference to a key
FocusLossAction (edit-in-place action on	component) 621
lose focus) 157	GetFieldName 623
Font (apply font attributes) 297	FileManagerClass 623
ForcedReset	GetFieldName (return a key component field
WindowManagerClass 1318	name) 623
ForcedReset (force reset flag) 1318	GetFieldPicture(get field picture) 625
ForceRefresh 1318	GetFields(get number of fields) 625
FormatLine 66	GetFieldType(get field type) 625
ASCIIFileClass 66	GetFilename 68
FormatLine (a virtual to format text) 66	ASCIIFileClass 68
FreeElement 813	GetFilename (return the filename) 68
LocatorClass 813	GetFirstSortField 1261
FreeElement (the locator's first free key	GetFreeElementName 1262
element) 813	ViewManagerClass 1262
Functional Organization--Expected Use.. 344	

GetFreeElementName (return free key element name)	1262	GetPercentile (convert file position to percentage)	71
GetFreeElementPosition	1263	GetPercentile (return a value's percentile)	1106, 1119, 1127, 1141, 1153
ViewManagerClass	1263	GetPosition (retrieve group control position)	760
GetFreeElementPosition (return free key element position).....	1263	GetPositionStrategy	1292
GetHelpFile (get help file name).....	1161	WindowResizeClass	1292
GetItemChecked.....	844	GetPositionStrategy (return position strategy for a control type)	1292
PopupClass.....	844	GetProcedureName	504
GetItemChecked (return toggle item status)	844	GetProcedureName (return procedure name)	504
GetItemEnabled.....	845	GetQueueMatch	562
PopupClass.....	845	FileDropComboClass	562
GetItemEnabled (return item status)	845	GetQueueMatch (locate a list item)	562
GetItems	846	GetRelation(returns reference to relation manager)	1008
GetItems(returns number of entries)	774	GetRelationType(returns relation type) ..	1008
GetLastLineNo.....	69	GetResizeStrategy	1293
ASCIIFileClass	69	WindowResizeClass	1293
GetLastLineNo (return last line number) ...	69	GetResizeStrategy (return resize strategy for a control type)	1293
GetLastSelection	847	GetShadow(return shadow value) ...	482, 815
PopupClass.....	847	GetText (copy text to variable).....	298
GetLastSelection (return selected item) ..	847	GetTopic (get current topic name).....	1161
GetLimit		GetValue	1107, 1120, 1128, 1142
QueryClass	920	StepClass	1107
GetLimit (get searchvalues).....	920	StepCustomClass	1120
GetLine	70	StepLongClass	1128
ASCIIFileClass	70	StepRealClass	1142
GetLine (return line of text).....	70	StepStringClass	1154
GetMouse	732	GetValue (return a percentile's value) ..	1107, 1120, 1128, 1142, 1154
GetName	626	GetValueFromField.....	733
FileManagerClass	626	GetValueFromStatusBar.....	733
GetName (return the filename).....	626	GetVisible(returns visibility of control)	774
GetNbFiles(returns number of children) ..	1007	GraphClass Overview	709
GetNbRelations(returns number of relations)	1007	GraphClass Source Files.....	709
GetParentControl.....	1291	GridClass ABC Template Implementation	753
WindowResizeClass	1291	GridClass Methods	758
GetParentControl (return parent control)	1291	GridClass Overview	753
GetPercentile	71, 1106, 1119, 1127, 1141	GridClass Properties.....	754
ASCIIFileClass	71	GridClass Source Files	753
StepClass.....	1106	GroupColor (background color of group fields).....	756
StepCustomClass	1119		
StepLongClass.....	1127		
StepRealClass	1141		
StepStringClass	1153		

GroupControl (GROUP control number) .	756	History	1224
GroupTitle (title of group element).....	756	ToolbarUpdateClass	1224
gShowDiagramName	711	History (enable toolbar history button)...	1224
gShowDiagramNameV	712	History (error history structure).....	765
gShowMouse	713	HistoryHandler (windowcomponent	
gShowMouseX	714	interface)	825
gShowMouseY	715	HistoryKey.....	1318
gShowNodeName	716	WindowManagerClass	1318
gShowNodeNameV	717	HistoryKey (restore field key).....	1318
gShowNodeValue	718	HistoryMsg (initialize the message window)	
gShowNodeValueX	719	.....	505
gShowNodeValueY	720	hRTFWindow(RTF control handle).....	291
HasCancelButton display cancel button on		Icon (icon for image control)	824
report preview	269	IDbChangeAudit Concepts	769
HasCloseButton display close button on		IDbChangeAudit Methods.....	769
report preview	270	IDbChangeAudit Source Files	769
HasExportButton display export button on		IfGroupField (determine if current control is	
report preview	271	a GROUP)	760
HasLaunchButton display launch button on		IListControl Concepts	773
report preview	272	IListControl Methods.....	773
HasNavigationControls display navigation		IListControl Source Files.....	773
controls on report preview.....	273	ImageToWMF	734
HasPrintButton display print button on report		IncrementalLocatorClass	
preview.....	274	methods.....	782
HasPrintSetupButton display print setup		properties	781
button on report preview	275	IncrementalLocatorClass Methods	782
HasProgressControls display progress		IncrementalLocatorClass Overview.....	777
controls on report preview.....	276	IncrementalLocatorClass Properties	781
HasRefreshButton display refresh button on		INIClass	785, 786, 787
report preview	277	methods.....	789
HasSearchButton display search button on		properties	788
report preview	278	INIClass Methods	789
HasThumb	158	INIClass Properties.....	788
BrowseClass	158	Init 72, 84, 93, 107, 108, 140, 185, 246, 257,	
HasZoomControl display zoom control on		466, 483, 506, 548, 563, 564, 581, 627,	
report preview	279	628, 734, 793, 816, 848, 878, 899, 965,	
HelpButton	1206	975, 987, 1009, 1036, 1092, 1108, 1121,	
ToolbarTargetClass	1206	1181, 1237, 1264, 1294, 1335	
HelpButton (help control number)	1206	ASCIIFileClass	72
HideSelect	158	ASCIIPrintClass	84
High	1126, 1140	ASCIISearchClass	93
StepLongClass.....	1126	ASCIIViewerClass.....	107, 108
StepRealClass	1140	BrowseClass	185
High (upper boundary).....	1126, 1140	BufferedPairsClass	246
HistHandlerClass Methods	767	ConstantClass.....	257
HistHandlerClass Properties	765	EditClass	346
HistHandlerClass Source Files.....	765	EntryLocatorClass.....	483

ErrorClass	506	Init (initialize the ErrorClass object)	506
FieldPairsClass	548	Init (initialize the FieldPairsClass object)	548
FileDropClass	581	Init (initialize the FileDropClass object)	581
FileDropComboClass	563	Init (initialize the FileDropComboClass object)	563
INIClass	793, 794	Init (initialize the GridClass object)	761
LocatorClass	816	Init (initialize the HistHandlerClass object)	767
PopupClass	848	Init (initialize the INIClass object)	793
PrintPreviewClass	878	Init (initialize the LocatorClass object)	816
ProcessClass	899, 900	Init (initialize the MsgBoxClass object)	827
QueryClass	921	Init (initialize the PopupClass object)	848
QueryFormClass	939	Init (initialize the PrintPreviewClass object)	878
QueryFormVisual	949	Init (initialize the QueryClass object)	921
SelectFileClass	1092	Init (initialize the QueryFormClass object)	939
StepClass	1108	Init (initialize the QueryFormVisual object)	949
StepCustomClass	1121	Init (initialize the QueryListClass object)	965
StepStringClass	1155	Init (initialize the QueryListVisual object)	975
ToolBarClass	1181	Init (initialize the QueryVisual object)	987
TranslatorClass	1237	Init (initialize the SelectFileClass object)	1092
ViewManagerClass	1264	Init (initialize the StepClass object)	1108
WindowManagerClass	1335	Init (initialize the StepCustomClass object)	1121
WindowResizeClass	1294	Init (initialize the ToolbarClass object)	1181
Init (initialize TextWindow object)	1169	Init (initialize the TranslatorClass object)	1237
Init (initialize FuzzyClass object)	688	Init (initialize the ViewManager object)	1264
Init (initialize HTML Help object)	1162	Init (initialize the WindowManager object)	1335
Init (initialize the ASCIIPrintClass object)	84	Init (initialize the WindowResizeClass object)	1294
Init (initialize the ASCIISearchClass object)	93	Init initialize Crystal8 object	280
Init (initialize the ASCIIViewerClass object)	107	Init(initialize the StandardBehavior object)	1097
Init (initialize the BrowseClass object)	185	InitBrowse (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass update buttons)	228
Init (initialize the BrowseEIPManagerClass object)	140	InitControls	466
Init (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass object)	228	InitMisc (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass miscellaneous buttons)	229
Init (initialize the BufferedPairsClass object)	246	InitSort (initialize locator values)	186
Init (initialize the ConstantClass object)	257	InitSyncPair	576
Init (initialize the cwRTF object)	299	InitVCR (initialize the BrowseToolBarClass VCR buttons)	230
Init (initialize the DbAuditManager object)	319		
Init (initialize the DbChangeManager object)	329		
Init (initialize the DbLogFileManager object)	335		
Init (initialize the EditClass object)	346		
Init (initialize the EntryLocatorClass object)	483		

InPageList.....	879	RelationManagerClass.....	1010
Insert.....	457, 629	ReportManagerClass	1037
FileManagerClass	629	StepClass	1109
Insert (add a new record)	629	StepCustomClass	1122
Insert (placement of new record).....	457	StepStringClass	1156
Insert(add entry to LIST queue)	223	ToolBarClass	1181
InsertAction.....	1319	TranslatorClass	1237
WindowManagerClass	1319	WindowManagerClass	1338
InsertAction (response to insert request)	1319	WindowResizeClass	1297
InsertButton	1207	Kill (perform any necessary termination code)	507, 827
ToolBarTargetClass	1207	Kill (shut down DbAuditManger object) ...	319
InsertButton (insert control number).....	1207	Kill (shut down DbChangeManger object)	330
InsertControl	159	Kill (shut down the ASCIIFileClass object) 73	
BrowseClass	159	Kill (shut down the ASCIIViewerClass object).....	109
InsertRecord	1337	Kill (shut down the BrowseClass object) .	187
Interactive Database Operations		Kill (shut down the BrowseEIPManagerClass object)	141
FileManagerClass	601	Kill (shut down the BufferedPairsClass object).....	247
Interactivity.....	735	Kill (shut down the ConstantClass object)	259
IsDirty (indicates modified data)	300	Kill (shut down the csRTF object).....	301
IsOverNode	735	Kill (shut down the EIPManagerClass object)	
IsSkelActive	761	Kill (shut down the FieldPairsClass object)	549
KeepVisible.....	1024	Kill (shut down the FileDropClass object)582	
KeyToOrder	630	Kill (shut down the PopupClass object) ...	848
FileManagerClass	630	Kill (shut down the PrintPreviewClass object).....	880
KeyToOrder (return ORDER expression for a key)	630	Kill (shut down the ProcessClass object) 901	
KeyValid (check for valid keystroke)	565	Kill (shut down the QueryClass object)....	922
KeyWordLookup (lookup keyword)	1163	Kill (shut down the QueryFormClass object)	940
Kill 73, 109, 110, 141, 187, 247, 259, 467, 507, 549, 582, 632, 736, 848, 880, 901, 966, 988, 1010, 1037, 1109, 1122, 1156, 1181, 1237, 1265, 1297, 1338		Kill (shut down the QueryListClass object)	966
ASCIIViewerClass.....	109	Kill (shut down the QueryVisual object) ...	988
BrowseClass	187	Kill (shut down the RelationManager object)	1010
BufferedPairsClass	247	Kill (shut down the ReportManager object)	1037
ConstantClass.....	259	Kill (shut down the StepClass object)	1109
EditClass	347	Kill (shut down the StepCustomClass object)	1122
ErrorClass	507		
FieldPairsClass	549		
FileDropClass	582		
FileManagerClass	632		
PopupClass.....	848		
PrintPreviewClass.....	880		
ProcessClass	901		
QueryClass	922		
QueryFormClass.....	940		

Kill (shut down the StepStringClass object)	1156	ListControl (listbox control number)	458
Kill (shut down the ToolbarClass object)	1181	ListLinkingFields	1011
Kill (shut down the TranslatorClass object)	1237	RelationManagerClass	1011
Kill (shut down the WindowManager object)	1338	ListLinkingFields (map pairs of linked fields)	1011
Kill (shut down the WindowResizeClass object)	1297	ListQueue	159
Kill (shutdown FuzzyClass object)	688	BrowseClass	159
Kill (shutdown TextWindow object)	1169	Load	260
Kill (shutdown the FileManager object)	632	ConstantClass	260
Kill (shutdown the GridClass object)	762	Loaded	159
Kill (shutdown the QueryListVisual object)	976	BrowseClass	159
Kill (shutdown the TagHTMLHelp object)	1163	Loaded (browse queue loaded flag)	159
Kill shut down Crystal8 object	281	LoadField (load rich text data from field)	302
Kill(shutdown the parent object)	1278	LocateButton(query control number)	1207
LastColumn	458	LocatorClass	679, 811, 812
LastColumn (previous edit-in-place column)	458	methods	815
LastInsertedPosition	1319	properties	813
WindowManager	1319	LocatorClass Methods	815
LazyOpen	599	LocatorClass Overview	811
FileManagerClass	599	LocatorClass Properties	813
LazyOpen (delay file open until access)	599	LockRecover	599
LBColumns (number of listbox columns)	766	FileManagerClass	599
LeftIndent (indent the current or selected paragraph)	301	LockRecover (/RECOVER wait time parameter)	599
Level	490	LookupMode	1150
Benign	490	StepStringClass	1150
Cancel	490	Low	1126, 1140
Fatal	490	StepLongClass	1126
Notify	490	StepRealClass	1140
Program	490	Low (lower boundary)	1126, 1140
User	490	Match (find query matches)	689
LFM (DbLogFileManager object)	315	Maximize	
LimitTextSize (limit amount of text)	302	PrintPreviewClass	867
LineCounter	91	MAXIMIZE	867
ASCIISearchClass	91	Maximize (number of pages displayed horizontally)	867
List		Me	998
FieldPairsClass	538	RelationManagerClass	998
LIST	538	Me (the primary file's FileManager object)	998
List (recognized field pairs)	538	Message	
ListControl	458	ErrorClass	508
		MESSAGE	508
		MessageBox	510
		ErrorClass	510
		MessageBox (display error message to window)	510

MessageText	499	OnDelete (update audit log file when a record is deleted)	320
MouseText	736	OnFieldChange (virtual method for each field change)	321
MouseXText	736	OnInsert (update audit log file when a record is added)	322
MouseYText	737	Open	
Msg	509	FileManagerClass	634
ErrorClass	509	PrintPreviewClass	881
Msg (initiate error message destination) .	509	RelationManagerClass	1012
MsgBoxClass Methods	826	ViewManagerClass	1266
MsgBoxClass Overview	823	WindowManagerClass	1339
MsgBoxClass Properties	824	OPEN	634, 881, 1012, 1039, 1266, 1339
MsgRVal (message box return value)	825	Open (a virtual to execute on EVENT OpenWindow)	1339
NameQueue (pointer into trigger queue). 326		Open (initiate open of log file)	533
Naming Conventions and Dual Approach to Database Operations	601	Open (open a file and any related files). 1012	
Next		Open (open standarderrorlog file)	1102
ASCIISearchClass	94	Open (open the file)	634
BrowseClass	188	Open (open the view)	1266
ConstantClass	262	Open (prepare preview window for display)	881
FileManagerClass	633	Opened	1320
ProcessClass	902	WindowManagerClass	1320
ReportManagerClass	1038	Opened (file opened flag)	334, 802
NEXT	94, 188, 262, 468, 633, 902, 1038, 1265	Opened (window opened flag)	1320
Next (copy next constant item to targets) 262		OpenLogFile (open the audit log file)	322
Next (find next line containing search text) 94		OpenMode	600
Next (get next element)	902	FileManagerClass	600
Next (get next record in sequence)	633	OpenMode (file access/sharing mode)	600
Next (get next report record)	1038	OpenReport	1040, 1060
Next (get the next browse item)	188	ReportManagerClass	1040
Next (get the next edit-in-place field)	468	OpenReport (prepare report for execution)	1040
Next (load all constant items to file or queue)		OpsEIP	972
NoCase		OpsEIP (reference to the EditDropListClass)	972
LocatorClass	814	Order	
NOCASE	814	ViewManagerClass	1248
NoCase (case sensitivity flag)	814	ORDER	1248
NodeNameText	737	Order (sort range-limit and filter information)	1248
NodeText	738	OriginalRequest	1321
NodeTipText	738	WindowManagerClass	1321
NodeValueText	739	OriginalRequest (original database request)	1321
NodeXText	739		
NodeYText	740		
OKControl	1320		
WindowManagerClass	1320		
OKControl (window acceptance control--OK button)	1320		
OnChange (update audit log file after a record change)	320, 771		

-
- OutputFileQueue 1024
 - Overview 313, 687
 - PageDown 111
 - ASCIIViewerClass 111
 - PageDown (scroll down one page) 111
 - PagesAcross 867
 - PrintPreviewClass 867
 - PagesAcross (number of pages displayed horizontally) 867
 - PagesAhead 1249
 - ViewManagerClass 1249
 - PagesAhead (buffered pages) 1249
 - PagesBehind 1249
 - ViewManagerClass 1249
 - PagesBehind (buffered pages) 1249
 - PagesDown 868
 - PrintPreviewClass 868
 - PagesDown (number of vertical thumbnails) 868
 - PageSize 1250
 - ViewManagerClass 1250
 - PageSize (buffer page size) 1250
 - PagesToPrint 868
 - PageUp 112
 - ASCIIViewerClass 112
 - PageUp (scroll up one page) 112
 - Paste (paste text from clipboard) 305
 - Percentile 895
 - ProcessClass 895
 - Percentile (portion of process completed) 895
 - Popup 740
 - ASCIIViewerClass 100
 - BrowseClass 160
 - POPUP 100, 160
 - PopupAsk 741
 - PopupClass 829, 830, 831
 - methods 834
 - properties 833
 - PopupClass Functional Organization--
 - Expected Use 834
 - PopupClass Methods 834
 - PopupClass Overview 829
 - PopupClass Properties 833
 - Position
 - FileManagerClass 635
 - POSITION 635
 - Position (return the current record position) 635
 - PostCompleted 1340
 - WindowManagerClass 1340
 - PostCompleted (initiates final Window processing) 1340
 - PostEvent 742
 - PostNewSelection 190
 - BrowseClass 190
 - PostNewSelection (post an EVENT NewSelection to the browse list) 190
 - Preview
 - ReportManagerClass 1025
 - PREVIEW 1025
 - Preview (PrintPreviewClass object) 1025
 - Preview preview a Crystal Report 282
 - PreviewQueue 1025
 - ReportManagerClass 1025
 - PreviewQueue (report metafile pathnames) 1025
 - Previous
 - BrowseClass 191
 - FileManagerClass 644
 - ViewManagerClass 1267
 - PREVIOUS 191, 644, 1267
 - Previous (get previous record in sequence) 644
 - Previous (get the previous browse item) 191
 - Previous (get the previous element) 1267
 - Primary
 - ViewManagerClass 1250
 - WindowManagerClass 1321
 - PRIMARY 1250, 1321
 - Primary (RelationManager object) 1321
 - Primary (the primary file RelationManager) 1250
 - PrimeAutoInc 645, 646
 - FileManagerClass 645
 - PrimeAutoInc (prepare an autoincremented record for adding) 645
 - PrimeFields 647, 1341
 - FileManagerClass 647
 - WindowManagerClass 1341
 - PrimeFields (a virtual to prime fields) 647
 - PrimeFields (a virtual to prime form fields) 1341
 - PrimeRecord 648, 1268

FileManagerClass	648	QueryFromVisual	946
ViewManagerClass	1268	QFC (reference to the QueryFormClass)	946
PrimeRecord (prepare a record for adding)	648, 1268	QFC (reference to the QueryListClass)	972
PrimeUpdate	1342	QKCurrentQuery	910
WindowManagerClass	1342	QKCurrentQuery (popup menu choice)	910
PrimeUpdate (update or prepare for update)	1342	QKIcon	910
Printer		QKIcon (icon for popup submenu)	910
ASCIIViewerClass	100	QKMenuIcon	910
PRINTER	100	QKMenuIcon (icon for popup menu)	910
PrintGraph	744	QKSupport	911
PrintLines	85	QKSupport (quickqbe flag)	911
ASCIIPrintClass	85	Query retrieve or set the SQL data query	284
PrintLines (print or preview specified lines)	85	QueryClass	905
PrintPreview	82	AddItem	913
AsciiPrintClass	82	Ask	915
PrintPreviewClass .861, 862, 863, 864, 1017 methods	871	GetFilter	918
properties	866	GetLimit	920
PrintPreviewClass Functional Organization-- Expected Use	871	Init	921
PrintPreviewClass Methods	871	Kill	922
PrintPreviewClass Overview	861	methods	912
PrintPreviewClass Properties	866	properties	910
PrintReport	1041	Reset	923
Process	1026	SetLimit	926
ReportManagerClass	1026	QueryClass ABC Template Implementation	906
Process (ProcessClass object)	1026	QueryClass Concepts	905
ProcessArc	803	QueryClass Conceptual Example	907
ProcessChord	805	QueryClass Functional Organization-- Expected Use	912
ProcessClass		QueryClass Methods	912
methods	897	QueryClass Overview	905
properties	895	QueryClass Properties	910
ProcessClass Functional Organization-- Expected Use	897	QueryClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	905
ProcessClass Methods	897	QueryClass Source Files	906
ProcessClass Overview	891	QueryControl (query button)	1026
ProcessClass Properties	895	QueryFormClass	931
ProcessResultFiles	1042	Ask	938
PText	896	Init	939
ProcessClass	896	Kill	940
PText (progress control number)	896	methods	937
QC	986	properties	936
QC (reference to the QueryClass)	986	QueryFormClass ABC Template Implementation	932
QFC	972	QueryFormClass Concepts	931
		QueryFormClass Conceptual Example	933

QueryFormClass Functional Organization-- Expected Use.....	937	QueryVisualClass Overview	985
QueryFormClass Methods.....	937	QueryVisualClass Methods	987
QueryFormClass Overview	931	QueryVisualClass Properties.....	986
QueryFormClass Properties	936	QuickScan.....	163
QueryFormClass Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	931	BrowseClass	163
QueryFormClass Source Files	932	READONLY	343
QueryFormVisual.....	941	ReadOnly (edit-in-place control is read- only).....	343
Init	949	RealList	235
QFC.....	946	BufferedPairsClass	235
TakeAccepted	952	RealList (recognized field pairs)	235
TakeCompleted.....	953	RECORDS	192
QueryFormVisual ABC Template Implementation	941	Records(return number of records)	223
QueryFormVisual Concepts	941	RecordsProcessed	896
QueryFormVisual Conceptual Example ..	943	ProcessClass	896
QueryFormVisual Functional Organization-- Expected Use.....	947	RecordsProcessed (number of elements processed).....	896
QueryFormVisual Overview.....	941	RecordsToProcess	896
QueryFormVisual Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	941	ProcessClass	896
QueryFormVisual Source Files	942	RecordsToProcess (number of elements to process).....	896
QueryListClass	957	Redo (reapply action)	306
QueryListClass Concepts	957	referential integrity enforcement of	993
QueryListClass Methods	963	Refresh	745
QueryListClass Properties.....	962	refresh/redisplay ABC BrowseBoxes.....	172
QueryListClass Source Files	958	RelationManager	993, 994, 995
QueryListClass--Conceptual Example	959	properties	998
QueryListClass--Functional Organization-- Expected Use.....	963	RelationManager Functional Organization-- Expected Use	999
QueryListClass--Overview.....	957	RelationManager Overview	993
QueryListClass--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	957	RelationManager Properties.....	998
QueryListVisual	967	Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes.....	221, 225, 313, 325, 333, 337, 377, 531, 687, 753, 769, 773, 1095, 1159, 1167, 1277
QueryListVisual Concepts	967	RemoveDuplicatesFlag (remove duplicate data)	557
QueryListVisual Methods.....	974	RemoveErrors.....	511
QueryListVisual Properties	972	ErrorClass	511
QueryListVisual Source Files	967	RemoveErrors (remove or restore recognized errors)	511
QueryListVisual--ABC Template Implementation	967	RemoveItem(remove WindowComponent object).....	1343
QueryListVisual--Conceptual Example....	969	Replace (find and replace search).....	306
QueryListVisual--Functional Organization-- Expected Use.....	974	Report	
QueryListVisual--Overview	967	ReportManagerClass	1027
QueryListVisual--Relationship to Other Application Builder Classes	967		

- REPORT 1027
- Report (the managed REPORT) 1027
- ReportManager Concepts 1017
- ReportManager Functional Organization--
Expected Use 1031
- ReportManager Methods 1031
- ReportManager Overview 1017
- ReportManager Properties 1022
- ReportManagerClass
methods 1031
properties 1022
- ReportTarget 1027
- Repost 459
- Repost (event synchronization) 459
- RepostField 459
- RepostField (event synchronization field) 459
- REQ 460
- Req (database request) 460
- Request 1223, 1322
ToolbarUpdateClass 1223
WindowManagerClass 1322
- Request (database request) 1322
- Request (requested database operation)
..... 1223
- Reset
ASCIIFileClass 74
ASCIIViewerClass 113
ConstantClass 263
EditMultiSelectClass 438
FilterLocatorClass 817
QueryClass 923
ViewManagerClass 1269
WindowManagerClass 1344
WindowResizeClass 1298
- RESET . 74, 113, 263, 903, 989, 1269, 1298, 1344
- Reset (reset the dialog for display
QueryVisualClass) 989
- Reset (reset the ASCIIFileClass object) 74
- Reset (reset the ASCIIViewerClass object)
..... 113
- Reset (reset the locator for next search) . 817
- Reset (reset the object to the beginning of
the constant data) 263
- Reset (reset the QueryClass object) 923
- Reset (reset the view position) 1269
- Reset (reset the window for display) 1344
- Reset (resets the WindowResizeClass
object) 1298
- reset ABC BrowseBoxes 172
- Reset(reset object's data) 1281
- ResetButton (synchronize a toolbar control
with a corresponding browse control) ..231
- ResetColumn 469
- ResetColumn (reset edit-in-place object to
selected field) 469
- ResetFromAsk 193
- BrowseClass 193, 194
- ResetFromAsk (reset browse after update)
..... 193
- ResetFromBrowse(synchronize toolbar
controls with browse controls) 232
- ResetFromBuffer 195
- BrowseClass 195
- ResetFromBuffer (fill queue starting from
record buffer) 195
- ResetFromFile 196
- BrowseClass 196
- ResetFromFile (fill queue starting from file
POSITION) 196
- ResetFromQuery 950, 977
- ResetFromQuery (reset the
QueryFormVisual object) 950
- ResetFromQuery (reset the QueryList
Visual object) 977
- ResetFromView 197
- BrowseClass 197
- ResetFromView (reset browse from current
result set) 197
- ResetHistory(clear History structure) 512
- ResetOnGainFocus 1323
- WindowManagerClass 1323
- ResetOnGainFocus (gain focus reset flag)
..... 1323
- ResetQueue 198, 566, 583
- BrowseClass 198
- FileDropClass 583
- FileDropComboClass 566
- ResetQueue (fill filedrop queue) 583
- ResetQueue (fill or refill queue) 198
- ResetQueue (refill the filedrop queue) 566
- ResetRequired(determine if screen refresh
needed) 1282
- ResetResets 199

- BrowseClass 199
- ResetResets (copy the Reset fields) 199
- ResetSort 200
 - BrowseClass 200
- ResetSort (apply sort order to browse) ... 200
- Resize 745
 - WindowResizeClass 1299
- RESIZE 1299
- Resize (resize and reposition controls) . 1299
- Resize (WindowResize object) 1323
- ResizeControls (used internally) 306
- Resizer 986
- Resizer (reference to the
 - WindowResizeClass QueryVisualClass) 986
- Response 1324
 - WindowManagerClass 1324
- Response (response to database request) 1324
- Restore 849, 924
 - PopupClass 849
- Restore (retrieve saved query) 924
- Restore (restore a saved menu) 849
- RestoreBuffer 650
- RestoreBuffers 1270
- RestoreField 1345
 - WindowManagerClass 1345
- RestoreField (restore field to last saved value) 1345
- RestoreFile 651
 - FileManagerClass 651
- RestoreFile (restore a previously saved file state) 651
- RestoreWindow 1300
 - WindowResizeClass 1300
- RestoreWindow (restore window to initial size) 1300
- RetainRow 164
 - BrowseClass 164
- ReturnFromDrillDown 746
- RightIndent (indent the current or selected paragraph) 307
- Root 1151
 - StepStringClass 1151
- Root (the static portion of the step) 1151
- Run
 - WindowManagerClass 1346
- RUN 470, 1346, 1347
- Run (run the EIPManager) 470
- Run (run this procedure or a subordinate procedure) 1346
- Save 850, 925, 1012
 - PopupClass 850
 - RelationManagerClass 1012
- Save (save a query) 925
- Save (copy the current record and any related records) 1012
- Save (save a menu for restoration) 850
- SaveAsGraph 747
- SaveBuffer 652
 - FileManagerClass 652
- SaveBuffer (save a copy of the record buffer) 652
- SaveBuffers 1251, 1270
- Saved 1324
 - WindowManagerClass 1324
- Saved (copy of primary file record buffer) 1324
- SaveField (save rich text data to field) 307
- SaveFile 653
 - FileManagerClass 653
- SaveFile (save rich text data to file) 308
- SaveFile (save the current file state) 653
- SaveGraph 747
- SaveHistory 1348
 - WindowManagerClass 1348
- SaveHistory (save history fields for later restoration) 1348
- SaveOnChangeAction 1349
- SaveOnInsertAction 1350
- ScrollEnd 201
 - BrowseClass 201
- ScrollEnd (scroll to first or last item) 201
- ScrollOne 202
 - BrowseClass 202
- ScrollOne (scroll up or down one item) ... 202
- ScrollPage 203
 - BrowseClass 203
- ScrollPage (scroll up or down one page). 203
- Searcher 101
 - ASCIIViewerClass 101
- SeekForward 460
- SeekForward (get next field flag) 460
- SelColor (color of selected element) 757

SeIE (ending edit position).....	1168	SetAlias.....	1013
Selectable (element selectable flag)	757	RelationManagerClass.....	1013
SelectButton	1208	SetAlias (set a file alias)	1013
ToolBarTargetClass	1208	SetCategory (set error category)	512
SelectButton (select control number)	1208	SetChoice(change selected entry)	775
SelectControl	164	SetControl(change selected entry)	775
BrowseClass	164	SetDefault	748
SelectFileClass		SetDefaultPages.....	885
properties	1088	SetDirtyFlag (set modified flag)	309
SelectFileClass Overview.....	1085	SetDynamicControlsAttributes.....	1044
SelectFileClass Properties	1088	SetEnabled	819
Selecting.....	165	LocatorClass	819
BrowseClass	165	SetEnabled (enable or disable the locator control)	819
SelectionFormula retrieve or set the Crystal formula	285	SetError.....	654
SelectText (select characters).....	308	FileManagerClass	654
SelectWholeRecord.....	165	SetError (save the specified error and underlying error state)	654
SeIS (starting edit position).....	1168	SetErrors.....	513, 655
Set		ErrorClass	513
ConstantClass.....	264	SetErrors (save the error state)	513
EntryLocatorClass.....	484	SetFatality	514
LocatorClass	818	ErrorClass	514
StepLocatorClass.....	1135	SetFatality (set severity level for a particular error).....	514
SET.....	264, 484, 818, 1135	SetField.....	515
Set (restart the locator).....	484, 818, 1135	ErrorClass	515
Set (set the constant data to process).....	264	SetField (set the substitution value of the %Field macro).....	515
SetAlerts	204, 782, 818, 978, 1351	SetFile.....	516
BrowseClass	204	ErrorClass	516
EditClass	347, 393	SetFile (set the substitution value of the %File macro).....	516
IncrementalLocatorClass	782	SetFilter.....	1271
LocatorClass	818	SetFM (determine log file status).....	323
WindowManagerClass	1351	SetFocus (give rich text control focus)	309
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for list and locator controls)	204	SetHelpFile (set the current HTML Help file name)	1164
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control		SetId.....	518
QueryListVisual).....	978	ErrorClass	518
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the edit control)	393	SetId (make a specific error current)	518
SetAlerts (alert keystrokes for the LIST control)	782, 818	SetINIManager.....	882
SetAlerts (alert window control keystrokes)	1351	PrintPreviewClass	882
SetAlerts (initialize and create child controls)	762	SetINIManager (save and restore window coordinates)	882
SetAlerts(alert keystrokes for window component)	1283	SetItemCheck	852
		PopupClass	852

-
- SetItemCheck (set toggle item status)852
 - SetItemEnable853
 - PopupClass.....853
 - SetItemEnable (set item status)853
 - SetKey656
 - FileManagerClass656
 - SetKey (set current key)656
 - SetLevel.....854
 - PopupClass.....854
 - SetLevel (set menu item level)854
 - SetLimit.....1110, 1129, 1143, 1157
 - QueryClass926, 927
 - StepClass.....1110
 - StepLongClass.....1129
 - StepRealClass1143
 - StepStringClass1157
 - SetLimit (set search values)926
 - SetLimit (set smooth data distribution) . 1110, 1129, 1143, 1157
 - SetLimitNeeded1111, 1158
 - StepClass.....1111
 - StepStringClass1158
 - SetLimitNeeded (return static/dynamic boundary flag)1158
 - SetLine.....75, 114
 - ASCIIFileClass75
 - ASCIIViewerClass.....114
 - SetLine (a virtual to position the file)75
 - SetLine (position to specific line)114
 - SetLineRelative115
 - ASCIIViewerClass.....115
 - SetLineRelative (move n lines).....115
 - SetLocatorField205
 - SetLocatorFromSort205
 - SetMask.....1093
 - SelectFileClass1093
 - SetMask (set file dialog file masks)1093
 - SetName.....657
 - FileManagerClass657
 - SetName (set current filename)657
 - SetOption (set fuzzymatch options)690
 - SetOrder1273
 - ViewManagerClass1273
 - SetOrder (replace a sort order)1273
 - SetParentControl1301
 - SetParentDefaults1302
 - WindowResizeClass1302
 - SetParentDefaults (set default parent controls).....1302
 - SetPercentile76
 - ASCIIFileClass76
 - SetPercentile (set file to relative position) .76
 - SetPosition
 - PrintPreviewClass883
 - SETPOSITION.....883
 - SetPosition (set initial preview window coordinates)883
 - SetProcedureName519
 - SetProcedureName (stores procedure names).....519
 - SetProgressLimits.....903
 - SetQueueRecord206, 584
 - BrowseClass206
 - FileDropClass.....584
 - SetQueueRecord (copy data from file buffer to queue buffer).....206, 584
 - SetQuickPopup928
 - SetQuickPopup (add QuickQBE to browse popup)928
 - SetQuickScan1014
 - RelationManagerClass.....1014
 - SetQuickScan (enable QuickScan on a file and any related files)1014
 - SetReadOnly348, 394
 - SetReadOnly (set edit control to read-only EditDropClass)394
 - SetReadOnly (set edit control to read-only)348
 - SetReportTarget1043
 - SetResponse1352
 - WindowManagerClass1352
 - SetResponse (OK or Cancel the window)1352
 - SetShadow.....485
 - SetShadow (update shadow value)819
 - SetShadow(set shadow value)485
 - SetSort207, 1274
 - BrowseClass207
 - ViewManagerClass1274
 - SetSort (apply a sort order to the browse)207
 - SetSort (set the active sort order).....1274
 - SetStaticControlsAttributes1043
 - SetStrategy1303

WindowResizeClass	1303	ShowToolBarTips show tips on preview	
SetStrategy (set control resize strategy)	1303	window toolbar	288
SetTarget		ShowTopic (display a help topic)	1166
ToolBarClass	1182	Silent Database Operations	
SETTARGET	1182	FileManagerClass	601
SetTarget (sets the active target)	1182	SkipHeldRecords	600
SetText	855, 951	FileManagerClass	600
PopupClass	855	SkipHeldRecords (HELD record switch) ..	600
SetText (set prompt text QueryFormVisual)		SkipPreview	1027
.....	951	ReportManagerClass	1027
SetText (place text into rich text control) ..	310	SkipPreview (print rather than preview) ..	1027
SetText (set menu item text)	855	Sort	
SetThread (read triggerqueue)	330	BrowseClass	166
SetTopic (set the current HTML Help file		SORT	166
topic)	1165	Sort (browse sort information)	166
SetTranslator	116, 857	SortChars	1151
ASCIIViewerClass	116	StepStringClass	1151
PopupClass	857	SortChars (valid sort characters)	1151
SetTranslator (set run-time translator) ..	116, 857	StandardBehavior Class Concepts	1095
Setup	95	StandardBehavior Methods	1097
ASCIISearchClass	95	StandardBehavior Overview	1095
Setup (set search constraints)	95	StandardBehavior Properties	1096
SetupAdditionalFeqs (initialize additional		StandardBehavior Source Files	1095
control properties)	828	StandardErrorLogClass Overview	1099
SetViewPosition(set VIEW position)	223	StandardErrorLogClass Properties	1100
SetZoom	884	StandardErrorLogClass Source Files	1099
SetZoomPercentile		StartAtCurrent	167
PrintPreviewClass	884	BrowseClass	167
SetZoomPercentile (set user or standard		StartAtCurrent (initial browse position)	167
zoom factor)	884	StepClass	1103, 1104
Shadow	481	properties	1105
EntryLocatorClass	481	StepClass Overview	1103
Shadow (the search value)	481	StepClass Properties	1105
ShowControl (hide/unhide RTF control) ..	311	StepCustomClass	1113, 1114, 1115
ShowDocumentTips show tips on		GetPercentile	1153
docuement in the preview window	286	GetValue	1154
ShowIndex (open the HTML Help index tab)		Init	1155
.....	1165	methods	1118
ShowOnField	748	properties	1117
ShowOnStatusBar	749	StepCustomClass Methods	1118
ShowReportControls show print controls	287	StepCustomClass Overview	1113
ShowSearch (open the HTML Help search		StepCustomClass Properties	1117
tab)	1166	StepLocatorClass	
ShowTOC (open the HTML Help contents		methods	1135
tab)	1166	properties	1134
ShowToolBarTips	288	StepLocatorClass Methods	1135
		StepLocatorClass Overview	1131

-
- StepLocatorClass Properties 1134
 - StepLongClass 1123, 1124
 - methods 1127
 - properties 1126
 - StepLongClass Methods 1127
 - StepLongClass Overview 1123
 - StepLongClass Properties 1126
 - StepRealClass 1137, 1138
 - methods 1141
 - properties 1140
 - StepRealClass Methods 1141
 - StepRealClass Overview 1137
 - StepRealClass Properties 1140
 - StepStringClass 1145, 1146, 1147, 1148
 - methods 1153
 - properties 1150
 - StepStringClass Methods 1153
 - StepStringClass Overview 1145
 - StepStringClass Properties 1150
 - Style (font style) 825
 - SubsString 520
 - ErrorClass 520
 - SubsString (resolves error message macros) 520
 - SyncGroup (initialize GROUP field properties) 762
 - SyncImageQueue 885
 - TAB 460
 - Tab (action on a tab key) 460
 - TabAction 168
 - BrowseClass 168
 - TabAction (edit-in-place action on tab key) 168
 - TagHTMLHelp ABC Template
 - Implementation 1159
 - TagHTMLHelp Class Concepts 1159
 - TagHTMLHelp Methods 1160
 - TagHTMLHelp Source Files 1159
 - TagHTMLHelpOverview 1159
 - Take 929
 - Take (process QuickQBE popup menu choice) 929
 - Take (update the log file) 533
 - TakeAcceptAll 470
 - TakeAccepted 348, 485, 684, 820, 886, 979, 1353
 - LocatorClass 820
 - PrintPreviewClass 886
 - QueryFormVisual 952
 - WindowManager 1353
 - TakeAccepted (a virtual to process EVENT Accepted) 1353
 - TakeAccepted (handle query dialog EVENT Accepted events
 - QueryFormVisual) 952
 - Accepted events) 979
 - TakeAccepted (handle query dialog EVENT Accepted events) 990
 - TakeAccepted (process accepted event) 567, 828
 - TakeAccepted (process an accepted locator value) 820
 - TakeAccepted (process EVENT Accepted events) 886
 - TakeAccepted (process window controls) 1170
 - TakeAcceptedLocator 208
 - BrowseClass 208
 - TakeAcceptedLocator (apply an accepted locator value) 208
 - TakeAccepted 990
 - TakeAction 471
 - EditMultiSelectClass 439
 - TakeAction (process MultiSelect dialog action) 439
 - TakeAction (process edit-in-place action) 471
 - TakeBenign 521
 - ErrorClass 521
 - TakeBenign (process benign error) 521
 - TakeCloseEvent 1045, 1354
 - ReportManagerClass 1045
 - WindowManagerClass 1354
 - TakeCloseEvent (a virtual to Cancel the window) 1354
 - TakeCloseEvent (a virtual to process EVENT CloseWindow) 1045
 - TakeCompleted 142, 472, 980, 1356
 - QueryFormVisual 953
 - TakeCompleted (complete the query dialog QueryFormVisual) 953
 - TakeCompleted (complete the query dialog) 980
 - TakeCompleted (process completion of edit

EIPManagerClass).....	472	TakeFieldEvent.....	474, 888, 954, 982, 991, 1359
TakeCompleted (process completion of edit)	142	PrintPreviewClass	888
TakeError.....	522	WindowManager	1359
ErrorClass	522	TakeFieldEvent (process field specific events).....	474
TakeError (process specified error).....	522	TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events QueryFormVisual)	954
TakeEvent..... 117, 209, 395, 448, 473, 567, 585, 749, 887, 981, 1183, 1192, 1211, 1212, 1226, 1358		TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events QueryListVisual)	982
ASCIIViewerClass.....	117	TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events QueryVisualClass).....	991
BrowseClass	209	TakeFieldEvent (a virtual to process field events).....	888, 1359
EditClass	349	TakeFocusLoss	475
EditColorClass	376, 415	TakeFocusLoss (a virtual to process loss of focus).....	475
EditFontClass.....	426	TakeKey..... 210, 486, 783, 820, 1136	
EditMultiSelectClass	442	BrowseClass	210
FileDropClass	585	IncrementalLocatorClass	783
FileDropComboClass.....	567	LocatorClass	820
PrintPreviewClass	887	StepLocatorClass	1136
ToolBarClass.....	1183	TakeKey (process an alerted keystroke) 210, 783, 820, 1136	
ToolBarListBoxClass	1192	TakeNewSelection..... 211, 476, 568, 586	
ToolBarTargetClass	1211	BrowseClass	211
ToolBarUpdateClass	1226	FileDropClass.....	586
WindowManagerClass	1358	FileDropComboClass.....	568
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events QueryListVisual).....	981	WindowManagerClass	1360
TakeEvent (process edit-in-place events)	349, 415	TakeNewSelection (reset edit-in-place column	
TakeEvent (process window specific events)	473	EIPManagerClass)	476
TakeEvent (a virtual to process all events)	1358	TakeNewSelection (reset edit-in-place column).....	143
TakeEvent (convert toolbar events) 1192, 1211, 1226		TakeNewSelection (a virtual to process EVENT	
TakeEvent (process ACCEPT loop event)	117	NewSelection)	1360
TakeEvent (process all events)	887	TakeNewSelection (process a new selection)	211
TakeEvent (process the current ACCEPT loop event)	209, 567, 585, 763	TakeNewSelection (process EVENT	
TakeEvent (process toolbar event)	1183	NewSelection events)	568, 586
TakeEvent (process window events).....	767	TakeNoRecords	1046
TakeEvent(process the current ACCEPT loop event)	1283	ReportManagerClass	1046
TakeEvent(process the current event)	232	TakeNoRecords (process empty report).....	1046
TakeEventofParent.....	750	TakeNotify.....	524
TakeFatal.....	523	ErrorClass	524
ErrorClass	523	TakeNotify (process notify error)	524
TakeFatal (process fatal error)	523		

-
- TakeOther525
 - ErrorClass525
 - TakeOther (process other error).....525
 - TakeProgram526
 - ErrorClass526
 - TakeProgram (process program error)...526
 - TakeRecord904
 - ProcessClass904
 - TakeRecord (a virtual to process each report record).....904
 - TakeRecord(process each record)..... 1046
 - TakeRejected1361
 - WindowManagerClass1361
 - TakeRejected (a virtual to process EVENT Rejected).....1361
 - TakeScroll.....212
 - BrowseClass212
 - TakeScroll (process a scroll event)212
 - TakeSelected.....1362
 - WindowManagerClass1362
 - TakeSelected (a virtual to process EVENT Selected).....1362
 - TakeToolbar1202, 1213, 1227
 - ToolbarListBoxClass1193
 - ToolbarReltreeClass1202
 - ToolbarTargetClass1213
 - ToolbarUpdateClass1227
 - TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar)1193
 - TakeToolbar (assume control of the toolbar)1202, 1213, 1227
 - TakeUser527
 - ErrorClass527
 - TakeUser (process user error)527
 - TakeVCRScroll213
 - BrowseClass213
 - TakeVCRScroll (process a VCR scroll event)213
 - TakeWindowEvent.....889, 992, 1047, 1363
 - PrintPreviewClass889
 - ReportManager1047
 - TakeWindowEvent (process non-field events)889
 - TakeWindowEvent (a virtual to process non-field events).....1047
 - TargetSelector1028
 - TargetSelectorCreated1028
 - TerminatorField.....253
 - TerminatorInclude.....253
 - TerminatorValue (end of data marker)254
 - TestLen1152
 - StepStringClass1152
 - TestLen (length of the static step portion)1152
 - TextWindowClass Concepts.....1167
 - TextWindowClass Methods1169
 - TextWindowClass Overview1167
 - TextWindowClass Properties.....1168
 - TextWindowClass Source Files1167
 - Throw528, 659
 - ErrorClass528
 - FileManagerClass659
 - Throw (process specified error).....528
 - Throw (pass an error to the error handler for processing).....659
 - ThrowFile529
 - ErrorClass529
 - ThrowFile (set value of %File then process error).....529
 - ThrowMessage530, 660
 - ErrorClass530
 - FileManagerClass660
 - ThrowMessage (pass an error and text to the error handler)660
 - TimeOut1252
 - ViewManagerClass1252
 - TimeOut (buffered pages freshness).....1252
 - TimeSlice1029
 - ReportManagerClass1029
 - TimeSlice (report resource usage)1029
 - Title445
 - EditColorClass373
 - EditFileClass412
 - EditFontClass423
 - EditMultiSelectClass434
 - Title (color dialog title text).....373
 - Title (font dialog title text).....423, 434
 - Title (text dialog title text).....445
 - Toolbar
 - BrowseClass169
 - TOOLBAR.....169
 - Toolbar (browse Toolbar object).....169
 - ToolbarClass. 1171, 1172, 1173, 1174, 1176 methods.....1178

properties	1178	TranslatorClass	1241
ToolbarClass Functional Organization--		TranslateWindow (translate text for a	
Expected Use	1178	window)	1241
ToolbarClass Methods	1178	Translator	82, 91, 1325
ToolbarClass Overview	1171	AsciiPrintClass	82
ToolbarItem	170	ASCIISearchClass	91
BrowseClass	170	WindowManager	1325
ToolbarItem (browse ToolbarTarget object)		Translator (TranslatorClass object)	1325
.....	170	TranslatorClass	1229, 1230, 1231, 1232
ToolbarListboxClass	1185	methods	1235
methods	1191	properties	1234
properties	1190	TranslatorClass Methods	1235
ToolbarListboxClass Methods	1191	TranslatorClass Overview	1229
ToolbarListboxClass Overview	1185	TranslatorClass Properties	1234
ToolbarListboxClass Properties	1190	TriggerQueue (pointer to BFP for field	
ToolbarReltreeClass		changes)	326
methods	1201	TryFetch	662, 795
properties	1200	FileManagerClass	662
ToolbarReltreeClass Methods	1201	INIClass	795
ToolbarReltreeClass Overview	1195	TryFetch (get a value from the INI file)	795
ToolbarReltreeClass Properties	1200	TryFetch (try to get a specific record by key	
ToolbarTarget	1203, 1204	value)	662
ToolbarTarget Functional Organization--		TryFetchField	796
Expected Use	1209	INIClass	796
ToolbarTarget Overview	1203	TryFetchField (return comma delimited INI	
ToolbarUpdateClass	1215, 1220	file value)	796
methods	1225	TryInsert	663
properties	1223	TryNext	664
ToolbarUpdateClass Methods	1225	FileManagerClass	664
ToolbarUpdateClass Overview	1215	TryNext (try to get next record in sequence)	
ToolbarUpdateClass Properties	1223	.....	664
ToolTip	750	TryOpen	665
TopLine	101	FileManagerClass	665
ASCIIViewerClass	101	TryOpen (try to open the file)	665
ToShowValues	751	TryPrevious	666
TranslateControl	1238	FileManagerClass	666
TranslatorClass	1238	TryPrevious (try to get previous record in	
TranslateControl (translate text for a control)		sequence)	666
.....	1238	TryPrimeAutoInc	667
TranslateControls	1239	FileManagerClass	667
TranslatorClass	1239	TryPrimeAutoInc (try to prepare an	
TranslateControls (translate text for range of		autoincremented record for adding)	667
controls)	1239	TryReget	669
TranslateString	1240	TryTakeToolbar	1194, 1213, 1228
TranslatorClass	1240	ToolbarListBoxClass	1194
TranslateString (translate text)	1240	ToolbarTargetClass	1213
TranslateWindow	1241	ToolbarUpdateClass	1228

- TryTakeToolBar (return toolbar control indicator) 1194, 1213, 1228
- TryUpdate 669
- FileManagerClass 669
- TryUpdate (try to change the current record) 669
- TryValidateField(validate field contents) . 670
- Txt (field equate number) 1168
- Undo (undo action) 311
- UniquePosition (check queue for duplicate record by key position)..... 569
- Update
- EntryLocatorClass..... 487
- FileManagerClass 671
- INIClass..... 798
- RelationManagerClass..... 1015
- UPDATE 487, 671, 797, 798, 1015, 1364
- Update (change the current record) 671
- Update (update record subject to referential constraints) 1015
- Update (update the audit log file buffer) .. 331
- Update (update the locator control and free elements) 487
- Update (write INI file entries) 797
- Update(FileManager)..... 1328
- Update(get VIEW data for the selected item) 1284
- Update(update entry in LIST queue) 224
- UpdateBuffer 214
- BrowseClass 214
- UpdateBuffer (copy selected item from queue buffer to file buffer)..... 214
- UpdateControl (file update trigger) 757
- UpdateControl(updates the edit-in-place entry control) 983
- UpdateControlEvents 757
- UpdateFields 955, 983
- UpdateFields (process query values) ... 955, 983
- UpdateQuery (set default query interface) 215
- UpdateResets 216
- BrowseClass 216
- UpdateResets (copy reset fields to file buffer)..... 216
- UpdateThumb 217
- BrowseClass 217
- UpdateThumb (position the scrollbar thumb) 217
- UpdateThumbFixed 218
- BrowseClass 218
- UpdateThumbFixed (position the scrollbar fixed thumb) 218
- UpdateViewRecord 219
- BrowseClass 219
- UpdateViewRecord (get view data for the selected item) 219
- UpdateWindow 220, 487, 685, 821
- BrowseClass 220
- EntryLocatorClass 487
- FilterLocatorClass 685
- LocatorClass 821
- UpdateWindow (apply the search criteria) 685
- UpdateWindow (redraw the locator control with its current value) 821
- UpdateWindow (redraw the locator control) 487
- UpdateWindow (update display variables to match browse)..... 220
- UpdateWindow(update window controls) 1284
- UseField..... 558
- FileDropComboClass 558
- UseField (COMBO USE variable) 558
- UseFile 672
- FileManagerClass 672
- UseFile (use LazyOpen file) 672
- UseLogout (transaction framing flag) 998
- UserPercentile 868
- PrintPreviewClass 868
- UserPercentile (custom zoom factor) 868
- UseView 1275
- ViewManagerClass 1275
- UseView (use LazyOpen files) 1275
- ValidateField 674
- FileManagerClass 674
- ValidateField (validate a field)..... 674
- ValidateFields 675
- FileManagerClass 675
- ValidateFields (validate a range of fields) 675
- ValidateFieldServer(validate field contents) 676
- ValidateLine 77

- ASCIIFileClass77
 ValidateLine (a virtual to implement a filter)
 77
 ValidateRecord587, 677, 1276
 FileDropClass587
 FileManagerClass677
 ViewManagerClass1276
 ValidateRecord (a virtual to validate records)
 587
 ValidateRecord (validate all fields)677
 ValidateRecord (validate an element) ...1276
 ValueEIP (reference to QEditEntryClass) 973
 VCRRequest1325
 WindowManagerClass1325
 VCRRequest (delayed scroll request) ...1325
 View
 ViewManagerClass1252
 VIEW1252
 View (the managed VIEW)1252
 ViewHistory (initiates the view of the current
 errors)530
 ViewManager814, 1243, 1244, 1245
 LocatorClass814
 methods1253
 properties1248
 ViewManager (the locator's ViewManager
 object)814
 ViewManager Functional Organization--
 Expected Use1253
 ViewManager Methods1253
 ViewManager Overview1243
 ViewManager Properties1248
 ViewMenu859
 PopupClass859
 ViewMenu (popup menu debugger)859
 VLBProc (retrieve LIST and error history
 information.)768
 WaitCursor1029
 Who (returns field name)224
 Win (reference to window)766, 825
 Window
 BrowseClass171
 WINDOW171, 911
 Window (browse window QueryClass) ..911
 Window (WindowManager object)227
 WindowComponent Concepts1277
 WindowComponent Methods1278
 WindowComponent Overview1277
 WindowComponent Source Files1277
 WindowManager1305, 1306, 1307, 1308,
 1310, 1311
 methods1326
 properties1313
 WindowManager Functional Organization--
 Expected Use1326
 WindowManager Methods1326
 WindowManager Overview1305
 WindowManager Properties1313
 WindowPosSet869
 PrintPreviewClass869
 WindowPosSet (use a non-default initial
 preview window position)869
 WindowResizeClass1285, 1286, 1287
 methods1290
 properties1289
 WindowResizeClass Functional
 Organization--Expected Use1290
 WindowResizeClass Methods1290
 WindowResizeClass Overview1285
 WindowResizeClass Properties1289
 WindowSizeSet869
 PrintPreviewClass869
 WindowSizeSet (use a non-default initial
 preview window size)869
 WindowTitle1089
 SelectFileClass1089
 WindowTitle (file dialog title text)1089
 WMFParser1029
 Zoom1030
 ReportManagerClass1030
 Zoom (initial report preview magnification)
 1030
 ZoomIndex870
 PrintPreviewClass870
 ZoomIndex (index to applied zoom factor)
 870

